



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

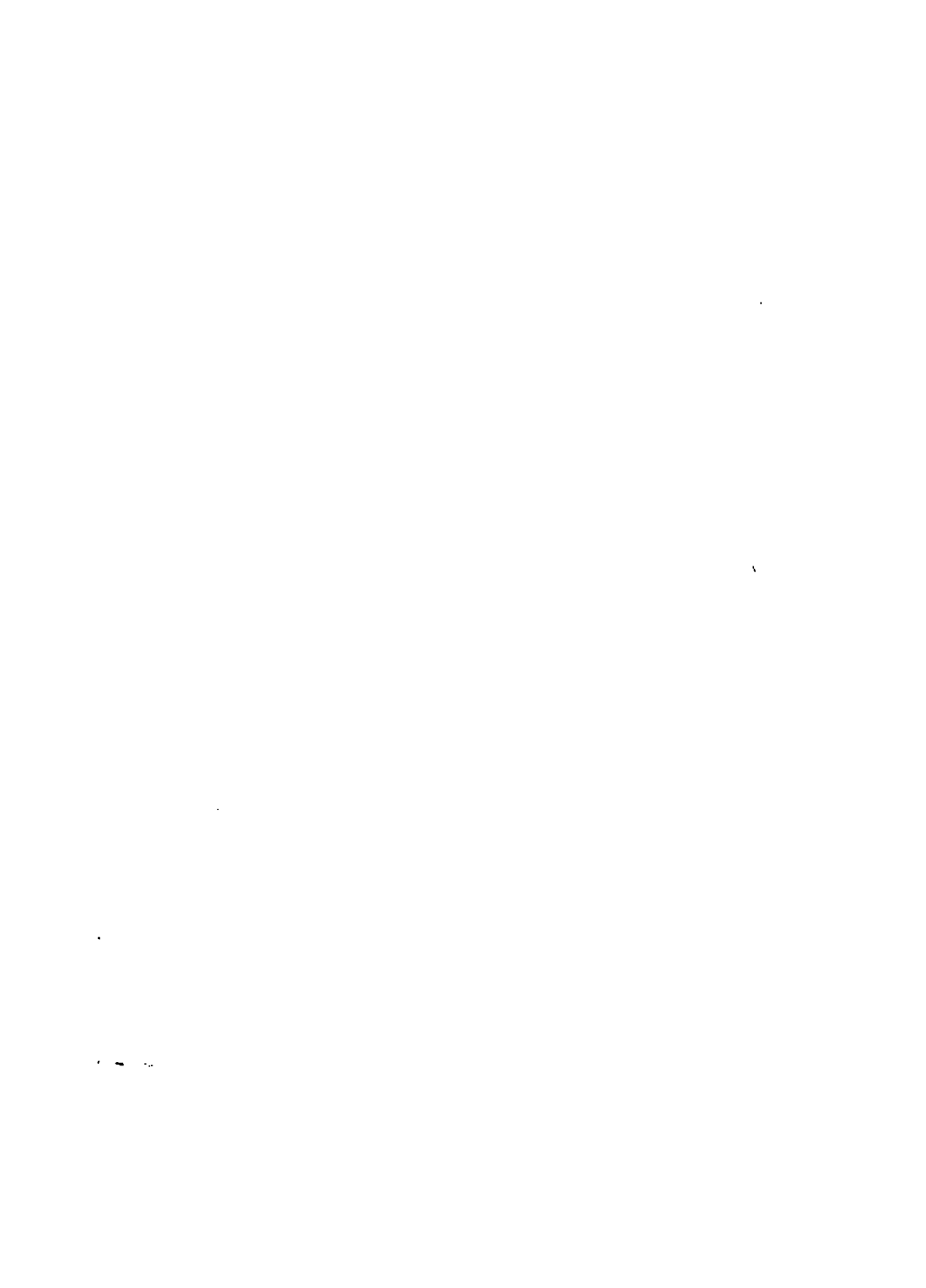
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

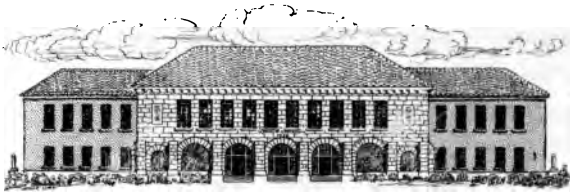
Bello gallico libri VII : Caesar's Galli

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 9835





SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK COLLECTION
GIFT OF
THE PUBLISHERS



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

The retail price of this book is \$

Inter-Collegiate Classical Series.

DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH A LIFE OF CAESAR,
GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF
GAUL, HISTORY OF THE MILITARY ART IN
CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES; SPECIAL VOCABULARIES
ON THE INDUCTIVE PLAN; HISTORICAL AND GRAMMATICAL
NOTES, A GENERAL REFERENCE VOCABULARY, AND AN INDEX

BY

C. M. LOWE, Ph. D.

HEIDELBERG UNIVERSITY

AND

J. T. EWING, M. A.

ALMA COLLEGE

THE TEXT OF KRANER.

CHICAGO
SCOTT, FORESMAN & COMPANY
1899

Copyright, 1893,
By C. M. Lowe.



C

PRESS OF
THE HENRY O. SHEPARD CO.,
CHICAGO.

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

PREFACE.

The Commentaries of Caesar are widely used as the best introduction to the study of classical Latin. The purity and simplicity of the diction and the importance of the subject matter justify this usage. This new edition has been prepared to meet the student's needs in attaining a thorough knowledge of the principles of the Latin language and a familiarity with Caesar's writings commensurate with their great historical and literary importance.

The vocabularies, notes, illustrations and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the classroom, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I. chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable, and less familiar, matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books.

To insure correct pronunciation the quantity of all long vowels has been marked throughout the text, notes, and vocabularies. In this we have followed the exceptionally correct and complete marking of Lewis' Elementary Latin Dictionary. This plan has been adopted at the suggestion of Dr. W. G. Hale of Chicago University, who has inaugurated this system, so helpful to Latin students in acquiring a correct pronunciation.

The application of the inductive method to the notes with the system of references adopted has enabled us to furnish a constant review of necessary facts and principles without unduly increasing the size of the book.

The text of Kraner is given without alteration as it seems better to present the exact results of the ablest textual critic of the commentaries, free from the preferences and prejudices which mark certain collated texts.

87027

The special vocabularies, based on the lexicons of Lewis, Harper, and Gepp and Haigh, are made with reference to the derivation and relation of the words defined, to their special use in the text treated, and to their later use by the student. The General Reference vocabulary encourages thoroughness by directing the student to the passage where the word is first found and fully explained. In the preparation of the notes free use has been made of the latest and best English, French, and German authorities. The editions of Brackenbury, Compton, Bond and Walpole, Long, Peskitt, Moberly, Benoist and Dosson, Menge, Rheinhard, Kraner, and Procksch, have given much valuable assistance. The valuable lives of Caesar, by Col. Dodge, Warde Fowler, Froude, Napoleon III; Rustow's *Heerwesen* and *Kriegfuhrung*; and the histories of Duruy, Long, Merivale, Mommsen, etc., have been constantly consulted.

Much credit is due to Mr. H. F. Scott, who has given the advance sheets and proofs his careful revision, and to Mr. E. W. Dresser and his associates of the Wheaton College Press, for the mechanical execution of the work.

Dr. H. W. Johnston of Illinois College, revised the earlier chapters and to him and Dr. Wm. G. Hale, the editors are under obligations for valuable suggestions. Friendly criticism is invited that the book may most completely serve its purpose.

C. M. LOWE.

J. T. EWING.

PUBLISHERS' NOTICE.

The authors finding their time so thoroughly taken up with professional and other literary labors have made an arrangement whereby a thorough revision of their work should be made to rid it of some small mistakes that are likely to appear in the first edition of any book.

This work has been committed to a thorough scholar who has been for many years a successful teacher of preparatory Latin, and a new set of plates throughout has been made. The book is therefore commended to teachers with entire confidence in its accuracy and thoroughness. The attention of teachers is called to the figures or star following the definitions in the page vocabularies. The figures indicate the number of times a word is used in the first four books of the Gallic War, while the star follows all words used five times or more.

August 10th, 1894.

THE PUBLISHERS.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES.

1. Caesar's *De Bello Gallico* is a masterpiece in literature and classic Latin which demands and repays the most earnest study.

2. Learn thoroughly each new word as it occurs in the special vocabularies as it is not repeated and valuable time should not be required to hunt it up again in the general vocabulary. Observe carefully the root meaning of each word and the force of the various words and syllables used in compounding words and you will be able to define many new words for yourself and to add to the definitions given.

3. Familiarize yourself with the system of references employed throughout this book and explained on page 65. Make sure of the principle explained by the reference to the grammars and thereafter only use the reference when in doubt, but do not leave any word until its form and construction are entirely clear.

4. You will best and most really learn the Latin by receiving the thought in the order of the Latin words, just as they stand in the sentence. The meaning of a Latin sentence is not certain until its close. You must therefore suspend your judgment until the sentence is ended. Establish, as far as possible, the meaning of each word as presented. If the word is inflected and several constructions are possible, select the one most likely and then modify this judgment, if required, by the thought as developed in the succeeding words. It will soon become natural to receive the thought of a simple sentence like *pater filium carē amat*, 'the father his son dearly loves,' without translating into English at all. The more complex and difficult sentences will yield to the same method and the language will become to you replete with the interest felt by the Romans themselves, when received in its own natural and significant order. You will thus learn to think in Latin which is essential to oral or written Latin composition as well as to a living knowledge of the language.

5. When required to translate, let your translation be in the best English you can command. If you retain the Latin idioms by a so-called 'literal' translation, you make but half a translation and do violence to both tongues. A barbarous, corrupt English style is formed by such 'literal' translations, while this exercise should be most helpful in en-

riching and refining your forms of expression. Thus, in the transfer into English, the frequent use of the participle is to be avoided and a clause may be substituted. Test each ablative absolute and if it denotes time, render by a clause with *when*; or if it denotes cause render by a clause with *since*, and so on. We must, however, vary the 'when' with *after* and the 'since' with *because*, etc. We will translate *militē missō*, 'when he had sent the soldier,' 'after he had sent—,' 'though he sent—,' 'on sending—,' 'because he sent—,' or otherwise, as variety of expression and the connection may require. The Latin sometimes drops words which are required in English or inserts or repeats them contrary to our usage. Thus Caesar says *duo itinera erant, quibus itineribus*, where good English requires the omission of *itineribus* in the translation. The use of the demonstrative and relative pronoun and of the connectives in the Latin differs from the English. In all these cases the comprehensive rule for the translator is, while noting the structure of the Latin, to follow the English idiom. Particular words are also to be rendered by terms appropriate to their connection. *Haec* or *hae res* is not truly translated by the spiritless term, 'these things,' but we will say 'these events, dangers, obstacles, accidents, advantages, means, supplies, plans' as we observe what kind of 'things, matters, or circumstances' is really meant.

6. Note the favorite forms of expression in Caesar and commit some of these to memory. Such memorized passages will be helpful in all your future course.

7. In the preparation of your lesson read aloud the Latin text, receiving the thought according to suggestion 4. You will thus not merely practice the pronunciation but the words will be more vividly fixed in the mind.

8. Employ the words used by Caesar in forming new sentences, either in conversation or in composition. This practice will be found a valuable aid in acquiring the ability to write or speak Latin.

9. Possess at least one of the works on Caesar mentioned in the 'References for Reading' or in the Preface of this book and read it in connection with the particular part of the Commentaries assigned for your study.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
PREFACE	3
SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES .	5
CAESAR AND HIS TIMES	9
CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE	28
GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF GAUL	31
THE MILITARY ART IN CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES	40
REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS	65
MAPS OF GAUL AND FRANCE	
BOOK I. INTRODUCTION, TEXT, VOCABULARIES, NOTES . . .	67
“ II. “ “ “ “ . . .	189
“ III. “ “ “ “ “ . . .	251
“ IV. “ “ “ “ “ . . .	294
“ V. “ “ “ “ “ . . .	341
“ VI. “ “ “ “ “ . . .	390
“ VII. “ “ “ “ “ . . .	428
INDEX TO NOTES AND INTRODUCTION	496
LATIN ENGLISH REFERENCE VOCABULARY	509



CAESAR AND HIS TIMES.

Birth and Family.

3. C. On July 12, 102 B. C., was born Caius Julius Caesar, **1** destined to make for himself "the greatest name in history." The Julian *gēns* had a lofty lineage, and numbered a long line of distinguished sons. The branch to which Caesar belonged had been prominent in the Republic for more than a hundred years. A Caesar had been consul in 157, the uncle of Gaius Julius in 91, and still another of the family in 90. His grandfather and father, however, reached the praetorship only. The prestige of the family was increased by the marriage of Caesar's aunt to the great Marius. Aurelia, the mother of Caesar, belonged to a prominent plebeian family of the Aurelian *gēns*, the Cottas.

Education and Political Training.

The year of Caesar's birth was signalized by the defeat of **2** the Germans by Marius at Aquae Sextiae. The greatest danger that had threatened Rome since Hannibal's invasion was averted, and Marius was the hero of the hour. Then followed years of "storm and stress" in the political world, during which Caesar was living a quiet home life under the careful discipline of his mother, Aurelia. She appears to have been a woman of strong character and to have exerted

- a powerful influence over her son. His academic training, **B.**
- 3** which was under the supervision of M. Antonius Gniphō, a learned Gaul, seems to have been of the conventional sort, and can hardly have been very stimulating or attractive to a mind as original as that of Caesar. He was, indeed, fortunate in having for his tutor a man of intellectual culture and courteous manners, instead of the customary slave who, we are informed by Plutarch, was usually a drunkard or a glutton, and unfit for any other occupation. Daily contact with such a man as Gniphō doubtless did much to develop that love of knowledge which made Caesar a learner all his life.
- 4** The genesis of Caesar's political opinions can easily be traced. Brought up in a household of democratic sympathies, his earliest impressions were doubtless those of the greatness of his uncle Marius, the leader of the democracy. When the civil war broke out, he was already old enough to be familiar with its origin and meaning, and his political opinions crystallized rapidly while his relatives and friends were fleeing before Sulla, the aristocrat. The democratic bias thus given to his views was strengthened by reflection upon the relative titles of the two parties to the support of the Romans of his generation; and the two, bias and reflection, bred in him a sober conviction to which he was ever true. His zeal and promise were soon recognized by
- 5** Marius, who made him *flāmen diālis*, or priest of Jupiter, at the age of fourteen. Soon after the death of his ⁸² father, Caesar broke off an engagement with a wealthy ⁸⁴ heiress of equestrian rank, and deliberately identified himself with the Marian party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, the dictator. It cannot be doubted that he was cognizant of the purposes of his father-in-law as the arbiter of the policy of the popular party.

The Sullan Government.

B. C. In 82, Sulla returned in triumph to Italy. After a ⁶ severe struggle, the popular party was again driven out of power, and the victor, determined to make a revival of it impossible, proscribed its prominent men and so reorganized the government as to render the position of the Senate impregnable. Briefly, this was done by destroying the independent power of the tribunate, and by taking the judges in criminal cases exclusively from the ruling aristocracy. The effect of this legislation was to bind the Roman people hand and foot; and had the nobles been reasonable and at all patriotic, the elaborate defenses erected for them might long have served their purpose. But such was their venality that the effort was a hopeless one from the beginning. Such a thing as disinterested action was not to be expected from a class chiefly interested in keeping the ill-gotten gains which they had made under the wing of the Dictator.

Caesar's career was cut short by the revolution in ⁷ affairs, and he necessarily sank into obscurity for a time. One incident shows the spirit of the youth. Sulla commanded him to divorce his wife Cornelia. He refused, although deprived of his wife's dowry, his own inheritance, and the office of *flāmen*. Finally, he fled from Rome with a price set on his head, and his life was saved only by the entreaties of powerful relatives and of the College of Vestals, who won for him a reluctant pardon from the Dictator, accompanied, however, by a warning "to beware of the youth ₈₁ with the loose girdle." It is probable that Caesar still felt unsafe in Rome, for he sailed soon after into Asia Minor, ₈₀ where he served with credit, winning the civic crown of oak leaves at the storming of Mytilene. The death of Sulla put an ₇₈ end to his voluntary exile, and he at once returned to Rome.

- 8** The Sullan constitution was now to be tested, with its B. originator and supporter no longer at hand. Scarcely had Sulla ceased to breathe, when the consul, Lepidus, began the attack. He sought the support of Caesar, but without success. Lepidus failed, and things went on in the old way. That Caesar, however, had not forgotten his party was proved by his bold prosecution of Cornelius Dolabella, an 77 optimate, for extortion while proconsul of Macedonia. The senatorial court acquitted Dolabella, but Caesar triumphed in that he reaped a harvest of popular applause. The next year he attacked in the same way Caius Antonius, one of 76 Sulla's lieutenants, for extortion in Greece, and with the same result. The popular party was beginning to take heart again, and nothing was more natural than that Caesar, the bold
- 9** young orator, with manifest gifts and the prestige of close relationship to Marius and Cinna, should be looked upon as its leader. Caesar, however, probably felt that it would be prudent to leave, until a riper time, the scenes where he was becoming dangerously prominent. In the same year he sailed for Rhodes to study the art of rhetoric under Apollonius Molo. One of the pirate bands that infested the seas swooped down upon his vessel off the coast of Caria, and carried him as a captive to the little island of Pharmacusa, where he was held for over a month, while a large ransom was being collected for his release. He coolly informed the robbers while held by them that he would return and crucify them all; and he kept his word. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he pursued his studies under Molo for two years.
- 10** When Caesar returned to Rome, eight years of senatorial 74 misrule had prepared the way for a democratic reaction. He at once plunged into the political conflicts of the hour, furthering zealously the movement to restore the tribunes to their former power, and also to reform the senatorial courts.

B. C. He was made military tribune and member of the college of pontiffs in place of his uncle, Aurelius Cotta, who had recently died. In the pursuit of his aims he paid assiduous court to the people and spent money with a lavish hand, supplementing his slender fortune by borrowing enormous sums. He was nearly thirty years of age, with standing and some experience, and was undoubtedly a rising man. But it was not through him and his party that the Sullan constitution was to be overthrown. Help came from an
 70 unexpected quarter in 70. Pompeius and Crassus were the consuls, and were the most powerful men in Rome. Through 11 influences which are not known, they were induced to pull down the defenses of the Senate and give the *populāres* a chance. Whether Caesar was instrumental in bringing about this result or not, it was certainly of the greatest moment to him. All obstacles were removed from his path of political advancement at the moment when he was ready to put his foot upon the lowest round of the official ladder.

The Rising Politician.

69 At the age of thirty-two, Caesar was elected quaestor and went out to Spain, where he served with honor. His wife 12
 67 Cornelia having died, he married Pompeia, cousin of the great Pompeius, and quietly supported the proposal to clothe that general with extraordinary power to put down the pirates that infested the Mediterranean Sea, and to finish
 65 the Mithridatic war. Two years later he was curule aedile along with Bibulus, a wealthy, but obstinate and stupid optimiate. They entertained the populace with magnificent shows, prepared with a lavishness of expenditure such as had never been witnessed before. While the favor of the people was active in his behalf, Caesar took the bold step of restoring to the Capitol the statue of Marius and the trophies

of his victories over the enemies of Rome which Sulla had removed. The nobles were enraged; the people delighted.

B If the story of Suetonius is true, that Caesar induced the tribunes to propose for him an extraordinary command in Egypt, it shows how the precedent established in Pompeius' case was bearing fruit. It is certain that he supported the agrarian law of Servilius Rullus, a democratic tribune, the provisions of which were so important that it became a test of party fealty. Cicero won a victory over Caesar in successfully opposing this law, and by his opposition definitely broke with the popular party and joined the *optimātēs*. In another direction, Cicero, however, was not **6** so easily successful. Caesar brought to trial and convicted one of the agents in the murder of the tribune, Saturninus, which had occurred nearly forty years before, and only the resort by Cicero to an ancient and absurd custom saved him. These bold yet well-considered acts naturally won the hearts of the masses, who soon after showed in a signal way their partiality toward their favorite. The office of *pōntifex m̄aximus* falling vacant, Caesar was elected over the strongest candidates the Senate could put forward. The victory was a signal one both for Caesar personally and for the cause he represented. It revealed the strength of that cause and shook the hitherto firm seat of the nobility.

5 In the fall of this year the plot of Catiline was laid bare **6** by the consul, Cicero, and such of the conspirators as fell into the hands of the government were put to death without trial. Caesar, as well as Crassus, was charged with complicity in the plot, but the proof was lacking, and he was exonerated by the consul himself. It is probably true that these leaders of the *populārēs* knew something about the movement of Catiline, but they gave it no personal support. They simply held aloof, not proposing to help the party in power, so long as the

C. matter remained a political one. Caesar's speech in the Senate opposing the execution of the death penalty, was an appeal to the law against the violence of a frightened oligarchy. He warned his hearers against resorting to an unconstitutional penalty, which would certainly create a dangerous precedent, and after all remedy nothing. He advised life imprisonment for the culprits and confiscation of their property. In this great speech Caesar is seen at his best as the calm and dispassionate advocate of the principles of constitutional liberty for which he and his party had so long fought. The wisdom of his warning to Cicero and his supporters was shown by the issue. **16**

Jan. 1. Caesar was at this time praetor-elect, and his political **17**
 62 movements, from the moment of his induction into office, indicated his purpose to maintain a good understanding with Pompeius, whose return from the East with the laurels of a conqueror was awaited with painful suspense by all parties. Rome expected another Sullan despotism with Pompeius in the principal role. This was the supreme moment in his career when he needed only to put forth his hand to grasp the prize of universal rule. The *populārēs*, though of late his allies, feared him, for he was by nature and training a Sullan. The *optimātēs* feared him but little in view of their former jealous opposition to his ambitious designs. Pompeius, however, dispelled all their fears by dismissing **18**
 his army as soon as he landed on Italian soil. He then descended to the station of a private citizen, with leanings toward Caesar which grew stronger as time went on. Says Mommsen: "If it is a piece of good fortune to gain a crown without trouble, fortune never did more for mortal than it did for Pompeius; but on those who lack courage the gods lavish every favor and every gift in vain."

At the end of his praetorship, Caesar went out to farther

Spain, where he won distinction in military and civil affairs.

- 19** In recognition of his brilliant successes in the field the Senate voted him a triumph, but refused to let him stand for the consulship while absent from Rome, hoping thus to prevent his election. He at once relinquished the triumph, and, hastening to the capital, entered upon an active canvass. His candidacy had the support of both Pompeius and Crassus, and his election was compassed without difficulty, although the Senate succeeded in electing Bibulus, his old enemy, as the other consul.

Caesar's Consulship.

- 20** Caesar had been uniformly successful from a politician's standpoint. Still there is to be noticed a certain reserve and caution in his movements, due probably to the overshadowing influence, first of Sulla, and afterward of Pompeius. With the virtual abdication of the latter, Caesar's path became plainer and his policy bolder. Released from the necessity of self-repression, the qualities of the coming leader began to appear. His first movement showed consummate political sagacity. The most prominent men in the Republic were Caesar himself, Pompeius and Crassus—the able politician, the talented general, and the cautious financier. The popularity of Caesar, the military prestige of Pompeius, and the wealth of Crassus would be invincible if united, and to the
- 21** accomplishment of this end Caesar addressed himself. Pompeius and Crassus were enemies, but each had a grievance against the Senate. Caesar succeeded in reconciling them and forming with them a political combination of vast power, which he made still stronger by giving his daughter Julia in marriage to Pompeius. The "First Triumvirate" was not a conspiracy against the constitution but a skilful attempt to forestall the opposition of the

⁵⁹ C. Senate. Thus fortified, Caesar entered upon his office. Always self-controlled, he began with great moderation. He held out the olive branch to the Senate, but it was rejected with scorn, and the great Council, hoping to block legislation, practically refused to perform its functions in the state. A weak man would have yielded, but Caesar simply ignored **22** the Senate and carried his propositions to the popular assembly, where they were enacted without difficulty. Bibulus struggled in vain against the superior address of Caesar, and finally retired from the contest. The democratic consul had no further opposition, and rapidly pushed through a large amount of legislation. Pompeius' arrangements in the East were ratified, and his veterans provided for. Crassus and the monied class were gratified by the reduction of certain tax contracts in Asia. In addition to **23** this personal legislation, many laws were passed which looked towards much-needed reforms. The *Leges Juliae* and other legislative enactments of this complexion show the strong common sense of Caesar, his love of order, and his broad political views. But all this was sure to be destroyed if the Senate returned to power; so the efforts of the consul during the latter part of his term of office were directed toward the perpetuation of his influence. The people were induced to offer him the united command of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years. The humbled Senate, at Pompeius' suggestion, added the **24** province in Transalpine Gaul with an army and the power to take such measures as should be needed for the defence of the Republic against attacks in that quarter. This extraordinary commission gave Caesar a power in the West similar in nature and extent to that of Pompeius in the East; but the circumstances under which they undertook their commissions were widely different. Pompeius had the

practically unanimous support of all classes; Caesar had that of a powerful political combination, but the intense hatred of the Senate, which never forgot an injury, stood ready to destroy him if the chance ever came.

Caesar's Personality.

- 25** The recipient of this remarkable proof of popular favor was just turned forty-four and in the prime of life. From Suetonius and the numerous extant busts and coins, we learn that he was tall and spare in figure, with dark, keen eyes, a high forehead, a fair complexion, a mouth large but well-formed, and lips firmly set together. His hair was scanty, and he wore no beard. His expression was alert and thoughtful. His naturally weak constitution had been made strong by devotion to athletic sports. He was a skillful horseman and swordsman and an excellent swimmer. His tastes were simple, though he had an inbred fondness for elegance, and was particular about the care of his person.
- 26** His firm self-control, courteous bearing, gentleness and clemency are mentioned by all the authorities. The moral standard of Roman society was very low, and he had doubtless sounded the depths of fashionable dissipation. In this respect he was no worse than his contemporaries; but in generosity, humaneness and freedom from animosity, he was vastly superior to them. He was a constant friend and had the power to inspire the most enthusiastic personal devotion.

The Gallic War.

- 27** Caesar began his career in Gaul in 58, and for eight years was incessantly engaged in war and conquest. The following summary of his campaigns, adapted from Dinter's *Vita Caesaris*, illustrates his extraordinary military genius.

B. C. and marvellous activity: In the first year he defeated the
 58 Helvetii in two battles, and drove the German king, Ario-
 57 vistus, out of Gaul. The next summer was devoted to the 28
 subjugation of the Belgae, which was followed by a winter
 56 campaign against the Alpine tribes. In the spring of the
 next year, Caesar met Pompeius and Crassus at Lucca in
 Cisalpine Gaul, and arranged with them for an extension of
 his command for another period of five years, they to have
 in return his support for the consulship in 55, and in
 the following year proconsular commands similar to his.
 The Veneti, Aquitani and the coast tribes from Brittany to
 the mouth of the Rhine were subdued in a single campaign.
 55 In the next campaign he measured strength a second time
 with the Germans, defeated them, and crossed the Rhine.
 Late in the fall he made an experimental trip to Britain, and 29
 ravaged the territory of the Morini and Menapii on his
 54 return. After subduing the Treviri and Aedui the next
 spring, he invaded Britain with only moderate success.
 A conspiracy of the Eburones and other tribes of northern
 Gaul was crushed during the fall and winter with the loss of
 53 a legion and a half under Sabinus. The next summer he
 was employed in punishing the tribes engaged in the revolt
 52 of the previous year. In desperation the Gauls revolted
 once more under Vercingetorix. After a severe struggle the 30
 last hope of Gallic independence was destroyed by the capture
 51 of Alesia. One year more sufficed to complete the conquest
 and reorganize the country as a Roman province. Caesar
 then passed over into Cisalpine Gaul, intending to remain
 there until the termination of his proconsulship on March
 1, 49.

Caesar's Work in Gaul.

It is not necessary to ascribe to Caesar the remote
 intention of making himself master of Rome in order to

31 account for his actions in Gaul. The glory to be obtained by adding such a magnificent region to the territory of the Republic was a sufficient incentive. The threatened invasion of the Helvetii furnished him with the coveted opportunity, and the tyranny of Ariovistus rendered inevitable the appeal to him for aid by the Gauls.

Having determined on conquest, he never hesitated about the means. His conduct in many particulars excites our abhorrence, but it is only just to remember that it was strictly in accordance with Roman ideas. The lack of political unity in Gaul gave him an advantage, which he used with great tact and skill. This was offset, however, by the fact that the tribes were so isolated as to make the work of conquest tedious and incomplete. He was from the first **32** independent of the home government. He levied troops, concluded treaties, laid tribute, all on his own responsibility. He was led to do thus by the necessities of the situation and by the conviction that nothing could safely be referred to the hostile Senate. Caesar felt equal to his enormous task, and trusted to the splendid success of his achievements in Gaul to justify him in the eyes of the Roman people. And he was not mistaken. Repeated thanksgivings were decreed on account of his victories. He steadily **33** rose in public estimation as the evidences of his matchless abilities as a conqueror multiplied. The camp, as well as the forum, rang with his praises. Those who knew him best were the most enthusiastic. His legions adored him and were devoted to his personal fortunes. Caesar's work in Gaul was thoroughly done, and the results were permanent. The Gauls themselves were the gainers, and in this fact lies Caesar's justification.

Quarrel with the Senate.

c. During these years of campaigning, Caesar had kept himself advised of the drift of public opinion through his agents in Rome. The winters he spent in Cisalpine Gaul, ostensibly engaged in the discharge of the civil duties of his office, but neglecting no opportunity to strengthen himself at home against the machinations of his enemies. Their hatred of him had grown with his success, which threatened to eclipse their supremacy in political affairs, and they were impatiently awaiting the moment when the laying aside of his proconsular power would leave him defenseless. The only pledge of political stability was the friendship between Caesar and Pompeius. But the relations between the two had changed. The successes of Caesar had no doubt excited Pompeius' latent jealousy. The death of Julia in 54 had severed a strong personal tie, and the death of Crassus the next year had dissolved the coalition. These events made Pompeius feel free to become the centre of senatorial intrigue. He was made sole consul to restore public order, and was practically dictator of Rome during this year. Indebted to the Senate for this honor, he was naturally drawn into closer relations with those determined to compass the downfall of Caesar, and finally united with them.

Two things were essential to Caesar's safety, first, that he retain his proconsular command until after the election of consuls in the summer of 49; second, that he be permitted to sue for the consulship without going to Rome. Both of these safeguards had been accorded him by law with the approval of Pompeius. But now Pompeius and the Senate unfairly abrogated these laws, leaving Caesar without defense. With great moderation, Caesar offered to give up his command if Pompeius would do the same, and the Senate

in a lucid interval approved this by vote. Shortly after, however, it voted that Caesar should be recalled and Pompeius be allowed at the same time to retain his powers. Caesar, determined to put his enemies in the wrong, was studiously fair in his proposals. On January 1, a letter
37 from him was read to the Senate, in which he offered to give up the Transalpine province and eight legions, provided the Senate would allow him to retain Cisalpine Gaul with two legions or Illyricum with one until after he had been elected consul. The Senate, urged to decisive action by Pompeius, would listen to no compromise, and passed a decree which required Caesar to surrender his command by a certain date under penalty of being declared a public enemy. This was followed a few days later by a virtual declaration of war, the levying of troops and the appointment of Pompeius as general. These decisive
38 measures were intended to force Caesar to submit, with a certainty before him of impeachment and judicial murder. The only alternative was to fight. He promptly crossed the Rubicon, which formed part of the boundary between his province and Italy, and the Civil War began.

Conquest of Rome.

In the course of a few months Pompeius was driven out of Italy into Greece, the whole peninsula was reduced and
39 the administration of home affairs was temporarily reorganized. Caesar then went in search of his enemies. He proceeded to Spain, wrested it from Pompeius' officers in forty days, completed the reduction of Massilia on his return march, and after spending only eleven days in Rome followed his rival across the Adriatic. The passage was attended with much danger, on account of the presence of Pompeius' powerful fleet; nevertheless Caesar essayed

C. it, trusting to the very audacity of his act for its success. Landing in safety, he advanced toward Pompeius' strongly fortified position at Dyrrhachium (Durazzo). After suffering a severe reverse in attempting to hem in Pompeius, Caesar retreated into Thessaly, whither he was leisurely followed by the enemy. After much manœuvering the two rivals faced each other at Pharsalia, Pompeius with fifty thousand men besides foreign allies, Caesar with not more than thirty thousand. A hard fought battle ensued, and Caesar was victorious. The enemy's camp was stormed, and the remnant of the army captured. Pompeius, however, succeeded in escaping from the field, and reaching the coast, crossed the Aegean into Asia Minor and finally fled to Egypt, where he was slain by order of King Ptolemy. Caesar followed in haste, and on landing he was presented with the head of his unfortunate rival. He turned away from the ghastly sight with horror.

The state of Egyptian affairs at this juncture called for his interference as the representative of Rome. After restoring order in a campaign known as the Alexandrian War, he repaired to Rome by way of Asia Minor. At the capital the herculean task of reorganizing the government awaited him; but from this he was soon called away to Africa, where Cato still held out with an army of malcontents from all quarters. Over this force Caesar gained a complete victory at Thapsus. Cato shut himself up in Utica, and preferred a self-inflicted death to the pardon which the victor freely offered.

In the belief that opposition was crushed, Caesar entered upon the work of reform. The Senate was purified; social and political vices were made the subjects of legal enactments; the calendar was reformed, and a general amnesty was proclaimed. In the midst of these beneficent labors

Caesar was called to Spain, because of the revolt under Labienus, his recreant lieutenant, and the two sons of Pompeius, Sextus and Gnaeus. At Munda he won a great victory and crushed the last hope of the opposition.

Caesar was now the undisputed master of Rome. He **43** projected a vast scheme of social, political and financial reform, the details of which he began to work out with prodigious energy. His enemies were freely forgiven and invited to unite with him in securing the stability of the new order of things. Respect for law returned, the people were satisfied with their new ruler, and the murmurs of dissent were lost in the chorus of acclaim. Caesar's enemies, however, were incapable of change. His generosity touched no responsive chord in their hearts, and immunity from punishment encouraged them in concerting measures against his life, to which his own fearlessness made him fall an easy victim. Accordingly, on the Ides of March, he was slain in the Senate House by a band of conspirators, among whom were some of his most trusted associates.

Thus by a foolish and criminal act the one man whose qualities fitted him for the task of building up a new **44** Rome was removed from the scene. But enough had been done to make it certain that he who had proved himself great in the field would have been equally great in the chair of state. The same perfection of endowment that made him a successful general made him a great statesman. The same firm grasp of principles and the same power of adapting means to ends were joined to a daring conception of the magnificent possibilities of a new Rome—such as were realized under the Empire. He clearly saw that the old form of government had outlived its usefulness and had become an instrument of injustice in the hands of an unprincipled aristocracy. Rome no longer had anything in

common with her glorious past. Patriotism was dead; faction was rife. The rule of the people was a fiction. In putting an end to this intolerable state of things, Caesar performed an unpleasant but necessary service, for which he received the thanks of all men of discernment and right feeling. With consummate ability he raised on that old foundation a new structure, whose utility and permanence showed it to be the work of a master of statecraft. **45**

The Writings of Caesar.

A place among the "Immortals" has by common consent been assigned to Caesar, the author and orator. His extant writings are the "Commentaries" upon the Gallic War in seven books, and upon the Civil War in three books. The works that have not come down to us comprised poems, a treatise on grammar, a digest of the auspices, works on divination and astronomy, letters and speeches. **46**

The history of the Gallic War was written to influence public opinion at the critical moment in Caesar's career, when rupture with the Senate was imminent. He wrote in haste, depending upon his memory, refreshed by the perusal of the files of military despatches and letters, and with little opportunity for revision; yet the "Commentaries" stands first among Latin historical works both in style and authority. **47** Though written to place his acts in the best light, they are candid in spirit and moderate in language. There is a remarkable absence of self-consciousness on the author's part. On the whole he gives little occasion for the suspicion that facts have been suppressed or given a false coloring. As **48** a record of his work they are invaluable. Their presentation of the details of battles and sieges, of military tactics and manœuvres, is admirably clear and concise. The causes of the war and the justification of Caesar's conduct are presented

- calmly and forcibly. The scientific value of his inquiries into the political and social characteristics of the peoples with whom he came in contact can hardly be overestimated. They remain to-day our chief authority in these particulars. With regard to the literary merits of his performance the opinion is universally favorable. Its style is clear, simple and unornamented, with the "elegance of an undraped statue." Its terseness presents a difficulty in reading, which, however, is relieved by the lucid arrangement of the matter. In its precision and propriety of diction it exhibits the exquisite literary taste of the author and his perfect command of all the resources of the Latin tongue.
- 49
- 50 The eighth book of the "Commentaries" was written by Aulus Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers and a personal friend. It is in the main a well written account of the events of the last two years of the conquest of Gaul, somewhat lacking in force and wanting the charm of its professed model, the earlier books of the same history.

Caesar's Military Methods.

- 51 The "Commentaries" present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

The "Commentaries" reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. He united with swiftness in execution a deliberation in planning that provided for every contingency. He gave careful heed to the commissariat. He provided depots of supplies, made requisitions upon subject or allied tribes, or foraged on the enemy. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He thus made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. He kept himself informed of the enemy's movements and was quick to take advantage of his mistakes. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He preferred to carry on war in the summer, and often cautioned his soldiers against unnecessary exposure of their lives in battle. Their devotion to him was unbounded, and they endured unexampled hardships without a murmur. Indeed, his ascendancy over their minds was one of the secrets of his success. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. In matters of military discipline he was no martinet, but looked leniently upon occasional infractions of order, provided they did not affect the morale of the army. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. Often he retrieved the day by his personal exertions. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

B. C.	Aet. Caes.	
102		Birth of Caesar, July 12. C. Marius defeats the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae.
101	1	Defeat of the Cimbri at Vercellae by Marius.
100	2	Death of Saturninus and Glaucia. Fall of Marius.
91	11	Agitation among the Italians for the franchise. Assassination of Livius Drusus.
90	12	Social War.
88	14	Marius appoints Caesar <i>flāmen diālis</i> . Civil War between Marius and Sulla.
87	15	Caesar assumes the <i>toga virilis</i> . Marius returns to Rome. The Sullans proscribed.
86	16	Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.
84	18	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator. Sulla ends the war with Mithridates.
83	19	Civil War. Sulla is victorious.
82	20	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.
80	22	Caesar wins the <i>corōna cīvica</i> at Mytilene.
78	24	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.
77	25	Caesar prosecutes Dolabella. Pompeius is sent to Spain against Sertorius.
76	26	Caesar prosecutes Antonius. He sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.
74	28	Caesar returns to Rome. He is elected military tribune and <i>pōntifex</i> .
73	29	The Servile War.
71	31	Spartacus defeated by Crassus. Pompeius ends the war in Spain.
70	32	Consulshp of Pompeius and Crassus The Sullan constitution overthrown.
69	33	Caesar is elected <i>quaestor</i> . Cicero is <i>curūlis aedīlis</i> .
67	35	Caesar marries Pompeia. He supports the law giving Pompeius the command of the war against the pirates.

66	36	Caesar supports the law transferring the command in the Mithridatic war from Lucullus to Pompeius. Cicero is <i>praetor</i> .
65	37	Caesar is <i>curūlis aedilis</i> . Pompeius defeats Tigranes.
63	39	Caesar is elected <i>praetor</i> and <i>pōntifex māximus</i> . Cicero is consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed. C. Octavius born.
62	40	Caesar is <i>praetor</i> . He divorces Pompeia. Pompeius returns from the East.
61	41	Caesar is <i>prōpraetor</i> in Farther Spain.
60	42	Caesar is elected Consul. "First Triumvirate."
59	43	Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.
58	44	Caesar becomes <i>prōcōnsul</i> of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.
57	45	Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.
56	46	Caesar's campaign in Brittany. The conference at Lucca.
55	47	Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompeius and Crassus are joint consuls for the second time.
54	48	Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.
53	49	The Northwestern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain by the Parthians.
52	50	General revolt of the Gauls under Vercingetorix. Capture of Alesia. Alienation of Pompeius.
51	51	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.
50	52	The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.
49	53	Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.
48	54	Caesar defeats Pompeius at Pharsalus. Pompeius is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."
47	55	Caesar is made Dictator for the third time. He reorganizes the government.
46	56	The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus. Suicide of Cato.
45	57	The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.
44	58	Caesar Dictator for life. Slain in the Senate House, March 15th.

GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF GAUL.

The home of the Celts had at first natural boundaries: on the south the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on the east the Alps and the Rhine, on the north the Rhine and the English Channel, and on the west the ocean. This vast tract forms an inclined plane extending from the summit of the Alps to the Atlantic and spreading out in its descent in the shape of a fan, so that while its eastern front has an extent of two and a half degrees of longitude, its western front extends through six degrees. It is divided by the Cevennes Mountains (*Mōns Cebenna*) into two parts, the northwestern part having an undulating or flat surface, arable or marsh lands, and navigable rivers; the southeastern part containing lofty mountains, swift streams, deep lakes, and grazing lands. The united chains of the Cevennes and the Vosges (*Vosagus*) form the backbone of the land, having a considerable altitude throughout most of their extent, but permitting intercommunication at numerous points. Their eastern slopes are steep, and supply only small streams to the Rhône and Saône, but the long western slopes give rise to large rivers which flow to the north and west. The valleys are of two kinds—interior, such as those of the Seine and Loire, originating in the Cevennes and Vosges; and exterior, which have their sources outside of the limits of the country, such as those of the Garonne, Rhine and Rhône. The interior valleys are open and communication among them is easy.

To this physical fact was largely due the substantial unity in race-feeling that characterized the Gauls. The currents of internal commerce then, as now, followed the courses of the large streams of the interior, while foreign trade found its way into the land along the Garonne, Rhône and Rhine, and across the Channel. The northern and southern sections of the country presented the same contrast in climate as at present, but the mean temperature was lower on account of the vast forests that covered the face of the country. The soil was everywhere well adapted to the growth of all kinds of farm products. Mines of gold, silver, lead and copper were extensively worked throughout the centre and south. **58**

In this vast region, set apart by natural barriers to be the home of a single race, the van of the great Celtic host halted about 609 B. C. Other divisions seem to have pressed on into the Spanish peninsula and later still into the valley of the Po which they conquered about 587 B. C. Their long and bloody struggles with the Romans culminated in the capture and destruction of the city of Rome in 390 B. C. From that day of disaster, the Romans regarded the Gauls of the Po as their most inveterate and formidable foes. Only after repeated efforts were they able, in the third century before Christ, to extend the frontiers of the Republic to the Alps, and in the second century to organize the whole region from the Apennines to the Alps as a Roman province. **59** **60**

The Gauls beyond the Alps now attracted the attention of Rome, who was anxious to secure her new acquisitions from attack and to keep up her communications by land with the Spanish provinces. The valleys of the Saône and Rhône and the passes of the maritime Alps furnished a natural thoroughfare between the two Gauls, and along this the northern invaders were wont to advance. In order to get control of this route Rome took advantage of various pretexts to push **61**

- her conquests over the southern Alps and down their western slopes into the valley of the Rhône. About the year 120 B. C. she was in full possession of the tract between the Rhône, the Alps, and the dominions of the Greek city
- 62** Massilia, to which she was bound by close ties of interest and friendship. Ere long she had pushed her conquests across the Rhône as far as the Cevennes and the Pyrenees. The whole region thus carved out of Gallic territory was called *Prōvincia*, "the Province," and the usual means were made use of to secure it against attack. Military colonies were founded at Narbo and Tolosa and the country was dotted with fortresses connected by military roads. The strength of this bulwark against invasion was soon severely
- 63** tried by the hordes of Cimbri and Teutones, distant kindred of the Celts from the shores of the Baltic. Advancing south at the suggestion of the northern Celts, they swept away army after army until the Province lay helpless before them and Italy was without a defender. After a respite of two years
- 64** Italy was simultaneously attacked from the east and the west. The Teutones were exterminated at Aquae Sextiae, in the Province, by the great Marius, who then turned upon the Cimbri, who had penetrated into the valley of the Po, and inflicted upon them a crushing defeat at Vercellae.
- 65** The Gauls of the Province had remained faithful to Rome in spite of the temptation to join the invaders. Their reward was ingratitude and ill-treatment, which they resented and resisted. The Province became the refuge and resort of malcontents and exiles from Italy. The remnants of the Marian party found a welcome here after the Social War.
- 66** Sertorius maintained his revolt in Spain largely through Gallic support. The Province was a favorite stage for the exhibition of Roman rapacity and extortion. The wretched people were not only crushed by the burdens of taxation, but

also corrupted by a civilization which touched them only to scorch and blast.

Beyond the Cevennes, however, the native Celt still roamed in his original freedom. This region was divided into three parts, inhabited by the Belgae and Celtæ, or Galli, who were Celts and the Aquitani, who were Iberians. The Matrona and Sequana separated the Belgae from the Celtæ and the Garumna separated the Celtæ from the Aquitani. 67

Each of these grand divisions was composed of politically independent states, of which there were, in Caesar's time, twenty-seven in Belgica, forty-three in Celtica, and twelve in Aquitania. Leagues for defensive and offensive purposes were common in Gaul. They were seldom permanent, but fell to pieces when the cause that called them into existence had ceased to be operative. Factions existed in every state and the whole country was divided into two great parties which contended with the utmost bitterness. The centralization of political power was thus rendered impossible, and Gaul, instead of becoming a nation, remained a mere aggregation of states, unable to present a united front to any danger. 68

In the eyes of the Roman, the Belgae and Galli formed one people, so much alike were they in manners and customs. They are described as taller than the Romans, with fierce blue eyes and light hair which they wore long. They shaved their beards, but wore long sweeping mustaches. Courage and a passionate fondness for war were joined in them with a quarrelsome disposition which gave frequent occasion for strife. They were generous, personally devoted to their chiefs and families, and capable of great self-sacrifice. They were intelligent and readily adopted the manners and customs of other peoples. 69

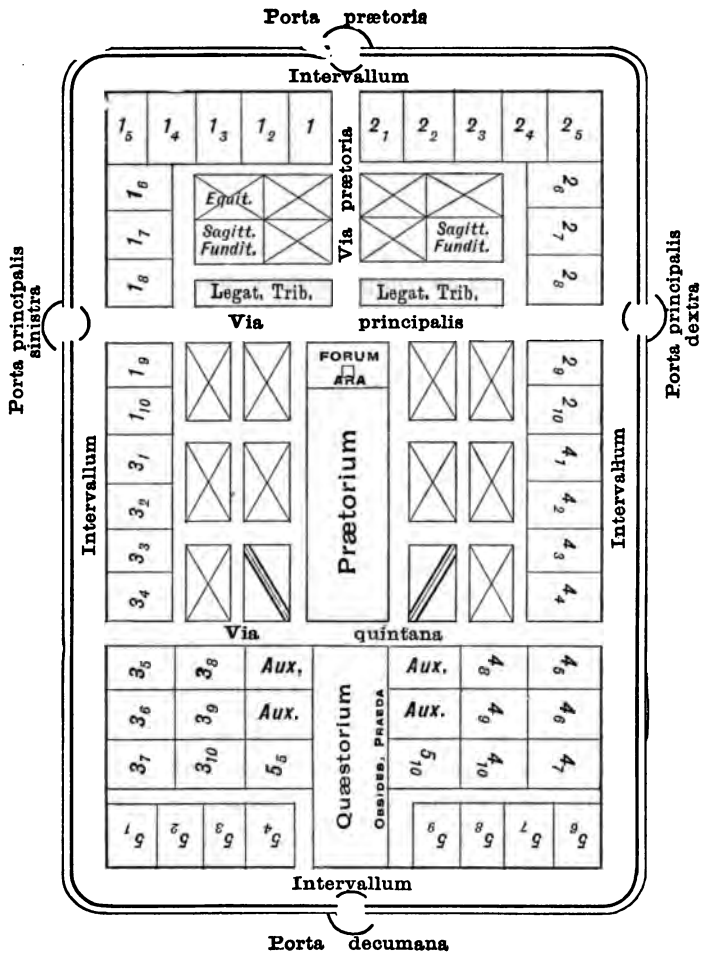
70

71

- 72** The desire for national unity, which the peculiar political constitution of the Gauls rendered ineffectual, was fostered by their form of religion. The Druids formed a close theological corporation with a hierarchy and a ritual calculated to impress a barbarous people with awe. The members
- 73** of the order discarded all tribal allegiances and were a unit on all questions affecting the interests of the order. They were at once the priests and the teachers of the whole people. Certain exemptions from taxation and military
- 74** service gave them standing as a privileged class. Their system included belief in a ruling Providence, the transmigration of souls, and the mediation of the priesthood between earth and heaven. They were addicted to human sacrifice, which they practised with mysterious rites in the
- 75** depths of the forests at dead of night. They made use of astrology and magic. Their unbounded influence over the people was exercised in secular as well as religious matters and tended to unite the masses by a common religious feeling.
- 76** The nobles were the other privileged class in Gaul, sustaining a sort of feudal relation to the lower orders. The masses of the people were little better than slaves, being bound by obligations of personal service to their lords. The operation of the law of debt, which delivered the insolvent debtor into the power of his creditor, tended to the further degradation of the lower classes.
- 77** Such were the main institutional features of Gaul previous to the establishment of Roman power in the Rhône valley. With the introduction of foreign trade a gradual change took place. The Gauls grew in wealth, settled in villages and cities, and adopted habits of comparative luxury. The
- 78** Druids declined in power, while their rivals, the nobles, waxed more influential, and between the two orders in every

state a bitter strife was waged, which weakened both religious zeal and patriotic spirit.

At length the nominal leadership of the nation fell into the hands of the Aedui, a powerful tribe of central Gaul, with whom Rome, in pursuance of her usual policy, thereupon concluded an alliance. The patriotic element, not relishing this, flocked to the standard of the Sequani, who had taken the place of the Arverni as competitors of the Aedui. The Sequani called in Ariovistus, a German chief, to counterbalance the influence of Rome. The Aedui were conquered and compelled to make a humiliating peace with the German chief, who thereupon settled his victorious bands on Gallic soil. Rome, appealed to by the Aedui, not only gave them no aid, but even recognized the validity of Ariovistus' course by concluding an alliance with him. Thus encouraged, the Germans became more aggressive and treated the Gauls as a conquered people. Gaul bid fair to become a German dependency, when Caesar obtained the command, and more alive than the supine senate to the real interests of Rome, determined to contest the claims of Ariovistus. In his "Commentaries" on the Gallic War he gives a minute account of the struggle thus inaugurated for the possession of Gaul—a struggle which added a magnificent region to the domains of Rome and gave its conqueror a foremost place among the military leaders in the world's history.



- 1. First Legion.
- 2. Second Cohort.

This camp is for five legions with cavalry and auxiliary troops.

PLAN OF ROMAN CAMP.
According to Rüstow,

MILITARY ART IN CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES.

I. ROMAN.

Military Service. Originally, service in the army was a privilege of wealth, not a common duty of all citizens. The soldier served without pay and met all his expenses, so he was necessarily a man of means. The poor were exempt from service, and when called out their equipment was provided by the state. Marius was the first to break through the barriers of this constitutional provision by enlisting those who were not taxed (*capite cēnsī*). While the census list of *iūniōrēs* (those from seventeen to forty-six years of age) was still taken as the basis for military levies, it became more and more common for the well-to-do to avoid service by the payment of a certain sum of money. Caesar had no great respect for the traditional classes of Servius. Suetonius says that he laid stress, not upon custom nor the possession of an income, but upon valor alone. **82**

A levy (*dēlēctus*) of persons for military service was made as the necessity for troops arose. Its size depended upon the circumstances. It was proclaimed in the name of the state or of the general by officers called *conquīsītōrēs*. At first the levy was confined to Rome; but, when citizenship was extended to the Italians after the Social War (90 B. C.), it became lawful to raise troops in any designated part of the peninsula. Caesar obtained most of his recruits in Cisalpine **84**

- Gaul. The physical requirements of a recruit were quiet
- 85** eyes, a broad chest, muscular shoulders, strong arms, long fingers, a slender body, slim legs, with sinewy calves and feet. The Roman soldier was rather undersized, strong and active, hardy and enduring. The recruit took a solemn oath (*sacrāmentum*) which bound him to service for a period of from sixteen to twenty years.
- 86** **The Legion.** The legion (*legiō*) was the nucleus of the army and was composed of Roman citizens of Italy, the colonies and the provinces. The number of troops in the legion varied greatly, and the rule at any period is hard to fix; probably at this time its normal strength was about five thousand men. Its effective strength was always much less, and varied according to the length of service and the severity of its losses. We are told of a legion that contained less than
- 87** a thousand men. Probably the average number was 3,600. It was divided into ten cohorts (*cohortēs*), each cohort into three maniples (*manipulī*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae, ordinēs*). The tactical unit of the legion was the cohort and all maneuvers were by cohorts. The three maniples stood side by side, ten ranks deep, the front five ranks forming the first century, and the rear five
- 88** ranks the second. The size of the cohort formed in close order was one hundred and fifty feet front by fifty feet in depth; in open order, three hundred feet front by fifty feet in depth. The legions when formed received numbers by which they were known as long as they existed. New levies thus led to the formation of new legions, the old legion retaining their membership unchanged except by the casualties of the service.
- 89** The officers of the legion were the subalterns (*centuriōnēs*) and general officers (*tribūnī militum*). There were six of the latter, appointed by the general from the equestrian

class, often for political or family reasons rather than for military efficiency. Being young as a rule, they were not much valued by Caesar, who confined them to the comparatively simple matters of administrative detail, such as the oversight of camp discipline, the inspection of out-posts and sentinels, the distribution of the password, etc. They served by twos in turn for a period of two months, the two alternating daily. The real officers of the legion were the centurions, sixty to each legion, who, unlike the tribunes, rose from the ranks through appointment by the tribunes or commander; their duties lay between those of a captain and sergeant; and they all served on foot. Their helmets were crowned by crests (*cristae*) and they carried a stick (*vitis*) as a symbol of authority. The two centurions of a manipule were designated as *prior* and *posterior*, with a slight difference in rank, and each had a sub-centurion. There was a regular gradation in rank from the last centurion of the tenth cohort to the first centurion of the first cohort; this last-named officer (*pr̄mip̄ilus*) had charge of the standard, and was a member of the council of war. The height of a centurion's ambition was to become a *pr̄mip̄ilus*, and as merit was the test, he had a sufficient stimulus to do his whole duty. He must be a man of steady courage, good judgment, and always at his post. The centurions of Caesar's army are often mentioned by him for their efficiency and valor. Forty-six were killed at Gergovia (*Bellum Gallicum*, VII. 51), and thirty at Pharsalia (*Bellum C̄iv̄ile*, III. 99).

The general's staff consisted of the lieutenants (*l̄ḡāl̄i*) and quartermaster (*quaestor*). The lieutenants, or military aids of the general, were elected by the Senate on his nomination, and belonged to the senatorial rank. Usually there were three; Caesar regularly had ten, and mentions eighteen different persons who served in this capacity in

95 Gaul. The more important duties of the tribune were by him given to them. They were not usually assigned to permanent commands, but took such as were given them and in battle were put in charge of the legions. The *légātus* undertook no independent operations; hence the burden of his success or failure rested upon the shoulder of his general. The *quaestor* went with the proconsul to his province to take charge of receipts and expenditures. In addition to his usual duties, Caesar often gave him command of a single legion or a whole corps.

96 The whole army was under the command of a general (*dux bellī*) having the *imperium* or military command, with the power of life or death over his soldiers. After a victory he was saluted as *imperātor* by the army. As provincial governor he was judge as well as general. His power was practically absolute. The outward marks of his dignity were the cloak edged with broad bands of purple (*palūdāmentum*), the *toga praetexta*, the ivory sceptre (*scēptrum*), and the chair of state (*sella curūlis*).

97 The council of war (*concilium*) was composed of the lieutenants, tribunes and centurions of the first rank, and was presided over by the general, or by a lieutenant in his absence.

98 **Veterans.** The *ēvocātī* were veterans who served the full time, but who later re-entered the service voluntarily. They enjoyed the rank and pay of centurions and were exempted from ordinary routine duties. The *veterānī* were soldiers who remained in the army without cessation of service after their legal term had expired. Both these classes of soldiers were highly esteemed on account of their military efficiency.

99 **Auxiliaries.** The auxiliary forces (*auxilia*) were composed of foreigners and of native provincials, usually armed with their national weapons and commanded by native

officers. The most important were the slingers (*funditōrēs*), bowmen (*sagittārū*), and spearmen (*peditēs levis armātūrae*). The nationalities represented in Caesar's army were the Numidians, Gauls, Cretans, Balearians, Illyrians and Germans.

Cavalry. The cavalry (*equitēs, equitātus*) was drawn from the foreign allies, Gauls, Spaniards, or Germans. There were two kinds: first, the permanent force, consisting of from two hundred to three hundred horsemen attached to each legion and armed in the Roman fashion; second, the contingent furnished by the allies at the opening of a campaign upon the general's requisition. These formed a body separate from the legionaries, and were armed with their national weapons. Each *ala* (wing) was divided into ten *turmae*, each *turma* into three *decuriae*. The *turma* was the tactical unit and probably contained about thirty men. The principal officers (*praefecti equitum*) were Romans, but the subalterns (*decuriōnēs*) were of the same nationality as the troops. The whole cavalry-force was commanded in battle by a *lēgātus*. Caesar usually had about four thousand cavalry.

Non-Combatants. A large number of persons followed the army in various capacities. There were the servants of the officers (*cālōnēs*), the wagoners (*mūliōnēs*), sutlers (*mercātōrēs*), smiths (*fabrī*), etc. The first two classes were slaves; the sutlers accompanied the army to buy booty and sell provisions; the *fabrī* formed the engineering corps, a body probably distinct from the legion, and commanded by an officer (*praefectus fabrūm*) who had charge of the artillery, siege operations, and baggage train.

Equipment. The dress of the soldier consisted of a sleeveless woolen blouse (*tunica*) worn next to the skin and reaching to the knees. Over this was thrown when needed a military cloak (*sagum*), also made of wool and usually

rectangular in shape; this was fastened by a clasp. Coarse boots (*caligae*) covered the feet and ankles.

- 104** The defensive coverings of the body were a coat of mail (*lōrica*), metal helmet (*cassis*), greaves (*ocreae*), and shield (*scūtum*). The coat of mail was made of very thick leather with flexible bands of steel over the shoulders and around the waist. Officers wore the chain or scale cuirass (*lōrica hāmāta*, *squāmāta*), which was often highly ornamented. The helmet was made of iron or bronze, and fitted the head closely, leaving exposed scarcely more than the eyes, nose, and mouth. It was held on by the cheek-piece (*bucculae*), which were fastened together under the chin when on the march, it hung on the soldier's breast. The centurion's helmet had a ridge on the crown, plated with silver and supporting a crest (*crista*) of red or black plumes so placed as to nod at either side. The greaves were of bronze, reaching to the knee, and fastened to the legs by
- 106** straps and buckles. The shield, four-cornered and cylindrical, was two and a half feet wide and four feet long. It was made of boards firmly fastened together, and covered with leather; a rim of metal around the edges added to its strength. In the centre of its face was the boss (*umbō*), a projection of iron intended to cause missiles to glance off. The face was painted with *insignia*, such as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc. The name of the owner and the number of his
- 107** cohort and maniples, possibly also the name of his general, appeared on the inside. For the protection of the metal work of the shield a leather covering was used, which was drawn off before battle.

- The cavalryman was not so heavily armed as the legionary
- 108** A metal helmet (*cassis*), a light buckler (*parma*) of round or oval shape, about three feet across and with a framework of iron, a light cuirass, and possibly greaves, formed his

defensive equipment. The auxiliaries wore the helmet, and carried the buckler; the bowmen, however, necessarily omitted the latter.

The offensive weapons of the legionary were the sword (*gladius*) and the javelin (*pilum*). The blade of the sword **109** was short (two feet long), straight, two-edged, and pointed; hence it could be used both for cutting and stabbing, the latter being its common use. It hung at the right side, because the shield was carried on the left arm; the scabbard (*vāgīna*) was suspended from a sash (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder, or from a belt (*cingulum*), both made of leather. **110** The officers of high rank, who did not have shields, carried the sword at the left side. The javelin was between six and seven feet long, and consisted of the shaft and the iron shank, of about equal weight. The former was round, about four feet long, a little more than one inch thick and **111** pointed with iron at the butt, so as to be thrust into the ground. The latter was slender, round or four-sided, and about two feet long, and ended in a barbed or flat heart-shaped point. The entire weight was about nine pounds. It was exclusively used as a missile weapon. In order to prevent its use by the enemy, the head was made of soft iron, which easily bent on coming in contact with an obstacle such as a shield.

The cavalry fought with the lance (*hasta*), longer and **112** lighter than the *pilum*, and especially adapted for thrusting, though it could be used as a javelin. The sword used by them was longer than the *gladius*. The light-armed troops also wielded the lance or threw darts (*iacula*). The slingers threw stones or slugs (*glandēs*) of lead moulded into the shape of an almond and sometimes inscribed with letters.

Pay. The pay of the legionary soldier in Caesar's army **113** was 225 *dēnārīi* (about \$44) per year; that of the centurion

twice as much. Payment was made every four months, beginning with March 1. The auxiliary troops were paid either by the Roman state or by the allied states furnishing them; in either case their pay was less than that of the Roman soldier. The cost of the food and equipments furnished by the state was deducted. Extra pay was sometimes given as a reward at the end of a successful campaign, and

114 something was realized from the sale of booty. For special bravery the general could bestow gifts (*dōna*), such as chains of gold for neck or breast (*torquēs*), bracelets (*armillae*), medallions (*phalārae*), spears with gold or silver points (*hastae pūrae*), and, most valued of all, crowns (*corōnae*). These crowns were of various kinds, the most coveted being the civic crown (*corōna cīvica*), granted to him who had saved the life of a Roman citizen and slain his adversary. Crowns of myrtle or of laurel were given to successful generals, and, in case of a great victory, an ovation (*ovātiō*), or a triumph (*triumphus*).

115 When his term of service was ended the soldier received his discharge (*missiō honesta*); if rendered unable to serve his full time by sickness or wounds, he was granted an invalid's discharge (*missiō causāria*). For offences against military law he was punished variously, according to the grade of the offence; reprimands, loss of pay and dishonorable discharge were resorted to in ordinary cases, and whipping or death by stoning or decapitation in aggravated ones.

Ration. The ration of each soldier was about two pounds

116 of grain (*frūmentum*), usually wheat, per day; this was issued every twelve or fifteen days, and was carried by the soldier as a part of his kit. The grain was prepared for use by grinding it in handmills (*molae manuālēs*). It was then baked in the form of unleavened dough or boiled as a kind of paste. Whatever else the soldier needed he got by foraging

or trading his grain for other articles of food. The horses **117** were fed on barley and green fodder when it was obtainable. The commissariat was in charge of the *quaestor*, and was carefully attended to; depots of supplies were established at convenient points and requisitions were made upon allied tribes. The Roman system of army support was less elaborate but in many ways more efficient than the modern.

Baggage. The baggage of the army was either light (*sarcinae*) or heavy (*impedimenta*). The light baggage **118** was carried by the soldier himself in the form of a bundle (hence the name *sarcina*), fastened to the end of a forked pole (*furca*) carried on the shoulder. The contents of this bundle were a hatchet, cooking utensils (*vāsa*), rations (*cibāria*), a cloak (*sagum*), and various smaller articles. The weight of the whole kit was between fifty and sixty pounds, and when marching under it the soldier was said to be *impeditus*. Before a battle the baggage was piled up in one **119** place (*sarcinas cōferre*) and guarded, or was left in the camp; the soldier was then said to be *expeditus*. The heavy baggage (tents, hand-mills, artillery, bridge material, etc.) was carried in wagons (*carrī*) or on pack-animals (*iūmenta*), of which there were about six hundred to each legion.

Ensigns. The ensigns (*sīgna*) were the *aquila* for the legion, *sīgnum* for the cohort and maniple, and *vēxillum* for **120** the cavalry and auxiliary foot. The *aquila* was a silver or gold eagle with outstretched wings, placed on top of a staff overlaid with silver; the butt of the staff had an iron point, so as to be thrust into the ground (*aquilās figere*, to halt), and from a cross-piece just below the eagle was often hung a square banner inscribed with the number of the legion. It was placed in the first cohort under the special care of **121** the *prīmipīlus* and was carried by the *aquilifer*, a man of

tried strength and valor. In the camp it was placed in the *praetorium* under a little shelter (*sacellum*), where it was carefully guarded and worshipped as sacred. In time of peace it was deposited in the temple of Saturn, the state treasury (*aerarium*) at Rome.

The *signum* was the ensign of the maniple, that of the first
122 maniple serving for the cohort also; it consisted of the figure of an animal—bear, wolf, minotaur, etc.,—on a staff, to which were attached metallic disks and half-moons with a symbolic meaning, and a banner like to that on the *aquila*, displaying the letter of the maniple, and probably the number of the legion and of the cohort. During an engagement the *signa* were carried by the *signiferi* behind the first line of cohorts.

123 The *vexillum* was a small quadrangular banner attached to a wooden cross-bar at the top of a staff; it was white, red, or purple, according to the division of the troops represented. When portions of a legion were detached on special duty, they had as ensigns *vexilla*. A large red banner, also called *vexillum*, bearing the name of the general, was displayed above his tent as a signal for march or combat.

The sacredness of the standard intensified the feeling of disgrace at its loss, in which all who followed it shared; if
124 due to the cowardice of the standard-bearer, his punishment was death. That the standards had a symbolic meaning is very clear, but that their tactical importance preponderated is shown by the constant use of such expressions as *signa convellere* (to prepare to march), *signa prōmovēre* (to advance in line), *signa inferre* (to attack), *signa convertere* (to change front), *ā signis discēdere* (to flee), *signa referre* (to retreat), *signa cōstituere* (to halt).

125 **Signal Instruments.** The musical instruments have a close relation to the ensigns through the similarity of their use in tactics. The signal for attack or retreat was given by

the *tubicinēs* on the *tuba*, a straight metal tube with a bell-shaped mouth about four feet long; its tone was deep and hoarse. The signal on the *tuba* was taken up and passed along the lines by the *cornicinēs* on the *cornū*, a large trumpet originally made of the horn of an ox, in later times made also of brass. It had the form of an almost complete circle, through which ran a cross-bar that served the double purpose of keeping it in shape and aiding the player to hold it steady. There were probably at least thirty *cornicinēs* to each legion, one being stationed near each *signum*. The cavalry movements were directed by signals on the *lituus*, a trumpet with a tube straight until near the end, then abruptly curved; its tone was shrill. In camp the changing of the watches was signalled on the *būcina*, a curved instrument similar to the *cornū*, but smaller. The *classicum*, which summoned the whole army together to be addressed by the general, was played by the assembled musicians before the general's tent. On the march, signals were given on the *tuba*; but there is no evidence that marching tunes were played to assist in keeping step.

The Camp. The site of the camp was selected with great care by a camping party sent in advance under the command of a tribune and centurions. When possible the camp was pitched on the side of a hill, facing down the slope, with space enough in front for drawing up the army in line of battle, and with fuel and water easily accessible. The usual form of the camp was a square, or rectangle, but, if the nature of the site required, it might be semi-circular or triangular.

When the army reached the site chosen and already staked out by the surveyors (*mēnsōrēs* or *mētātōrēs*), the arms (except the sword) and packs were laid aside, and working parties were formed. Along the outside boundary-line a ditch (*fossa*),

- was dug nine to twelve feet wide at the top and seven to nine feet deep, and the earth from it was thrown inward to
- 131** form a rampart (*agger*). The outer face of the *agger* was steep and was covered with sod from the ditch and with bundles of brush, to keep the earth in place. At the top was often placed a parapet (*lōrīca*) of stakes (*vālli*) set close together. The top was flat and broad enough for the soldiers to stand upon easily; the inner face was sloping, and furnished with steps made of logs, or earth, to give easy access to the top. Entrance to the camp was through
- 132** gates (*portae*) probably forty feet wide. There was at least one in each side,—that in the front, toward the foe, being the *porta praelōria*; the one opposite, the *porta decumāna*; those in the right and left sides the *porta dextra* and *porta sinistra*. These gates were masked by earthworks (*clāviculae*) so placed that the enemy had to turn to the left to reach the gates, thus exposing the right side, unprotected by the shield, to the defenders of the gate.

- 133** Entering at the *porta praelōria*, the observer would see before him a space from one hundred to two hundred feet wide, extending along the wall entirely around the camp; this prevented the enemy's missiles from reaching the tents. Along this space the troops were easily and quickly marched to any point on the *agger* where reinforcements were needed, and part of it was occupied by the wagons of the baggage-train. The space bounded by this broad avenue was divided
- 134** into blocks by streets. The principal of these were the *via praelōria*, fifty feet wide, *via prīncipālis*, one hundred feet wide, and *via quīntāna*, fifty feet wide. For the location of these see plan of Roman camp. The *via prīncipālis* and *via quīntāna* divided the whole camp into three parts; the *praetentūra*, between the front wall and the *via prīncipālis*; the *latera praelōrii*, between the two streets mentioned; and

the *retentūra*, between the *via quīntāna* and the rear wall. The *praetentūra* was bisected by the *via praetōria*. At the junction of the *via praetōria* with the *via principālis*, and extending back to the *via quīntāna*, was an open space called the *praetōrium*; in it were the general's quarters, the altars (*ārae*), the *forum* for the meeting of the soldiers, and the tribunal (*suggestus*) from which the general addressed them. Back of the *praetōrium* was a similar space in the *retentūra*, called the *quaestōrium*, where were kept the hostages, prisoners, booty, etc., in charge of the *quaestor* and his staff. The remaining space was portioned out according to a definite plan among the various divisions of the army and divided by smaller streets. Each cohort occupied a space one hundred and twenty feet wide and one hundred and eighty feet deep, cut into six parts, one for each century. The tents of the two centuries in a maniple were placed back to back in parallel lines. These tents were made of skins (*pellēs*), and held ten men, forming a "mess" (*contubernium*, *contubernālēs*), under the command of an under-officer (*decanus*). **135**

The building of the camp began about noon and was finished in about three or four hours. Then the tents were put up and the evening meal was prepared and eaten. Guard-duty was performed in the day time by outposts (*excubiae*) in front of the gates, consisting of a cohort and a *turma* of horsemen; at night, by sentinels (*vigilēs*) divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), each relief standing for from three to four hours. The watchword (*tessera*) for the night was given by the general to the two tribunes on duty and the praefect of cavalry, who, through the *tesserārī*, communicated it to the soldiers. **136**

The permanent camp (*castra stativa*) was laid out much the same as the daily camp, but was more strongly fortified in all respects. The wall was solidly built and strengthened **137**

by rectangular works (*castella*) placed at convenient intervals. In winter quarters (*castra hiberna*) wooden barracks covered with skins and straw took the place of tents, as a better protection to the occupants.

140 **The March.** At the first signal on the *tuba* the tents were struck and the baggage packed up; at the second, the wagons and pack animals were loaded; at the third, the army began to move. Usually the order of march was in column of cohorts, each legion followed by its baggage train; when in the presence of the enemy, the army either kept the column formation, or was formed in order of battle (*aciēs instrūcta*). In either case the baggage was brought together under guard. The march in order of battle could be successfully maintained for a short distance only and over favorable ground. When a flank attack was expected the army marched in a hollow square (*āgmen quadrātum*) with the baggage-train in the center.

The divisions of the army on the march were the van-guard (*primum āgmen*), the main body (*āgmen exercitus*, **141** *āgmen legiōnum*), and the rear guard (*āgmen extrēmum* or *novissimum*). The van-guard, consisting of most of the cavalry and light-armed troops, enveloped the head of the main column. Scouts (*speculātōrēs*) or scouting parties (*explōrātōrēs*) scoured the country in search of the enemy, whom it was the duty of the van-guard to engage until the main body could come up. The work of selecting and staking out the site of the camp fell to the van-guard. The rear **142** guard was usually composed of cavalry, but in a dangerous region it was strengthened by several cohorts of legionaries. On occasions when Caesar doubted the reliability of his cavalry or needed it to protect the flanks, he kept it with the main body, light-armed foot taking its place in the van and rear. Each legion with its baggage, when marching in a

column forty feet wide (*āgmen centuriūtīm*), was about three-quarters of a mile in length.

The march began at sunrise and ended with the arrival at **143** the new camping place about noon. The regular day's march (*iter iūstum*) was about seventeen miles. Under pressure a much longer distance could be covered. The step (*gradus*) was two and one-half Roman feet, the pace (*passus*) was two steps, from right heel to right heel. The ordinary march step was one hundred to the minute; the quick step, one hundred and twenty. Rivers were usually **144** crossed by fords, the soldiers wading streams up to the waist or even neck. When the water at the ford was deep and the current swift, a line of cavalry was stationed above to break the force of the current and a second one below to rescue men who were carried off their feet. Bridges were built only where fords were not available. They were built when needed, on boats or piles, with as much ease and rapidity as to-day.

The Battle. When in order of battle, each legion was usually drawn up in three lines (*aciēs triplex*) of cohorts, **145** four in the front line and three in each of the others, the cohorts in the second and third lines covering the spaces in the line before them. The intervals between the cohorts of each line equalled the width of a cohort (one hundred and twenty feet); but these were probably filled up, when the battle began, by the soldiers taking a double distance (six feet apart instead of three) so as to use their weapons more freely. The lines were probably one hundred and fifty feet **146** apart. This arrangement would make the width of a legion ten hundred and fifty feet and its depth four hundred and fifty feet. Each legion being thus arranged, the length of the whole front of the line of battle would depend upon the number of legions. The cavalry and auxiliary foot were

- 147** stationed on the wings or in the rear. It will be observe that the Roman battle-formation was one of separate bodie of convenient size, each of which acted as a unit, wit enough space on all sides of it for free movement. When i was necessary to extend the front of the army, the cohort were arranged in two lines (*aciēs duplex*).
- 148** The Romans, when possible, chose as a battle-ground . slope, where they could have the advantage of the onset. I the time permitted, the general made an address to each legion. He then rode to his position, usually on the right flank, and ordered the signal for the attack, with the *tuba*. When the foe was about two hundred and fifty paces off, the legions moved forward at a rapid walk over half the space and then the first line of cohorts broke into a run. When
- 149** within ten to twenty paces the first two ranks hurled their javelins and then drew their swords and came to close quarters. In case the enemy's line was not broken by the first volley of javelins, the other ranks advanced in turn and hurled their javelins before advancing to the hand-to-hand conflict, in which the Roman's skill as a duellist gave him
- 150** great advantage. Comparatively few of the legionaries were either killed or wounded in battle. Shields as well as sword were used in attack and the soldiers sometimes leaped upon the enemies' shields and stabbed them from above. When tired out by their exertions, those in front would retire through the spaces in the ranks behind them, and fresh fighters would take their places. If the first line of cohort
- 151** proved unequal to the task of defeating the foe, the second line was called in, and in stubborn contests even the third. Thus by a steady pressure and a succession of attacks the enemy's lines were finally broken. There was less of strategic movement of large masses on the battlefield than in modern warfare, the combatants standing up to their work a

close quarters until one or the other yielded to superior weight or skill. When the enemy broke and fled, they were pursued by the cavalry and slaughtered or captured. Ordinarily, no quarter was given, hence defeat was equivalent to annihilation. The victors suffered a comparatively small loss. **152**

It is evident that the fighting strength of the Roman army lay in its heavy infantry. The cavalry was useful in reconnoitering, in pursuit and to a degree in attack upon the enemy's horsemen; in the latter case, however, it was often strengthened and steadied by light-armed foot placed between the *turmae*. The light infantry was available for skirmish work and the protection of the flanks of the army. **153**

Taking of Walled Towns. Ancient towns were surrounded by walls, very high and thick, with facings of stone laid in courses, and a filling of rubble and earth. The walls of Gallic towns were sometimes strengthened by beams laid transversely in the masonry. Usually a wide and deep fosse, wet or dry, ran around the wall, and towers at regular intervals added to its strength. **154**

The Romans had three methods of reducing fortified towns: (1) by assault; (2) by blockade; and (3) by siege. In the first (*oppugnātiō repentīna*) the soldiers filled up the ditch at the points chosen with hurdles (*crātēs*) and having crossed it planted scaling ladders (*scālae*) and mounted the walls. Others strove to batter down the walls or to break in the gates with the battering ram (*ariēs*). An artillery fire was kept up to drive the enemy from the battlements. Testudos were formed under cover of which bodies of troops approached the breaches in the walls. **155**

If the strength of the fortifications made an assault impracticable, and the town was not well provisioned, the besiegers resorted to the blockade (*obsessiō*). Strong **156**

redoubts (*castella*) were thrown up at commanding points and connected by a line of earthworks (*mūnitiōnēs*), the whole forming the *circumvallātiō* and encircling the town.

- 157** The army was quartered in fortified camps which were so pitched as to make it easy to concentrate the troops rapidly at any point threatened with attack from the town. If there was danger of attack from the outside, a line of intrenchments (*contrāvallātiō*) was run parallel to the first and facing the other way. When the supply of provisions within the town gave out, the garrison speedily surrendered.
- 158** When the town was strongly fortified and well provisioned, the attempt was made to reduce it by a regular siege (*oppugnātiō*). As the artillery in use was not powerful enough to make breaches in the walls from a distance, provision must be made for reaching the walls and staying there long enough to break them down or surmount them. At the line of intrenchments a mound (*agger*) of timber-work and earth was begun and
- 159** extended toward the walls. Covered passages were made in this mound through which to convey the material used in building it. As the mound neared the walls, its height was increased by successive stories until the level of the parapet was attained. When the fosse was reached, material of all sorts was carried through the covered passages in the mound and thrown into it until it was filled up to the level of the top of the wall and mound.
- 160** The most of this work had to be done under fire, and the workmen were protected in various ways. The movable screens (*plutei*), made of plaited willows for lightness and placed on rollers, warded off arrows and other light missiles. The movable sheds (*vīneae*), with roofs and sides of wicker-work or planks protected against fire by skins, were placed end to end, forming galleries through which the besiegers
- 161** passed to and from their work. Sheds (*mūsculī*), triangular

in shape and built very strong so as to resist heavy missiles, were used to protect those who were filling the fosse and undermining the walls. Lines of *plutei* parallel to the walls protected the archers and slingers, who kept up a constant fire to prevent the besieged from interrupting the work. When the mound had been extended to the walls, the storming party might advance along it to the attack. Or, if a breach was to be made, movable towers (*turrēs mōbilēs*), often many stories (*tabulāta*) in height, were rolled along the level top of the mound, which was not then made so high. **162**

In the lower story of the tower was hung the battering-ram, a beam from sixty to one hundred and eighty feet long, ending in a mass of metal in the shape of a ram's head. In the upper stories were stationed sharpshooters and pieces of light artillery to drive the defenders from the wall. **163**

Sometimes, when the ground was sufficiently level, the tower was rolled forward to the outer edge of the fosse, across which the ram was worked, while access was had to the top of the wall by means of a drawbridge. The ram was sometimes placed under a sort of covered derrick (*testūdō arietāria*). The "wall-hooks" (*falcēs mūrālēs*), attached to long beams **164**

hung like the ram, were used to tear down the shattered walls. Various means were used by the besieged to defeat the efforts of the besiegers. Towers were erected on the walls opposite to the towers of the besiegers, or the walls themselves were built higher where the mound touched them. Firebrands were thrown against the woodwork of the towers or mounds in the effort to destroy them. A sudden **165**

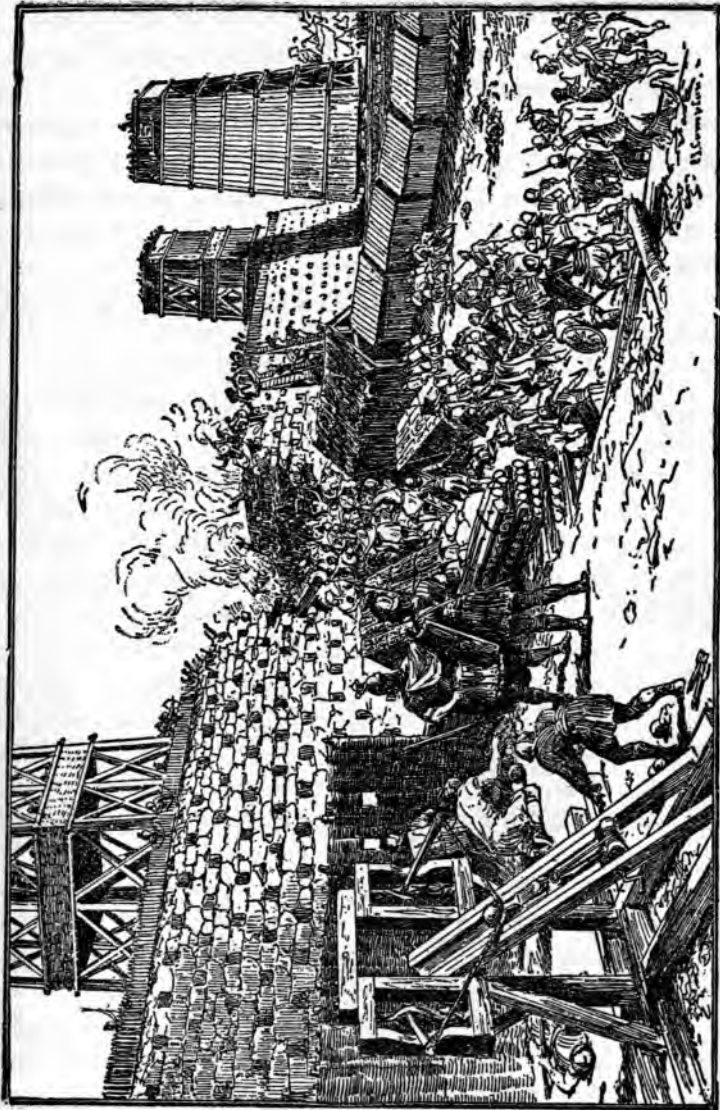
sally (*ēruptiō*) from the town was sometimes made for the same purpose. Countermines were run so as to intersect those of the enemy. Grappling hooks were let down by ropes to seize and divert the ram, or mats of wicker-work or sand-bags were suspended between it and the wall to break

the force of its blow. Boiling pitch, melted lead, burning arrows, beams and stones, were thrown upon the attacking troops.

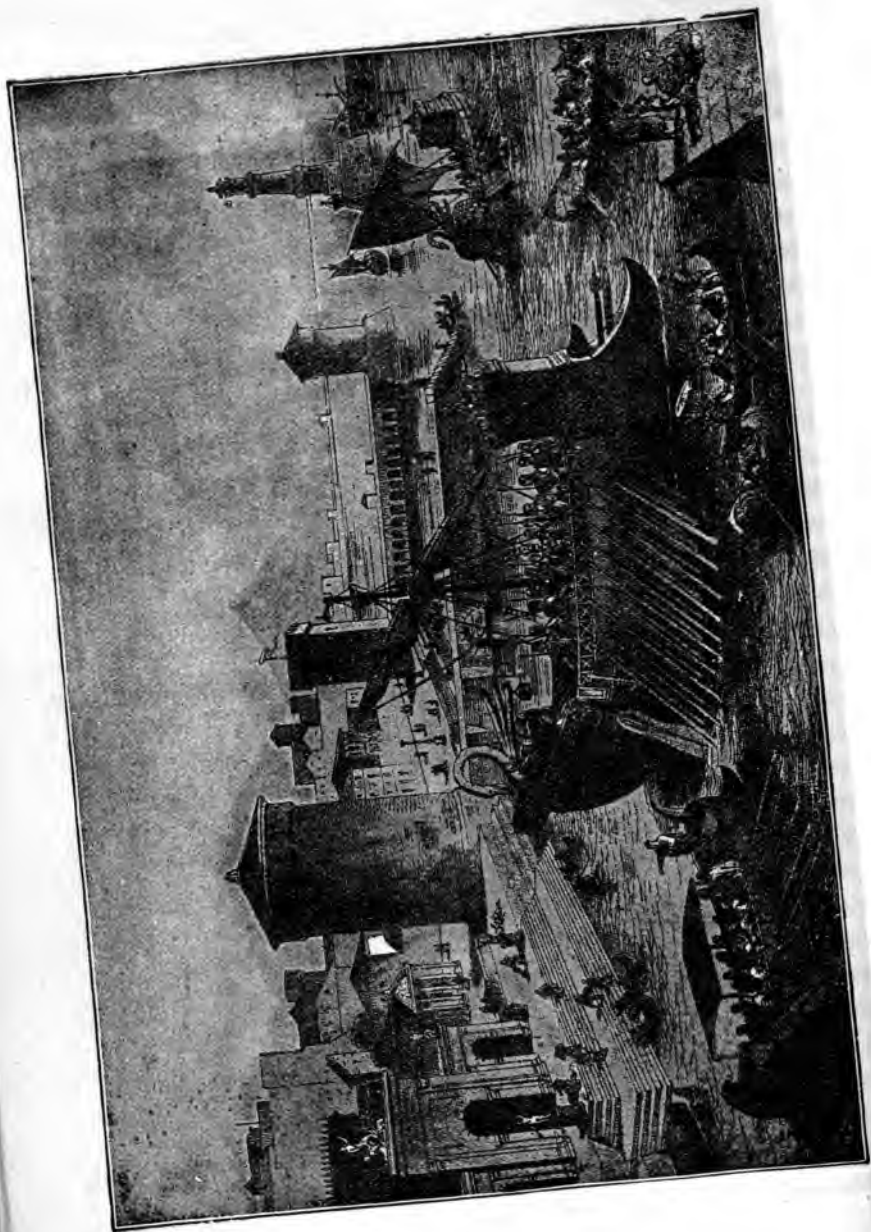
- 166** When a breach had been made, a storming party protected by the "shield tortoise" mounted it under cover of a heavy artillery fire and tried to force its way through. If successful and no further obstacles were encountered, the town and its inhabitants lay at the mercy of the victors, who usually repaid the stubborn valor of the garrison with slaughter or slavery.

- Engines of War.** For their artillery the Romans were
- 167** largely indebted to the Greeks. There were two kinds, catapults (*catapultae*) and ballistas (*ballistae*), which were probably used by Caesar, although he employs only the general term *tormenta* in speaking of artillery. All these engines were called *tormenta* because their propulsive power was derived from the the recoil of some twisted substance,
- 168** such as rope or hair. The catapults were huge bows which shot horizontally or at a slight elevation large arrows, sharpened beams, fire-darts, etc., a distance of from five hundred to one thousand feet. The ballistas were larger than the catapults and hurled at an angle of forty-five degrees stones and other missiles, weighing as much as six hundred
- 169** pounds, a distance of from eight hundred to twelve hundred feet. On account of their bulk, these engines were commonly used in siege operations only; but light field-pieces (*scorpiōnēs*, hand-catapults, *carrō-ballistae*, ballistas mounted on wagons) were used in battle. The artillery was manned by the *fabrī*.

- Navy.** There were two kinds of vessels in the Roman
- 170** navy, war-ships and transports. The former were distinguished from the latter by their greater length (*nāvēs longae*), or by the addition of a beak used in battle as a ram



STORMING A CITY.



(*nāvēs rōstrātae*). The prow (*prōra*) was gracefully curved, and ornamented with finely executed figure-heads; from it projected the beak (*rōstrum*). This was sometimes placed above, sometimes below the water-line. The tall stern (*puppis*) was adorned with a high fan-shaped ornament (*āplustre*), over which was displayed the ship's flag (*vēxillum*).

Each vessel had as a rule but one mast (*mālus*), one sail-yard **171** (*antenna*), and one large, square sail (*vēlum*). Oars, however, were the main dependence for propelling vessels; they were arranged in tiers or banks from one up to six in number. The average-sized warship (*trirēmis*) had three. The handles of the oars in the upper banks were weighted so as to make them easier to use. The movements of the oars were regulated by a musical instrument, or by the taps of a gavel on a sounding-board. The rowers (*rēmigēs*) were slaves. On going into action they **172** were chained to the rowing benches, to prevent the possibility of their acting in concert with the enemy. The helmsman (*gubernātor*) guided the ship by means of two broad steering-paddles attached to the sides near the stern. The ship's anchors were made of iron and had one or two flukes. A certain class of vessels (*nāvēs tēctae*) had a complete deck; very commonly, however, only a fore deck and a hinder deck were found (*nāvēs apertae*).

For fighting purposes the warship was equipped with **173** grappling-hooks or cranes for seizing and lifting out of the water opposing vessels, movable bridges for the purpose of boarding them, wooden towers, tanks of oil, military engines, etc. These were placed on the fore deck. The fighting was done by marines, who were armed like legionary soldiers. **174** The commander of a fleet was called *praefectus classis*, and had the rank of a *lēgātus*. The admiral's ship (*navis*

praetōria) displayed as ensign the *vērillum purpureum* by day and three lanterns by night.

175 The transports (*nāvēs onerāriae*) were about one-half as long as the war-ships, and had much greater breadth of beam.

Light, swift vessels used as despatch boats, etc., were called *nāvēs āctuāriae*. Boats used in scouting service were called *nāvēs speculātōriae*. They had sails and a single bank of oars.

The Romans did not devise anything noteworthy in naval affairs, but borrowed largely from their more inventive neighbors.

II. GALLIC.

Military Service. The Gallic army was composed of all **176** the citizens in the tribe. No one excepting the Druids was exempt from service, age itself being no excuse. The levy was accomplished by calling an assembly of the tribe. Prompt attendance was secured by the custom of putting to death the last man to arrive at the place of meeting.

Equipment. The Celts of the early time were depicted **177** as a large race, with bodies more fleshy than sinewy. Their dress consisted of close-fitting breeches (*braccae*), a tunic of various colors, a wooden cloak (*sagum*) worn like a Scotch plaid, and wooden-soled shoes. They were not so perfectly furnished with defensive armor as were the Romans. Coats of chain-mail and brazen helmets to which were attached horns symbolizing power, and figures in relief representing birds and animals, were worn by those who had **178** sufficient means. This armor they often threw away, and with a characteristic disregard of consequences, went into battle unprotected. The shield was about as tall as the Roman *scūtum*, but much narrower, while its brazen boss

was on the inside instead of the outside. Their offensive weapons were the sword (*spatha*), very long and heavy, without a point, and made of hardened iron which often bent **179** at the first blow; and pikes of different lengths with long and very broad heads. Thongs were used sometimes in hurling these. The slingers used for missiles hard clay pellets. Bracelets or armlets and collars of gold, elaborately worked, were a frequent addition to the soldier's equipment.

Organization and Tactics. But little is known of the organization of a Gallic army. It is evident, however, from **180** the great number of standards used in comparison with the size of the army, that the subdivisions into ranks and files was very minute. The Gauls had little knowledge of tactics, and aside from personal valor, had few resources to rely upon for securing a victory. Their favorite method of attack was **181** a furious onset, which usually gave them good fortune in a contest with a foe unused to it, but which was not so successful with the same foe in subsequent encounters. They relied upon the momentum of a rapidly-moving mass of soldiers to sweep away the hostile obstacle; but if this was not accomplished, the subsequent hand-to-hand conflict usually resulted **182** in their discomfiture. Their losses in battle were heavy on account of the reckless daring and obstinacy with which they maintained their ground even after the contest was proved hopeless. They made no provision against possible defeat by stationing reserves within supporting distance; hence a **183** defeat meant the annihilation of their army as an organization and the complete crippling for the time of their means of resistance.

They had no idea of the importance of a proper provision of supplies for the support of an army in the field. Their **184** operations were therefore of necessity carried on in haste, and delay was fatal to the cohesion of their loosely organized

forces. An enemy who knew this could beguile them into hasty and foolish movements by working upon their impatience at inaction. This was what Ariovistus did in the **185** war with the Aedui (I, 40, 25-30). In the same way Sabinus overcame Viridovix (III, 17-19), and Caesar the Belgæ at the Axona (II, 9-11). In siege operations also the Gauls were no match for the Romans. Their strongholds were often nothing but inclosures on sites difficult of access, **186** and were as a rule unoccupied, serving as places of refuge only in case of need. Ordinarily their camps were not fortified. In Aquitania alone, where the native troops were led by veterans who had served under Sertorius in Spain, Caesar's lieutenant found Gallic camps laid out and defended after the Roman fashion (III, 23, 12-14). Long contact **187** with their conquerors taught the Gauls lessons which they turned to good account at Gergovia, Avaricum and Alesia. Their unwearied activity in devising fresh means of defence is highly praised by their great conqueror in his "official report," which does full justice to the valor of an unfortunate people with whose cause its author could have no sympathy.

III. GERMAN.

Equipment. The Germans wore a short cloak (*sagulum*) **188** of fur or wool, which was fastened in front by a thorn or pin. No uniformity of equipment prevailed among them. Helmets and breastplates were used by some, but more went into battle without these or any other defensive weapons except a shield of metal or ox-hide. To lose the shield in battle was accounted the greatest possible dis- **189** grace. They used the sword, but relied chiefly upon the *framea*, a lance with a chisel-shaped iron head, which served equally well for hurling, thrusting, or slashing. War-clubs, bows and arrows were in use, and harpoons with which

the shield that had been pierced could be pulled out of the enemy's hands. The cavalry used shield and lance only.

Organization and Tactics. The organization of the army was very simple. Every freeman was a soldier and had to obey without question a call to service. The members of the same clan kept together under their chief in the belief that the presence of their relations was a stimulus to valorous deeds. The followers of a chief were bound to faithful service until death. Desertion of his standard was a lasting disgrace. To defend him and ascribe to him their own deeds of heroism were sacred duties. "The chiefs fought for victory, the retainers for the chief." The militia of a tribe was led by the best warrior, regardless of rank. When several tribes united their forces, their chiefs chose a commander-in-chief. They advanced to the attack in the form of a solid wedge—a method that was very effective if the enemy broke, but which, in case of ill success in this particular, made further movements very difficult. An arrangement peculiarly effective was a combination of cavalry and foot in a single troop; the latter attacked the enemy's horses and in case of retreat kept pace with the cavalry by clinging to the manes of their steeds. Caesar was so impressed with the value of this mixed troop that he introduced it into his own army toward the end of the Gallic war. The attack of the cavalry was directed against the front or flank of the foe. They often alighted to fight and had their mean-looking steeds so well trained that they would remain standing in the place where they had been left until their masters mounted again. The presence of the women during the battle had a powerful effect upon the warriors. These spectators often fired the weakening ranks to heroic deeds by their prayers and encouraging words, or themselves

gave the victorious foe a bloody reception with the wagons
196 as a bulwark. The Germans had too much confidence in
their prowess on the field of battle and too much contempt
for military order and system, to resort much to defensive
warfare. Two or more concentric circles of wagons served
for a protection against surprise when engaged in a cam-
paign. Their fortifications were mere circles of earthworks
197 faced with stone, and they relied more upon sudden sallies
than upon these defences. Their resources were entirely
inadequate to the reduction of fortified places. In later
times, however, they made themselves justly feared by
storming the once invincible cities of the Empire. Even
imperial Rome, from whose walls a Hannibal turned away
baffled, succumbed to the prowess of the northern barbarians.



REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

- A.**=Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.
B.=Bellum Helveticum.
G.=Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar (Revised ed. 1894).
H.=Harkness' Latin Grammar.
B.=Bennett's Latin Grammar.

Commas placed between the divisions of a reference to the grammar show that each division is to be studied. The omission of the commas indicates that reference is made only to the last division.

In the notes to the Commentaries references are made to books in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic, and to lines in ordinary Arabic numerals; thus, III, **2**, 11, refers to Bk. III, chapter **2**, line 11.

A figure (1, 2, or 4) after a verb shows the number of the conjugation and that the verb is regular according to the model verb of its conjugation given in the grammars.

<p>abl. <i>ablative.</i> abs. <i>absolute.</i> acc. <i>accusative.</i> adj. <i>adjective.</i> adv. <i>adverb.</i> cap., chap., . . . <i>caput (chapter).</i> card. <i>cardinal.</i> cf. <i>confer (compare).</i> cl. <i>clause.</i> comp., compar. <i>comparative.</i> conj. <i>conjunction.</i> dat. <i>dative.</i> def. <i>defective.</i> dem. <i>demonstrative.</i> dep. <i>deponent.</i> dim. <i>diminutive.</i> distr. <i>distributive.</i></p>	<p>Eng. <i>English.</i> e. g. <i>exempli gratiā</i> (for example). etc. <i>et cetera (and so</i> forth, and the rest). f., fem. <i>feminine.</i> ff., <i>the following.</i> fig. <i>figuratively.</i> freq. <i>frequentative.</i> fr. <i>from.</i> gen. <i>genitive.</i> Gr. <i>Greek.</i> i. e. <i>id est (that is).</i> imp. <i>imperative.</i> impf. <i>imperfect.</i> indef. <i>indefinite.</i> ind., indic. . . . <i>indicative.</i></p>
--	---

inf., infin. . . .	<i>infinitive.</i>	pl., plur. . . .	<i>plural.</i>
interj. . . .	<i>interjection.</i>	plpf.	<i>pluperfect.</i>
irr.	<i>irregular.</i>	prep.	<i>preposition.</i>
l.	<i>line.</i>	pr., pres. . . .	<i>present.</i>
lit.	<i>literally.</i>	pron.	<i>pronoun.</i>
m., masc. . . .	<i>masuline.</i>	rel	<i>relative.</i>
n., neut. . . .	<i>neuter.</i>	sc.	<i>scilicet (under-</i>
nom.	<i>nominative.</i>		<i>stand, supply).</i>
num.	<i>numeral.</i>	seq., sqq., . .	<i>sequentia(the</i>
ord.	<i>ordinal.</i>		<i>following).</i>
p., pp.	<i>page, pages.</i>	sing.	<i>singular.</i>
pt., part. . . .	<i>participle.</i>	subj.	<i>subjunctive.</i>
pf., perf. . . .	<i>perfect.</i>	sup., superl., .	<i>superlative.</i>
p. p., pf. pt. .	<i>perfect participle.</i>	voc.	<i>vocative.</i>
pass.	<i>passive.</i>		

* following definitions in page vocabularies indicates that the word is used five times or more in the first four books of the Gallic War.

1, 2, 3, 4 following definitions, that words are used that number of times.

BOOK I.—CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS.

The Helvetii were a Celtic people living in the Alpine valleys east of Lake Lemannus. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. They were hostile to the Romans, and had joined the Cimbri and Teutones, their natural enemies, in the invasion of Gaul and Italy. Defeated with the latter at Aix (102 B. C.) by the great Marius, they had remained quiet for a long time; but the present condition of Gaul, torn by factional strife, roused their ambition. Dissatisfied with the contracted stage of action to which they were confined by mountain barriers, they determined to seek a wider one far to the west, on the shores of the Atlantic. With admirable self-control, they delayed their departure until all the necessary preparations were made, and then with bold resolution burned their homes behind them.

Rome justly viewed the intended movement with apprehension. She had fought for the foothold that she had in Gaul, and was very sensitive to anything that threatened its permanence. Caesar clearly saw the danger to her interests, and as clearly, no doubt, the opportunities for gaining military renown, and determined to oppose the Helvetii. He appeared in the vicinity of Geneva at the time when they were gathering on the banks of the Rhone, and destroyed the bridge over that river, which they had unaccountably failed to secure. Curbing their impatience at the delay, they sought his permission to traverse that portion of the Roman Province lying between the Alps and the Rhone, through which lay the more feasible of the routes open to them. After an intentional delay utilized in manning hastily improvised defences along the Rhone, Caesar returned a refusal, and easily foiled their attempt to force a passage of the stream.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. Across this the current of migration flowed smoothly enough until the Aedui were reached; they resisted it and were overwhelmed. In this extremity they appealed to Caesar, who was not loth to become the champion of Gallic freedom. With his army largely increased by legions hurried across the Alps from Cisalpine Gaul, he assumed the offensive, and overtook the Helvetii at the crossing of the Arar, where he destroyed one of their four tribes. For fifteen days he followed the rest, but on account of the nature of the country was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally, the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Conceiving this action to be due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. After a severe battle, he defeated them with immense loss. A few escaped by night, but were brought back and "treated as enemies" and the remnant of the once proud and mighty host sadly returned to its mountain home.

Such a signal victory at once gave prestige to the Roman arms. All Gaul threw itself at Caesar's feet, and begged his aid against the German, Ariovistus. He saw the importance to Rome of making head against this menace to Gallic independence, and did not refuse the task. He first proposed to Ariovistus to settle the matter amicably, but met with a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the German king to terms before he was joined by other tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed. While halting at Vesontio (*Besancon*), a panic caused by the current stories regarding the terrible aspect of the Germans seized his soldiers. Caesar allayed this by a speech full of tact, rousing his troops to a high pitch of enthusiasm; he then led them against the foe.

Ariovistus, struck with Caesar's determination and celerity, in turn proposed a conference, and they met on a hillock in view of both armies. Ariovistus replied boastfully to the demands of Caesar and the interview was broken up by an attack of the German guard. Another meeting was sought by the king, but Caesar refused to attend, sending, however, two representatives. They were thrown into chains, and the negotiations were thus finally broken off.

On the following day the king executed a flank movement which placed him in Caesar's rear. After five days Caesar resorted to the bold expedient of flanking in his turn and building a small camp in the rear of the enemy's position, thus re-establishing his communications, but dividing his already inferior force. Ariovistus could not resist the temptation to attack the smaller camp. After a severe struggle he was repulsed. Caesar seized the moment of exultation to order a general advance. The king was thus forced to fight, and ranged his troops in battle array in front of his baggage. Caesar in person led on his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. At this juncture, Publius Crassus brought forward the reserves and decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the Rhine, five miles away, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In this single season's campaigning, important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the empire: the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of Gaul and German was dispelled.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar: A sketch, chap. xiv. pp. 170-188.

TROLLOPE: Caesar's Commentaries, chap. ii. (Ancient Classic Series)

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 288-299.

MERIVALE: History of the Romans, vol. i. pp. 238-262.

NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. pp. 49-105.

C. IULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

B. C. 58

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum

1. **Gallia**, -ae [Gallius, -a, -um, Gallic], *f.*, Gaul, the country of the Galli, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany. *

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *n.*, be, exist, live; happen; serve for; stay, remain. *

omnis, -e, all, every, the whole of. *
di-vidō, -ere, **visi, visus** [dis-, apart], *a.*, divide, sunder, separate; *in p. p.* as *adj.*, divided. *

in, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*, (a) with *acc.* (of motion), into, to, among, in, towards, against; (of time) up to, till, for; on, about; with *abl.*, (of space) in, upon, among, over, at, within; (of time) in, during, at, in the course of; on, upon, in the case of. *

pars, partis, *f.*, part, piece, portion, share; party, faction; direction, side; place, district. *

trēs, tria, *gen. trium, card. num.*, three. *

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pro.*, who,

which, what, that: often implying an antecedent, he who or those who. *

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen. ūnius, card. num.*, one; same, single, only, sole, alone, one. *

2. **in-colō**, -ere, **colūi**, [colō, cultivate], *a. and n.*, inhabit, live, dwell in. *

Belgae, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgae or Belgians, a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul. *

alius, -a, -ud, *gen. alius*, another, other; *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another; *in pl.* some . . . others. *

Aquitānus, -a, -um, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *in pl.* as *subst.*, the Aquitani or Aquitanians, inhabiting south-western Gaul. *

tertius, -a, -um, [ter, thrice] *ord. num.*, third. *

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen. ipsius*, self (as opp. to some one else); himself, herself, etc.; he, she, it etc. (emphatic); as *adj.*, very, (his, her, their) own. *

1. **Gallia**. *Gallia Transalpina*, exclusive of the Roman Province. See Int. 67-69. **omnis**: as a whole in distinction from the land of the Celts (*tertiam*, sc. *partem*, line 2) which also was called *Gallia*. **dīvisā**: the perfect participle is here used as a predicate adjective

after **est. quārum ūnam**, one of these (parts). For the Genitive see A. 216, a, 2; B. 56; G. 370; H. 397, 2; B. 201, 1.

2. **quī**, those who. The antecedent (here *ii*) is often omitted if indefinite or easily supplied from the context.

10 proximi que sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidianis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut

10. **proximus, -a, -um** [*superl. fr. proprior, nearer*], nearest, next to, next; last. *

Germānus -ī, [Celtic *Gairmean*, one who shouts the war cry, or *wehr-mann*, war-man, warrior], **m.**, a German; *in pl.* the Germans; *Germānus, -a, -um*, German. *

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over. *With geographical expressions to be translated east of, west of, etc., according to the context.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine, forming the boundary between Gallia and Germānia. *

cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. *

11. **continenter** [*continēns*], *adv.*, continuously, without interruption, continually. *

bellum, -ī, n., warfare, war. *

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, a., bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on, perform, wage, conduct. *

dē, prep. with abl., down from, from; of, out of; concerning, for, with respect to; on account of, about, in regard to. *

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; *in abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of; **causam dīcere**, to plead a case. *

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., the Helvetians, a Celtic tribe between Mt. Jura,

jectivē) agrees. What is the Gerundive in form and how is it employed? A. 296; B. 126; G. 427; H. 543, 544, 1; B. 339, 1.

10. **proximi Germānis**, next to the Germans. For the case see A. 234, a; B. 63; G. 359; H. 391, I; B. 192. **trāns Rhēnum**, i. e. on the east bank, though scattered tribes were permanently settled west of the river.

*Lake Leman, the Rhone and Rhine.**

12. **quoque, adv.** following the word emphasized, also, too, even.*

reliquus, -a, -um [*relinquō, leave*], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; **reliquum, -ī, n.**, remainder, residue, rest. *

virtūs, -ūtis [*vir, man*], **f.**, manliness, valor, merit, worth; *pl.* good qualities, virtues. *

prae-cedō, -ere, cessi, cessus, [*cē-dō, go*], **a.**, go before; precede, surpass, excel. *

ferē, adv., almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotidianus, -a, um, adj., every day, daily; usual, customary. *

13. **proelium, -ī, n.**, battle, contest, engagement. *

con-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [*tendō, stretch*], **n.**, push forward, hasten; strive, contend, fight. *

cum, conj., with *indic.*, simply defining the time when, when, while, whenever; with *subj.*, showing the situation in which the event occurred, when; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to cause the event, since, because; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to prevention, though, although. *

aut, conj., used where the difference is important, or exclusive, or; *aut ... aut*, either ... or.

11. **quā dē causā**, and for this reason. The Relative is used to connect co-ordinate clauses more frequently in Latin than in English. When it thus connects independent sentences, it should be rendered by a conjunction with a demonstrative. **Helvētīi**: a Celtic tribe whose territorial limits coincide in general with those of Switzerland.

12. **virtūte, in valor**; for con-

quana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important,

6. fortis, -e, strong, valiant, brave. *
 7. propter-eā, conj., on this account, therefore. *
 quod, conj. [*adv. acc. of the neuter of quī*], as to which, in that, that, because. *
 cultus, -ūs [colō] m., cultivation; training, culture, dress; civilization. *
 atque, (āc only before cons.) [ad + -que], adds something important while et associates objects of equal importance, and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison, with, as; after words of difference, than, from. *
 hūmānitās, -tātis [hūmānus, human], m., humanity, courteousness, refinement. 2
 prōvincia, -ae [prō-vincō, extend by conquest], f., charge or administration of a province; province. *
 longē [longus], adv., far, far away, absent, distant. *
 8. ab-sum, esse, āfui, āfutūrus, n., be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. *
 minimē [minimus], superl adv., least, very little; by no means, not at all. *
 -que, (always affixed to the word or

some part of the expression it connects), and. *
 ad, prep with acc., to, towards, against; among, near, at, about (with numerals); at, till (of time). *
 is, ea, id, gen. eius, weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that; he, she, it, they, etc.; is ut, such as; with comparatives eō (abl.) the, all the; eō magis, all the more; eō (abl. as adv.), on this account, therefore; eā (sc. viā) in that way (only V, 51, 9). *
 mercātor, -ōris [mercor, trade], m., merchant, trader. *
 saepe, often, frequently; many times; minimē saepe, very rarely.
 commeō, 1. [meō, go] n., go, resort; with ad, resort to, visit. *
 9. ef-feminō, 1. [fēmina, woman], a., make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 2
 animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings, character; resolution, courage. *
 per-tineō, 2. [teneō, hold], n., hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, tend. *
 im-portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry or bring in, import. 4

6. hōrum: for the Gen. see A. 216, a, 2; B. 56; G. 372; H. 397, 3; B. 201, 1. How does this differ from quarum 1, I?

7. prōvinciae: the Prōvincia Rōmāna, in the southeast part of Gallia omnis. See Int. 62, 65, 66.

8. minimē...saepe commeant, by no means frequently (very seldom) resort. The expression of strong affirmation by denying the contrary is called Litotes. mercātōrēs: Massilia, founded by the

Greeks about 600 B. C., was the commercial center of Gaul. Her traders penetrated the interior, following the lines of water communication, which did not reach the Belgians. They sold strong wine, of which the Gauls were very fond, and horses from Italy. They did much to Romanize southern Gaul.

9. effēminandōs: the Gerundive is most conveniently translated as governing the noun (here animōs) with which it (as a verbal ad-

10 proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut

10. **proximus, -a, -um** [*superl. fr. proprior, nearer*], nearest, next to, next; last. *

Germānus -ī, [*Celtic Gairmean, one who shouts the war cry, or wehr-mann, war-man, warrior*], m., a German; *in pl. the Germans; Germānus, -a, -um, German.* *

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over. *With geographical expressions to be translated east of, west of, etc., according to the context.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine, forming the boundary between Gallia and Germānia. *

cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. *

11. **continenter** [*continēns*], *adv.*, continuously, without interruption, continually. *

bellum, -ī, n., warfare, war. *

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, a., bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on, perform, wage, conduct. *

dē, prep. with abl., down from, from; of, out of; concerning, for, with respect to; on account of, about, in regard to. *

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; *in abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of; **causam dicere**, to plead a case. *

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., the Helvetians, a Celtic tribe between Mt. Jura,

*Lake Leman, the Rhone and Rhine.**

12. **quoque, adv.** following the word emphasized, also, too, even.*

reliquus, -a, -um [*relinquō, leave*], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; **reliquum, -ī, n.**, remainder, residue, rest. *

virtūs, -ūtis [*vir, man*], f., manliness, valor, merit, worth; *pl. good qualities, virtues.* *

prae-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, [*cē-dō, go*], a., go before; precede, surpass, excel. *

ferē, adv., almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotidiānus, -a, um, adj., every day, daily; usual, customary. *

13. **proelium, -ī, n.**, battle, contest, engagement. *

con-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [*tendō, stretch*], n., push forward, hasten; strive, contend, fight. *

cum, conj., with *indic.*, simply defining the time when, when, while, whenever; with *subj.*, showing the situation in which the event occurred, when; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to cause the event, since, because; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to prevention, though, although. *

aut, conj., used where the difference is important, or exclusive, or; *aut ... aut, either ... or.*

jective) agrees. What is the Gerundive in form and how is it employed? A. 296; B. 126; G. 427; H. 543, 544, 1; B. 339, 1.

10. **proximi Germānīs**, next to the Germans. For the case see A. 234, a; B. 63; G. 359; H. 391, 1; B. 192. **trāns Rhēnum**, i. e. on the east bank, though scattered tribes were permanently settled west of the river.

11. **quā dē causā**, and for this reason. The Relative is used to connect co-ordinate clauses more frequently in Latin than in English. When it thus connects independent sentences, it should be rendered by a conjunction with a demonstrative. **Helvētīi**: a Celtic tribe whose territorial limits coincide in general with those of Switzerland.

12. **virtūte, in valor**; for con-

suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae

14. **suus, -a, -um** [suī, himself, herself, etc.], *reflex. pron. adj. referring to subject*, of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, etc., their own; his, hers, its, theirs: *in neut. as subst.*, one's property; suī, their men (friends or countrymen). *

finis, -is [*cf.* findō, divide], *m.*, boundary, limit, border; *in pl.*, boundaries, territory, country. *

pro-hibeō, 2. [habeō], *a.*, have, hold, or keep from or forth; restrain; keep, prevent. *

15. **obtinēō, -ēre, -uī, tentus** [teneō, hold], *a.*, hold (*against the claim of another*), retain, obtain, possess; maintain, have control of. *

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, a., say, tell, speak, name, mention, express. *

initium, -ī [in-eō, go into], *n.*, beginning, commencement, origin. *

16. **capio, -ere, cēpi, captus, a.**, take, capture, seize; take up; obtain. *

Rhodanus, -ī m., a *Gaullic river*, now the Rhone. *

contineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus [teneō], *a.*, hold together; hold in check, restrain; enclose, contain, bound. *

17. **ōceanus, -ī, m.**, the great or outer sea, the ocean: *used once as adj. with mare.* *

at(ad)tingō, -ere, tigī, tāctus [tangō, touch], *a.*, touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. *

etiam [et + iam], *conj.*, and also, even also. *

Sēquani, -ōrum, m., a *Gaullic tribe between the Saone and the Jura.* *

18. **vergō, -ere, a, n.**, look or lie towards, incline, slope. 4

septentrionēs, -um, [triōnēs, ploughing oxen], (*the constellations of the Great Bear and Little Bear were compared to a wagon with oxen*), *m.*, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North: *in sing.* Septentriō -ōnis, *m.*, the North (*once*). *

struction *cf. linguā etc.* ll. 3, 4.

14. **suīs, their own.** To what do the forms of *suus* and the reflexive *se* regularly refer? A. 196; G. 309; H. 449; B. 244. **finibus:** For the case see A. 243, a; B. 83; G. 390; H. 414; B. 214, 2. **eōs, ipsī:** Who are meant?

15. **eōrum ūna pars, one part of these (their territory); eōrum** is a Partitive Genitive limiting *pars* (the people, where we put the country). **obtinēre:** has *quam* as a di-

rect object, and with its subject acc. *Gallōs* is the subject of the impersonal verb *dictum est*. For the infinitive with subject accusative as subject, see A. 330; B. 80; G. 535; H. 538; B. 330. **initium capit ā, begins at.**

16, 17. **flūmine, Oceanō, finibus:** The omission of conjunctions is called *Asyndeton*; *cf. linguā . . . lēgibus* l. 3.

18. **vergit ad septentrionēs:** notice on the map the general course of the rivers.

praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētii continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit, alterā ex parte monte
10 Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētios, tertiā

6. prae-stō, stāre, stiti, stāturus (stītus) [stō, stand], a., n., stand or place before, show, supply, furnish; be superior or pre-eminent, excel, surpass. *Impers. praestat*, it is better. *
- tōtus, -a, -um, *gen. tōtius, dat. tōti*, the whole, the whole of, entire, all. *
- imperium, -i, [imperō, command], n., command, order; authority, sway; supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *
- potior, -iri, -itus sum [potis, powerful], a., become master of, get control or possession of; obtain, possess. *
- facile [facilis, easy], *adv.*, easily, readily. *Comparative, facilius, superl., facillimē.* *
7. undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides.
- locus, -i, m., and plural loca, -ōrum,

- n., place, position, locality. *
- nātūra, -ae [nātus, birth], f., nature, constitution, character. *
8. ē (only before consonants) ex (before vowels and consonants), *prep. with abl.* out, out of, from: ex itinere, on the march; ūnā ex parte, on one side. *
- lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide, extensive. *
- altus, -a, -um [p. p. of alō, nourish, promote], high, lofty; deep: *neut. as subst.*, the deep, the sea. *
9. ager, agrī, m., field; territory, district; land, ground. *
- alter, -era, -erum (*gen. alterius, dat. alteri*), the other (of two); second; the one; alter...alter, the one...the other; alteri...alteri, the one party...the other. *
10. Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura, a mountain range from the Rhine to the Rhone. 3.
11. lacus, -ūs, m., a lake. 3.

6. imperiō: For the case see A. 249; B. 91; G. 407; H. 421, I; B. 218, 1. potiri: For the mood cf. *obtinere* 1, 15. id...persuāsit, he persuaded them (to follow) this (course) (i. e., *ut exirent*), the more easily. When *persuādere* is thus used with a direct object (here *id*) and an indirect object (*is*), the former is either a pronoun or a substantive clause of purpose, (as *ut...exirent*, ll. 4 5, above).

7. loci nātūrā: see the map for the following details. continentur, shut in.

8. ūnā ex parte, on one side, the

northeast and east. Note the position of the monosyllabic preposition in reference to the noun and its adjective, and cf. *quā dē causā*, 1, 11. lātissimō: very broad: at Basle, 750 ft. The swift current, in the stretch from the Lake of Constance to Basle, would be a great obstacle to an easy crossing.

9. alterā etc., on a second side.

10. Sēquanōs: A powerful tribe living between the Arar and the Rhone. It headed the patriotic party in Gaul. See Int. 79. tertiā sc. *ex parte* and cf. rendering of *alterā*. A fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

sulibus, rēgnī cupiditatē inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fecit et civitātī persuāsit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus 5

cōnsul, -ulis [*cf. cōn-sedeō, cōnsilium*], *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. *

3. rēgnum, -ī [rēx, king], *n.*, kingly or royal authority, royal power; sovereignty; kingdom. *

cupiditās, -tātis [cupidus], *f.*, eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. *

in-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate. 4.

con-iūratiō, -ōnis [iūrō, take an oath], *f.*, swearing together, plot, conspiracy; secret league.

nōbilitās, -tātis [nōbilis], *f.*, celebrity; noble birth, nobility; the nobility, the nobles. *

4. faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *a.*, and *n.*, make, do, accomplish, effect, form: *pass. fiō, fierī, factus*

*sum: certiōrem facere, to inform: iter facere, to march. **

civitās, -tātis [civis, citizen], *f.*, citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city, nation, commonwealth. *

per-suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus [suādeō, advise], *a.*, *n.*, advise prevailing; convince, persuade. *

ut (utī), *conj. with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not: *with indic. as adv.*, as, as though, how. *

5. cōpia, -ae [cum+ops, power], *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance; *in pl.*, resources, forces, troops. *

ex-eō, ire, ivī (ii), itus [eō, go], *n.*, go from or out, depart from, leave. *

per-facilis, -e [facilis, easy], very easy. 3.

3. nōbilitātis (=nōbilitium), the nobles, the abstract being used for the concrete.

4. civitātī persuāsit, he persuaded the citizens: for case see A. 227; B. 61; G. 346; H. 385, II; B. 187, II. civitātī=civibus, cf nōbilitātis, l. 3. For the political organization of the Gauls see Int. 68, 69, and Mommsen IV, pp. 270, 271. ut... exirent, to leave their country, a substantive clause of purpose, the direct object of persuāsit. A. 381; G. 546; H. 498; B. 294, 295. cōpiis: including women and children. This movement (ut... exirent), was possibly suggested by

their former connection with the Cimbri and Teutones.

5. cum... praestarent, since they surpassed all in valor. This claim seems to have been well founded: see 1, 11, 12, Helvētī, sqq. omnibus: For case see A. 228; B. 62; G. 347; H. 386; B. 187, III. perfacile esse etc., (saying) that it was very easy to get control of the government (lit. to get control... was very easy): indirect discourse with the verb of saying implied in persuāsit. In direct discourse the words would stand; perfacile est, cum virtūte omnibus praestētis.

praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius
 eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur:
 unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī
 agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit, alterā ex parte monte
 10 Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā

6. **prae-stō, stāre, stitī, stātūrus** (stītus) [stō, stand], *a., n., stand or place before, show, supply, furnish; be superior or pre-eminent, excel, surpass. Impers. praestat, it is better. **
**tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius, dat. tōtī, the whole, the whole of, entire, all. *
**imperium, -ī, [imperō, command], n., command, order; authority, sway; supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *
potior, -iri, -ītus sum [potis, powerful], *a., become master of, get control or possession of; obtain, possess. **
facile [facilis, easy], *adv., easily, readily. Comparative, facilius, superl., facillimē. **
7. undique, adv., from all parts, on all sides.
locus, -ī, m., and plural loca, -ōrum,****

- n., place, position, locality. **
nātūra, -ae [nātus, birth], *f., nature, constitution, character. **
8. ē (only before consonants) **ex** (before vowels and consonants), *prep. with abl. out, out of, from: ex itinere, on the march; unā ex parte, on one side. **
**lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide, extensive. *
altus, -a, -um [*p. p. of alō, nourish, promote*], *high, lofty; deep: neut. as subst., the deep, the sea. **
**9. ager, agrī, m., field; territory, district; land, ground. *
alter, -era, -erum (*gen. alterius, dat. alterī*), *the other (of two); second; the one; alter...alter, the one...the other; alterī...alterī, the one party...the other. **
10. Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura, a mountain range from the Rhine to the Rhone. 3.
11. lacus, -ūs, m., a lake. 3.****

6. **imperiō:** For the case see A. 249; B. 91; G. 407; H. 421, I; B. 218, 1. **potiri:** For the mood cf. *obtinere* 1, 15. *id... persuāsit, he persuaded them (to follow) this (course) (i. e., ut exirent), the more easily.* When *persuādere* is thus used with a direct object (here *id*) and an indirect object (*is*), the former is either a pronoun or a substantive clause of purpose, (as *ut... exirent*, ll. 4 5, above).

7. **loci nātūrā:** see the map for the following details. **continentur, shut in.**

8. **unā ex parte, on one side, the**

northeast and east. Note the position of the monosyllabic preposition in reference to the noun and its adjective, and cf. *quā dē causā*, 1, 11. **lātissimō:** *very broad:* at Basle, 750 ft. The swift current, in the stretch from the Lake of Constance to Basle, would be a great obstacle to an easy crossing.

9. **alterā etc., on a second side.**

10. **Sēquanōs:** A powerful tribe living between the Arar and the Rhone. It headed the patriotic party in Gaul. See Int. 79. **tertiā sc. ex parte** and cf. rendering of *alterā*. A fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat, ūt et minus latē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiē-

Lemannus, -ī (*with or without lacus*), *m.*, Lake Leman, Lake Geneva. 3.

12. **rēs**, rei, *f.*, thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence, circumstance: **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies; **rēs militāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs pūblica**, the state, the public interests. *

fiō, fieri, **factus sum** (*pass. of faciō*), be made or done; come to pass, result, happen. *

minus, *adv.*, [minor, less], less. *

latē [lātus, wide], *adv.*, widely, extensively. *

13. **vagor**, 1. [vagus, roaming], *n.*, roam about, rove, wander. *

finitimus, -a, -um [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *in pl. as subst.*, neighbors. *

in-ferō, ferre, intulī, illātus [ferō, bear], *a.*, bear, bring, or make upon, inflict; **signa inferre**, to advance the standards, to attack. *

possum, posse, potuī [potis, able, +sum], *n.*, be able, can; to have power or influence; **plūrimum posse**, to be very powerful. *

14. **homō**, -inis [*cf.* humus, earth], *m.*, human being, man; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. *

bellō, 1. [bellum, war], *n.*, make or carry on war, wage war. 4.

cupidus, -a, -um [cupiō, desire], desirous, eager, zealous, fond. *

māgnus, -a, -um (*comp.*, māior, *superl.*, māximus), great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large; abundant, much; important, extensive; **māgnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; **māgnis itineribus**, by forced marches. *

dolor, -ōris [doleō, grieve], *m.*, grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*); vexation, annoyance. *

af (ad-) **-ficiō**, -ere, fēcī, **fectus** [faciō], *a.*, do to, treat, affect; **māgnō dolōre afficere**, to annoy greatly. *

11. **prōvinciam**: see on 1, 7.

12. **hīs rēbus**, for this reason (*because of these things*). For the case see A. 245; B. 85; G. 408; H. 416; B. 219. **fiēbat**: The subject of verbs used impersonally is frequently a clause (here *ut... possent*, a substantive clause of result). **minus**, less (than they desired).

13. **finitimis**: esp. the Ger-

mans. See 1, 12, 13.

14. **quā ex parte**, and on this ground: *cf. quā dē causā*, 1, 11. **hominēs** etc., as they were men who were... they were much dissatisfied. **bellandī cupidī** fond of making war. **bellandī**: What is the Gerund? A. 295; B. 125; G. 425; H. 541; B. 338. For its case here see A. 218, a; B. 55; G. 374; H. 399, 1, 1; B. 204, 1.

15bantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā belli atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finis habere arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinē milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinē CLXXX patēbant.

*Preparations
of the Helve-
tians.*

3. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiendum

15. prō, *prep. with abl. [cf. prae],* before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in proportion to. * multitudō, -inis [multus], *r.*, a great number, multitude. * autem, *conj.*, but (a weak adversative), however, now, on the other hand; moreover. * glōria, -ae, *r.*, glory, renown, honor, fame. * 16. fortitudō, -inis [fortis, strong], *r.*, strength, courage. 1 angustus, -a, -um [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow. * habeo, 2. *a. and n.*, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. * arbitror, 1. [arbitr, witness; judge], *a. and n.*, witness, testify; judge, decide; think, believe. * 17. longitudō, -inis [longus], *r.*, length, extent; long duration. * mille, *num. adj. (indecl. in sing.)*, a thousand; *pl.*, milia (millia), -um, *n.*, thousands (*a subst., usually followed by part. gen.*): milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. * passus, -ūs [*p. p. of* pandō, extend],

m., a pace, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches, (*five Roman feet*). * CC = ducenti, -ae, -a [duo + centum], *num. adj.*, two hundred. 3 XL = quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty. 4 lātitudō, -inis [lātus, wide], *r.*, width, extent, breadth. * C = centum, *indecl. num., adj.*, a hundred. 3 LXXX = octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty. * 18. pateō, -ere, -uī, *n.*, lie or be open; stretch out, extend. * 1. ad-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or draw to; constrain, influence. * auctōritās, -tātis [auctor, producer], *r.*, a producing influence, character, authority, reputation. * 2. per-moveō, -ere, mōvi, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move thoroughly, rouse, incite, instigate. * cōn-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [statuō, set up], *a.*, set up, station; put together; establish, settle, determine. * proficiscor, -i, profectus sum, *n.*, set out, start, depart; go, proceed. *

15. prō multitudīne, *in comparison with their great numbers.* According to Chap. 29, 263,000.

16. angustōs, *too narrow.* The comparative idea is contained in prō multitudīne. finis: *acc. pl.* What other spelling for this form? These narrow limits were considerably larger than those of modern Switzerland which contains a population of 3,000,000. Uncivilized

peoples, however, require wide limits.

17. longitudinē: from the Jura range west of Geneva to Lake Constance. lātitudinē: from Basle to the Lepontine Alps. Switzerland is 216 miles long by 140 miles broad. milia: for case see A. 257; B. 77; G. 335; H. 379; B. 181. passuum: for constr. see quārum 1, 1.

pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum pro-

3. com-parō, 1. [parō, prepare], *a.*, prepare, get ready; supply, furnish, muster, equip. *
iūmentum, -ī [for iugimentum *fr.* iugum, yoke], *n.*, yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. *
carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. *
quam, *adv.* with *interrog.*, how, how much; with *comp.*, as, than; with *sup.*, as possible; with *expressions of time*, after; quam diū, as long as. *
māximus, -a, -um [sup. of māgnus], greatest, largest. *
4. numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity; account, estimation. *
coēmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmtus [cum + emō], *a.*, buy, buy up, purchase. 2
sēmentis, -is [sēmen, seed], *f.*, seeding, planting, sowing. 1
5. iter, itineris [for itiner *fr.* *p.* of eō, go], *n.*, a going, way, route; journey, march. *
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *in pl.*, crops. *
sup (sub-) -petō, -ere, -ivī (ii),

-itus [petō, seek, obtain], *n.*, be near or at hand, be present or in store. *
6. pāx, pācis [pācō, pacify], *f.*, peace. *
amicitia, -ae [amicus, friend], *f.*, friendship. *
cōn-firmō, 1. [firmus, strong], *a.*, establish, strengthen, encourage; declare, assert. *
cōn-ficiō, -ere, fēci, fectus [faciō], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish; finish up, exhaust; furnish, prepare. *
7. biennīum, -ī [bis, twice, + annus, year], *n.*, a period of two years. 1
satis (sat), *adv.* and *indec. adj.*, enough, sufficiently; sufficient, satisfactory. satis causae, sufficient reason. *
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *a.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. *
annus, -ī, *m.*, year. *

3. pertinērent: for the mood see A. 320; B. 109; G. 631; H. 503, I; B. 233. comparāre, depends upon cōstituērunt l. 2: for the mood see A. 271; B. 121; G. 423; H. 533; B. 328. Point out three other infinitives of the same kind in this sentence. iūmentōrum, *beasts of burden*, properly "yoke-animals" (iūgum, a yoke). carrōrum: vehicles with two wheels; a Celtic word Latinized: cf. the English *car* formerly spelled *carre*. quam māximum, *as great as possible* (the *greatest possible*). For quam with

the superlative see A. 93, b; B. XXX; G. 303; H. 170, 2 (2); B. 240, 3.

5. ut cōpia suppeteret, *in order that a supply might be at hand*. For the mood see A. 317; B. 107; G. 545, 1, 2, 3; H. 497, II; B. 282. Contrast the *adverbial* use of this Final Clause with the *substantive* use in 2, 5. proximīs cīvitatibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, etc.

6. ad . . . cōficiendās, *for completing these preparations*. For form and construction, see on *effeminandōs*, 1, 9.

7. dūxērunt, here a verb of

fectionem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanis multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorī-

8. profectiō, -ōnis [proficiscor, set out], *f.*, a setting out, start, departure. *

9. dē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lectus [legō, choose], pick or choose out, select, cull; levy, gather. *

lēgatiō, -ōnis [lēgō, despatch], *f.*, embassy, legation; commission; the office of an ambassador. *

sus-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [sub + capiō, take], *a.*, take or lift up (*from beneath*), undertake, assume; begin; engage in; undergo, suffer. *

10. Casticus, -ī, *m.*, a nobleman of the Sequani. 1

Catamantaloedēs, -is, *m.*, a Sequanian chieftain. 1

11. filius, -ī, *m.*, son. *

pater, patris, *m.*, father; *in pl.*, ancestors. *

12. multus, -a, -um, *comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus, much; pl. many.* * senātus, -ūs [senex, old man], *m.*, a body of old men, senate; *esp., the administrative council of Rome.* *

populus, -ī, *m.*, the people, the mass, the crowd; a people or nation. *

Rōmānus, -a, -um, of Rome, Roman; *as subst. a Roman; in pl. the Romans.* *

13. amīcus, -ī, *m.*, friend. *

occupō, 1. [ob + capiō], *a.*, seize upon, take possession of; hold, possess. *

14. ante, (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously (2) *prep. with acc.*, before, in advance. *

item, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. *

thinking, is followed by the infinitive *esse* in Indir. Disc. The English idiom requires that such infinitives be rendered by the Indicative. *They considered that two years were etc:* cf. rendering of *esse* in 2, 5.

8. lēge, *by resolution*, of the public assembly.

9. sibi . . . suscēpit, *he took on himself.*

10. persuādet: for tense see A. 276 d; B. 128; G. 229; H. 467, III; B. 269 3. Casticō: case? Cf. *civitātī* 2, 4.

11. filiō, Sēquanō: for case see A. 183, 184; B. XXI; G. 320, 321; H. 363; B. 169, I, 2.

12. multōs annōs, *for many years.* For the accusative see A.

256; B. 78; G. 336; H. 379; B. 181.

13. amīcus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests. *ut . . . occupāret, to seize.* For mood cf. *exirent* 2, 5. For the sequence after the Historical Present see A. 287, e; B. 102; B. 258, 268, 3. H. 495, II. rēgnum, *supreme authority*; there were no hereditary kings in Gaul, a chief's tenure being dependent on his wealth and personal qualities.

14. Dumnorīgī: younger than Diviciacus, a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Aedui and an adherent of the old aristoc-

gī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciaci, quī eō tempore principātum in civitā- te obtinēbat ac m̄ximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eiūque filiam suam in m̄trimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, an *Aeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus.* *

15. Aeduus, -a, -um, of the Aedui, Aeduan; *as subst.*, an Aeduan; *in pl.*, the Aedui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the upper waters of the Saone and Loire. *

frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother. *

Diviciacus, -ī, (1), a chief of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorīx and friendly to the Romans. (2), a chief of the Suessiones. *

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division or section of time; time; occasion, crisis; *omni tempore*, always; *in reliquum tempus*, for the future; *ūnō tempore*, at the same time. *

principātus, -ūs [princeps, chief], *m.*, chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. *

16. plēbs, plēbis or plebēs, -ōī, *f.*, common people; multitude. *

ac-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [ad + capiō], *a.*, take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take; *in p. p. as adj.*, acceptable, beloved, popular. *

idem, eadem, idem [is + -dem],

dem. adj. pron., the same; this very, also. *

cōnor, *l. a.*, attempt, endeavor, try. *

17. filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter. 4

m̄trimōnium, -ī [m̄ter], *n.*, marriage, wedlock, matrimony; *in m̄trimōnium dare*, to give in marriage; *in m̄trimōnium dūcere*, to marry. 2

dō, dare, dedi, datus, *a.*, give, bestow, confer; furnish, present; yield, give up; *in fugam dare*, put to flight. *

18. ille, illa, illud, *gen. illius, dat. illi, dem. adj. pron.* (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc. cf. hīc), that: *as subst.* he, she, it; that man, that woman, etc.; hīc ... ille, this ... that, the latter ... the former. *

probō, *l.* [probus, good], *a.*, consider good, approve; test, prove; show, demonstrate. *

cōnātum, -ī, *n.*, an attempt, effort, undertaking.

per-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō], *a.*, make or do thoroughly or completely; achieve, accomplish, perfect. *

racy which had generally been driven out of power

15. Aeduō: the Aedui lived west of the Sequani, between the Loire and the Saone. For their political condition at this time, see Int. 79, 80. **Diviciaci**: an ardent admirer of the Romans, whose capital he had visited. He belonged to the popular party which was favorable to Rome. This party was headed by the Druids, a priestly order wielding a powerful influence throughout Gaul. For details re-

garding them, see Intr. 72-75. **qui**: i. e. Dumnorix. **principātum**, a prominent position, largely due to his brother's influence.

16. plēbi acceptus, popular with (acceptable to) the people. **plēbi**: for case see on *Germanis* 1, 10. **ut idem cōnārētur**, to attempt the same thing, i. e. the subversion of the constitutional government and the establishment of a military rule. **cōnārētur**: for mood and tense cf. *occupāret* l. 13.

17. perfacile ... factū: English

suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitum illis regna conciliatorum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et ius iurandum dant et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

19. non [contr. fr. ne unum], not, no. *

dubius, -a, -um [duo], uncertain, doubtful. 4

20. quin [qui + ne], conj., by which not, that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but what, that, from, to; quin etiam, nay even, moreover. *

plurimum [sup. of multum], most, very much, exceedingly, especially *

21. exercitus, -us [exerceo, train], m., a trained or disciplined body of men, an army *

concilio, 1. [concilium, assembly], a., assemble or bring together; gain or win over; reconcile, conciliate. 4

22. oratio, -onis [oro, speak], f., a

speaking, speech, language; a speech, address, argument. *

fidēs, -ei [fido, confide], f., good faith, confidence; pledge, promise; assurance. *

ius iurandum, iuris iurandi [ius, right + iuro, swear], n., swearing to one's rights, an oath. *

23. per, prep. with acc., through, throughout, by means of, through the agency of, on account of: in composition, through, very, thoroughly. *

potens, -entis [pr. p. of possum], adj., powerful, influential. *

ac, see atque, 1, 7.

firmus, -a, -um, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. *

24. spero, 1. [speres, hope], a., n., hope, hope for, anticipate. *

order; *probat illis perficere conata esse perfacile factu.*

18. esse, for mood and rendering see on esse l. 7. factu: explain the use of the Supine. A. 303; B. 129; G. 436; H. 547; B. 340 2. The English idiom requires the omission of factu in translating.

19. obtenturus esset, *purposed to get control of.* What is denoted by the first or active periphrastic conjugation? How is it formed? A. 113, b, N., 129; B. XXXVIII; G. 247; H. 233; B. 115. non esse dubium, quin, *that there is no doubt that.*

20. Galliae: for case see on horum 1, 6. plurimum possent, *were the most powerful.* possent, for the mood see A. 332 g, Rem.; B.

108, d; G. 555, 2; H. 501, II 2; B. 298. copis, *resources of influence, money, etc.* For the case see A. 248 c 1; B. 90; G. 401; H. 420; B. 218. So exercitu in l. 21.

21. illis . . . conciliatorum (esse), *that he would win for them.* For the infinitive see esse l. 7, and l. 18. illis = *Castio et Dumnorigi.*

22. oratione, *by (means of) this argument.* For the case cf. copis and exercitu in the preceding clause. intersē, *to each other*; cf. 1, 4.

23. fidem, etc., *their word and oath.* regno occupato, *after they have seized the royal power (in their own lands).* For the case see on M. Messala, etc. 2, 2. tres populos: *What three nations?*

24. totius . . . sperant, *they*

4. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt; damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, 5

Orgetoria is tried for conspiracy but escapes. His sudden death.

1. **indicium**, -i [indicō, disclose], n., disclosure, information. 4. **enuntiatio**, 1. a., report, declare, disclose. *

2. **mos**, moris, m., manner, custom, way: pl. customs, morals, character. *

vinculum (vinculum), -i [vinciō, bind], n., bond, fetter, chain. *

3. **cogō**, -ere, **coegi**, **coactus** [cum + agō, lead], a., lead or bring together, collect; draw together, compress; force, compel, constrain. *

damnō, 1. [damnum, damage], a., declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 2.

poena, -ae [pūniō, punish], f., punishment, penalty. *

sequor, **sequi**, **secutus**, dep., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend. *

oportet, -ēre, -uit [opus, need], impers., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; (I, you, he, etc.) must, ought. *

4. **ignis**, -is, m., fire. *

cremō, 1. a., consume with fire, burn to ashes, burn. 2.

diēs, -ēī, m., f., day: in diēs, from day to day. *

dictiō, -ōnis [dicō, speak], f., speaking, pleading; **causae dictiō**, defense, answer to a charge. *

5. **iudicium**, -i [iūdex, judge], n., judicial proceedings, trial; judicial opinion or decision, judgment; court. *

familia, -ae [famulus, house-servant], f., the slaves of a household; vassals, dependents, retinue; household, establishment. *

decem, indecl. num., ten. *

hope that they can get control of the whole of Gaul: **tōtius Galliae potiri**: for the Genitive see A. 249, a; B. H. 228; G. 407 2 d; H. 410, V, 3; B. 212, 2. This is the only place in Caesar where *potior* takes the Gen. What is its usual construction?

1. **ea res**, this plan, viz. the conspiracy just described.

2. **moribus suis**, according to their customs. For the Ablative see A. 258, N; B. H. 287; G. 399; H. 416; B. 220 3. **ex vinculis**, in chains, i. e. while under arrest. The Roman custom allowed the accused his liberty until the judgment was rendered. **dicere**, to plead.

3. **damnatum . . . cremaretur**,

it was necessary that the punishment follow (him), if condemned, of being burned by fire. **damnatum** (supply *eum*, object of *sequi*) = a conditional clause. A. 292; B. XL, n. 4; G. 667; H. 549, 2; B. 387, b). **poenam . . . sequi** is the subject of *oportebat*.

4. The clause *ut . . . cremaretur* is in apposition with *poenam*, the subject of *sequi*. A. 332, f; G. 557; H. 501, III; B. 297, 3. **diē constituta**, on the day appointed. How is time at which or within which regularly indicated? A. 256; B. 97, a; G. 393; H. 429; B. 230, 231. **diē**, for gender see A. 73; B. 127, a; G. 64; H. 123; B. 53. **causae dictionis**, for the pleading of the case. For case of *causae* see A. 217; B. H. 54; G. 363, 2; H. 396, III; B. 200.

undique coëgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnūm numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.

6. cliēns (cluēns), -entis [cluēō, hear one's self called], *m., f.*, vassal, dependent, retainer. *
 ob-aerātus, -a, -um [aes, copper, money], held under obligations or in debt; as *subst.*, debtor. 1
 7. eōdem, *adv.* [idem *sc. locō*], to the same place, to the same point, result, end etc. *
 con-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. *
 nē, (*a.*) *conj. with subj.*, that...not, for fear that; not to; after words of danger or fear, that; (*b.*) *adv.*, not; with words of command, do not, let not, not to; nē...quidem (enclosing the expression emphasized), not even. *
 8. ē-ripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus [rapiō, seize], *a.*, wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. *
 Ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in comp.*, opposed to, to, against; ob eam (hanc) causam, for this reason; quam ob rem, wherefore. *

6. cliētēs obaerātōsque: the *clientēs* were vassals or retainers. "Some of these retainers devote themselves to their chieftain for life or death. They share all the goods of life with those to whom they have thus devoted themselves; if the chief dies a violent death, they share his fate and kill themselves with their own hands." The *obaerātōs* were those who had become slaves on account of debt.

- in-citō, 1. [cieō, rouse], *a.*, rouse, instigate, incite. *
 9. arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, objects fitted to the body; armor, arms, equipments; by *meton.*, battle, war. *
 iūs, iūris, *n.*, right (in nature and character), justice, rights; legal rights, law; authority. *
 ex-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], *a.*, follow out, exercise, assert, accomplish. 1
 10. magistrātus, -ūs [magister, master], *m.*, public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate; body of officers, government. *
 morior, mori, mortuus sum, *n.*, die. 3
 11. neque (nec), *conj. and adv.* [nē+que], and not, not, nor; neque (nec)...neque, neither...nor. *
 suspiciō, -ōnis [suspīcor, suspect], *f.*, suspicion, distrust. *
 12. mors, mortis [morior, die], *f.*, death. *
 cōn-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus [sciscō, resolve], *a.*, resolve upon, appoint, determine, decree. *

7, 8. per eōs, by their help. nē...diceret, to avoid pleading his case (in order that he might not plead his case). How is the negative clause of purpose regularly introduced? A. 317; B. 107; G. 545, 3; H. 497, II; B. 282.

9. cōnārētur, when the state attempted. For the mood after cum temporal see A. 325; B. 111, a; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2; B. 288, 289.

11. ut with the Indic. is a rela-

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētii id, *The Helvetians complete their preparations and depart.* quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt,

1. **post**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, after; behind, back, beneath, afterwards. *
- nihilō**, *adv.* [nihilum, nothing], by no means, not, none; nihilō minus, none the less. *
3. **ubi**, *adv.* [quō-bi fr. quī], (of place) in which or what place, where; (of time) whenever, when. *
- iam**, *adv.*, now (denoting immediate occurrence in ref. to the past, present or future, while nunc emphasizes the present), already, by this time, at length. *
- parō**, 1, *a.*, provide means, prepare, get ready, procure; *p. p. as adj.*, ready, prepared. *
4. **oppidum**, -i, *n.*, town; stronghold.
- duo-decim**, (xii), *indecl. num.* [decem], twelve. 2

- vicus**, -ī [cf Eng. -wick e. g. Berwick], *m.*, a collection of dwellings, hamlet, village. *
- quadringentī**, -ae, -a [quattuorcentum], four hundred. *
5. **privātus**, -a, -um [p. p. of privō, set apart], apart from publicity; private, personal, individual. *
- aedificium**, -ī [aedificō, build], *n.*, building, edifice, structure. *
- incendō**, -ere, cendi, cēnsus [candēō, shine], *a.*, set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite, rouse. *
6. **praeterquam**, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], except. 2
- portō**, 1. *a.*, carry, transport, bring. *
- combūrō**, -ere, būsī, būstus [(b)ūrō, burn], *a.*, burn completely, burn up, consume. 1

tive adverb, *as*. What part of speech is it, and how translated with the subjunctive? **quin** . . . cōnsciverit, that he decreed death to himself, i. e. committed suicide. For the clause cf. *ut* . . . cremārētur 4, 3, 4, and for the use of *quin* instead of *ut* see on *possent* 3, 20.

2. *ut* . . . exeant, to go forth. The clause *ut* . . . exeant is in apposition with *id*, cf. 4, 3, 4. The pressure upon them from the north compelled them to act.

3. **parātōs**: used as an adj. cf. 1, 1. *case*, were, for tense cf. 3, 7.

4, 5. **oppida**, strongholds: occupied in times of war. **vicōs**, settle-

ments; the *vicus* was a subdivision of the *pāgus*, forming a country community. **aedificia**: houses standing alone.

6, 7. **praeterquam**, *except*. **portātūrī erant**: form? 3, 19. **domum reditiōnis**, of returning home. **domum**: the terminal Acc. after *reditiōnis* a noun denoting action (cf *ditiōnis* 4, 4.), which governs the case as a verb. For the omission of the prep. in the Terminal Acc. with *domus* etc. see A. 258, 2, b; B. H. 76; G. 337 *fn.*; H. 880, II, 2, 1); B. 182, 1 b). **spē sublātā**: trans. by a temporal clause. *ad* . . . **subeunda**, for *enduring*, etc. For constr. cf. *ad cōsciēdas* 3, 6, and see on 1, 9.

ut, domum reditiōnis sp̄e sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mēnsū molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovicīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suis vicisque

7. domus, -ūs (-ī in loc.) dat. domū (domō), abl. domō, *r.*, house; home; native country or home. *
 reditiō, -ōnis, [re + eō, go], *r.*, a going back, returning, return. 1
 sp̄s, -eī, *r.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. *
 tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *a.*, lift or raise up, elevate; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; in *p. p.* as *adj.*, elated. *
 periculum, -ī, *n.*, experiment, trial; risk, hazard, danger. *
 8. sub-eō, ire, ivi (ī), itus (eō, go), *a.*, come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, encounter, endure. *
 mēnsis, -is [cf. metior, measure], *m.*, month. 4
 molō, -ere, -uī, -itus [mola, mill], *a.*, grind. 1
 cibārius, -a, -um [cibus, food], pertaining to food; in *neut. pl.* as *subst.*, provisions, supplies. 3

quisque, quaeque, quid (quic) que (*adj.* quodque), *gen.* cūiusque, *universal indef. pron.*, each one, each; every one, every, all. *
 9. efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *a.*, bring or carry out, carry or take away; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. *
 iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *a.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. *
 Rauricī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe on the upper Rhine. 4
 Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe on the Rhine, east of the Rauricī. 4
 Latovicī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe north of the Tulingī. 3
 10. ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *a.*, *n.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of; practice, have, enjoy; possess, show, manage. *
 cōnsilium, -ī [cf. cōnsul] *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, design, measure, plan; judgment, prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, a council. *

8. essent: for the mood of 3, 5, trium mēnsū cibāria, supplies for three months. For the Genitive see A. 215, b; B. XLIX, n. 1; G. 365; H. 396, V; B. 203, 2. Napoleon III. estimates that 8500 wagons, drawn by 36000 draught animals, were needed to transport the provisions required to feed the Helvetian host.

9. domō, from home. Read the following references and explain: (1) how the place from which is regularly expressed; (2) how it is expressed with domus; (3) what nouns are construed as domus is? A. 258,

2 a: B. 96; G. 390, 391; H. 412, II, 1; B. 229, 1. Rauricīs, etc. German tribes from the vicinity of the Rhine. See map.

10. eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, adopting (having used) the same plan. ūtor, like potior, governs the Ablative. cf. 2, 6. oppidīs ... exūstis, having burned or when they had burned, etc. The Ablative Absolute is here equivalent to a temporal clause as in l. 7, and in 2, 2. This construction is often employed because the Latin has no perfect active participle.

exūstīs. ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus *They arrange to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.* domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen

1 1. ex-ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstus [ūrō, burn], *a.*, burn up, consume. 1 ūnā, *adv.* [ūnūs, one], one with, together or along with, together, at the same time. *

Bōiī, -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful Celtic tribe of Central Gaul in modern Bourbonnais. Part migrated to northern Italy and another part to Germany. *

1 2. Nōricus, -a, -um, Norican, belonging to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps). 2 trāns-eō, ire, īvi (iī), itus [eō, go], *a., n.*, go across or over, pass, cross. *

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*, a town in Noricum now Neumarkt. 1

1 3. op-pūgnō, 1. [ob + pūgnō, fight], *a.*, fight against, fight, at-

tack, assault, storm. * re-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, take or get back, recover: sē, withdraw, retire, retreat; ad sē, take to one's self, accept, receive. *

socius, -ī [cf. sequor, follow], *m.*, companion, partner, associate; confederate, ally. *

ad-sciscō, -ere, scīvi, scītus [scīscō *insep.* of sciō, approve], *a.*, take upon acquaintance, approve; admit or receive (as *allies*). *

1. omnīnō, *adv.* [omnis], altogether, wholly, in all. *

duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, two. *

3. difficilis, -e, [dis + facilis *easy*], not easy, hard, trouble some, difficult. *

1 1, 1 2. cum iīs: should be sēcum. Why? See on suis 1, 13. Bōiōs: Celts who had been driven from Italy by the Romans in the 2nd century B. C. and who occupied no definite territory at this time. Nōrēiam: a city northeast of Aquileia, now Neumarkt in Corinthia.

1 3. receptōs . . . adsciscunt, *they admitted among their people (ad sē) and associated with themselves as confederates the Boii.* receptōs: For the perf. part. instead of a co-ordinate clause see A. 292, R; B. L. n. 8; G. 664, R 1; H. 549, 5. adsciscunt: fortensee on persuadet, 3, 10. Name the several instances of the Historical Present in this chapter.

1. erant, *there were.* The English idiom sometimes requires the use of the expletive *there* in translating the forms of *esse*. omnīnō *only.* itinera, itineribus: Caesar, contrary to English usage, frequently repeats the antecedent noun in the relative clause. Study these *itineria* on the map. quibus . . . possent, *by which they could leave home.* For the Subj. cf. *per-tinērent* 3, 3.

2, 3. Sēquanōs: for their location see on 2, 10. angustum: at the Pas de l'Écluse, thirteen miles west of Geneva. difficile: narrow, rugged, and easily held against them by a handful of men.

Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem
 5 altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent;
 alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius,
 proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum,
 quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnullis locis
 vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est pro-
 10 ximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns
 ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,

4. vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly ever, hardly, scarcely. *
 quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of quī*], by which way or road, in which direction or place, where. *
 singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one at a time, single, separate. *
 5. im-pendēō (in-), -ēre [*pendēō*, hang], *n.*, hang or be suspended over, overhang, impend, threaten. 2
 facilis, -e, [*facō* + *lis*], *adj.*, easy (to do), convenient, without difficulty, easy (generally).
 per-paucī, -ae, -a, [*paucus*, few], very few, but very few. *
 6. expeditus, -a, -um, [*p. p. of expediō*, disengage], unimpeded, free, unobstructed, light armed:

- as *subst.*, a light armed soldier. *
 7. Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, a powerful Gallic people between the Rhone and Isere. *
 8. nūper [*for novum* - *per fr. novus*, new], newly, recently, not long ago. 4
 pācō, 1. [*pāx*, peace], *a.*, make peaceful, subdue, pacify: *in p. p. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. *
 fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, *n.*, flow, run, sweep. 2
 nōn-nūllus, -a, -um [*nūllus*, none], some, several: *in pl. as subst.*, some, several. *
 9. vadum, -ī [*cf. Eng. wade*], *n.*, ford, shallow, shoal. *
 10. Genāva, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. 2

4. dūcerentur, could be drawn. For mode cf. possent, l. 2.

5. ut . . . perpaucī . . . possent, so that a very few could. Name and state the use of this *ut* clause. A. 319; B. 107, a; G. 552; H. 500; B. 284.

6. alterum: the southern route. prōvinciam: the Rhone here formed the northern boundary of the Roman province. nostram = *Rōmānam*.

7. Allobrogum: they dwelt between the Rhone, the Isere, and the Alps. nūper pācātī erant: 61 B. C. after a desperate struggle to maintain their independence.

8. nōnnullis locis, in several places. How is the Ablative of

place regularly denoted? When may the preposition be omitted with common nouns? A. 258, c, 1, 2 f, 1, 2; B. XLII, n. 1; G. 385, 388, R.; H. 425, I, 2; B. 228, 1, b), c).

9. vadō: it is stated that the Rhone can now be forded at only one point along its course from Geneva to mount Jura, namely, at the village of Russin, seven miles from the city. extrēmum: because on the northern frontier.

10. Genāva, also spelled *Genēva* and *Genua*. The word is said to come from the Celtic *gena*, mouth. Where is Geneva situated with reference to the lake and river?

11. Allobrogibus sēsē . . . per-

quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs¹⁵ erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

12. nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet. *
bonus, -a, -um, *comp.* melior, *sup.* optimus, good, beneficial, profitable, well disposed, (*with animō*) friendly; *as subst.*, bonum, -ī, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; boni, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. *
videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus, *a.*, see, examine, understand, see to, take care; *in pass.* seem, appear, seem good or proper, seem best. *
13. **ex-istimō** 1. [*aestimō*, compute], *a.*, estimate, reckon, think, consider. *
vel, *conj.* [*imper.* of volō, *lit.* choose], or rather, or, even; **vel** ... **vel**, either ... or. *
vis, vis, *r.*, force, might, energy, power; violence, severity; influence, weight; quantity, supply. *
eō, ire, ivī(ii), itūrus, *n.*, go, proceed, march, pass. *
pator, pati, passus sum, *a.*, *n.*, bear, endure, suffer, permit, allow. *

15. **ripa**, -ae, *r.*, bank (*of a stream*). *
con-veniō, -īre, vēni, ventus [*veniō*, come], *a.*, *n.*, come together, assemble, convene, meet; come to, arrive; agree, to be agreed upon, be convenient or suitable. *
16. **V.**, *abbrev.* for quīntus, -a, -um [*quinque*], fifth. 4
Kal., *abbrev.* for Kalendae, -ārum, *r.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month, when the Calendar of the month was proclaimed by the pontifex to the assembled people. 1
Apr. or April, *abbrev.* for Aprilis, -e [*aperiō*, open], *adj.*, of April, April. 2
L., *abbrev.* for Lucius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.
A. *abbrev.* for Aulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. 1
Gabinius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B. C. 1

suāsūrōs ... existimābant, they thought they would persuade the Allobroges. Allobrogibus: for case see on civitātī 2, 4. persuāsūrōs: sc. esse, which is generally omitted in the future Infīn. Why Infīn? see on duxerunt esse 3, 7.

12. bonō animō, of a kindly spirit. For the Ablative see A. 251; B. H. 98; G. 400; H. 419, II; B. 224. What other case is used to denote quality? Cf. 5, 8.

13. coāctūrōs (*esse*), would compel. See persuāsūrōs above. paterentur: for mood cf. possent

l. 5. suōs: whose? Cf. 1, 13.

14. omnibus rēbus comparātis, when (after) everything had been made ready. Constr? Cf. 2, 2.

16. a. d. v. Kal. Apr: March 28, but the calendar was in a state of great confusion. a. d. v. (= ante diem quintum) grew to be a fixed form of expression, and must be treated as an indeclinable noun. Here it is a predicate nominative after erat. B. LIV, n. 1. For the details of the reckoning of time by the Romans see A. 376; G. p. 491; H. 644; B. 371. Pisōne ... cōsulibus: in 58 B. C. Constr? 2, 2.

7. Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per *Caesar delays them by pre-
texts.* prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci et, quam māximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ūteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae
5 tōti quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīū

1. Caesar, -aris, m., (1), Caius Julius Caesar, conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries (2), Lucius Julius Caesar, a kinsman and lieutenant of the former. *
nūntiō, 1. [nūntius], a., announce, send news, report, make known. *
2. mātūrō, 1. [mātūrus, ripe], a., n., ripen, bring to maturity; quicken, hasten, accelerate. 4
3. urbs, urbis, f., city; esp. the city (Rome). *
4. ūterior, -ius, comp. adj. [ūtrā, beyond], beyond, farther, more remote, ulterior. *
per-veniō, -ire, venī, ventus [veniō, come], n., come through; come to, arrive at, reach; attain

- to, come into possession of. *
5. miles, -itis, m., soldier; private [opp. to imperātor], infantry (opp. to equitēs): mīlitēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. *
imperō, 1. [in + parō, procure], a., n., make requisition upon, demand from, enjoin or levy upon, command. *
 6. legiō, -ōnis [legō, choose], f. a chosen number, a levy; a legion. *
pōns, -ontis, m., bridge. *
 7. re-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus [scindō, cleave], a., cut away or down, break up, destroy. *
adventus, -ūs [veniō, come], m., coming to, arrival, approach. *

1. Caesari: in the vicinity of Rome where after retiring from the office of consul in the beginning of 58 B. C. he had been busy in making his preparations to leave for his provincial government.

1, 2. id this fact, viz. eōs cōnārī, that they were planning, etc. nūntiātum esset: for mode cf. 4, 9. ab urbe, from (near) the city, not ex urbe, because he could not be in the city while invested with the military authority of proconsul. What were Caesar's provinces? What political object had he in securing them?

3. quam . . . itineribus, by forced marches (by as great marches as possible): force of quam with the superl. 3, 3. According to Plutarch, Caesar reached his desti-

nation on the eighth day, after leaving Rome.

4, 5. ūteriōrem = trānsalpinam, beyond the Alps from Rome. The valley of the Po was called Gallia Cisalpina, or Gaul on this side of the Alps, i. e. toward Rome. prōvinciae . . . numerum impērat, he levies upon the entire province: for the Dative (prōvinciae) and Accusative (numerus) see A. 227, f; G. 345; H. 384, II; B. 187 1. How was the levy conducted? See Int. 84.

6. legiō: the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. It was probably not at Geneva then, but was sent there at once. For legion, see Int. 86. pontem probably a bridge of boats. Why did Caesar order it to be destroyed?

certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine¹⁰ ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi fa-

8. certus, -a, -um [for crētus, p. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed: certiōrem facere, to inform. *

lēgātus, -ī [lēgō, despatch, delegate], m., one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. *

mittō, -ere, misi, missus, a., send, send off, let go, despatch; hurl, discharge. *

9. Nammēius, -ī, m., a noble Helvetian, sent as ambassador to Caesar. 1

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a noble of the Helvetii. 1

prīnceps, -ipis [primus, + capiō], m., taking the first place; chief,

most prominent, principal; as subst., chief or principal person, leader. *

10. sine, prep. with abl., without. *

11. ūllus, -a, -um, gen., ūllius [for ūnulus, dim. of ūnus], any one, a single, any: as subst., any one, anybody. *

maleficiū, -ī [malum, evil + faciō], n., doing evil, mischief, harm, injury. 4

12. nūllus, -a, -um, gen., nūllius [nō + ūllus], not any, none, no: as subst., no one, none. *

voluntās, -tātis [volō, wish], f., willingness, good-will, desire, will, consent, approval. *

8, 9. certiōrēs . . . factī . . . sunt, were informed (were made more certain). civitātis: for case cf. Gallicae 3, 20.

10. quī dicerent, to say (who were to say), quī = ut eī (ii). What words introduce the Relative clause of purpose? A. 317, 2; B 107, b; G. 545, 1; H. 497, 1; B. 282 2. * sibi esse in animō, it was to them (the Helvetii) in mind, or better, they had in mind, which in direct form becomes: we have in mind (we intend). sibi: for the dative of Possession see A. 281; B. H. 66; G. 349; H. 387; B. 190. esse, for mood see A. 336, 2, p. 371; G. 650; H. 523, 1; B. 314, 1. The subject of esse is the clause iter . . . facere l. 11.

11, 12. facere, as subject of esse (see note above) is used as a noun (cf. perficere 3, 18) and represents an accusative; in the direct

form (see foot note) its form is not changed but it represents what case? habērent: for mood see A. 336, 2 ad fin. p. 371; G. 650; ad fin.; H. 524; B. 314, 1. Its subject is 'they,' referring to the Helvetii, which in the direct form becomes 'we,' rogāre: sc. sē (indirect 'they,' direct 'we') as subject, and for mood cf. esse l. 10. Its object is the following clause ut . . . liceat. ēius: 'his' (i. e. Caesar's) as they are speaking to Caesar becomes in the direct form 'your.' id: change to hōc in the direct form. sibi: for case A. 227 e, 1; G. 346; H. 384; B. 187. (1); for translation cf. sibi l. 10.

13. facere: for mood cf. facere l. 11; what case does it represent here? liceat: for mood cf. occupāret 3, 13. The change to a primary tense from a secondary (cf. habē-

*TO THE TEACHER: The speech of the ambassadors follows in Orātiō Obliqua. The pupil has had the general uses of moods, tenses, and pro-

cere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētīis pulsum et
 15 sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque

13. licet, -ēre, licuit (licitum est), *impers.*, it is lawful, I have permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut liceat, to ask permission. *

memoria, -ae [memor, mindful], *f.*, recollection, memory. *
 teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *a.*, hold, keep, retain, have; hold in, restrain, bind. *

Cassius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name: Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B. C., slain by the Tigrurini in battle. 3

14. oc-cidō, -ere, cidi, cīsus [cēdō, cut, slay], *a.*, cut or strike down, destroy; cut off, kill, slay. *

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *a.*, beat, strike, push, drive; drive out, expel, repulse. *

15. sub, *prep. with acc. (with verbs of motion) and abl.*, under, near to, just by, at the foot of; (*of time*) about, just at, during; *in comp. (subs-), adv.*, under, up or away (*from beneath*), secretly, in succession, slightly. *

iugum, -ī [iungō, join], *n.*, yoke; ridge, crest. *

con-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], *a., n.*, go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield. *

putō, *l. a.*, cleanse; clear up, adjust; reckon, estimate, think. *

rent l. 12) is made for greater liveliness and is called *repraesentatiō*. **memoriā tenēbat**, remembered (was holding in memory), as a phrase of *knowing* is followed by the indirect discourse. **Cassium**: in 107 B. C. Cassius lost his army and his own life in a battle with the Tigrurini, one of the four Helvetic cantons or tribes. This tribe joined the host of the Cimbri and Teutones which threatened Rome with destruction, but was finally annihilated by Caius Marius (see Int. 60-64).

14. The Infinitive represents the time present past or future, as compared with the time of the verb upon which it depends. Thus the perfect infinitives **occisum (esse)**, **pulsum (esse)**, **missum (esse)**, represent past action completed before the time of the governing verb, (*memoriā tenēbat*) and hence must be rendered in English by the plu-

perfect Indicative: *Caesar remembered that Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain etc.* In the same way the auxiliary *would*, the past tense of *will*, must be used in translating the future Inf. **temperātūros (esse)** l. 17. A. 288; B. 119; G. 281; H. 537; B. 270.

15. **sub iugum**, under the yoke. The *iugum* was made of three spears, two being planted in the ground and the third being fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass. **concēdendum (esse) nōn putābat**, *did not think it* (the request of the Helvetians) *ought to be allowed*. Explain the formation of the passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation. What ideas are expressed by this construction? A. 113 d, l. N; B. LVII, 5; G. 251; H. 234 B. 837, 7, b), 1).

15-17. **neque... existimābat**? was Caesar correct in this opinion?

nouns explained in his introductory book. These may now be reviewed as a whole from his grammar (A. 336 in full, 338, 339; G. 648-654, 660; H.

hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. re-20 verterentur.

16. in-imīcus, -a, -um [amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile: as *subst.*, an enemy (*personal*). *
 facultās, -tātis [old *adj.*, *facul* = *facilis*, easy], *F.*, ability, power, privilege, opportunity; resources, means. *
 17. temperō, 1. [tempus], *a.*, mix in due proportion, qualify, temper; restrain or control one's self, refrain, check, restrain. 2 iniuriā, -ae [iūs, right], *F.*, wrong, injustice, injury, outrage. *
 18. tamen, *adv.* (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however. *
 spatium, -i, *n.*, space, distance, extent, interval, period, length (of time or space). *
 inter-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], *n.*, go or come between, lie between, intervene, pass; occur or be between, happen. *
 dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till,

- until; provided that, if only. *
 19. re-spondeō, -ēre, spondi, spōnsus [spondeō, promise], *a.*, make return; reply, answer. *
 dē-liberō, 1. [libra, balance], *a.*, weigh well, consider carefully. 3.
 20. sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus [sub+emō, take], *a.*, take away, take, assume, employ, inflict, spend. *
 sī, *conj.*, if; to see if, whether: quod sī, but if, now if. *
 quis, quae, quid (quod), (1), *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (2), *indef. pron.* (after sī, nisi, num, nē), anyone, anything, any; somebody, some, something. *
 Idūs, -uum, *F., pl.*, the Ides, the time of the full moon; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of other months. 1.
 volō, velle, volui, *a. n.*, wish, will, be willing, consent. *
 re-vertō, -ere, verti, *n.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect ten-

16. inimicō animō: cf. bonō animō, 6, 12. datā facultāte, when the privilege was granted.

17. faciundī older spelling of fuciundī.

18, 19. dum . . . convenirent,

until the soldiers should muster. When does dum take the subjunctive? A. 323; B. 111; G. 572; H. 519 II, 2; B. 293, III, 2. diem, time. dēliberandum: form? 2, 14.

20. sī . . . reverterentur: no-

522-526; B. 319-322. or the pupil may study the various uses one by one as they occur in the text with the help of the notes given above. It is suggested that the loose and ambiguous indirect English form be forbidden in the class room, and that the pupil be required to translate Caesar's indirect discourse into English direct, and also to give the direct form in Latin. As a help we give here the direct form in Latin of the passage above; Nōbis est in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habēmus nullum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte hōc nōbis facere liceat.

8. Interea eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvétis dividit, milia passuum XVIII mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perducit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit,

*ses and re-vertor, -ī, versus sum, used in the imperfect tenses [vertō, turn], n., turn back or again; return. **

1. *inter-eā, adv., meantime, meanwhile, in the interim. **

3. *in-fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxus [fluō, flow], n., flow in or into, empty into. **

5. *XVIII (= undēviginti), nineteen.*

*mūrū, -ī [cf. moenia], m., a wall, esp. a wall for defense. **

*altitudō, -inis [altus, high, perpendicular], f., height; depth. 4 pēs, pedis, m., the foot; a foot (as a measure); pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. **

sēdecim, indecl. num. [sex + decem], sixteen. 2

6. *fossa, -ae [p. p. fem. of fodiō, dig], f., trench, ditch.*

*per-ducō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [ducō, lead], a., lead through or along, conduct, convey; bring over, carry along, construct, extend. **

*opus, operis, n., work, labor; military works, fortifications; a work (of art, literature, or architecture); naturā et opere, by nature and art; magnō opere, adv. phrase, much, greatly, earnestly; tantō opere, so much, so greatly; quantō opere, how much, how greatly. **

*praesidium, -ī [praeses, guard], n., guard, garrison; safeguard, defence; redoubt, stronghold. **

*dis-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], a., place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. **

tice that in this complex sentence both verbs are in the subjunctive. As the first (*vellent*) follows *sī*, the second (*reverterentur*) must be the principal verb. What kinds of sentences have in indirect discourse their principal verbs in the subjunctive? A. 338, 339; G. 651, 652; H. 523, II. 1, III; B. 315, 316. Of these two kinds of sentences which does the punctuation show this to be? What mood therefore will *reverterentur* take in the direct form? What mood and tense will *vellent* take? *quid, anything*. When are the forms of *quis* indefinite? A. 105 d; B. LVIII, 6; G. 315; H. 455, 1; E. 91 5. *ad, about*.

1. *eā legiōne*: see on *legiō*, 7, 6.

2, 3. *ā lacū... ad montem*

Iūram. See map, p. 95.

4. *milia*: for case cf. 2, 17.

5. *XVIII = 17½* English miles following the winding of the stream. *mūrū*: sc. *in longitūdinem*. *mūrū... fossamque*: The fortifications consisted of *redoubts* and a 'wall' and 'ditch' where the banks were not high and steep enough. There are only five points on the south bank where defensive works would be needed. The wall was made by digging down the bank so as to present a steep slope sixteen feet high. The 'ditch' was simply the depression at the foot of this slope, formed by throwing the earth away from the slope toward the river. The top of the 'wall' was defended by a row of

castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire cōnā-

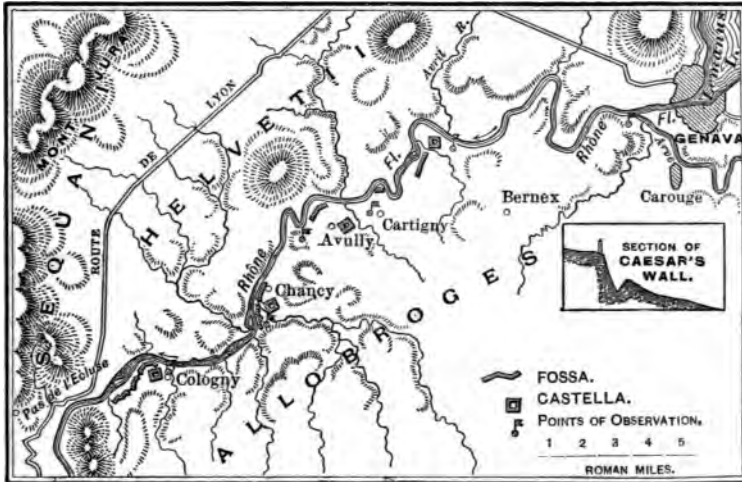
7. **castellum**, -ī [castrum, fort],
n., fortress, redoubt, outwork. *
com-mūniō, 4. [mūniō, fortify],
a., fortify strongly, intrench. 3
quō, *final conj.* (usually with *com-*
paratives) [abl. of quī], in order

that, that; quō minus, that not,
from (*with subjunctive after verbs*
of hindering etc.). *
invitus, -a, -um, against one's
wish or will, unwilling, reluctant;
sē invitō, against his will. *

vāllī or stakes, behind which the
Roman soldiers fought. (see ver-
tical section of mīrus and fossa on
plan below).

6. **opere perfectō**: it is esti-
mated that three thousand men

prohibēre possit, the more easily
to check them. For quō (=ut eō)
introducing a purpose clause see A.
317, b; B. 107, c; G. 545, 2; H. 497,
II, 2; B. 282 2, a. sē invitō, with-
out his (Caesar's) consent. For the



Caesar's Fortifications on the Rhone.

could do this in three days. **dis-**
pōnit, stations at different points.

7. **castella**, redoubts, placed at
intervals along the whole line of
works, so that a sufficiently strong
force could be concentrated at any
threatened point. Caesar did not
have troops enough to man the for-
tifications at all points. quō....

Abl. Abs. with Adjectives see A. 255
a; B. 98; G. 409; H. 431, 4; B. 227

1. **cōnārentur**: Notice that the
clause sī....cōnārentur interrupts
the purpose clause quō...possit,
upon which it depends and for the
mood of the dependent verb see A.
342; B. 99 d; G. 629; H. 529, II;
B. 324.

rentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum revertentur, negat se omnino et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et, si vim facere conentur, prohibitorum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe deiectionis, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdum, saepius noctum, si sperrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatum destiterunt.

9. **veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus, n.,** come, arrive, go, happen. *
negō, 1. [nē + aiō, say], a., n., say no, deny, refuse, say . . . not. 5
 10. **exemplum, -i [eximō, take out], n.,** selection; pattern, model; precedent, example; warning, punishment. 3
 12. **os-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [ob + tendō, stretch], a.,** stretch towards or in the way; present, show, point out, declare. *
dē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], a., hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. *
nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat; **nāvis longa,** galley, ship of war; **nāvis oneraria,** a transport. *
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctus, a., join or unite together, join, yoke, attach, connect. 5
ratis, -is, f., raft; bark, vessel. 3
 13. **complūrēs, -a [plūs, more],** several, many; a great many. *
 14. **nōn-numquam (nunquam), [numquam, never], adv.,** sometimes. 4

- inter-diū, adv.,** during the day, by day. 3
noctū, adv. [nox, night], by night. *
 15. **per-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [rumpō, break], n., a.,** break through, force one's way or passage. *
mūnitio, -ōnis [mūniō, fortify], f., fortifying, fortifications, works, intrenchments. *
 16. **con-cursus, -ūs [cursus, running], m.,** a running together, rush, onset; collision, encounter; attack. *
tēlum, -ī, n., a weapon for fighting at a distance; missile, dart, javelin. *
repellō, -ere, repulī (reppulī), repulsus [rē + pellō, beat, drive], a., beat or drive back, repel, repulse. *
cōnātus, -ūs [cōnor, attempt], m., attempt, trial, effort. 1
dē-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus [sistō, stand], n., stand or leave off; abandon, cease, give up. *

8. **possit:** the Historical Present (*communit* l. 7) is here followed by a secondary tense (*cōnārentur*) and also by a primary tense (*possit*). A. 287 e; B. 268, 3. H. 495, II.
 9, 10. **negat se . . . posse he says . . . that he cannot.** For the infn. *posse* cf. *rogāre*, 7, 12.

11. **cōnentur:** for mood of *velent* 7, 20. What mood and tense in direct form? **prohibitorum:** what must be supplied? See on *persuāsūrōs* 6, 11.
 12. **ea spē deiectionis, disappointed in this expectation.** For the Ablative see on 1, 14. **navibus, ratibus:**

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā ^{The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.} Sēquanīs invitīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātore, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitate Orgetorīgis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat, et

1. re-liquō, -ere, liquī, lictus [linquō, leave], *a.*, leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. *

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route, journey. *

2. propter [for propiter fr. prope, near], (1) *adv.* near, at hand. (2) *prep. with acc.*, near, close to; on account of, because of, for; by means of, through. *

angustiae, -arum [angustus, narrow], *f. pl.*, narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. *

3. spontis, *gen.* and sponte, *abl.* [obs. *nom. spōns*], *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily. 5

4. dē-precātor [dēprecor, avert

by entreaty], *m.*, mediator, intercessor. 2

5. impetrō, 1. [patrō, accomplish], *a.*, obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request); impetrāre ā (ab), gain permission from, persuade; si nōn impetrāret, if he failed to obtain his request. *

grātiā, -ae [grātus, pleasing], *f.*, favor, good will, gratitude; esteem, influence, popularity; grātias agere, thank. *

largitiō, -ōnis [largior, give freely], *f.*, giving freely, liberality. 1

6. amicus, -a, -um [amo], *adj.*, friendly, well disposed; *praesidium* (devoted); *as noun, m.*, a friend, an ally. *

for case and rendering cf. 2, 2.

14, 15. sī . . . possent, to see whether they could, etc. For this use of sī (not conditional) see A. 334, f; G. 460, b; H. 529, II 1, N. 1; B. 300, 3.

16. repulsī: were repulsed and; for the translation see on receptōs, 5, 13. cōnātū: for case cf. spē, 1. 12.

1. ūna via, only the way.

2. Sēquanīs invitīs, against the Sequanians' will (if the Sequani should refuse), cf. sē invitō, 8, 7.

What was the attitude of the Helvetians toward the Romans? angustias: see on angustum, 6, 2.

3. his: for case cf. Allobrogibus 6, 11. cum . . . nōn possent, since they could not, etc. What construction follows cum causal? A. 326; B. 111, c; G. 586; H. 517; B. 286 2.

4. Dumnorīgem: see on 3, 14. eō dēprecātore, by his mediation (with him as their advocate); the Abl. Abs. denoting means. The noun ending -tor (-sor) denotes the agent or doer.

6. Helvētiis: for case cf. 1, 10.

cupiditate rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat.

10 Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētīi, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trāseant.

Caesar brings up his forces to oppose their passage.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētīiis esse in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat

8. novus, -a, -um, new, novel, fresh: rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; novissimus, -a, -um, sup., latest, last: āgmen (the rear). *

studeō, -ēre, -ui, n., be eager or zealous, desire, strive after, pay attention to. *

9. beneficium, -i [bene, well + faciō], n., well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. *

ob-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [stringō, tie], a., bind, hold (under obligations). 2

10. ita-que [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. *

11. obses, -idis [ob + sedeō, sit], m., f., hostage; pledge, security. *

1. re-nūntiō, 1. [nūntius], a., bring back word, bring news, report; proclaim, declare. *

3. Santoni, -ōrum (ēs, -um), m., a Gallic tribe between the Loire and Garonne. 4

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., the people of Tolōsa in Gallia Provincia, modern Toulouse. 2

4. intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [inter + legō, choose, select], a., select or distinguish between; understand, know, ascertain, perceive. *

8. novīs . . . studēbat, was eager for a change of government. For the Dat. cf. his, l. 8. quam: see on 3, 8.

9. habēre obstrictās, to have under obligations (bonds).

10, 11. rem = lēgatiōnem. ā . . . impetrat ut patiantur, gets the Sequani to permit. For the Substantive clause of Result as object see A. 332; G. 553; H. 501, II; B. 297 1. Contrast the use of ut . . . possent 2, 12. obsidēsque . . . dent, and to exchange hostages.

12. Sēquanī, Helvētīi: sc. dent obsidēs from the line above. nē . . . prohibeant, ut trāseant: for mode cf. 4, 8; 3, 5.

1. renūntiātur: Caesar kept himself informed of the movements of the Helvetii. See Int. to Bk. I. Helvētīiis . . . animō: for cases and translation see sibi . . . animō, 7, 10. esse, subject of renūntiātur, cf. 1, 15. What is the subject of esse?

3. facere, cf. facere 7, 11. nōn longē: about forty miles. Tolōsātium: they were clients of the Romans.

4. quae civitās (= gēns, populus): trans. a tribe which. prōvinciā see on 1, 7. Trace on the map the boundaries of the Roman province, and read Int. 61, 62.

māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futurum, ut hominēs belli-
cōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque
frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī,
quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefecit; ipse in Ītaliā
māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit

5. **bellicōsus**, -a, -um [bellum, war], full of war, warlike. 3

7. **frūmentārius**, -a, -um [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; res, supply of grain, provisions; (loca) productive.

8. **T.**, abbreviation for Titus, a Roman praenomen. 2

Labiēnus, -i, m., A Roman family name; Titus Attius Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War

he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45, B. C. *

praeficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō, make], a., make or place before or over, put in command. *

Ītalia, -ae, [for **Vitalia**, the land of oxen], f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul. *

9. **ibi**, adv., there, in that place. *
cōnscrībō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus [scribō, write], a., write together in a list, register; levy, enroll, enlist. *

5. **māgnō** ... **futūrum** (*esse*), that it would be (attended) with great danger to the province. For the infn. cf. 3, 7; for its subject see on *fiēbat* 2, 12. **prōvinciae**, genitive, not dative.

6. **populī** ... **inimicōs**, enemies of the Roman people. For the Gen. see A.234 d,1; G.359 R.1; B.200; H.391 II, 4; What case would we expect with *inimicōs* if not used substantively? Cf. *Helvētīs* 9, 6. **locīs patentibus**: the broad valley of the Garonne, the most fertile part of the Province.

7. **eī mūnitiōnī**, he placed over (put in command of) that fortification. For the Dative see on 2, 5.

8. **T. Labiēnum**. A very efficient officer, and one in whom Caesar reposed great confidence. As tribune in the year 63 B. C., he was very useful to Caesar and was a close confidant of the latter's political schemes. He basely deserted his patron when the Civil war broke out, and was killed at the battle of Munda, 45 B. C. **lēgātum**: see Int. 94,95. **Ītaliā**, i. e. Cisalpine Gaul

which was one of the provinces under his proconsular charge. What were the others? See Int. 23, 24.

9. **māgnīs itineribus**, by forced marches. **duās**: the XIth and XIIth. **cōnscrībūt**, levied. See Int. 84!



Imperātor. Lēgātus.

This levy was made on Caesar's own authority. See Int. 32.

10 et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ūteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quinq̄ue legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis
15 pulsīs ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiorū ūteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit:

10. **circum** [circus, a circle], *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, about; among. *
- Aquilēia**, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul, still retaining its ancient name. *
- hiemō**, 1. [hiems, winter], *n.*, pass the winter, winter. *
- hibernus**, -a, -um, of or belonging to winter, cold, winter; *in n. pl. as subst.*, hiberna, -ōrum (sc. castra), winter camp, winter quarters. *
- ēdūcō**, -ere, **dūxī**, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead out or forth, draw forth. *
11. **Alpēs**, -ium, *f., pl.*, the Alps mountains, separating Italy from Switzerland, France and Austria.*
12. **quinque**, *indecl. num.*, five. *
- Ceutrōnēs**, -um, *m.*, (1), a Belgic tribe in Western Flanders. (2), a tribe of the Province in Savoy

- about modern Centron. 2
13. **Grāioceli**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps. 1
- Caturigēs**, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Province whose name survives in modern Chorges. 1
- superior**, -ius, *adj.* [comp. of superior, above], upper, preceding, higher, superior; previous, earlier, former. *
15. **Ocelum**, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Graioceli in Piedmont, now Oula or Usseau. *
- citerior**, -ius, *adj. comp.*, [cis, on this side], nearer, hither; **Gallia Citerior** = (Cisalpinga), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. *
16. **Vocontii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Isere and Durance. 2
- septimus**, -a, -um, [septem, seven], *ord. num.*, seventh. *

10. **trēs**: the VIIth VIIIth and IXth. **hibernis**: See Int. 139.

11. **quā**, where there was etc., or by the shortest road there was etc. **proximum iter**: up the Po to Turin, through Ocelum over Mont Genevre to Lyons on the Rhone. **ūteriōrem Galliam**; the *Prōvincia Rōmāna* or *Gallia Trānsalpina*.

12. **cum...legiōnibus**, with these five legions. For the case see A. 248a; B. LXVIII; G. 392; H. 419, I; B. 222. cf. *sēcum* 8, 1. **Ceutrōnēs**, **Grāioceli**, **Caturigēs**: Alpine tribes in the territory of modern Savoy and Provence.

13. **locis** etc., seizing the heights.

14. **complūribus**, etc.: English order: **his pulsīs complūribus proeliis**. When the attribute of one pair of words comes between another word and its attribute (a b A B) the arrangement is called interlocked. Here the order is made more artificial for reversing the positions of the noun and attribute (a B A b).

15. **Ocelō**: Usseau, southwest of Turin. **extrēmum**, farthest (point, place, or town.)

16. **ūteriōris prōvinciae**: see on line 11.

inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et finēs Sē-
quanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum
finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur.

The Helvetians invade the country of the Aedui who implore Caesar's protection.

Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs

17. inde, *adv.* [im loc. fr. is, +de], from that place, from there, thence. *

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe west of the Rhone, capital Lugdunum, now Lyons. 3

18. extrā [contr. fr. exterā, *so. parte*]. *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. *

19. primus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*

(*comp. prior*), first; foremost, chief. *

2. trādūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [trāns, across], *a.*, lead or bring across, lead over, transfer, convey; draw or win over. *

3. populor, *l. a.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. 5

4. dēfendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus, *a.*, keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect; support, maintain. *

18. exercitum dūcit: Caesar was only about two months in going to Cisalpine Gaul, raising two legions there, forcing his way across the Alps through a hostile region and reaching Lyons, ready to confront the Helvetii. Trace on the map his route throughout and locate carefully all the places mentioned. extrā prōvinciam. In going outside of the Province, as in the levying of the troops, Caesar acted under a general commission to defend the frontier of the Province. See Int. 24. The situation among the Aedui, Sequani and other Gallic tribes was such as to compel Caesar to drive back the Helvetii, or the Romans would lose all their influence in Celtic Gaul and Ariovistus, the German king, would become supreme there. The extraordinary efforts of Caesar to hurry forward troops from Italy show how serious he thought the

situation was.

1. angustiās: where were these narrows?

3. pervēnerant: they seem to have followed the right bank of the Rhone about half-way to its junction with the Saone and then to have headed in a northwesterly direction for the Saone. The whole distance is stated to be not more than 98 miles. populābantur: for what reasons?

4, 5. suaque, and their property. The neuter plural of adjectives is often employed to denote the abstract idea of things in general. possent: for the mode see on 9, 3. rogātum, to ask. With what verbs is the Acc. of the Supine employed? What idea is denoted? A. 302; B. 128; G. 435; H. 546; B. 340, 1. ita sē eto., *sc. quī dixerunt* or some expressions of saying.

5 ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem
10 faciunt, sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum

6. rogō, 1. a., n., ask, question, request; propose (iūs); bring forward (magistrātum); administer the oath to (militēs). *

auxilium, -i[s] [augeō, increase, promote], n., help, assistance, aid; in pl. auxiliary troops, reinforcements. *

ita, adv., so, thus, in this way; as follows; ita...ut, even as, just as; ut...ita, in proportion to, although...yet.

6. mereō and mereor, 2. a., deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn. * paene, adv., nearly, almost. *

cōnspectus, -ūs [cōspiciō, describe], m., perception, observation; sight, view, presence. *

7. vāstō, 1. [vāstus, waste]. a., lay waste, ravage, make desolate, devastate. *

liberī, -ōrum [liber, free], m., the free members of the household (as opp. to slaves); children. *

servitūs, -ūtis [servus, a slave], f., slavery, servitude. *

ab-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dū-

cō, lead], a., lead away, draw, or carry off, withdraw. *

8. ex-pūgnō, 1. [pūgnō, fight], a., take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. *

dēbeō, 2. [contr. for dē-habeō], a., n., have from (one's possessions) and hence, owe, be bound or under obligations; be due, ought. *

Ambarri, -ōrum, m., clients of the Aedui, between the Saone and Rhone. 2

9. necessārius, -a, -um, needful, requisite, necessary; necessāria, -ōrum, necessities (of life), supplies; necessārius, -i, kinsman, friend, client, patron. *

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; as subst., kinsman, relative. 4

10. dēpopulor 1. dep. a., lay waste, ravage; sweep away, destroy. *

11. hostis, -is, m., f., stranger, foreigner; (public) enemy, foe; pl., the enemy. *

6. meritōs esse: an appeal to the friendly relations that had long existed between the two peoples. Sixty years before, the Aedui had been styled 'socii populī Rōmāni'. in cōnspectū, before the eyes.

7. nostrī, (gen. sing. with exercitūs=Rōmāni.), used because the oratiō obliqua is addressed to Romans by a Roman.

8. Ambarri: the branch of the Aedui around or near the Arar or Saone. They dwelt in the angle

formed by the Saone and Rhone. Bibracte, the center of the Druidical religion and Noviodunum (Nevers), an important commercial town, were the chief cities.

9. necessārii, close friends (through common interest). cōn-sanguineī kinsmen.

10. dēpopulātīs agris, since their fields were laid waste. The perfect participle in a number of deponents is used passively.

11. trāns Rhodanum: north

vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūptīs in 15 Santonōs Helvētīū pervenirent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduō-
rum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrē-
dibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem flu-

While crossing the Arar Caesar destroys Tigrinus, the rear guard of the Helvetians.

12. possessiō, -ōnis, [possidō, take possession of], *f.*, taking possession of, seizing; possession, occupation; a possession, property. 5

fuga, -ae, *f.*, running away, flight.*

13. dē-mōnstrō, 1. [mōnstrō, show], *a.*, point out, declare precisely, show, prove, explain. *

praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, along by, beyond, contrary to; except, besides. *

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom, ground, soil;

agri solum, the bare ground. 4 nihil (nīl) [cf. nihilum fr. nē + hilum, a whit, anything], *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing; *acc. as adv.*, not at all, in no way *

14. ex-spectō, 1. [spectō, look at], *a.*, look out, wait; look out for, await, expect; anticipate, apprehend. *

15. statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [sta-

tus, position], *a.*, put in position, set up, place; determine, judge, resolve; take measures. * fortūna, -ae [fors, chance], *f.*, luck, chance; good fortune, success; property, estate. * cōn-sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus [sūmō, take], *a.*, take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. *

1. Arar, -aris (*acc. -im*), *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul rising in the Vosges and emptying into the Rhone, the modern Saone. 5

2. in-crēdibilis, -e [crēdibilis, worthy of belief], unworthy of belief, unlikely, extraordinary. *

3. lēnitās, -tātis [lēnis, smooth], *f.*, smoothness, gentleness. 1

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. * uter, utra, utrum, (*gen. utrius*) which of the two, which. 4

of the upper course of the stream.

13, 14. sibi . . . reliquī, that they (direct we) have nothing left, except the soil of the field. sibi: 7, 10. reliqui: used substantively and partitive gen. with nihil, lit. nothing of a remainder. nōn . . . expectandum (esse), that he must not wait (it was not to be waited by him). For the verb form see on 7, 15.

15. sibi: for the case see A. 232; B. LXXI; G. 355; H. 388; B. 189. How is the agent expressed with other parts of the verb?

16. Santonōs: already mentioned in 10, 3. pervenirent: for mode see on convenirent 7, 19.

3. lēnitāte, with remarkable gentleness, as contrasted with the swift turbid waters of the Rhine and the rivers of Italy. For the ablative see A. 248; B. 88; G. 399; H. 419, III; B. 220. (1), (2). What may be used instead of the adjective? in . . . fluat, in which direction it flows. For the mood see A. 334; B. 114; G. 467; H. 529, I; B. 300. Cf 8, 15.

at iudicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus
 5 iūctis trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior
 factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētios id flūmen
 trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam
 esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus
 ad eam pārtem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.
 10 Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus māgnam partem
 eōrum concidit: reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť atque in

4. iudicō, 1. [iudex, a judge], *a.*,
 pass judgment judge, decide, de-
 termine. *
- linter, lintris, *f.*, *m.*, skiff, river or
 ferry boat. 3
5. explōrātōr, -ōris, *m.*, a scout. *
7. quartus, -a, -um [quattuor,
 four], fourth. *
- citrā [cis, on this side], *adv.* and
prep. with *acc.*, this side, within. *
8. vigilia, -ae [vigil, awake], *f.*,
 wakefulness, watching; watch,
 guard, sentinels; *the Romans di-*
vided the night into four watches. *
- castrum, -i, *n.*, fort, stronghold: *in*
pl., castra, castrōrum, fortified
 camp, camp. *
10. im-pediō, 4. [in + pēs, foot],
a., entangle the feet; hamper, ob-

struct, embarrass, hinder: *in p. p.*
as adj., encumbered with bag-
 gage, burdened, hampered, hin-
 dered. *

in-opināns, -antis [opinor, sup-
 pose], not supposing, unawares. *

ag (ad) -gredior, gredī, gressus
 sum [ad + gradior, step, ad-
 vance], *a.*, *n.*, advance to or
 against, approach; assault, at-
 tack. 4

11. con-cidō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus
 [caedō, cut], *a.*, cut to pieces,
 kill, slay. 3

mandō, 1. [manus + dō, give], *a.*,
 give into one's hands; entrust,
 commit; enjoin, order, com-
 mand. *

4. possit: for mood cf. 6, 13.
 5. trānsībant: at Macon or
 north of Trevous. explōrātōrēs:
 see Int. 141.

6, 7. trēs . . . trādūxisse, *that*
the Helvetii had already conveyed
three parts (fourths) of their troops
across this river. Of the compound
 trādūxisse, the simple verb governs
 partēs, while flūmen is the object of
 trāns in composition. A. 239 2, b;
 G. 331 R. 1; H. 376; B. 179, 1.
 Ararim: for the ending -im see A.
 56 a, 1; B. 4, c; G. 57; R. 1; H. 62,
 III, 1; B. 179. reliquam esse,
 was left. The adj. *reliquus* is often
 joined with part of esse as if a par-
 ticiple.

8. dē tertiā vigiliā, *during (in*
the course of), etc. dē, in expres-
 sions of time shows that the action
 (time) is in progress. vigiliā:
 there were four watches, two before
 midnight and two after. The third
 watch lasted from midnight to
 about three a. m. legiōnibus tri-
 bus: about how many men? See
 Int. 86.

9. pervēnit: he marched North
 along the east bank of the Saone.

10. impeditōs, inopināntēs,
 (while) *unprepared (because) not*
expecting (the Romans).

11. concidit: numerous burial
 mounds, both Roman and Celtic,
 have been unearthed on the site of

proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum 15 sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātē populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea pīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam pīrīvātās

12. *silva*, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. *
- ab-dō, dere, didī, ditus [dō, give], *a.*, give or put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *
- pāgus, -i, [cf. pangō, fix], *m.*, a place with fixed boundaries; village; district, province, canton. Tigurīnus pāgus, one of the four Helvetian cantons, the country of the Tigurini, perhaps in modern Zurich. *
13. *nam*, *conj.*, for, now: introducing an explanation. *
- quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four. *
15. *interficiō*, -ere, fecī, fectus [faciō, make], *a.*, make from among; make away with, kill, destroy. *
16. *sive*, (seu) [sī, if + ve, or], *conj.*, or if, whether, if either, sive ... sive, either ... or, whether ... or. *

- cāsus, -ūs [cadō, fall], *m.*, what befalls; accident, chance, misfortune: cāsū, by chance. *
- deus, -ī, *m.*, a god, deity. *
- immortalis, -e [in- + mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. *
17. *īnsignis*, -e [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *in neut. as subst.*, mark, sign, signal, decoration. *
- calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, defeat, disaster, misfortune.
18. *per-solvō*, -ere, solvī, solūtus [solvō, loose], *a.*, loose or pay in full, discharge, pay (poenās, penalty), 1
19. *solum*, *adv.* [sōlus, only], only, merely. *
- publicus, -a, -um [for populicus fr. *populus*, people], of the state or people, common, public. *
- sed, *conj.*, but, yet (a stronger ad-versative than autem or at). *

this battle, showing that burial was performed in great haste. This battle is placed by Rüstow on the 10th of June. *mandārunt*: contracted from *mandāvērunt*. For the contraction of perfects in -āvī (also -ēvī -ōvī) see A. 128 a, 1; B. L. 7; G. 181, 1; H. 235; B. 116, 1. *silvās*: we should expect the abl. (place where) but the verb *abdidērunt* implies motion: *ran into and hid*.

12. *pāgus*: a tribe or district.
13. *omnis*, as a whole.
14. *exisset*: for mode cf. 4.
9. For the contraction of perfects

in -āvī see A. 128 a 2; B. L. 7; G. 181, 1; H. 235 1; B. 116, 1.

15. *memoriā*, in the time (not memory); for case see on *diē* 4. 4. L. Cassium: see on 7, 13. *sub iugum*: see on 7, 15.

17. *quae ... Helvētiae*, that part of the Helvetian people, which. The antecedent (*pars*) here appears only in the relative clause with the relative (*quae*) in agreement. A. 201 c; B. LXXIV; G. 616; H. 445 9; B. 251 4.

18. *populō ... intulerat*, had inflicted upon, etc. *populō*: for case

20 iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

The Helvetians, headed by Divicō, haughtily ask for peace.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātīōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum

20. *ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, a.,* avenge, chastise, punish, take vengeance on. 5

socer, socerī, m., father-in-law. 1
avus, -i, m., grandfather; ancestor. 2

2. *cōn-sequor, sequī, secūsus sum [sequor, follow], a.,* follow up, go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, succeed. *

3. *cūrō, l. [cūra, care], a.,* care for, take care, provide, arrange, cause to be done. *

4. *repentinus, -a, -um [repēns,*

sudden], sudden, unlooked for, unexpected, hasty. *

com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [moveō, move], a., move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate. *

XX (= vigintī), *indecl. num.,* twenty. *

5. *aegerrimē [aegrē, with difficulty], adv., superl.,* with the greatest difficulty. 1

7. *Divicō, -ōnis, m.,* an Helvetian chieftain. 2

Cassiānus, -a, -um [Cassius], of or with Cassius, Cassian. 1

see on 2, 5. *prīnceps . . . persolvit; first suffered punishment.* For the adverbial use of the adjective see A. 191; B. LXXIV, G. 325 R. 6; H. 443; B. 239.

20, 21. Note the accumulation of appositives: *L. Pisōnis* with *socerī*; *L. Pisōnem* with *avum*; *lēgātum* with *L. Pisōnem*. *socerī*: L. Calpurnius Piso, who was one of the consuls in this year. Caesar had married his daughter, Calpurnia, while consul, in 59 B. C.

2. *pontem faciendum cūrat,* causes a bridge to be constructed.

For the Gerundive expressing purpose after verbs (*not* prepositions) see A. 294, d; B. 126; G. 430; H. 544 N. 2; B. 337, 7, b), 2). This bridge was probably of boats. See Int. 144.

4. *cum* etc.: English order, *cum intellegerent illum ūnō diē fēcisse id quod ipsī etc.*

5. *ut . . . trānsirent*: in apposition with *id*, cf. *ut . . . cremāretur*, 4, 3.

6. *intellegerent*, for mood see on 4, 9. *lēgātōs*: does the word have the same meaning as *lēgātum* in 10, 8?

7. *bellō Cassiānō*: see on 7, 13.

fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevēraret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ii,

8. agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, a., n., set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (*conventum*); give, render (*grātiās*); plead (*causam or rem*); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. *

11. sīn, conj. [sī + nē], if however, but if. 2

per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], a., follow through or on, continue in, pursue, follow up; avenge (*mortem*). *

persevērō, 1. [per-sevērus, very strict], n., abide by, adhere to; persist, persevere. 2

reminiscor, -ī [mēns, mind], a., call to mind, remember. 2

vetus, -eris, old, ancient, former: veteran (militēs). *

12. in-commodum, -ī [commo-dum, convenience], n., inconvenience, loss, trouble, disaster, defeat. *

prīstinus, -a, -um [for priustinus fr. prior], former, primitive, original. *

13. im-prōvisus, -a, -um [prō + vidēō, see], not seen before, unforeseen, unexpected: *abl.* im-prōvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly, suddenly. *

ad-orior, orīrī, ortus sum [orior, arise], a., rise against, assail, attack; begin, attempt. *

8. sī etc.: Divico's speech is put in *orātiō obliqua*. The first sentence, *Sī... voluisset* (l. 10) is declaratory. In what mood will its principal verbs (*futūrōs, itūrōs* l. 9) be in direct discourse?

9. Helvētiīs: in direct discourse the noun may be retained, or the pronoun *we* substituted for it. *faceret*; a future condition with no thought of doubt: what mood and tense in the direct form? *itūrōs, futūrōs*: sc. what? cf. 8, 11; 6, 13.

10. Caesar: Divico is speaking to Caesar: what pronoun will replace the noun *Caesar* in the direct form? *cōstituisset*: for the mode in subordinate clauses of indirect disc. see on 7, 12. For the tense in the direct form notice that the idea is future and the stem is

the perfect: what tense in the indicative with a perfect stem denotes future time?

11. sīn etc.: this sentence is in form precisely similar to that in 7, 20. What is the principal verb in this sentence? What mood will it have in the direct form? As its subject here is *Caesar* understood, what person will it have in the direct form? *persevēraret*: for mood and tense cf. *faceret* l. 9; what person in direct form?

12. incommodī, virtūtis: for the construction with verbs of remembering and forgetting see A. 219; B. LXXVI; G. 376; H. 406, II; B. 205, 206.

13. quod, as to the fact that. adortus esset: indicative perfect in direct form: what person?

quī flūmen trānsissent, suīs auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nē
 15 ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs
 dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut
 magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiīs niteren-
 tur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex
 calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen
 20 caperet, aut memoriā prōderet.

14. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *a., n.*,
 carry, bring; endure, suffer, with-
 stand; receive, report: ferunt,
 they say. *

15. māgnō opere = māgnopere
 [māgnus, +opus, work], *adv. with
 great labor*; especially, greatly,
 exceedingly, earnestly. *

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribus, a
 tribe or division], *a., divide*;
 assign, allot, ascribe; grant, pay,
 render. *

16. dēspiciō, -ere, spēxi, spec-
 tus [speciō, look], *a., look down
 upon, scorn, despise.* 5

māiōr, māiūs [comp. of māgnus],
 greater (*in degree, size, time etc.*);
 older: *in pl. as subst. (with or
 without nātū)*, ancestors. *

discō, -ere, didici, *a., n.*, learn, be
 taught. 4

17. magis, *comp. adv. [māgnus]*,
 more, rather, in a higher degree. *
 dolus, -i, *m.*, craft, tricks, treach-
 ery. 2

insidiae, -arum [sedeō, sit], *r., pl.*,
 a sitting or lying in wait; am-
 bush, ambushade: per insidiās
 or ex insidiīs, by artifice or stra-

tagem. *

nitor, -i, nisus (nixus) sum, *n.*,
 rest, or rely upon; climb, ad-
 vance; strive, endeavor. 3

18. quārē [abl. of quī and rēs],
adv., by which thing; wherefore,
 why. *

committō, -ere, misi, missus
 [mittō, send], *a.*, send or bring
 together, unite, join; commit,
 cause, do; proelium committere,
 join or begin battle. *

consistō, -ere, stiti [con-sistō], *n.*,
 take a stand or position, keep
 one's position, stand, form (*of
 soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay;
 consist in, depend or rest on. *

19. interneciō, -ōnis [necō, de-
 stroy], *r.*, extermination, an-
 nihilation, utter destruction. 2

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name; reputation,
 renown; account. *

20. prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus
a., give forth, publish, be-
 tray, transmit, hand down:
 memoriā: preserve, hand down
 (*to posterity*); memoriā prodit-
 um: told in tradition, handed
 down. *

15. māgnō opere, used for the
 lacking adverb of māgnus; with
 tribueret trans. *overrate*. tribueret:
 for mood of *reminiscerētur* l. 11, but
 notice that nē (l. 14) cannot be
 joined with the imperative mood.
 For a substitute see A. 269 *a.*, 1, 2;
 G. 270, 271 2 H. 489; B. 276, *a.*,
 b, c.

17, 18. contenderent, nite-
 rentur: for mode in direct disc. cf.

12, 4. insidiīs niterentur, *trust
 in stratagems*. For constr. with
 nitor see A. 254b; B. LXXVII; G. 401,
 R. 6; H. 425, 1 (1) N; B. 218, 8. nē
 committeret, (precisely like nē
 tribueret l. 15) *do not cause* (or *per-
 mit*). ubi cōstitissent, may stand
 for a perfect indicative (cf. *adortus
 esset* l. 18) or a future perfect (cf.
cōstituisset l. 10), more probably
 the latter.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās res, quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriāe sibi cōnsciūs fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī vete-

Caesar proposes terms, which they refuse.

1. minor, -us, [comp. of parvus], smaller, less. dimidiō minor: half as large—*Neut. as subst.*, less, not much. *
 2. dubitātiō, -ōnis [dubitō, doubt], *r.*, doubt, uncertainty. 3
 3. commemorō, 1. [memor, mindful], *a.*, call to mind, remind, state, mention. *
- graviter, adv.*, heavily, with greater weight, with force.—*Fig.*, severely, seriously: *graviter ferre*: take to heart, be annoyed; *premere*, press hard. *
4. meritum, -ī [mereor, deserve], *n.*, desert, service, merit, favor. *
 - ac-cidō, -ere, cidi [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall to or upon; befall, happen,

fall to the lot of, occur: *accidit*, it happens. *

aliquis, -quae, -quid [alius, other + quis] and aliqui, -qua, -quod [alius + qui] *indef. pron.*, some one, something; anyone, anything, any. *

5. cōn-sciūs, -a, -um [sciō, know], *sharing in knowledge*; conscious; aware of. *

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *n.*, be cautious or on one's guard: take heed or precautions. 3

6. dō-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, deceive. 1

7. timeō, -ēre, -uī, *a.*, *n.*, fear, dread, apprehend; be afraid or alarmed. *

1. eō minus dubitātiōnis, *the less perplexity*. For case of eō see A. 250; B. 92; G. 408; H. 423; B. 223. minus used as a substantive; why acc? dubitātiōnis, for case cf. *reliqui* 11, 14.

3. eō gravius etc., *I am the more annoyed, the less they have happened by the desert of the Roman people (= the less the R. p. deserved that they should happen)*. eō... quō, *the... the*. For the case cf. eō, l. 1.

4. quī sī, *now if they* (the Roman people) for translation see on 1, 11.

5. iniūriāe sibi cōnsciūs: *con-*

scious of any wrong doing; sibi (dat. after *cōnsciūs*) is not to be trans. in English. iniūriāe: for case see on 2, 14.

6. eō dēceptum (*esse*), *they had been deceived on this account, because etc.* eō, for case see on *rēbus* 2, 12, and distinguish carefully from the same case in ll. 1 and 3 above. cōmissum (*esse*): *sc.* as subject *aliquid* and translate: *that anything had been done*. sē, *by them* (i. e. the Roman people). For case see A. 246; B. 86; G. 401; H. 415, I; B. 216.

7. quod sī, *but if*.

ris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūri-
 ārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptās-
 10 sent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vēxās-
 sent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam in-
 solenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tu-

8. **contumēlia**, -ae [cf. **contumāx**, unruly], f., affront, indignity, injury, violence. *
- oblīviscor**, -ī, **oblītus sum** [ob+liveō, become dark], a., have the mind darkened; forget. 2
- num**, *interrog. particle implying a negative answer*. **num possum**, I cannot, can I? in *indirect interrogation*, whether. 1
- recēns**, -entis, *adj.*, recent, fresh, new, vigorous. *
9. **temptō**, 1. [*freq. of tendō*, stretch], n., handle, feel; make an attempt upon, attack; try, test, prove; try to win over. *
10. **vēxō**, 1. [*intensive of vehō*, carry], a., shake, agitate; injure, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. *
11. **dē-pōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positus** [pōnō, place], a., place down

or aside, put away or off; place, station, deposit; give up; entrust. *

victōria, -ae [vīctor, victorious], f., victory. *

tam, so, so much, so very: **nōn tam . . . quam**, not so much as, less than. *

insolenter [in-solēns, unwonted], *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly. *

12. **glōrior**, 1. [glōria, glory], n., glory, glory in, boast of. *

diū, *adv.* [diēs], by day, cf. **noctū**; for a long time, long; **quam diū**, as long as; *comp.* **diūtius**, longer, too long, any longer; *superl.* **diūtissimē**. *

impūne [in+poena, punishment], *adv.*, without punishment, with impunity. 1

8. **contumēliae**: for case see on *incommodī* 13, 12. **vellet**: the subject changes abruptly from *populus Rōmānus* to *Caesar*; sc. therefore *ipse*. What pronoun in the direct form? **iniūriārum**, objective gen. with *memoriam* l. 11.

9. **quod**, *the fact that*. The four clauses introduced by **quod** are substantive clauses (not causal clauses) and explain, i. e. are in apposition to, *iniūriārum*. The mood with this **quod** in direct discourse is the indicative: see A. 333; G. 524; H. 516, II; B. 299. eō = *Caesare*, for case cf. 8, 7., and distinguish in gender from lines 1, 3, and 5 above.

11. **posse**, *he could not, could he?* In the direct form: *I cannot, can I?* What answer is expected?

Notice that this sentence is interrogative, and that in interrogative sentences in indirect discourse the mood varies according to the person of the subject or the character of the question. See A. 338; G. 651, R. 1; H. 523, II, 1, 2; B. 815, 1, 2. **quod** etc., *whereas you boast etc.* This clause differs from those in lines 9 and 10 only in having no noun to explain; in this use it is said to be in the adverbial accusative. See A. 333 a; G. 525 R. 2; H. 516 II. 2 N.; B. 299, 2. We have three uses of the conjunction **quod** in this chapter, besides the relative (as a connective) in l. 7. Explain each.

12. **sē . . . tulisse**, *that they (the Helvetii) had for so long a time carried off their misdeeds (in-*

lisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundiōrēs in-¹⁵terdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriis, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satis-

13. ad-mīror, 1. [mīror, wonder], a., wonder at, be surprised, admire. 5

cōn-suēsco, -ere, suēvī, suētus [suēsco, become used], n., become accustomed, be wont: *pf.* used as *pres.* and *plupf.* as *impf.*: in *p. p.* as *adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. *

enim, *conj.* corroborative and explanatory [e-(i) fr. is+nam, for], in fact, really; for, but, now; sed enim, but in fact, however.*

14. com-mūtatiō, -ōnis [mūtō, change], f., a changing, change.*
doleō, 2. n., feel or suffer (*bodily*) pain, suffer; feel (*mental*) pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve.*

15. scelus, sceleris, n., crime, wickedness. 1

secundus, -a, -um [sequor, follow], next (*in time or order*), sec-

ond; (*of currents and winds as following a vessel and metaphorically of other objects*), favorable, propitious, prosperous. rēs: prosperous affairs, prosperity. *
inter-dum, [dum, while], *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2

16. diūturnus, -a, -um [diū, long], of long duration, prolonged, long. 1

im-pūnitās, -tātis [in + poena, punishment], f., freedom from punishment, impunity. 1

17. polliceor, 2. [prō + liceor, bid, offer], a., n., hold forth, offer, promise. *

19. satis-faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [faciō, make], n., make or do enough for, make or give satisfaction, satisfy; apologize, ask pardon. *

iūriās) without punishment; or had escaped punishment for their misdeeds.

13. eōdem pertinēre, tended to the same result. cōnsuēsse: uncontracted form? 12, 11. quō: see on 8, 7.

15, 16. secundiōrēs rēs, a considerable degree of prosperity; diūturniōrem, quite long. Observe that the comparative may be rendered by *too*, rather, quite, or any term expressing a comparison. cum, though. What is the construction with *cum concessive*? A.

326; B. 112, b; G. 587; H. 515, III; B. 309 3. What is the construction with *cum causal*? With *cum temporal*?

17. iis: for case see on *ā sē*, 1.6.

18, 19. (eōs) factūrōs (*esse*), that they would do. sī Aeduīs etc., *sc. satisfaciant* from l. 19 and *trans.* if you will give satisfaction to the Aedui for the wrongs you have done them and their allies etc. Aeduīs, for case see A. 227 e., 2; B. 187. H. 384 II 4 N. 1. ipsīs sociīs: for case cf. 2, 5.

20 **faciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondi:**
Ita Helvētios ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs ac-
cipere, nōn dare cōsuērint: ēius rei populum Rōmānum
esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

*Caesar follows
the Helvetians
and is defeated
in a cavalry
skirmish.*

15. **Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent.**
Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad nu-
merum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā
et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit,
5 **quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius**
novissimum āgmen insecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvē-

21. **in-stituō, -ere, stitūī, stitū-
tus [statuō, set up], a., n., set up
or in order, establish; set in array,
draw up, form, devise; instruct,
educate; begin, adopt; set on foot,
determine, decide. ***

23. **testis, -is, m., f., a witness. 4
respōnsū, -ī [respōndeō, an-
swer], n., reply, answer; advice. 4
dis-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō,
go], n., go apart or away, depart,
leave, retire, forsake. ***

1. **posterus, -a, -um [post, after],
after, following, next; in m. pl.
as subst., posterity; sup. postrē-
mus or postumus. ***
**moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, a., set
in motion, move; excite, influ-
ence; occasion, remove, break
up. ***

2. **equitātus, -ūs [equitō, ride],
m., a riding; cavalry, horsemen. ***

4. **prae-mittō, -ere, misi, missus
[mittō, send], a., send before or
in advance; dispatch. ***

5. **cupidē, [cupidus, desirous],
adv., desirously, eagerly. 4**

6. **āgmen, -inis [agō, set in mo-
tion], n., a moving body; a
marching column; army; in
āgmine, on the march; primum
āgmen, the van. ***

**in-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
[sequor, follow], a., n., follow up
or after, pursue; press close,
harass. ***

**aliēnus, -a, -um [alius, other], of
or belonging to another, an-
other's; strange, alien, unfamiliar;
inopportune, unfavorable. ***

1. **diē:** for case see on 4, 4.
castra movent: the Helvetii turned
north to avoid Caesar.

2. **equitātum:** see Int. 100.

3, 4. **quem coāctum habēbat,**
which he had collected. **coāctum
habēbat** almost = **coēgerat**, see
A. 292 c; G. 238; H. 388 I, N; B.
337, 6.

5. **quī videant,** *to see;* cf. 7, 10.
quī: plural, because of the collec-
tive idea in the antecedent equitā-

tum. quās in partēs, *in what di-
rection.* **videant:** for mood see on
12, 3. **cupidius:** for trans. cf.
14, 16.

6. **novissimum āgmen,** *the
rear, i. e. the "newest" or nearest
to the pursuing Roman cavalry.*
aliēnō locō: because of the rugged
nature of the region, which hindered
the proper evolutions of the cav-
alry. **aliēnō,** *another's, unfavora-
ble:* cf. **suus,** *one's own, favorable.*

erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat: 5
 eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvēxerat,
 propterea minus ūti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētīi āver-
 terant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Ae-
 duī: cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī
 intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mē-10
 tīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māg-
 nam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in his Diviciacō et Liscō, qui

5. pābulum, -ī [cf. pāscō, feed and pānis, bread], n., food, fodder, sustenance. *

quidem, adv., (emphasizing the expression before it) indeed, at any rate, at least, truly: nē . . . quidem, not even. *

6. sub-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus [vehō, carry], a., bring up. 1

7. ā-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus [vertō, turn], a., turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse, estrange; in p. p. as adj., turned away, retreating. *

8. nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi [nē + volō, wish], a., n., not wish, be unwilling; imper. nōlī (nōlite) with infn. do not. *

9. cōn-ferō, ferre, contulī, collātus [ferō, bring], a., bring or get

together, collect, gather; ascribe to, charge: sē, retreat, take refuge; signa, join battle. *

com-portō, 1. [portō, carry] a., carry together, collect. *

ad-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be near or present, be at hand; aid, assist. *

10. in-stō, stāre, stitī, status [stō, stand], n., stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; impend, threaten. *

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, n., deal or measure out, distribute. 3

11. con-vocō, 1. [vocō, call], a., call together, summon, assemble. *

12. Liscus, -ī, m., a chief magistrate of the Aedui. 4

vetii had left nothing in the country for them.

6. frūmentō: object of ūti l. 7, cf. 2, 6. flūmine, by way of the river. For the case see A. 258 g; G. 389; H. 420, 1, 3; B. 218, 9. nāvibus: for case see on 3, 20.

7. iter āverterant: the Helvētīi had turned west toward the Loire in order to cross the Cevennes where their altitude was least. This was their best route to their destination (the country of the Santones).

8. diem . . . dūcere, delayed him day after day. For the inf. dūcere see on flāgitāre, l. 2.

9. diūtius dūcī, that he was put off too long. For rendering of the comparative see on 14, 16.

10. quō diē, on which; why is diē not translated? See on 6, 1; case of quō? Cf. 4, 4. mētīrī: see Int. 116. The subject of mētīrī is sē understood; its object is frūmentum. The clause frūmentum . . . mētīrī is the subject of oportēret, l. 11.

11. convocātis prīncipibus etc. summoning etc; for case of 2, 2.

12. Diviciacō: see 3, 14. Sc. convocātis with Diviciacō and Liscō,

summō magistrātūī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet¹⁵ potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sumī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

13. **summus**, -a, -um [*sup. of superus*, high], highest, the highest part of, the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme, *
prae-sum, esse, fui, futūrus [prae, before], *n.*, be before or over, be in command of, rule over. *
vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret, the title of the Aeduan chief magistrate. 1
14. **creō**, 1. *a.*, create, produce; elect, appoint. 5
annuus, -a, -um [annus, year], year by year, yearly, annual. 1
vita, -ae [cf. vivō, live], *f.*, life; manner of life; mankind. *
nex, necis [necō, slay], *f.*, violent death, slaughter, murder; death. 3
15. **potestās**, -tātis [possum, be able], *f.*, ability, power; dominion; authority. *
accūsō, 1. [ad+causa] *a., n.*, bring

a case or charge against: blame, censure, accuse. 3

emō, -ere, emī, emptus, *a.*, buy, purchase. 2

16. **propinquus**, -a, -um [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *in pl. as subst. relatives.* *

17. **sub-levō**, 1. [levō, lift.], *a.*, lift from beneath, lift or raise up; sustain, assist, encourage. *

praesertim [prae+serō, join], placed foremost; particularly, especially. *

18. **prex**, precis, (*in sing. only in abl.*) [precor pray], *f.*, prayer, request, entreaty; a good wish; imprecation. *

19. **dē-stituō**, -ere, stitūī, stitūtus [statuō, set up], *a.*, set or place aside, forsake, desert. 1

queror, -ī, questus sum, *a., n.*, complain, bewail, lament. *

13. **summō . . . praeerat**, held (was over) the highest office. For the Dat. see on 2, 5.

13. **quem . . . Aeduī**, whom the Aeduans call vergobret. For the two Accusatives see A. 239 1 a; G. 340; H. 373; B. 177. **vergobretum**: a Roman corruption for Celtic *guerg*, "effecting" and *breth*, "judgment". Caesar tells us (VII, 33) that this officer was not permitted to go beyond the limits of the state during his term; and that

no one could be vergobret while one of his family who had held the position was living.

15-17. **quod . . . sublevētur**, because (as he said) he was not aided by them. When does *quod causal* take the Subj? A. 321; B. 110, a; G. 541; H. 516, II; B. 286, 1. *ab iīs*: what Abl.? Cf. 14, 6.

18, 19. **multō**: for case cf. *eō* 14, 3. **sit dēstitūtus**: for mode see on 1, 15-17, above.

17. Tum dēnum Liscus orātiōne Caesaris ductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs seditiōsā atque improbā orātiōne multitūdinem dētērrere nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs

Liscus shows the bad faith of an Aeduan faction headed by Dumnores.

1. **tum**, *adv.* [cf. **tam**], then, at this or that time (*coinciding with another period of time.*): **cum** . . . **tum**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also. *

dēnum, *adv.* [acc. of **dēmus** (superl. of **dē**), downmost], at length, at last finally. 4

2. **anteā**, *adv.*, formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* *

taceō, 2 *a., n.*, be silent or quiet, keep silence, pass over in silence: *in p. p. as adj.*, silent. 3

prōpōnō, -ere, **posuī**, **positus** [**pōnō**, place], *a.*, place or put forward, set forth, present, propose, explain, declare, promise, offer, purpose. *

4. **valeō**, 2 *n.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight or influence; avail; be well. *

privātim, *adv.* [**privātus**, private],

privately, individually, as private citizens. 3

5. **seditiōsus**, -a, -um [**sēditio**, sedition], full of sedition, mutinous, seditious. 1

im-probus, -a, -um [**probus**, good], bad, wicked, shameless. 1
dē-terreō, 2. [**terreō**, frighten], *a.*, frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. 5

8. **per-ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus** [**ferō**, bear], *a.*, bear or carry through, convey; announce, report; submit to, endure; *

dubitō, 1, *a., n.*, have two opinions, waver in judgment, be uncertain, doubt. *

9. **superō**, 1. [**super**, over], *a., n.*, go over, overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer; be overmuch or in excess, abound; be left over, remain, survive. *

2. **quod**: for omission of antecedent (here *id*) see 1, 2. **prōpōnit**: for the tense see on 3, 10, and cf. **accūsāt**, 16, 15; **queritur**, 16, 19. **esse nōnūllōs**, etc.; for **sunt nōnūllī**, etc. in dir. disc. Reconstruct the dir. disc. of this chapter.

4. **quī** . . . **possint**: *who as private citizens possess more influence*, etc.

6. **nē** . . . **cōferant**: **nē** (or **quōminus**) with its verb after a verb

of hindrance is conveniently translated by *from* with the pres. part. For the Subj. cf. 3, 5. **praestāre** etc.: a thought of these Gauls, sc. **hōs putāre**: (they think) *it is better to endure*. etc **praestāre** is impersonal.

8, 9. **perferre**: used as a substantive, cf. 7, 11; what case has it here? **dubitāre**, sc. **hōs**. **quīn Aeduīs** . . . **sint ēreptūrī**, *that they will wrest from the (hands of the)*

10 libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariā rē coāctus Caesari ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.

18. Caesar hāc orātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciaci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solō ea, quae in 5 conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem

10. libertās, -tātis [liber, free], *n.*, freedom, liberty, independence. *

11. coērcēō, 2. [arceō, shut up], *a.*, shut up completely, restrain, check. 2

13. quantus, -a, -um [cf. interrog. *quam*, how?], *a. interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? *b. relative*, as much, as great (large) as; tantum . . . quantum, as much (great or far) as: *in acc.* as *adv.*, how much: *in abl.*, as, as much as. *

2. dēsīgnō, 1. [signō, mark], *a.*, mark out, mean, indicate. 1

sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus, *a.*, perceive, feel, be sensible of; experience, undergo; think, observe, be aware; decide. *

3. praesēns, -entis [praesum, be before or at hand], present, immediate, at hand. *

iactō, 1. [freq. of iaciō, hurl], *a.*,

throw or hurl repeatedly, toss; (of words) talk about, mention, discuss. 3

celeriter [celer, quick], *adv.*, quickly, rapidly, speedily. * concilium, -i [calō, call], *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. *

4. dī-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [dis-, apart], *a.*, send apart or away, break up, dismiss; release, abandon, renounce. *

retineō, 2. [teneō, hold], *a.*, hold or keep back, detain; restrain, hinder; retain, preserve, maintain. *

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *a.*, seek or look for, inquire, ask, examine, investigate. *

solus, -a, -um, *gen. solius*, alone, only, the only. *

5. conventus, -ūs [veniō, come], *m.*, coming together; meeting, assembly. *

liberō [liber, free], *adv.*, freely, without restraint; generously. 4

Aeduans, etc. For the mode see on *possent* 3, 20, but notice that this clause represents an accusative. *Aeduis*: for the Dative see A. 229; G. 345; H. 386, 2; B. 188 2 d).

10. ab eisdem: i. e. *nōnnūllōs* l. 2; for case cf. 14, 6.

12. quīn etiam, *nay even, in*

fact. quod: cf. 14, 11. How does this differ from the *quod* clauses in 14, 9?

13. fēcerit: see on 12, 3; cf. *faciunt*, 15, 5.

14. *quam diū*, as long as.

3. plūribus praesentibus, *when many were present*. Cf. 5, 10.

sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dum-norigem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter libe-ralitatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūris annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vēctīgālia parvō pretiō redēmp̄ta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī au-10 deat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et

6. sēcrētō [sēcernō, separate], *adv.*, separately, apart, privately, secretly. 2
 7. reperit, -ire, reperit, repertus [pariō, procure], *a.*, procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain.*
 vērus, -a, -um, true, real, genuine; *in neut. as subst.*, the truth. 4
 8. audācia, -ae [audāx, bold], *f.*, boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 3
 liberalitas, -tātis [liber, free], *f.*, freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2
 9. portōrium, -ī [portō, carry], *n.*, toll, duty, tax, tariff on exports and imports. 2
 vēctīgā, vēctīgālis [vehō, convey], *n.*, taxes or rents (conveyed to the publicāni), revenue, income. 3
 parvus, -a, -um, *comp. minor, superl. minimus*, little, small, in-

- significant. 5
 pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, valuation. 2
 10. redimō, -ere, emi, emptus [emō, buy], *a.*, buy back, repurchase; buy up, purchase. 3
 contrā, *adv.*, on the contrary, on the other hand. 4
 liceor, 2. [liceō, offer for sale], *a.*, *n.*, bid for, bid (at an auction). 2
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.* *a.*, dare, risk, venture. *
 11. nēmō, *acc. neminem* [nē + homō, man], *m.*, no man; no one, nobody. *
 familiāris, -e [familia, household], pertaining to the household, personal, private; *as subst.*, intimate friend; rēs, personal property, estate. *
 augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctus, *a.*, *n.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. *

6. reperit ipsum esse Dumno-rigem, that Dumnoria is, etc.

6-24. Reconstruct the direct disc.

7. summā audāciā, (a man) of the utmost recklessness. Case? Cf. 6, 12.

8. cupidum rērum novārum, eager for a revolution. rērum: for case cf. 2, 14.

9. portōria: port duties, frontier duties, tolls paid for the privilege of crossing a country, etc. vēctīgālia; the general term for all kinds of taxes. The custom prevailed at Rome of letting out the collection of the taxes to companies of publi-

cāni, for five years, for specified sums. This secured the state against loss; but left the tax gathering in the hands of rapacious and irresponsible agents. Thus the people were impoverished and their oppressors enriched. What modern country collects taxes in a similar way? parvō pretiō: thus defrauding the state. pretiō: For case see A. 252; B. 94; G. 404; H. 422; B. 225.

10. redēmp̄ta habēre, he had (having been) bought up, see on co-actum habēbat, 15, 4. illō li-cente: for case cf. 2, 2.

facultatēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitatūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habere, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitatēs
 15 largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Bitūrīgibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habere, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs collocāsse. Favere et cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō
 20 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciacus frāter in antīquum locū grātiae

12. largior, 4. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 2

13. sūmptus, -ūs, [sūmō, take, expend], m., expense, cost. 1

semper, adv., always, every time, constantly, ever. *

alō, -ere, -uī, -itus, a., nourish feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. *

15. largiter [largus, large], largely, freely, liberally; largiter posse, to have very great influence. 1

potentia, -ae [potēns, powerful], f., power, authority, influence, dominion. *

māter, mātris, f., mother; matron. *

Bitūrīgēs, -um, m., a tribe of Central Gaul in two branches, the Vibisci around Bordeaux, and the Cubi around Bourges. *

16. illic [ille, that + -ce], in that place, there. 2

collocō, 1. [locō, place], a.; place together, place, set, station; arrange; nūptum collocāre, to give in marriage. *

17. UXOR, -ōris, f., wife. *

soror, ōris, f., sister. 2

18. nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, a., n., veil one's self; marry (of the bride). 1

faveō, -ere, fāvī, fautus, n., be favorable to, favor. 2

19. cupiō, -ere, cupīvī (iī), cupītus, a., n., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. 5

affinitās, -tātis [finis, adjacent] f., alliance by marriage, relationship. 2

ōdī, ōdisse, def. (pf. with signif. of pres.), a., hate, detest. 2

21. dē-minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus [minuō, lessen], a., lessen, diminish, impair. *

antīquus, -a, -um [ante, before], former, old, ancient. 3

12. comparāsse: for the contraction of perfects see on 12, 11.

14. domī, at home. For case see A. 258, 2, d; B. 100; G. 411, R. 2; H. 426, 2; B. 232, 2.

15. causā following a Genitive and governing it is rendered, for the sake of, on account of.

17. ipsum: i. e., Dumnorix.

See 3, 14. ex mātre, on his mother's side.

18. nūptum: form and use? See on 11, 5. Observe that the use is here metaphorical and not literal as in the reference.

19. Helvētiis: cf. rēbus 9, 8. suō nōmine, on individual grounds. For case see on rēbus 2, 12.

atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, sum-
 mam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō
 populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam
 habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō 25
 Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus
 esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque
 ēius equitibus (nam equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesari Aedui
 mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse
 equitātum perterritum.

30

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspici-
 onēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs
 Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs

*Caesar coun-
 sels with Divt-
 cianus concern-
 ing his brother
 Dumnorix.*

22. honōs (honor), -ōris, m., hon-
 or, regard, glory, distinction. *
 restitūō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [statuō,
 set up], a., set up again, re-es-
 tablish, restore. *
 25. dē-spērō, 1. [spēs, hope],
 a., n., cease to hope, despair. *
 26. equester, -tris, -tre [equēs,
 horseman], of or belonging to a
 horseman, equestrian; of cavalry,
 cavalry. *
 ad-versus, -a, -um [versus p. p. of
 vertō, turn], turned to or against;
 opposite, fronting; adverse, un-

favorable. *

30. per-terrēō, 2. [terrēō, fright-
 en], a., frighten thoroughly, ter-
 rify greatly. *

1. cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus
 [cum + (g)nōscō, know], n.,
 know thoroughly; learn, ascer-
 tain; study, investigate. *

2. accēdō, -ere, -essī, -essum,
 [ad + cēdō], to approach, draw
 near to, arrive at, come to; to be
 added; accēdēbat, it was added.*

22. sī quid: for form and trans.
 of quid cf. 7, 20.

23. imperiō, under the sover-
 eignty. The Ablative expressing
 both time and cause.

26. quod etc.: whereas an un-
 fortunate engagement of cavalry had
 occurred a few days before. quod,
 cf. 14, 11. proelium equestre, see
 15, 5-7 text. ante diēbus: ante is
 an adverb; diēbus is abl. of degree
 of difference.

27, 28. esset factum, for mood
 see on 8, 7. Dumnorige, equiti-
 bus: for case cf. 14, 6. equitātui:

for case cf. 2, 5.

28. auxiliō Caesari, as an aid
 to Caesar: for the datives see A.
 233, a; B. 67; G. 356; H. 390, I,
 II; B. 191, 2.

1, 2. ad . . . certissimae rēs ac-
 cēderent, the most clearly proven
 facts were added to these suspicions.
 These facts (rēs) are stated in the
 following quod clauses. quod, cf.
 14, 9: how do these clauses differ
 from that in 18, 26? In what case
 are they?

3. trādūxisset: why Subj.?

inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū
 5 suō et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā
 magistratū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrā-
 bātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem
 animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat,
 quod Diviciaci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studi-
 10 um, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam,
 temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam, nē ēius suppliciō Diviciaci
 animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam
 cōnārētur, Diviciacum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotidiānis inter-

4. in-iūssū, *abl. from iniūssus, -ūs, [iubeō, order], without command or order.* 2
 5. in-sciēns, -entis [sciō, know], unaware, ignorant. 2
 7. animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, (animus + ad + vertō), to turn the mind to; to notice; in: to punish. *
 8. re-pūgnō, 1. [pūgnō, fight], *n.*, fight back; resist, oppose. *
 9. studium, -ī [studēō, be zealous], *n.*, zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm; feeling; good will, devotion; profession, occupation. *
 10. ēgregius, -a, -um [ē + grex, herd], *out of the common herd*; superior, eminent, remarkable. 4
 iūstitia, -ae [iūstus, just], *r.*, justice, rectitude, uprightness. 4
 11. temperantia, -ae [temper-

- ans, temperate], *r.*, moderation, prudence, self-control. 1
 supplicium, -ī [sub + plicō, bend], *n.*, bending or kneeling in supplication or to receive punishment; supplication (rare); punishment. *
 12. of-fendō, -ere, fendi, fēnsus [ob + fendō, strike], *a.*, strike against, wound, harm; *animus offendere*, wound the feelings. 2
 vereor, 2. *a.*, reverence; fear, dread. *
 prius, *adv.* [prior, former], before, sooner, previously; prius quam (priusquam), before. *
 quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, *indef. pron.*, some, any, any one, anything. *
 13. vocō, [vōx, voice], *a.*, call, summon; call upon, invoke. *
 interpres, -pretis, *m.*, interpreter. 2

4. eōs = *Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs*. cūrasset: uncontracted form? dandōs: what does the gerundive denote here? See on 13, 2.

5. suō: whose? inscientibus ipsīs, without their own (Aeduans') knowledge.

6. magistratū: who? satis esse causae, that it was a sufficient reason. causae: for the Part. Gen. with adverbs (here satis) see A. 216, 4; B. 59, d; G. 369; H. 397, 4, footnote 3; B. 201, 2.

8. ūnum repūgnābat, one fact opposed all these considerations.

11, 12. cōgnōverat, had learned (knew well). For verbs used preteritively see A. 279 e; G. 241 R. H. 297 I, 2; B. 262, A. nē... verēbātur, he feared that etc. For the translation and use of nē with verbs of fearing see A. 331 f, N.; G. 550, 2; H. 498, III, 1; B. 296 2. Prius quam etc., before he ventured on anything.

13. cōnārētur: for the mode

pretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium 15 rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuāt, vel civitātem statuere 20 iubeat.

20. Diviciacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem *Caesar spares Dumnoria but places him under guard.* complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius

14. re-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [moveō, move], a., move back or away, remove, withdraw. *

Valerius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: (1) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legatus in Aquitania before Caesar's proconsulship. (2) Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, perhaps, from (3) Gaius Valerius Flaccus, praetor in Gaul in 83 B. C. (4) Gaius Valerius Procillus, and (5) Gaius Valerius Donnataurus, sons of (2). (6) Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a prominent Gaul whose father had received Roman citizenship.

16. colloquor, -ī, locūtus sum [cum + loquor, speak], n., speak with, converse, confer. *

simul, adv., at once, at the same time, together: simul . . . simul, both . . . and, partly . . . partly: simul atque, as soon as. *

commonefaciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [moneō, warn + faciō], a., re-

mind forcibly, impress upon. 1

18. sēparātīm [sēparō, separate], separately, apart, asunder. 3

19. petō, -ere, -īvī (īī), -ītus, a., seek, aim at, make for, attack, try or go to get; ask, entreat: petere ut liceat, to ask permission. *

hortor, 1. exhort, encourage, urge strongly, cheer. *

offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendō, strike against], r., a striking against; hurting: offēnsiō animī, hurting one's feelings. 1

1. lacrima, -ae, r., tear. 2

2. com-plector, -ī, plexus sum [plectō, braid], a., embrace, clasp, enclose. 3

ob-secrō, 1. [sacer, sacred], a., implore (on sacred grounds), entreat, beseech. 3

gravis, -e, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe; serious, important, advanced (of age). *

after *priusquam* see A. 327; B. 111, b; G. 574, 577; H. 520; B. 292, 1 b).

14-16. per . . . colloquitur: English order, colloquitur cum eō per C. Valerium Troucillum, etc. prīncipem: not necessarily a chief

but a prominent man. cui . . . habēbat, in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters.

2. quid: form and meaning? See on 7, 20. gravius: for trans.

in frāterem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum
 5 ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adolēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset: quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī
 10ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret,

3. sciō, 4. a., distinguish; know, understand. *

6. adolēscēntia (adul-) -ae [adōlēscēns, a youth], f., youth. 1 crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus [incept. of crēō, create], n., begin to create: grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.); become famous or prominent. 2

7. ops, opis [Ops, the goddess of plenty], f., power, help, strength; pl., wealth, resources; authority, influence. *

nervus, -ī, m., sinew, tendon, nerve; in pl., energy, power. 2 minuō, -ere, -uī, minūtus [minus, less], a., n., lessen, impair, dimin-

ish, violate (māiestātem) settle, (contrōversiās). *

8. perniciēs, -eī, [per + nex, death], f., destruction, ruin. 2 amōr, -ōris [amō, love], m., love. 1

9. frāternus, -us, -um [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2

existimātiō, -ōnis [existimō, estimate], f., judging, opinion. 2

vulgus (volgus), -ī, n. and m., the common people, crowd, rabble, the masses: in abl. as adv., commonly, generally. *

13. verbum, -ī, n., word. 4 fleō, -ēre, flēvi, flētus, a., n., weep, shed tears, lament. 5

see on 14, 16.

3. scīre etc.: reconstruct the direct discourse. "I know that these things are true; and from this fact no one feels (takes) more (of) sorrow than I do, etc."

5. ipse, Diviciacus; so sē l. 6, suam l. 8. sēsē l. 8, ille, Dumnorix; so eī l. 9.

6. minimum posset, had very little influence; Cf. largiter posse, 18, 15. For case of minimum see A. 240 a; B. 75; G. 334 R. 1; H. 378, 2; B. 176. 3.

7. opibus, nervīs: for case of frūmentō, 16, 6.

9. quod . . . accidisset: in dir. disc., "Now if anything too severe befalls (shall have befallen) him at your hands (from you)." quod sī, lit., as to which, if: quod is strictly an adverbial accusative, see on l. 6, but with sī has become a mere connective and is translated and, now, but, etc.

12. futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur, it will happen that etc. futūrum esse utī (=fore ut)

Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, finem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, utī et rei¹⁵ publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātī condōnāre dicit.²⁰ Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum *Caesar arranges to harass the Helvettians*

14. dextra, -ae [dexter, right sc. manus], f., the right hand. *
 prēndō, -ere, -dī, prēnsus [for
 prehendō=prae+hendō, hold]
 lay hold of, seize, grasp. 1
 cōn-sōlor, 1. [sōlor, comfort], a.,
 comfort, cheer. 5
 ōrō, 1. [ōs, mouth], a., n., speak,
 plead, entreat. *
 17. con-dōnō, 1. [dōnō, give],
 a., n., give freely; give up; pardon,
 forgive. 2
 ad-hibeō, 2. [habeō, have], a.,
 have or bring to, bring in, summon,
 employ, use. *
 18. re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, hēnsus,
 [prehendō, seize] a., hold back or
 fast, seize hold of; criti-

- cise, blame, censure. 4
 19. moneō, 2. a., warn, advise,
 admonish, teach. *
 20. vitō, 1. a., avoid, shun, evade. *
 praeter-eō, ire, ivī (īi), itus
 [praeter, beyond+eō], a., n., go
 beyond or past, pass by; omit,
 neglect, reject: in p. p. as adj.,
 past: as subst., the past. 4
 21. custōs, custōdis, m., f., guard-
 ian, keeper, watchman. 5
 loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, n., speak,
 talk, converse. *
 2. cōn-sidō, -ere, sēdī, sessus
 [sidō, sit down], n., sit down to-
 gether, settle; take a position,
 halt, encamp. *

with the Subjunctive is here used for the future passive infinitive which rarely occurs. The same form is necessarily employed when the given verb has no future participle.

14, 15. rogat (ut) . . . faciat, he asks him to make, etc. With what verbs is ut (utī) omitted in purpose clauses? A. 331 f Rem; B. 107, e; G. 546 Rem. 2; H. 499, 2; B. 295 8. tantī: For the case see A. 252 a; B. 58, b; G. 380; H. 404-5; B. 203 8.

21. pōnit=adpōnit, places over.

agat, loquātur: For the mode cf. 12, 3. Why did Caesar spare Dumnorix? His position was critical. He was getting farther and farther from his province. The Aedui were not true. It was not the time to be harsh. See Long, vol. I, p. 13; Mommsen vol. IV, p. 293.

1. explōrātōribus: these were scouting parties; the speculātōrēs individual spies.

2. hostēs . . . cōnsēdisse, that the enemy had encamped at the foot

ab ipsius castris octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī militāris peritissimus

3. octō (VIII), *indecl. num.*, eight. *

quālis, -e [quis], *interrog.*, of what sort, kind or nature, what; *rel.*, of such a sort, kind or nature, such as, as. 2

4. circuitus, -ūs [circumēō, go around], *m.*, going around; a winding path, circuit: in circuitū, all around. *

ascēnsus, -ūs [ascendō, climb up], *m.*, climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. *

6. praetor, -ōris [for praetor fr. praeeō, go before], *m.*, leader, chief, president; general, commander; praetor, judge. 1

dux, ducis [dūcō, lead], *m.*, *r.*, leader, guide, commander. *

7. ascendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus [ad+scandō, climb], *a.*, *n.*, climb up to, ascend, mount, climb. *

10. P., *abbrev. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen or given-name.* 2

Cōnsidius, -i, *m.*, Publius Considius, one of Caesar's officers. 3

militāris, -e [miles, soldier,], of a soldier, military, martial: rēs militāris, the science of warfare. *

perītus, -a, -um, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, accustomed to. 3

of the mountain. sub monte: in the vicinity of modern Toulon. milia passuum octō: how many miles? milia: for case see on 2, 17.

3. quālis . . . nātūra, what was the character.

4. quī cōgnōscerent misit, he sent men to learn. For the omission of the antecedent ('men') see on 1, 2. For the Mode and the equivalent of quī see on 7, 10.

5. tertiā vigiliā: see on 12, 8.

6. prō praetōre: the consul and praetor had *ex officio* the right to command an army on expiration of their terms of office, and no other persons had this right except rarely by special grant. Such a grant had

been made to Labienus who is therefore called 'lieutenant with the powers of a praetor'. The military authority of ordinary legātī was merely temporary and provisional.

8. quid . . . sit: what (the essence of) his plan is, namely, that Labienus shall move to the rear of the Helvetii and at a preconcerted signal, both he and Caesar shall attack them. sit: for mode cf. 12, 3. dē quartā vigiliā: about what hour?

9. equitātum: what were the duties of the cavalry, on the march? See Int. 141, 144.

10, 12. P. Cōnsidius . . . fue-

mus habebatur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

22. Primā luce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō *His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.* teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset, Considius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem 5 ā Labiēnō occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri: id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cōgnovisse. Caesar suas cōpiās

11. **L.**, abbrev. for **Lūcius**, a Roman praenomen or given-name. *

Sulla, -ae, m., a Roman family name; Lucius Cornelius Sulla the dictator, the bitter foe of Marius and leader of the aristocracy. *

postea, adv.: [post, after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -i [crassus, thick], m., (1) M. Licinius Crassus, triumvir with Caesar and Pompey; (2) his son Publius Licinius, a lieutenant in Caesar's army; (3) a second son, Marcus Licinius, one of Caesar's questors. *

1. **lūx**, **lūcis** [lūceō, be light], f.,

light. *

3. **captivus**, -i [capiō, take], m., captive, prisoner. *

4. **com-periō**, -ire, **peri**, **pertus**, a., find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. *

5. **equus**, -i, m., horse. *

ad-mittō, -ere, **missus** [mit-tō, send], a., send to; let in, admit; let go or loose; permit; incur. *

ac-currō, -ere, **cucurrī** (curri), **cur-sus** [ad+currō, run], n., run or hasten to, run up or rush to. 2

6. **Gallicus**, -a, -um [Gallia], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. *

rat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of Considius' statements below. rei: for case cf. 2, 14, 18, 8.

11. **Sullae**: the conqueror of Mithradates, 88-84 B. C. and opponent of Gaius Marius. See Int. 6. **Crassi**: more noted as a financier than a general. See Int. 20. He commanded in the Servile war, 71 B. C.

1. **primā luce**, at day break. **summus mōns**, the summit of the ridge (the top of the mount). For

the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun ('top' followed by a genitive ('of the mountain')) see A. 193; G. 291 R. 2; H. 440 2 N. 1, 2; B. 241, 1.

3. **passibus**: for case see on 15, 15. ut: what part of speech? Cf. 4, 11.

5. **equō admissō**, at full gallop. The Ablative Absolute is here equivalent to an Abl. of Manner.

7. **insignibus**: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc.

in proximum cōllem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi
 10 ipsiūs cōpiāe prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique
 unō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs
 expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per
 explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et
 Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum,
 15 quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō

8. collis, -is, m., hill. *
 sub-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dū-
 cō, lead], lead or draw from be-
 neath; draw or lead up; lead or
 draw off, withdraw. *
 aciēs, -ēī (old gen. aciō), [cf. ācer,
 sharp], f., sharp point or edge of
 a weapon; sharp or keen sight,
 glance; a line (as forming an
 edge), battle line; prima, the van;
 media, the centre; novissima,
 the rear. *
 īn-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus
 [struō, build], a., build upon,
 build, construct; form, draw up.
 9. praecipio, -ere, cēpi, ceptus

[capiō, take]. a., take or obtain
 beforehand, anticipate; instruct,
 bid, order. *
 nisi, conj. [nē+si, if], not if; if not,
 if...not, except, unless. *
 10. prope, prep., near.
 11. impetus, -ūs [petō, attack],
 m., attack, onset, charge; impet-
 uosity, force, vehemence. *
 12. abstinēō, 2. [teneō, hold],
 a., and n., hold off, keep aloof
 from, refrain. 2
 dēnique, adv. [deinde, then +
 -que], and then, thereupon, final-
 ly, at last. 5

8. aciem instruit: Caesar con-
 cluded from the report of Considius
 that Labienus had been defeated,
 and expected that the victors would
 immediately attack him. aciem:
 how did it differ from the āgmen?

9. erat... praeceptum, as he
 had been directed. The passive of
 intransitive verbs is often used im-
 personally ('it had been commanded
 to him') but the English idiom gen-
 erally requires the personal con-
 struction in the translation. The
 subject is the following clause nē
 ... committeret.

11. fieret: for mood cf. 5, 8;
 3, 5.

12. multō diē, in broad day.
 Cf. l. 1.

14. timōre: this was probably
 due in part to the exaggerated no-

tion of Gallic prowess that pre-
 vailed in the Roman army. timōre
 perterritum, panic stricken.

15. quod... renūntiāsse, had
 reported to him as if seen what he
 had not seen. Caesar generously
 refrains from censuring Considius
 although the miscarrying of his
 well-laid plan must have been a
 great disappointment. eō diē:
 about two weeks had elapsed since
 Caesar crossed the Saone. It was
 now the end of June.

15, 16. quō intervallō: for eō
 intervallō, quō (sequi) cōsuerat,
 hostēs etc. For the position of the
 antecedent see on 12, 17; for the
 ablative see on 12, 3. The relative
 takes the place of the necessary
 limiting adjective.

cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

23. Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriæ prōspiciendum existimāvit: iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum,

The Romans, marching toward Bibracte, are followed and harassed by the Helvetians.

16. inter-vāllum, -ī [vāllum, in-trenchment], *n.*, the space between two palisades or the 200 feet between the rampart and tents; interval (of space or time). *

1. postridiē, *adv.* [posterus, following + diēs], on the day following, the next day: postridiē eius diēi, on the next or following day. *

bīduum, -ī [bis, twice + diēs], *n.*, space or period of two days, two days. *

2. super-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [super, over], *n.*, be over or above, be left, remain, survive. *

3. Bibracte, -is, *n.*, the chief town of the Aedui, see note below. *

4. cōpiōsus, -a, -um [cōpia,

abundance], abundantly or well supplied, wealthy. 1

5. frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; rēs, supply of grain, provisions: (loca) productive. * prōspiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [speciō, look], *n.*, look forward, look out; look to beforehand, see to, provide for. 3

7. fugitivus, -a, -um [fugiō, flee], fleeing, as *subst.* a runaway slave. *

Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aemilius, a Gaul in charge of a decuria of Caesar's cavalry. 1

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, [decem], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. 1

1. postridiē: here has its original force as a noun and governs the Gen. diēi.

2. mētīrī: what was the usual food allowance of the Roman soldier? In what form was it issued? What officer had charge of the commissariat? See Int. 116, 117. oportēret: for mode see on 4, 9. What is the subject? See on 16, 10.

3. Bibracte: as the Gauls used to place their towns on hills, Mont Beuvray seems to have the preference over Autun as the site of this place. It was the "holy city" of

the Druids; and the capital of the Aedui.

4. milibus: for the case cf. 15, 15.

5. rei . . . prōspiciendum: that he must look out for supplies. rei: for case cf. 2, 5; 12, 18. prōspiciendum (esse): for form see on 7, 15; for the translation, on 22, 9.

7. fugitivōs, runaway slaves: perfugae and transfugae, soldiers who as traitors pass over to the enemy. decuriōnis: on the cavalry officers, see Int. 101.

hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētīi, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis, quod pridīe 10superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, com-mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine īnsequī āc lacēssere coepērunt.

*Caesar pre-
pares for bat-
tle. The Hel-
vētians ad-
vance to the
attack.*

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātum-que, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse

8. **seu or sive, conj.** [sī + ve or], or if, if either; whether, either: **seu . . . seu**, either . . . or, whether . . . or. *

timor, -ōris*[timeō, fear], m., fear, alarm, dread. *

9. **pridīe, adv.** [pri- in prior + diēs], on the day before. 5

11. **interclūdō, -ere, clūsi, clūsus** [claudō, shut], a., shut or cut off, obstruct, hinder. *

cōn-fidō, -ere, fisis sum [fidō, trust], n., trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope: *in p. p. as adj.*, trusting in, relying upon.*

com-mūtō, 1. [mūtō, change], a., change or alter completely, change; exchange. 5

12. **con-vertō, -ere, verti, versus** [vertō, turn], a., n., turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change: **itinere conversō**, altering his course; **signa convertere**, to change front. *

1. **post-quam, conj.**, after that, after, as soon as. *

ad-vertō, -ere, verti, versus [vertō, turn], a., turn to, turn toward or against: **animum**, observe, notice. 2

3. **sustineō, 2.** [sub + teneō, hold], a., hold up from below, uphold, sustain; hold or keep back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure. *

9. **existimārent**: for mood see on *sublevētur* 16, 17.

10. **sive eō, or for this reason.**

11. **rē . . . posse (Rōmānōs)**: i. e. by being hindered in reaching Bibracte. **rē**: for case cf. 1, 14; 8, 12.

11, 12. **commūtātō cōnsiliō**: If the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged

nature of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

1. **id . . . advertit**, directed his attention to this. For construction of *animum* and *id* see on that of *partēs* and *flūmen* 12, 6.

2. **proximum collem**: thought to be some miles south-west of Mont Beuvray near Toulon.

3. **quī sustinēret**: to check temporarily the enemy's advance.

interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās ⁵ in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab his, quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant, mūniri iussit. Helvētii cum omnibus suis carris secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ¹⁰ ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitatū phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

4. **medius**, -a, -um, in the middle or midst, in the middle of, intervening. *

triplex, -icis [trēs + plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. 4

5. **veterānus**, -a, -um [vetus, old], old, veteran. 1

6. **proximē**, adv., last, lately. *

7. **com-pleō**, -ere, plēvi, plētus [pleō, fill], a., fill up or completely, complete. *

sarcinae, -ārum [sarcio, mend, restore], f., pl., baggage or luggage (of the individual soldier), packs. 4



Sarcina.

9. **mūniō**, 4. [cf. moenia, walls], a., defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect. *

10. **impedimentum**, -ī, [impediō, hinder], n., hindrance, obstacle: pl. baggage or luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals).

11. **cōfertus**, -a, -um [p. p. of cōferciō, crowd together], crowded or pressed together, dense, thick, compact. *

rēiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], a., hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off, reject. *

phalanx, -ngis (Gr. acc. pl. phalangas), f., a compact band of troops, phalanx. 4

12. **succēdō**, -ere, cessī, cessus [sub + cēdō, go], n., go or come under; go or come up from beneath, come up to, advance, come close to, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *

4. in colle mediō: *midway up the slope*. For the meaning of the adj. see on 22, 1. **triplicem aciem**: on the battle formation of the Romans, see Int. 145-147. **legiōnum** etc., *consisting of four veteran legions*. For the case see A. 214 e; B. 53; G. 368, R; H. 396, V; B. 197.

5. **veterānārum**: *old*, in distinction from the two that had but recently been levied. They were the VIIth, VIIIth, IXth, and Xth. in

summō iugō, *on the very summit*. cf. l. 4. **duās**: XIth and XIIth: cf. 10, 9. Caesar did not put the untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. **auxilia**: these troops were raw and possibly not all well affected. See Int. 99.

7. **collocārī, complērī, cōferri** (l. 8.), **mūniri** (l. 9.), for the construction of these infinitives see A. 331 a; G. 516 N. 3; H. 535, II; B. 331, II.

sarcinās: packs or kits, which the soldiers carried: see Int. 118.

The battle. The Helvetians are forced to retreat.

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium

1. **primum**, *adv.* [prīmus, first], first, at first, in the first place: **cum primum**, as soon as. *
de-inde (dein), *adv.* [dē + inde, thence], from thence; thereupon, then; next. *
 2. **aequō**, 1. [aequus, equal], *a.*,

make even or equal, equalize. 2

3. **co-hortor**, 1. [cum + hortor, encourage], *a.*, encourage greatly, animate, rally. *
 4. **pilum**, -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin, pilum. *

8. **eum**: *sc. locum.*

his: those last mentioned l. 5.

10. **carris**: the Celtic wagon had two disc-like wheels and no springs. **impedimenta**: their heavy baggage, carried on beasts of burden or wagons.

12. **phalange**: in the phalanx formation, the soldiers overlapped their shields, so as to form an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally, "arranged like the tiles of a roof." On the Gallic methods of warfare, see Int. 176-187. **sub**, (also *in, subter, super*) is followed by the Accusative with a verb of motion. What case is used in relations of rest? **successērunt**, *came up close to.*

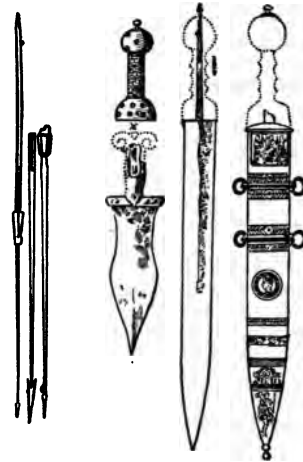
1. **suō** (*equō remōtō*), *sending away his own horse.* For case cf. 22, 5; how many like constructions in ll. 1-5? **omnium**, *of all the mounted officers, his aids, etc.* The tact and courage of Caesar are exhibited in the remark recorded by Plutarch that he "would mount again when the enemy fled."

2. **remōtis equīs**: Caesar did the same again at the battle of Munda in Spain (see Int. 42); and Sallust credits Catiline with a similar action in the battle that ended his career. **aequātō periculō**: the officers of all ranks in the Ro-

man army seem to have done more fighting than is expected of the officers in modern armies.

3. **cohortātus suōs**: the *allocūtio*, or harangue, was customary at the beginning of a battle. A skillful orator like Caesar would be able to rouse his troops to a high pitch of enthusiasm.

4. **ē locō superiōre**: the higher position of the Romans gave them a decided advantage. What was it?



Pilu.

Gladii.

pilis, gladiis: see Int. 109. **pilis missis**: this opening of the battle

phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiis dēstrictis in eōs 6
impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedi-
mentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pilōrum trāns-
fixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere
neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant,
multī ut diū iactātō brāchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit-10

5. per-fringō, -ere, frēgī, frāc-
tus [frangō, break], *a.*, break or
burst through. 2
disiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō,
hurl], *a.*, hurl apart or aside;
scatter, route, disperse. 3
gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword. *
dē-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus
[stringō, bind, strip], *a.*, unbind,
strip or draw off; unsheathe,
draw (gladium). 2
6. pūgna, -ae [pūgnō, fight], *f.*,
a fight, battle; contest, dispute.*



Scūtum.



Clipeus.

7. scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield, buckler;
oblong, convex (2½ x 4 ft.), made
of wood covered with leather (or
iron plates), with a metal rim. *
ictus, -ūs [icō, strike], *m.*, stroke,
blow, thrust. 2
trāns-figō, -ere, fixī fixus [figō,
fix], *a.*, thrust or pierce through,
transfix. 3
8. colligō, 1. [cum + ligō, bind],

a., bind or fasten together, unite,
hamper. *

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, steel; anything
made of iron, axe, sword, spear-
point, chain, etc. 3

in-flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexus [flec-
tō, bend], *a., n.*, bend in, bend,
curve, infect. 2

ē-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus [vellō,
pluck], pull or tear out. 1

9. sinister, -tra, -trum, left; sub
sinistrā, on the left; *in fem. sing.*
as subst. (sc. manus), the left
hand. *

commodē [commodus, conven-
ient], conveniently, readily, eas-
ily; nōn satis commodē, not
very easily. *

pūgnō, 1. [cf. pugil, a boxer], *n.*,
fight, give battle, contend; op-
pose; strive. *

10. brāchium, (bracch-) -ī, *n.*,
the arm from the hand to the elbow,
fore-arm. 2

prae-optō, 1. [optō, choose], *a.*,
choose rather, prefer. 1

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; in ma-
nibus, near at hand; *as the instru-*
ment of war, force, courage; an
armed troop, band, company. *

ē-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [mit-
tō, send], *a.*, let go, send out or
forth, release; hurl, discharge. *

corresponds to the heavy cannonade
that usually introduces modern
engagements.

5. gladiis dēstrictis, with
drawn swords. cf. 22, 5.

6. Gallis... impedimentō it

was a great hindrance to the Gauls
in battle. For the case see on 18, 28.

9. sinistrā impeditā: in what
way? see Int. 109.

10. multī ut... praeoptārent,
so that many preferred. For mode

tere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter 15 xv āgmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ā latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conver-

11. nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unclothed; unprotected. 3

corpus, -oris, n., the body, person; a (dead) body.

tandem, adv. [tam, so + -dem (cf. idem)], just so far; at last, at length, finally; in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, pray now, then, now. *

vulnus (vol-), -eris, n., a wound; cut; calamity. *

dēfessus, -a, -um [p. p. of dēfētiscor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. *

12. re-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus [ferō, bear], bear or carry back; give back, restore; sē referre (or pedem referre), go back, retreat; grātiam referre, return thanks. *

sub-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [sub, under, near], n., be under or below; be near or close at hand. 4

13. eō [old dat. of is], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where etc.), to them

(it, him, etc.).

15. claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, a., shut, close; shut in, enclose; conclude, terminate. *

16. latus, -eris [cf. lātus, wide], n., side; wing or flank of an army. *

aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertus [ab + pariō, bring forth], a., bring forth from; expose; in p. p. as adj., exposed, unprotected. *

circum-venio, -ire, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], a., come around, surround, encompass; invest, circumvent. *

17. cōspicor, 1. [spec- in obsol. speciō, look], a. and n., look closely, observe, descry, perceive. *

rūsus (rūrsum), adv. [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], backwards; again, back again, anew. *

18. redintegrō, 1. [re- + integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

cf. 6, 5; 12, 4. multī, being emphatic, precedes ut, which usually stands first in its clause.

11. nūdō corpore, without a shield. For case cf. 12, 3.

12. pedem referre: they retreated in good order to a hill near by, on which they re-formed their phalanx. suberat, was . . . below. mille: for case cf. 2, 17.

15. āgmen . . . claudēbant:

they formed the van of the Helvetic army, which became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They were marching at some distance from the main body, which accounts for their coming up thus late in the battle.

16. ex itinere: i. e. without pausing to form a line of battle. latere apertō: i. e. the right flank, which was unprotected, the shield being carried on the left arm.

sa signa bipertitō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victis āc submōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret. 30

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritēr pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad 5

They are routed and flee northward. Caesar pursued.

19. **signum**, -ī, n., mark, sign; military standard, banner; signal, watchword; statue; seal; **signa sequi**, follow the standard; **ab signis discēdere**, withdraw from the ranks; **signa inforre**, advance; **signa convertere**, wheel about. *

bipertitō, *adv.* [bis + partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. 2

vincō, -ere, **vici**, **victus** [cf. vincio, bind, restrain], *a.*, and *n.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; excel; prevail. *

20. **sub** (sum-) -**moveō**, -ēre, **mōvi**, **mōtus** [sub + moveō, move], *a.*, move from beneath or near;

move or send away, remove, dislodge. 5

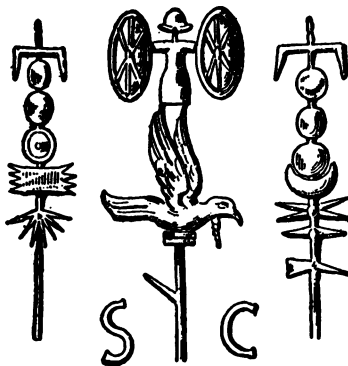
resistō, -ere, **stiti**, **stitum**, to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain. *

1. **anceps**, **ancipitis** [ambō, both + caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double; doubtful, wavering. 2

ācritēr [ācer, sharp], *adv.*, sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *

5. **hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night reckoning between sunrise and sunset), varying in length according to the season.* *

18, 19. **cōversa signa** etc.,



Signum. Tropaeum. Signum.
lit., carried forward the standards

having been turned about. Translate: faced about and charged; the third line "faced about", and then moved obliquely to a position at right angles to that of the other two lines. On the signa see Int. 120-124. **bipertitō**, in two directions, i. e. in two directions.

20. **victis āc submōtis**, the conquered and dislodged (Helvetii); for the case cf. 2, 4; 9, 8. **ut venientēs sustinēret**, to withstand those who were advancing, i. e., Boii and Tulingi. The pres. part. is here equivalent to a relative clause.

1. **ancipitī**: see note on **bipertitō** 25, 19. **pūgnātum est**, they fought. For rendering of impersonals see on 22, 9.

3, 4. **alterī . . . alterī**, the one party (Helvetii) . . . the other party

vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est proptereā quod pro vällō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnulli inter carrōs
 10 rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulne-
 rābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque
 nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis
 captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter milia hominum cxxx
 superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nullam
 15 partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quar-

6. *vesper*, -erī, m., evening; sub *vesperum*, towards evening. 5

7. *nox*, *noctis*, f., night.

8. *vällum*, -ī [vällus, palisade], n., wall or rampart of earth (set with palisades); entrenchments, earthworks. *

ob-iciō, *icere*, *iēcī*, *iectus* [i*aciō*, throw], a., hurl or place in the way, set against or in front; expose; throw up, in p. p. as *adj.*, opposed, lying in the way. *

9. *con-iciō*, *icere*, *iēcī*, *iectus* [i*aciō*], a., hurl or throw together; cast; let fall; put together logically, conjecture. *

10. *rota*, -ae, f., wheel. *

matarā, -ae, f., [Celtic] javelin, pike. 1

trāgula, -ae [trāhō, drag], f., a light Celtic javelin or dart attached to a strap by which it was hurled. 4

sub-iciō, *icere*, *iēcī*, *iectus* [i*aciō*], a., hurl or put under or near; discharge below; place below, subject; throw from beneath, throw up. *

vulnerō, (vol-), 1. [vulnus, a wound], a., wound, injure, hurt.*

15. *inter-mittō*, -ere, *misī*, *missus* [mittō, send], a., n., send between, interrupt, discontinue, leave off. *

Lingonēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges near the sources of the Maas and Marne; capital, Andematunnun, the modern Langres. *

(Boii and Tulingi).

6. *pūgnātum sit*: for the Subj. see on 14, 15; for trans. cf. l. 1. *ab hōrā septimā*: about noon; the twelve hours of the day began at sunrise and ended at sunset.

7. *ad multam noctem*, till late at night.

8. *pro vällō*, as a rampart: the *vällum* strictly speaking, was the row of stakes on the walls of Roman camp. See Int. 131. *locō superiōre*: i. e. from the wagons packed in a circle.

9. *venientēs*: for rendering see on 25, 20.

10. *matarās, trāgulās*: Gallic javelins; the former heavy and thrown by the hand, the latter light and hurled by a strap. *vulnerābānt*, Plutarch says the women and children fought too and that they were massacred. *subiciēbant*, were hurling from beneath (the wagons).

14. *eāque tōtā nocte*, during the entire night.

15. *partem*: for the case see on 3, 12. *finēs Lingonum*,

tō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsīt, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō,²⁰ cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī *Surrender of the Helvetians. Six thousand escape.* lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prō-iēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs,

17. sepultura, -ae [sepeliō, bury], f., burial, sepulture. *
trīduum, -ī [trēs, three + diēs], n., three days. *
morōr, 1. [mora, a delay], a. and n., delay, tarry, linger. *
18. littera (litera), -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in pl., letter, epistle, missive. *
nūntius, -ī, m., messenger, courier; message, tidings; command, injunction. *
19. nēve (neu), conj. [nē + ve, or], and not, nor; nēve (neu) . . . nēve, neither . . . nor. †
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, a., aid,

help, assist. 5

1. inopia, -ae [inops, needy], f., need, want, poverty, destitution. *
2. dēditiō, -ōnis [dēdō, give up], f., giving up; surrender, capitulation. *
3. prō-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, throw], a., throw forward or away, project; cast; reject, abandon. *
4. suppliciter [supplex, suppliant], adv., suppliantly, humbly. 1
6. pārēō, 2. [cf. pariō, bring forth] n., come forth, be clear; obey, submit, yield to, comply with, be subject to. *

about 60 Roman miles in a north-westerly direction from the battle-field.

16-18. cum . . . potuissent, since they could not, etc. For mode see on 9, 3. Lingonas: Greek form of acc. pl. A. 63, f; G. 65; H. 68; B. 47, 3. sepulturam: Long says that this is the only place in the Commentaries where Caesar speaks of burying those who had fallen.

19, 20. nē iuvārent, (ordering them) not to etc. What mode in direct disc.? Cf. 13, 18; 13, 15. sē eōdem . . . habitūrum (esse), he would regard them in the same position as the Helvetii.

2. quī cum, now when these (ambassadors). How is the relative at the beginning of a sentence to be translated?

5. quō . . . essent, in which they

arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi ēius pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditis suppliciō afficerentur, sive spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne deditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

7. **servus**, -ī, m., slave, servant. *

per-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus [fugiō, flee], n., flee for refuge, take refuge in; desert. *

poscō, -ere, poposcī [cf. precor, ask], a., ask, demand, request (stronger than petō, less strong than flāgitō). 5

8. **con-quirō**, -ere, quisivī, quisitus [quaerō, search], a., seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. *

9. **Verbigēnus**, -ī, m., one of the four clans of the Helvetii. 1

10. **trā**-(trāns-) **dō**, dere, didī, ditus [trāns + dō, give], a., give across or over, give up, surrender; intrust, confide; hand down, transmit. *

11. **salūs**, **salūtis** [salveō, be well], f., health, welfare; preservation, security, safety. *

deditīcius, -a, -um [dēdō, surrender], surrendered, subject; as subst., onesurrendered (formally), prisoner. 4

12. **occultō**, 1. [freq. of occultō, hide], a., hide, secrete; keep secret, conceal. *

ignōrō, 1. [ignārus, not knowing] a., not know, be ignorant of, be unacquainted with; fail to observe, overlook: pass., be unobserved, unrecognized. *

13. **ēgredior**, -gredi, -gressus [gradior, step], a., n., step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. *

(the Helvetians) then were. For the mode see on 16, 2. This is called *Informal* (Implied, Virtual) *Indirect Discourse*.

7, 8. **servōs**: fugitive slaves from the Roman army; see 23, 7, *fugitivōs*. **dum** . . . **cōferuntur**, while these were being sought out and brought together. For the tense after *dum* meaning *while*, see A. 276 e; B. 111, d; G. 570; H. 467 4; B. 293, I. Notice that it is translated here by a past tense. **ea** is used

inclusively for *obsidēs*, *arma*, *servōs*. What other gender could be used? A. 187 2, b N.; H. 439, 2, N; B. 235, 2, b, γ.

9, 10. **timōre nē**, by the fear that. For trans. of *nē* see on 19, 12.

14. **finēs Germānōrum contendērunt**: if the Verbigeni had reached German soil, they would have stirred up the Germans to cross the Rhine into Helvetia. This Caesar wished to avert.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciiit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs, utī conquirerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit: reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditis in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, 5 Tulingōs, Latovicōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod noluit 10 eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Gal-

These are retaken and put to death. The remainder are compelled to return to Helvetia.

1. re-sciscō, -ere, scīvī, (scii), scitus [sciscō, inquire], a., find out, learn, discover. 1
2. re-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], a., lead or bring back, draw back; restore, replace. *
3. pūrgō, 1. [pūrus, clean + agō], a., clean, clear, excuse, exonerate: *in p. p. as adj.*, freed from blame or suspicion, exonerated. 4
5. perfuga, -ae [perfugiō, flee for refuge], m., refugee, deserter. *
6. unde, adv., (*of place*) from which place, from what (*country etc.*), whence (*of substantives*), from whom (what). *

7. ā-mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum (ā + mittō), to send away, dismiss; to lose. *
(frūx), frūgis, f., crops.
8. famēs, -is, f., hunger, want. tolerō, 1. [cf. tollō, lift up], a., bear up under, bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support. 4
10. ratiō, -ōnis [reor, reckon], f., reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, course, means; motive, principle, reason. *
11. vacō, 1. n., be empty, void or unoccupied; have leisure; lie waste. 4
12. bonitās, -tātis [bonus, good], f., goodness, fertility (*of lands*). 1

2. sibi, before him (*in his eyes*): For case see A. 235; B. 68; G. 352; H. 384, 4, N. 8; B. 188, 2 c.

3, 4. imperāvit: the indirect object is hīs; the direct object is utī . . . reducerent, to search them out and bring them back. Give other examples of *ut* clauses as object: 7, 13; 3, 13. in . . . habuit, he treated them as enemies, i. e. put them to death. They had broken a

military agreement.

5. in dēditionem accēpit: this act made them Roman subjects.

7. domī: for case see on 18, 14.

8, 9. ut iīs facerent, to provide them with.

12. bonitātem agrōrum: in western Switzerland, east of the Jura. "The cultivation there now is like that of a garden" (Moberly).

liae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus
 15 Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in finibus suis
 collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt quōsque
 postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī
 erant, recēpērunt.

*Enumeration
 of the Helve-
 tians and
 their allies.*

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae
 sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem re-
 lātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī
 numerus domō exisset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et
 5 item sēparātim puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium

17. p̄ar, paris, equal, alike, equal
 to, a match for: est, it is fit or
 proper; p̄ar atque, the same as.*
 condiciō, -ōnis, f., (condicō), con-
 dition, quality, state; terms, stip-
 ulation.

1. tabula, -ae, f., board, plank;
 writing-tablet, writing; list. 2
 2. Graecus, -a, -um, of or belong-
 ing to the Greeks, Greek, Gre-

cian. 3

3. nōminātim, [nōminō, name],
 by name, expressly, in detail. 4

5. puer, -erī, m., boy, child; son:
 in pl., children (of both sexes);
 ā puerō (pueris), from child-
 hood. 5

senex, senis, adj., old: as subst., an
 old man. 1

mulier, -eris, f., woman; wife. *

14-16. prōvinciae, Allobrogibus: for the case cf. 1, 10. Bōiōs, etc.: they were remotely related to the Aeduans, and would be useful in strengthening their protectors. Bōiōs... concessit: English order: concessit Aeduīs petentibus, ut collocārent Bōiōs in suis finibus quod cōgnitī erant ēgregiā virtūte (of eminent valor). ut... collocārent is the dir. obj. and Aeduīs the indir. obj. of concessit. Bōiōs is placed first for emphasis. virtūte: for case cf. 6, 12.

17, 18. parem... atque... erant, such as they themselves enjoyed. atque (ac) generally means as or than after words of likeness and comparison.

1. tabulae, muster-rolls.
2. litteris Graecis: Gallic words

written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests. A large number of Gallic inscriptions in Greek characters have been discovered in central France.



Tabulae.

3. quibus in tabulis, in which: why omit tabulis in translation? cf. 16, 10; 6, 1.

rationum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia CCLXIII, Tulingorum milia XXXVI, Latovicorum XIII, Rauricorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia CCLXVIII. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar im-¹⁰peraverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius ferè Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intellegere sese, tametsi

Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask for a council.

6. **summa, -ae**, [for **summa res**], *f.*, the main thing or point, sum total, whole amount, aggregate; general management, chief control. *

caput, capitis, n., the head (of men and animals); person, individual; a head or leader; a section or chapter; mouth (of a river): **capitis poena**, capital punishment. *

9. **nonaginta, indec. num. adj.**, ninety. 1

10. **red-eo, ire, ivi (ii), itus** [re-+eo, go], *n.*, go or turn back, return; be brought or reduced; fall to, descend. *

census, -us [censeo, estimate], *m.*, estimation, census. 1

3. **gratulor, 1.** [gratus, pleasing], *a., n.*, express joy. 1

tametsi, conj. [tamen+etsi, even if], although, though, notwithstanding; and yet. *

6. **summa, the aggregate. ratio-num, capitum:** in careless contempt for the persons of the motley multitude.

9. **summa, sum total.** The total given by Caesar is considered too high by some commentators. One ancient authority gives 80,000, another 157,000. **fuerunt** agrees with the plural predicate. A. 204 b; G. 211 R. 1, Ex. 3; H. 462; B. 254 4.

11. **c et x:** adding the Boii to this number gives a total of 142,000 survivors, making the loss of the Helvetians and their allies 263,000. Caesar's conduct of this campaign—his first one in command of a large army—was characterized by great energy and ability. He exhibited a degree of caution which

was natural under the circumstances. The slow movement of the enemy and their lack of unity helped him greatly.

1. **confecto:** how long had the war continued? **Galliae:** Gallia Celtica probably is meant.

2. **principes:** the most influential men, not necessarily the magistrates. **ad Caesarem:** he was with his army in an intrenched camp among the Lingones, probably in the place where he had received the submission of the Helvetii.

3. **gratulatum:** for form and use see on 11, 5. What active forms are common to deponent verbs?

3—11. Change to direct disc.

prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs
 5 poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū
 terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod
 eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suas Helvētīi reliquis-
 sent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potirentur
 locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex
 10 omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum iudicās-
 sent, reliquāsque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent. Petiērunť,

5. re-petō, -ere, petivī (petiī),
 petitus [pētō, seek], *a.*, seek or
 ask again, exact, demand back;
 infict (poenās). 2
 ūsus, -ūs [ūtōr, use], *m.*, use, ex-
 perience, service, advantage;
 ūsus est, it is necessary; ūsui
 (ex ūsū) of advantage, of ser-
 vice. *
 6. terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil;
in pl. earth, world: orbis terra-
 rum, the world, all nations. *
 7. flōrens, -entis [flōrēō, flower],
 flowering, blooming; flourishing,

- prosperous. 3
 9. domicilium, -ī, *n.*, a fixed abode
 or residence, dwelling, home,
 domicile. 4
 10. opportūnus, -a, -um [ob+
 portus, before the port], fit, con-
 venient, opportune. *
 fructuōsus, -a, -um [fructus,
 fruit], abounding in fruit, pro-
 ductive. 1
 11. stipendiārius, -a, -um [sti-
 pendium, tribute], under, or
 paying tribute, tributary: *in pl.*
as subst., tributaries. 3

4. Helvētiōrum iniūriis etc.,
 the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians
 upon the Roman people. (such as the
 defeat of Cassius, 12, 15). For the
 case of Helvētiōrum see A. 214; B.
 53; G. 363, 1; H. 396, I; B. 199.
 For the case of populī see *oncausae*
 4, 4.

5. ex ūsū, to the advantage:
 this was true in a far deeper sense
 than the Gauls then understood it.
 The victory of Caesar over the Hel-
 vetii was fraught with vast conse-
 quences to them.

7. flōrentissimis rēbus, although
 they were in a very prosperous con-
 dition: the Abl. Abs., equivalent to
 a concessive clause. flōrentis-
 simis: cf. Caesar's statements in
 2, 12--15. It does not seem prob-
 able that the Helvetii were led to

emigrate through motives of ambi-
 tion alone.

8, 9. utī . . . dēligerent, to wage
 . . . and get control . . . and choose
 etc., explaining the phrase eō cōn-
 siliō and in apposition with it.
 tōtī Galliae: for case cf. rei 23, 5.
 imperiō: for case cf. 2, 6. domi-
 ciliō: for case cf. impedimentō,
 25, 6. ex māgnā cōpiā: all Gaul
 lay before them.

11. stipendiāriās: the Gauls
 already knew what submission to a
 foreign invader meant. See Int.
 66. petiērunť, etc., they requested
 permission to appoint.

12. concilium: composed of
 representatives from all the states
 of central Gaul. Such councils
 were a common device among the
 Gauls and often used by Caesar for

ut sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere id-
que Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: sēsē habere quāsdam
rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsensū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē
permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūreiūrاندō, nē quis
ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset,
inter sē sanxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō idem principēs civitā- *They implore*
tum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt *him to aid*
petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque *them against*
salūte cum eō agere liceret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs *the German*
flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id con- *king Artovis-*
tendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, *tus.*

12. in-dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus
[dicō, say], a., say publicly, pro-
claim, announce, appoint. *

13. quidam, quaedam, quoddam
(subst. quiddam), indef. pron.,
a certain, some; a certain one,
somebody, something. *

14. communis, -e [mūniō,
serve], serving together; hence,
common, general, universal, or-
dinary. *

cōnsensus, -ūs [cōnsentiō, think
together, agree], m., united opin-

ion, agreement, coalition, con-
sent. *

15. per-mittō, -ere, misi, missus
[mittō, send], a., send or let go
through; let go; allow, permit,
suffer; intrust, commit. *

17. sancio, -ire, sanxi, sanctus
[cf. sācer, sacred], a., ordain,
ratify, sanction. 3

6. labōrō, 1. [labor, toil], n.,
toil, work hard; be anxious, trou-
bled, or perplexed; labor, suffer
be hard pressed. *

his own purpose. tōtius Galliae:
observe the repetition of this ex-
pression, probably for the sake of
definiteness.

13. voluntāte: the approval of
Caesar was sought simply to avoid
any misunderstanding on his part
of the object of the conference.
The Gauls were doubtless greatly
impressed by his brilliant success,
but did not as yet have any thought
of political submission to him.
liceret: for the clause cf. 7, 12. 13.

15—17. iūreiūrاندō, nē quis
... inter sē sanxērunt, they mutu-
ally agreed under oath that no one

etc. quis: for trans. cf. 7, 20.

1. eō conciliō dīmissō: Caesar
leaves it to be inferred from the
fact that his permission was given
(eā rē permissā line 14 above) that
the council was held. idem prin-
cipēs: 30, 2.

3, 4. petiērunt, utī sibi . . .
liceret: for the clause of. 2, 4.
sēcrētō: this precaution indicates
how great the dread of Ariovistus
was. agere, to confer.

5. Caesari ad pedēs, at Cae-
sar's feet. Caesari: for the Dat. of
Reference instead of a Poss. Gen.

quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos vident. Locutus est pro his Diviciacus Aeduus: Galliae totius 10 factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernibus Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cul- 15 tum et copias Gallorum homines ferri ac barbari adamas-

8. cruciatus, -us [crucio, crucify], *m.*, crucifying, torture, torment. *

10. factio, -onis [facio, make], *f.*, making, doing; combination, party, faction. *

11. Arverni, -orum, *m.*, a people of Celtic Gaul, chief town Gergovia, now Auvergne. *

tantopere [tantus, so great + opus, effort], with so great effort; so greatly, so fiercely. 1

potentatus, -us [potens, powerful], *m.*, chief power, supremacy. 1

13. merces, -edis [mereo, earn], *f.*, earnings, pay, hire, wages. 1

arcesso, -ere, -ivi, -itus [ar=ad + cedo, go], *a.*, cause to go to or approach; call for, summon.

primo, [abl. of primus, first], *adv.*, at first, in the first place. *

14. posteaquam (postea quam), *adv.* [postea, afterwards], after that, after. *

15. ferus, -a, -um, wild, fierce; *fem.* as *subst.*, wild beast. *

barbarus, -a, -um, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, savage, barbarous; *pl.* as *subst.*, foreigners, savages, barbarians. *

ad-amō, 1. [amō, love], love exceedingly; covet. 1

see A. 235 a; G. 350, 1; H. 384 II 4N.2. B.188,1, n. non minus, etc., no less strove and were anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that etc. id, i. e. ne . . . enuntiarentur.

7. quam uti . . . impetrarent, than to obtain etc. For mood cf. l. 4.

8. enuntiatum esset, if they were reported. For trans. of impers. cf. 22, 9. 23, 5. in . . . se venturos (esse), that they would meet with.

9. Diviciacus: see on 3, 15. Galliae totius: see on 30, 1. factiones: see Int. on the political condition of Gaul at this time.

10. harum: sc. factionum. principatum: a preponderating influence exerted by one tribe over others, which amounted to a vir-

tual supremacy.

11. Arvernos: they traced their origin back to Troy and therefore claimed kinship with the Romans. potentatu = principatu.

12. factum esse uti, it came to pass that. Sequanis: they were at first clients of the Arverni, but seem to have succeeded them in the leadership of the faction opposed to the Aedui. Possibly they may have been the first to suggest the inviting in of the Germans, and this may have augmented their influence.

13. mercede: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. primo: apparently in 72 B. C.

15. adamassent: uncontr. form?

sent, trāductōs plūrēs: nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et **xx** milium numerum. Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque²⁰ frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis et iūreiūrandō civitātem obstringere, sēsē, nequē obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō²⁵ minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī civitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn

16. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. *

17. semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; but once, once for all: **semel atque iterum**, repeatedly; **ut semel**, as soon as. 2

18. iterum, *adv.*, again, anew, a second time; for the second time; twice. 4

21. frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *a.*, break, crush, subdue, discourage. 2

hospitium, -ī [*hospes*, host or guest], *n.*, the relation of host

and guest; friendship, hospitality. 5

25. implōrō, 1. [plōrō, call out], *a.*, beseech, entreat, implore. 4

recūsō, 1. [re+causa, cause], *a., n.*, make cause against or objection to; refuse, reject, repudiate, object to: quōminus, refuse to. *

26. perpetuō [perpetuus, continuous], *adv.*, continuously, constantly; forever. 2

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3

17. clientēs: the smaller Gallic tribes naturally attached themselves to the larger for the sake of protection, giving in return tribute and military service. Some client states maintained a separate government and army; others did not.

19. pulsōs accēpisse, as they were beaten they suffered.

20. omnem . . . āmīsisse: this was an exaggeration. The nobles and cavalry of the Aedui were very prominent in the campaigns of the Gallic war.

21. hospitio: the Roman senate was strangely forgetful of its

engagements with the Aedui.

22. plūrimum potuissent: for the acc. see on 20, 6.

24, 26. auxilium . . . implōrātūrōs: a thing the Aedui would be likely to do on account of the *hospitium* with Rome. **neque recūsātūrōs (esse), quō minus essent**, and would not refuse to be. For the Subj. see A. 319 c; B. 108, d; G. 549; H. 499, 3 N. 2; B. 295, 3.

27, 28. sē = *Diviciacum*. **potuerit**: for mood see A. 320, b; B. 105; G. 631; H. 503 II, 1; B. 283, 2. cf. 5, 2, 3.

potuerit, ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte prōfūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse 30auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūreiūrāndō neque obsidibus tenerētur. Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset 35et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent:

28. iūrō, 1. [iūs, right], *n.*, affirm one's rights, make oath, swear. *
29. prōfugiō, -ere, fugi, [fugiō, flee], *n.*, flee from or before, run away, escape. *
- Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. 3
30. postulō, 1. [poscō, demand], *a.*, claim, demand, call for, request. *
31. male [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely: 1 (*comp.* pēius (1); *sup.* pessimē). *
- victor, -oris [vincō, conquer], *m.*, conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *
32. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, *king of the*

- German tribe, Suebi.*
- rēx, rēgis [rēgō, rule], *m.*, ruler, monarch, king. *
34. optimus, -a, -um [*sup.* of bonus], most excellent, best, very good. 4
35. dē-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], *n.*, go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake. 5
36. Harūdēs, -um, *m.*, *a German tribe from Jutland, which joined the army of Ariovistus.* 3
37. sēdēs, -is [sedeō, sit], *f.*, seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 5

30. *auxilium postulātum*: in which effort, however, he was unsuccessful. The senate, led by the consul, Cicero, was engaged in combating Catiline, and could not be induced to pay attention to the representatives of the Aeduan chief. Cicero, who was his host, speaks of him with admiration. *postulātum*: form? 11, 5.

31, 32. *pēius accidisse, it had turned out worse.* *Germānōrum*: probably the Suebi, the largest and strongest tribe in Germany.

33. *cōsēdisset*: he had cross-

ed the upper Rhine from modern Baden, his former home. *tertiām partem*: "a common mulct in ancient times." (Moberly).

36. *paucīs mēnsibus ante, a few months before.* For case cf. 18, 26.

38. *futūrum esse, the result would be, cf. factum esse, l. 12.* *omnēs*: not the Sequani only, but all the tribes of central Gaul.

39. *omnēs . . . trānsīrent*: as the Cimbri and Teutones had done fifty years before.

neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum⁴⁰ agrō, neque hanc cōsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbē et crudēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua⁴⁵ rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi sī quid in Caesare populōque Rōmāno sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētīi fecerint, ut domō emigrent, aliud domicilium,⁵⁰

41. cōsuētūdō, -inis [cōnsu-
ēscō], *f.*, habit, custom, practice.*
victus, -ūs [vivō, live], *m.*, living,
life; provisions, food. 4
comparō, 1. [com-par, equal to],
a., set in pairs, place in compar-
ison, compare. 2
43. Admagetobriga, -ae, *f.*, a
Gallie town (location unknown).*
superbē [superbus, proud], *adv.*,
proudly, haughtily. 1
44. crudēliter [crudēlis, cruel],

adv., cruelly. 2

45. ē-dō, dere, didi, ditus [dō,
give], *a.*, give, inflict. 1
46. nūtus, -ūs [nuō, nod], *m.*,
nod, sign, command. 3
47. irācundus, -a, -um [ira,
wrath], irritable, passionate. 1
temerārius, -a, -um [temerē, by
chance, rashly], rash, imprudent,
reckless. 2
50. ē-migrō, 1. [migrō, depart],
n., depart, remove, migrate. 1

40. Gallicum: sc. *agrum*.

41. hanc = *Gallicam* victūs:
what is the quantity of the vowel u
in the perf. part. of *vincō*?

42. ut semel: see vocab. l. 17.

43. proelium factum sit: in
61 *n. c.*, three years before this.
Admagetobrigae: the location of
this town is unknown. It was
probably near the upper Arar. The
word is said to mean "great moun-
tain." For case see A. 258 c 1, 2;
B. 100; G. 411; H. 425, II; B. 232, 1.

44. cūiusque: the forms of
quisque, each, with superlatives

and ordinals have the force of *all*
or *every*.

45. omnia exempla cruciātūs-
que, every form of cruelty, lit., all
forms and cruelties (Hendiadys);
see A. 385, 1; G. 698; H. 636, III, 2;
B. 374 4.

48, 49. nisi sī, unless perhaps.
Nisi is here an adverb. quid au-
xilii, some help. quid: what kind
of a pronoun? cf. 30, 15; 20, 2.
auxilii: for the case see A. 216, 3;
B. 56; G. 369, 371; H. 397, 3; B.
201, 2. Gallis: for case see on
sibi 11, 15.

50. ut domō emigrent etc.,
viz. leave home etc., explaining *idem*.

aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quā dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōri-
 5 stāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dētērrere posse, nē māior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

The bearing and condition of the Sequani.

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciacō habitā omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō flētū auxiliū ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed
 5 tristēs, capite dēmissō, terram intuerī. Eius rei quae cāusa esset, mirātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondere, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanere. Cum ab hīs saepius

51. remōtus, -a, -um, *partic. adj.*, [removed], distant, remote. 4 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. rel.*, whoever, whichever, whatever; whatsoever; every possible, all, all who, every one who, no matter who. *

52. experior, -periri, -pertus sum, prove, try, test, experience. *

2. flētus, -ūs [fleō], *m.*, a weeping, lamentation. 2

4. cēterus, -a, -um (*in pl. only in Caesar*), the rest of, the remainder; *as subst.*, the rest, remaining,

others. *

5. tristis, -e, sad, sorrowful. 1 dē-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [mit-tō, send], *a.*, send away or down, cast or thrust down: sē, descend; sē animō, lose courage; *in p. p. as adj.*, low; dejected, downcast. *

in-tueor, 2. *a.*, look upon. 1

6. miror, 1. *a., n.*, wonder or marvel at, admire, be astonished. 3

7. tristitia, -ae [tristis, sad], *f.*, sadness, dejection, sorrow. 1 per-maneō, -ere, mānsi, mānsus [maneō, remain], *n.*, stay through or to the end; hold out, endure. *

53, 54. quā . . . sūmat, *that he would inflict.* Cf. 17, 8-10.

1. habitā, *delivered.*

2. māgnō flētū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls. flētū: for case cf. 25, 11. auxiliū petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were

simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

4. eārum rērum: supplications and tears.

6, 7. esset: for mood cf. 12, 3, 20, 21. respondere, permanere: form and equivalent? See on 16,

2. in eādē tristitiā: their de-

quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciacus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse miserīorem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nēi¹⁰ in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea, quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciā-¹⁵ tūs essent perferendī.

33. His rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem

Caesar promises to undertake their defence. His reasons.

8. vōx, vōcis [vocō, call], f., voice, cry, call, sound; word; pl., words, language, speech. *

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [prēmō, press], a., press out, extort, elicit; raise. 2

9. miser, misera, miserum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 3

11. occultus, -a, -um [occulō, cover up], covered, concealed, secret; in occultō (locō), in a secluded or secret place. *

12. absēns, -entis [pr. p. of absum], absent, at a distance. 5

crūdēlītās, -ātis [crūdēlis, cruel], f., cruelty, harshness. 2

velut, adv., [vel + ut, as], as, as if. 1
cōram, adv. [cum + ōs, face], face to face, in person. 3

13. horreo, -ēre, -uī, a., shudder at, dread. 1

14. vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. *

intrā, prep. with acc. [for interā, sc. parte], within, into. *

3. cūra, -ae [cf. caveō, take care], f., care, anxiety, attention. 3

meanor was intended as an appeal to the pity of Caesar.

9. hōc, *the*; for case cf. eō 14, 3.

10. reliquōrum: sc. fortūnam.

12. absentis, *even when absent*. cf. the use of the pres. part. for a clause in 25, 20.

14. Sēquanis: for case cf. Sibi 11, 15.

2, 3. sibi ... futūram, *that this business would receive his atten-*

tion; lit., *would be a care to him*. For cases of sibi and cūrae cf. Auxiliō Caesarī 18, 28. māgnam sē etc., *he confidently expected that Ariovistus would end (make an end of) his outrages*.

4. beneficiō suō: the titles "rēx" and "amicus" had been conferred upon Ariovistus by the Senate, in Caesar's consulship, possibly at his suggestion. auctōritāte: no doubt the Gauls were greatly impressed by Caesar's confident bearing.

5 iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, imprimis, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senatū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum 10 tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum 15 vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs āc barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent,

6. secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], by, along; after, next to; in accordance with, according to. 4
 7. cōgitō, 1. [cum + agitō, put in quick motion; consider], a., n., consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. *
 im (in-) -primis, *adv.* [abl. pl. of primus], among the first; in the first place, particularly. *
 8. saepenumerō, *adv.* [saepe,

often + numerus], oftentimes, repeatedly, frequently. 5

11. turpis, -e, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful. *

12. rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae [rēs, matter + pūblicus], public affairs; state, commonwealth. *

paulātīm [paulum, a little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

14. periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. 2

5. iniūriis: for case see A. 225; B. 60; G. 345; H. 384, II; B. 187, 1. concilium: i. e. the private conference; see 30, 12.

6, 7. ea: the arguments of Diviciacus. quārē . . . putāret, to think that he must consider this business carefully and set about it. sibi: for case cf. sibi 11, 15.

8, 9. frātrēs . . . appellātōs: see on 11, 6. Germānōrum: the word is derived by some authorities from ger = lance, spear; hence it means lancers, spearmen: see Int. 189.

11, 12. turpissimum . . . ar-

bitrābātur: Caesar saw this now more clearly than he did at Rome. His point of view was different. sibi: for case cf. 1, 10; 9, 6. paulātīm etc., to gradually get in the habit of crossing and come was dangerous: obj. of vidēbat.

14. periculōsum: because it would advance the German frontier from the Rhine to the northern boundary of the Roman Province.

15-18. sibi temperātūrōs (esse) etc., would restrain themselves . . . from passing . . . and again hastening from thence. sibi: for case cf. 2, 4; 9, 8; 25, 20. exirent,

ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Ītaliā contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus²⁰ tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

34. Quamobrem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum *Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.* lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquīō dēlige-

17. Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., a *Celtic people from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland). Having invaded Italy they were defeated by C. Marius near Verona, 101 B. C.* 5

Teutonī, -ōrum (or -um), m., a *Celtic people from Jutland, who with the Cimbrī overran Gaul, 113 B. C., and also suffered defeat from Marius.* 5

20. mātūrē [*old abl. of mātūrus*], *adv.*, early, speedily. 5

occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursus [ob + currō, run], n., run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. *

21. spīritus, -ūs [spīrō, breathe],

m., breath, spirit; pride, presumption, haughty mien or bearing. 2 ar (ad)-rogantia, -ae [arrogāns, arrogant], f., arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 3

1. quam-ob-rem, *adv. interrog. and rel.*, wherefore, why. * places, 2. [cf. placō, appease], n., please, satisfy; often *impers.*, seem good, be decided, resolved or determined. *

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque [uter, which (of two) + -que], each (of two), both. * colloquium, -ī [colloquor, talk together], n., talking together, conversation; conference, parley; communication, interview. *

contenderent: what constructions follow quin? ut (conj.)? ut (adv.)? Cimbrī Teutonīque: these tribes came from Jutland and the coasts of the Baltic. On their invasion and defeat, see Int. 63.

19. Rhodanus divideret, *only the Rhone divides.* Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and the lover of his country. Gaul must cer-

tainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible. quibus rēbus etc., *that he must face these difficulties.* For trans. see on 22, 9. rēbus: for case cf. sibi l. 15. quam: how trans. with the superl.? See on 3, 3.

1. ad Ariovistum: who was with his army on the Rhine, near modern Strasburg.

2. quī . . . postulārent, *to demand of him.* For quī and mode cf. 7, 10; 15, 5; 21, 4.

ret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum
 5 eō agere. Eī lēgātīōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā
 Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī-quid ille
 sē vēlit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque
 sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Cae-
 sar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque
 10 mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mī-
 rum vidēri, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Cae-
 sarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi esset.

6. opus, *indecl.* [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; used in the predicate with the Nom. of the thing needed: opus est, it is necessary. *

7. praetereā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. possideō, -ēre, sēdī, -sessus [potis, able + sedēō, sit], *a., sit as master*; hold possession of, occupy, hold, possess. 3

commeātus, -ūs [commeō, go and return, make a trip], *n., communication, trip; supplies, provis-*

ions, (*military*) stores. *

10. mōlimentum, -ī [mōlior, endeavor], *n., exertion, difficulty.* 1 con-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [trahō, draw], *a., draw or bring together, assemble; draw into smaller compass, contract.* 5

mīrus, -a, -um [mīror, wonder at], strange, astonishing. 2

12. negōtium -ī [nec + ōtium, leisure], *n., want of leisure; business, occupation, affair, concern: negōtium dare, employ, assign a matter: quid negōtīi, what business.* *

4. velle etc.: Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up; see 33, 3, 4, *beneficiō*, etc. His army had just ended one campaign and was not yet thoroughly to be relied upon, as was shown later on. summīs . . . rēbus, *matters of greatest importance to both.*

5. quid: what kind of a pronoun? cf. 7, 20. ipsī, for case cf. 7, 10.

6, 7. sī . . . velit: velit governs

two accusatives like verbs of asking or demanding (see on 16, 1), *if he wished anything of him.*

8, 9. quās . . . possidēret: i. e., the land of the Aedui, which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

11, 12. quid . . . esset (subject of vidēri), *what business either Caesar or the Roman people in general (omnīnō) had in his (part of) Gaul etc. Caesarī, populō: for case cf. ipsī l. 5. negōtīi: for case cf. 31, 49. Notice that the partitive genitive is usually separated by several words from the word that governs it. esset, for mode of. 12, 3; 21, 3.*

35. His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis iterum ^{Caesar sends} ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātis mittit: ^{him an ultimatum.} Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmāni beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinē hominū amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret: deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēquanīsque permitteret,¹⁰ ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illīs liceret; nēve Aeduōs iniuriā lacēsseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiā cum eō futūram: sī nōn

2. mandātum, -ī, n., order.

3. quoniam, adv. [quom=cum +iam, now], when now; since. *

4. cōsulātus, -ūs [cōnsul, consul], m., consulship. 1

6. invitō, 1. a., invite, summon. 4
gravor, 1. [gravis, heavy], dep., be unwilling, object. 1

10. reddō, -dere, reddidī, redditus [re+dō, give], a., give back, return, restore; make or cause to be, render. *

13. per-petuus, -a, -um [perpetuō, cause to continue], perpetual permanent; entire; in perpetuum, forever. *

1. iterum: see 34, 1, 2.

2. mandātis: the defiant reply of the king no doubt seemed to Caesar the height of impertinence.

3. beneficiō affectus: the German was shrewd enough to estimate the *beneficium* at its true value.

4. cōsulātū: see on 33, 3—5.

5. hanc grātiā referret, ut etc., since he was making (direct, you make) such a requital as to be reluctant . . . and not think it necessary to discuss and learn etc.

7, 8. haec pōstulāret, the following were the demands he made of him.

9. trādūceret: what mode in dir. disc.? See on 13, 15.

10, 11. Sēquanisue . . . liceret, and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his (Ariovistus') approval those (hostages) which they (Sequani) had (ab Aeduīs). redderet, permitteret: for mood in direct form see on 7, 20.

12. hīs, sociīs: for case cf. 2, 5.

13. sibi etc., he (Caesar) and the Roman people would have etc. sibi, populō, for case cf. 7, 10.

14—19. sī nōn impetrāret . . . sē . . . nōn neglētūrum (esse), &

15 impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtīnēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum.

*Ariovistus
responds
defiantly.*

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, iīs, quōs vīcissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperārent: item populum Rōmānum vīctīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī

16. cēnsēō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *a.*, estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. *

17. commodum, -ī [commodus, convenient], *n.*, convenience, interest, advantage. *

19. neglegō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus [nec + legō, pick out, choose], *a.*, not heed, disregard, neglect. *

2. quem-ad-modum, *adv.*, in

what way or manner, just as, as, how. 3

4. praescriptum, -ī [praescribō, direct], *n.*, direction, dictates. 1
arbitrium, -ī [arbitr, judge], *n.*, decision or judgement (of the arbitrator); opinion, discretion, pleasure. 3

5. praescribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus [scribō, write], *a.*, write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. 4

he (Caesar) did (direct, I do) not obtain (such assurances), he would (direct I will) not disregard etc. **M. Messālā** . . . cōsulibus: in 61 B. C.

17. quod . . . posset, (a common formula in the decrees of the Senate) so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state. quod: (= quantum), for case of. **minimum** 20, 6. commodō: for case of. 12, 3; 25, 11; what takes the place here of the limiting adjective?

18. dēfenderet: the purpose of this decree was to induce the tribes of central Gaul to oppose the emigration of the Helvetii. It was

passed in the interest of Rome, not Gaul, and Ariovistus knew this.

1—5. Note the forms of the verbs in dir. disc.: est—vicerint vicerint—velint (volunt)—imperant—cōsuēvit. Change to dir. disc. throughout the chapter. iīs imperārent, shall rule those. iīs: for case of. 2, 4; 33, 15.

6. quemadmodum . . . ūterētur, how they (populus Rōmānus) should exercise their rights. nōn opōrtēre etc., he (Ariovistus) ought not to be opposed.

7—9. sibi stipendārīōs esse factōs, had become tributary to him.

fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stipendiārīōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vēctīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs 10 sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque iīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētū- 15 rum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur: intellētūrum, quid invictī Germāni,

8. **congridior, -gredi, -gressus** sum [gradior, step], *a., n.*, step or come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. *

10. **dēterior, -ius, comp. adj.**, less, worse. 1

12. **maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, n.**, remain, continue, abide, stay. *

13. **stipendium, -ī** [stīps, gift+pendō, weigh], *n.*, impost, tax, tribute (*paid in money, while the vēctīgal was paid in kind*); pay, stipend; term of military service. *

quot-annīs [quot, how many, every + annus, year], *adv.*, every year, yearly. 4

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *a.*, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (*as money was weighed in payment*); suffer (*punishment*). *

15. **dē-nūntiō, 1. [nūntiō, announce], a.**, announce (*officially, by a herald, etc.*), declare; give or send notice, warn, threaten. 3

17. **in-victus, -a, -um** [vincō, conquer], unconquered, invincible. 1

stipendiārīōs: they paid tribute in money, not in produce.

10. **quī vēctīgālia . . . faceret**, since he (*you make*) made his (*my*) revenues less valuable. Caesar may have instructed the Aedui and Sequani not to pay tribute any longer. In any case his mere presence gave the Aedui hope and made them less careful to fulfill their engagements as to tribute.

11, 12. **iīs sociīs illātūrum** (*esse*), would make upon etc., **sociīs**: for case cf. 2, 5. **iniūriā, without just cause. sī . . . convēnisset**, if they adhered to the terms that had been agreed upon.

13. **stipendium**: among the Gauls a war-tax imposed upon the

conquered.

14. **longē āfutūrum** (*esse*), would be of no value to them. **frāternum nōmen**: a gibe at the pleasant relations between the Aedui and the Romans. **quod . . . dēnūntiāret**, whereas Caesar threatened him. **quod**: for the clause cf. 18, 26; 17, 12; 14, 11.

16. **cum** etc., let him encounter him when he would (*direct, when you're ready, come on*).

17—19. **quid virtūte possent**, how effective in valor. For trans. see on 3, 20. **inter annōs xiv**: i. e. ever since they crossed the Rhine in 72 B. C. This is an exaggeration, but a very natural one. The two messages of Ariovistus, though

exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

Caesar, urged
by his Gallic
allies, marches
against
Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesari mandata referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; hīs praesesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovisti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmen-

18. exercitātus, -a, -um [p. p. of exercitō, train or practise well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2 tēctum, -ī [tegō, cover], n., covering, roof; house. 2

4. trāns-portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry across or over, convey, transport. *

6. Trēverī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle about modern Treves. *

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., a powerful people

of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *

8. Nasua, -ae, m., 1 and Cimberius, -i, m. chiefs of the Suebi. 1.

9. vehementer [vehemēns, violent], adv., violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. *

11. con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus [iungō, join], a., join with or together, connect, unite. *

they doubtless owe very much to the literary skill of his rival, breathe a bold and frank spirit of defiance which is all his own. The candor of Caesar is evident in his presenting with so much point the other side of the case.

1. tempore: about the beginning of August.

3. questum (sc. veniēbant), were coming to complain. For form of 11, 5; 30, 3. Harūdēs: see vocab. 31, 36.

4, 5. populārentur: for mood see on sublevētur 16, 17. obsidi-

bus datis, by giving hostages.

6. Trēverī . . . pāgōs, and further the Treveri (kept coming to complain) that (the people of) a hundred cantons. Suēbōrum:

This seems to have been an emigration like that of the Helvetii, not merely a movement in support of Ariovistus.

7. trānsire: somewhere north of where Ariovistus was; probably near modern Mayence.

9. mātūrandum sibi: that he must make haste. sibi: for case of 11, 15.

11. minus etc., resistance could

tāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.



COUNTRY AROUND VESONTIO.

38. Cum trīdūi viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum *He occupies Vesontio.* est eī, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,

1. prō-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], n., go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *

3. Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besancon. 2

be made less easily. rē frūmen- tāriā: see Int. 116, 117.

12. māgnīs itineribus: see Int. 143.

13. contendit: Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnere pending the result of

the negotiations with Ariovistus.

1. trīdūi viam: this would bring him to the vicinity of modern Langres. trīdūi: for case see on 5, 8; what takes the place of the necessary adjective? viam: for case see on 2, 17.

2. Ariovistum: while Caesar had been marching northeast, toward the Rhine, Ariovistus had been slowly advancing south. Cae-

contendere, tridūque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē
 5 accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat.
 Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsūi erant, summa
 erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur
 ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea
 10 oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius
 pedum mille sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns
 continet māgnā altitudīne, ita, ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque
 parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus
 arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs

5. *prae-caveō, -ere, cāvī, cautus* [*caveō, take care*], *n.*, take precautions. 1
 6. *namque* [*nam, for + -que*], *conj.*, for indeed, for; *more emphatic than nam.* 5
 7. *sic, adv.* [*sī + demonstr. participle -ce*], so, thus, in this manner.*
 8. *Dūbis, -is, m.*, the Doubs, a tributary of the Saone. 1
circinus, -i, [*cf. circum, around*], *m.*, a pair of compasses. 1
circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [*dūcō, lead*], *a.*, lead or draw around. 2
 10. *cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus*, *a.*, encircle, surround, invest, encircle. *
 12. *rādix, -icis, f.*, root; *in pl.*

- with mōntis or collis, foot, base.*
 13. *contingō, -ere, tigi, tactus* [*tangō, touch*], *a.*, and *n.*, touch, reach; extend to, attain to; concern; befall, happen to. *
circum-dō, dare, dedī, datus [*dō, give*], *a.*, give or put around, encircle, surround. *
 14. *arx, arcis* [*arceō, shut up, ward off*], *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. 2
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [*ex + faciō*], *a.*, make or do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. *
hūc, adv. [old form for *hōc, fr. hic*], to this place or point, hither, here. *

sar now turned toward the southeast from Langres and moved with all speed toward Vesontio. See map.
 2. *occupandum*: gerund or gerundive? See on 1, 9.

3. *quod*: the relative generally agrees with an appositive or predicate noun (here *oppidum*) in its own clause rather than with an antecedent (here *Vesontiōnem*) of different gender and number.

4. *id*: the capture of Vesontio.
 5, 7. *sibi*: for case of. 11, 15.

ūsūi: for case of. 13, 28; 25, 6.
summa facultās, a very full supply. *nātūrā loci* etc. note the lucid description.

8. *ut... facultātem*, so that it furnished admirable opportunities etc. *dūcendum*: Gerund or Gerundive? Cf. 1. 2. *ad... bellum*: Ariovistus made a great mistake in not holding Vesontio as he did other Sequanian towns.

9. *ut*: what part of speech? Cf. 4. 11; 16, 3.

nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatōque 15
oppidō, ibi praesidium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei *Panto in
the Roman
army from
fear of the
Germans.*
frumentariae commeatūsque causā morātur, ex
percontatiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac
mercatorum, quī ingentī māgnitudine corporum Germānōs,
incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicā- 5
bant (saepenumērō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem
atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō

15. nocturnus, -a, -um [nox,
night], at night, nocturnal. *
diurnus, -a, -um [diēs, day], of
the day, by day, daily. 4

3. percontatiō, -ōnis [percon-
tor, inquire], r., inquiring, ask-
ing; question, inquiry. 2

4. ingēns, -entis [in, neg. +
gēns, race, kind; lit. not of the
kind, i. e., out of proportion], enor-
mous, huge, vast, great. *
māgnitūdō, -inis, [māgnus, great],
r., greatness, great size, extent,

stature (corporum). *

5. exercitātiō, -ōnis [exercitō,
freq. of exerceō, exercise], r.,
exercising, training; practice, ex-
perience. *

prae-dicō, 1. [dicō, proclaim], a.,
proclaim publicly or before
others; publish, state, declare. 5

6. vultus, -ūs [volō, wish], m.,
wish shown by the expression of
the countenance; looks. 2

7. subitō, adv., [subitus, sudden,
fr. subeō, come up secretly], sud-
denly, unexpectedly, of a sudden.*

11. pedum: cf. tridui line 1.

12. altitudine: for case cf. 6, 12.

14, 15. magnis . . . contendit:
as it turned out, Caesar's haste was
unnecessary. Ariovistus was con-
siderably farther away than he had
supposed. Hearing that Caesar
had reached Vesontio, he now
paused in his advance, thinking it
best to remain where reinforce-
ments could be more easily obtain-
ed from across the Rhine and where
the open country was adapted to
the movements of his large force of
cavalry.

1, 2. ad Vesontionem, in the vi-
cinity of Vesontio rei frumen-
tariae commeatūsque: observe
how frequently Caesar refers to the

procuring of supplies. His care
for the physical well being of his
men was constant and had much to
do with his success. He kept them
in the very best condition. In the
hand-to-hand conflicts of ancient
warfare this was an essential ele-
ment in the success of the under-
sized Italians.

3. vōcibus. replies.

4, 5. mercatorum: the huck-
sters who sold supplies in the
camp. māgnitudine, virtūte, ex-
ercitātiōne: for case cf. 6, 12;
28, 15; 18, 7.

6. sēsē=Gallōs only, not the
traders, because congressōs refers to
hostile encounters.

7. aciem oculōrum, flash of
the eyes.

timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc primum ortus est ā 1 otribūnis militum, praefectis reliquisque, quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnūm in rē militārī ūsum habēbant: quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōnnullī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspī- 15 cionem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculis aut

8. *mediocriter, adv.* [mediocris, moderate], in small degree.

9. *mēns, -entis, f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought, purpose, determination. *

per-turbō, 1. [turbō, disturb], *a.*, disturb greatly, throw in confusion, confound, embarrass, disturb. *

10. *tribūnus, -ī* [tribus, tribe], *m.*, tribune, *a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs*; *tribūnus militum (militāris)*, a military tribune. *

praefectus, -ī [praeficiō, set over], *m.*, overseer, commander, officer, general (equitum); governor of

*a province. **

14. *pudor, -ōris* [pudet, it shames], *m.*, shame, modesty, sense of shame or honor. 2

15. *re-maneō, -ere, mānsi, mānsus* [maneō, remain], *n.*, stay or remain behind, remain. *

fingō, -ere, finxi, fictus [cf. *figūra, form*], *a.*, form, shape, devise, invent. 3



Tabernāculum

16. *tabernāculum, -ī* [taberna, hut], *n.*, hut, tent. 3

8, 9. *ut . . . perturbāret, so that it made all unusually anxious and dispirited.*

10. *tribūnis militum*: see Int. 89. *praefectis*: see Int. 101. *urbe, the city, i. e. Rome. amicitiae . . . secūtī*: Caesar puts the matter delicately. The probability is that these men had attached themselves to him for personal gain, as was the Roman fashion. In giving them commissions, he was simply paying his political debts.

11. *nōn . . . habēbant*: they were "holiday soldiers". *nōn māgnūm ūsum, little experience.*

For the figure see on 1, 8.

12. *quōrum . . . illātā, and one of these alleging one reason, another, another (reason).* For the elliptical use of *alius* see, A. 203 c; G. 319; H. 459, 1; B. 253 2.

13, 14. *ut . . . liceret, his permission to leave;* for the clause cf. 7, 12, 13; 30, 12, 13.

15. *vultum fingere*: that they might thus conceal their fear.

16. *lacrimās*: quite in keeping with the excitable temperament of the Italian. *tabernāculis*: see Int. 137.

suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim etiam ii, quī māgnū in castris ūsum habēbant, milites centuriōnēsque 20 quīque equitātū praecerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōnnūllī eti- 25 am Caesarī nūntiārant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs milites neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōn- *Caesar en-*
siliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs *courages his*
troops.

17. fātum, -ī [for, speak], n., what is spoken *once for all*; fate. 1
 18. miseror, 1. [miser, wretched], a., bewail, lament over, deplore. 2
 volgō (vul-), adv., [volgus, the common people], commonly, generally, everywhere, publicly, openly. *
- testāmentum, -ī [testor, make a will], n., will, testament. 1
19. ob-signō, 1. [signō, mark; seal], a., seal, seal up; sign, execute. 1
20. centuriō, -ōnis [centum, a hundred], m., centurion; the com-
mander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. *
22. timidus, -a, -um [timeō, fear], fearful, affrighted, cowardly, afraid. 5
25. sup (sub-)-portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry or bring up from beneath; bring or convey to; furnish. 5
27. dictum, -ī, n., a word, command, saying. 5
- audiō, 4. a., hear, hear of: *in pr. p. as adj.*, obedient. *
2. ōrdō, -inis, m., row, order, arrangement, series, rank. *

18. testāmenta: legal instruments, sealed and deposited with the quaestor.

20, 21. quī... habēbant... perturbābantur: even the experienced soldiers and officers were affected by vague fears. centuriōnēs: on their soldierly qualities, see Int. 93. quī... praecerant: the praefecti. See Int. 101.

23. angustias itineris: the val-

ley of the Doubs is narrow and very rough.

24. ut, that not (after verbs of fearing): contrast nē, 19, 11.

26. signa ferrī: see Int. 124.

27, 28. nōn... audientēs, would not be obedient to his orders. neque signa lātūrōs (esse), and would not advance. Cf. 25, 18, 19.

2. omnium ōrdinum: to the or-

centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum
 6 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse: cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officio discessūrum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitis suis postulātis atque aequitate cōdiciōnum perspectā eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī
 10grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē

3. incūsō, 1. [causa, cause or case], *a.*, bring a case or charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. 2

6. appetō (ad-), -ere, -īvi (-īi), petitus [petō, seek], *a.*, seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach. *

cūr (quōr = quārē), *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why, for what reason. 4
 temerē, *adv.* [cf. temeritās, chance], by chance, rashly, blindly, causelessly. 4

7. officium, -ī [opus, work + faciō], *n.*, service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. *

8. aequitās, -tātis [aequus,

equal], *r.*, equality, uniformity; impartiality, fairness, justice. postulātum, -ī, *n.*, demand.

9. perspicio, -ere, spēxi, spectus [obsol. specio, look], *a.*, look or see through, discern, perceive; view, examine, inspect. *

10. repudiō, 1. [repudium (fr. re- + pudet), divorce, rejection], divorce, reject. 1

furor, -ōris [furō, rage], *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 3

āmentia, -ae [mēns, mind], *r.*, bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 2

impellō (in-), -ere, puli, pulsus [pellō, drive], *a.*, drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. *

dinary council of war, only the ten chief centurions (*primi ordinēs*) of each legion were summoned. This however, was a special gathering of all the officers of the army to listen to Caesar's admonitions; so all of the centurions were present. See Int. 97.

3. incūsāvit: Caesar's rebuke is put in the form of indirect discourse. Review the principles in your grammar (7, 10, footnote) and give the direct form in both Latin and English.

4, 5. dūcerentur: for mood cf. 12, 3; 32, 6. quaerendum (*esse*) cōgitandum (*esse*), that they ought to inquire or consider. The gram-

matical subject is the clause *aut . . . dūcerentur*, cf. 22, 8. putārent: for mood cf. 16, 17; 23, 9. sē cōnsule: when was Caesar consul?

6. hunc etc., that this man (Ariovistus) would deviate from the path of duty so causelessly.

7, 8. sibi quidem persuādērī, in fact he was convinced. The passive of intransitive verbs which govern the dative is used only impersonally and the Dative is then retained. The subject of *persuādērī* is *eum . . . repudiātūrum*. postulātis, aequitāte: for trans. and constr. cf. 25, 5; 22, 5; 19, 5.

10, 11. quod sī, but if; for case

suā virtūte aut dē ipsiūs diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēiūs hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum¹⁵ etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc disciplīna, quam ā nōbīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuis-

12. *diligentia*, -ae [diligēns, heedful], f., heedfulness, painstaking, care. *

14. *C.*, abbreviation for the praenomen Gaius.

Marius, -ī, m., Gaius Marius (157-56 B. C.) the conqueror of the Cimbrī and Teutones and champion of the popular party in Rome. 1

laus, laudis, f., praise, merit, credit, commendation. *

15. *imperātor*, -ōris [imperō, command], m., commander-in-chief, general. *

16. *servilis*, -e [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. 2

tumultus, -ūs [tumeō, swell], m.,

disturbance, commotion, uproar; revolt, uprising. *

17. *disciplina*, -ae [contr. of *discipulina*, fr. *discipulus*, learner], f., learning, instruction, drill, discipline. *

ego, mei, etc., pers. pron. I; pl. *nōs*, we, us, etc. *

18. *cōstantia*, -ae [cōstāns, firm], f., firmness, steadfastness. 2

19. *aliquamdiū* fem. acc. of *aliquis* (sc. partem)-diū, a long time], for a while, for some time, awhile. 2

inermus, -a, -um [arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed, defenseless. 1

and use of *quod* see on 20, 9. *quid vererentur*, what were they afraid of? For mood see A. 338; B. 118, e; G. 651; H. 523, II, 1; B. 315.

Contrast carefully with *posse* 14, 11.

12. *suā*, refers to the subject of *dēspērārent* and avoids the repetition of the same word in the following phrase. *ipsiūs*, Caesar.

13. *periculum*, a test.

15. *vidēbātur*: what mode is regularly employed in dependent clauses in indirect disc.? For the indicative see A. 336 d, p. 373; H. 524 2, 2; B. 314 3. G. 628 R. (a).

14. *Cimbris et Teutonīs*: German tribes. See Int. 63. *C. Ma-*

riō: Caesar's uncle. "What the uncle has done, can not the nephew do" would be the thought suggested to his hearers.

15. *factum* (*esse*): sc. *periculum*.

16. *nūper*: in 73-71 B. C. *servilī tumultū*: the Servile War. The slaves were largely Gauls and Germans. The *tumultus* was a hostile outbreak in Italy itself or in Cisalpine Gaul. *quōs*: the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servilī* which is equivalent to *servōrum*.

18. *posse*: the subject is *quantum . . . cōstantia*, what great value is in steadfastness.

19. *inermōs*: referring to the

20sent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem quibuscum saepenumero Helvētiū congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, 25hōs, sī quaerent, reperīre posse, diūturnitate bellī defatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdis tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cū ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs 30atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērare nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rē frumentariae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris dēspērare

20. armō, 1. [arma], arm, equip; *in p. p. as adj.*, armed; *as subst.*, armed men. *

22. plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, commonly, frequently. *

25. diūturnitas, -tātis [diūturnus, prolonged], *f.*, long duration. 2

dē-fatigō 1. (defet-), [fatigō, weary], *a.*, completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 5

26. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. *

28. dispergō, -ere, spersi, spersus [spergō, scatter], spread, scatter: *in p. p. as adj.*, dispersed, scattered. *

contra, *prep. with acc.*, contrary to, against, opposite to. *

30. imperitus, -a, um [peritus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. *

32. simulatiō, -ōnis [simulō, make like], *f.*, simulation, deceit, pretence. *

33. arroganter *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], presumptuously. 1

poorly equipped hordes of Germans and Gauls whom Marius had conquered.

20. postea: *i. e.*, in the Servile War.

26. Gallis: *i. e.*, the Aedui and their supporters.

27. suī potestātem, a chance at him.

29. ratiōnī, translate with hāc

in next line and omit here; for its position cf. 12, 17; 22, 16.

30, 31. hāc (ratiōne) . . . posse, not even (Ariovistus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem: referring to cum . . . vicisse, lines 26-29.

33. dē . . . dēspērāre, to lack confidence in the general's performance of duty.

aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse³⁵ in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iudicatūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam⁴⁰ esse convīctam: suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam

35. Leucī, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gallie* tribe on the Moselle. 1

sub-ministrō (summ-), 1. [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, afford, give. 3

36. brevis, -e, *adj.* short, transitory, brief. *

male, [malus, bad], badly.

40. dē-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be wanting, fail. *

facinus, -oris [faciō, do], *n.*, deed, misdeed, outrage, crime. *

avāritia, -ae [avārus, greedy], *f.*,

greed, covetousness. 2

41. con-vincō, -ere, vicī, victus [vincō, conquer], *a.*, conquer completely; prove or make good a charge, convict. 1

innocentia, -ae [innocēns, harmless], *f.*, harmlessness, integrity.] felicitās, -tātis [fēlix, happy], *f.*, happiness, good success or fortune. 2

43. re-praesentō, 1. [praesēns, present], *a.*, make present, exhibit; do at once. 1

34. haec . . . cūrae, *he was* (direct: *I am*.) looking after these matters; cūrae: for case cf. 18,28; 25, 6; 33, 8.

34-36. frūmentum, frūmenta: difference in meaning? See on 16, 4. ipsōs, *they themselves* (direct: *you yourselves*), i. e., the soldiers. mātūra: it was now the month of August.

37. quod etc., *he was* (direct: *I am*) not at all disturbed by their (your) statement that they (you) would not be subject to his (my) orders nor advance.

38. scīre etc., *for he knew* (di-

rect: *I know*) that because of an unsuccessful battle good luck had failed, or from some manifested crime greed had been proven, in the case of any whose orders the army had not obeyed.

41. innocentiam, *integrity*, opp. to avāritia. perpetuā vitā, *throughout his life*.

42, 43. sē . . . repraesentātūrum (esse), *he would* (direct: *I will*) perform immediately what he had intended (*I intended*) to defer until some future time.

44. dē quartā vigiliā: about what hour?

45 primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium, an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huīc legiōni Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter vir-
50tūtem cōfidēbat māximē.

They respond to his rallying and advance.

41. Hāc orātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum
5 iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē nec umquam dubitāsse neque

45. utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], only translated with indirect and alternative questions (which of the two) whether: followed by an or necne in alternative questions: utrum . . . an, whether . . . or. 3

46. an, conj., used as second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. *

47. decimus, -a, -um [decem, ten], tenth. *

48. praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor, commander], relating to the praetor or commander, praetorian: cohors, the commander's body guard.

cohors, -rtis, f., enclosure; cohort, the tenth part of a legion, numbering from 300 to 600 men.

49. indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dul-

tus [in + dulcis, pleasant], be pleasant or indulgent to, treat with favor or kindness, favor; yield or be addicted to. praecipuē [praecipuus, special], adv., especially, particularly, chiefly.

1. modus, -ī, m., measure, quantity, manner, method, style.

2. alacritās, -tātis [alacer, active], f., activity, spirit, eagerness.

3. in-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum [nāscor, be born], n., be born in, be begotten or engendered in, spring up, arise. P. p. as adj., inborn, ingrained.

8. umquam (unq-), adv. usually with negatives, sometimes with interrog. and conditional clauses, at any time, ever.

46, 47. quod sī, and if; for quod cf. l. 10. dē quā, about which he had no doubts.

4. grātiās ēgit, expressed their thanks.

5. sēque esse parātissimam, and that it (decimam legiōnem) was entirely ready.

6-8. cum . . . ēgērunt, utī satisfacerent, conferred with . . . in order to make apology. prīmō-

timuisse, neque de summâ bellî suum iudicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione acceptâ et itinere exquisitô per Diviciacum, quod ex Gallis eî maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquagintâ circuitû locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quartâ vigiliâ, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimô diê, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

42. Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit conditionem Caesar iamque eum ad

Ariovistus asks for a conference and stipulates conditions which Caesar grants.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>10. satisfactiô, -onis [satisfaciô, give satisfaction], F., satisfaction, amends; excuse, apology.</p> <p>11. exquirô, -ere, quisivî, quisitus [quaerô, seek], a., seek earnestly, seek or ask for, inquire after, learn by inquiry, investigate. 2</p> | <p>12. quinquagintâ, indecl. num., fifty. *</p> <p>3. propius, compar. adv. [prope, near], nearer. *</p> <p>5. re-spuô, -ere, spui [spuô, spit], a., spit out; spurn, refuse. 1</p> |
|--|---|

rum ordinum: the primipili or chief centurions. See Int. 92.

9, 10. neque . . . existimavisse, and they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs but the commander's.

11, 12. itinere: the route by which to reach Ariovistus. ex . . . habebat, because of (all) the Gauls he had the greatest confidence in him. circuitû: by marching around to the northwest he would avoid the rough country along the Doubs. This was a wise concession to the fears of his men (cf. 39, 23, angustiâs . . . silvarum).

13. ut dixerat: in 40, 44.

14. septimô diê: the army in a seven days march at the usual

rate (see Int. 148) would cover about one hundred miles, and reach a position near Cernay, not far from the Rhine. cum . . . intermitteret, since the march was without interruption; for mode see on 9, 3.

2. postulasset: sc. Caesar.

3. id . . . licere, this might be done as far as he was concerned.

4. accessisset: Ariovistus' reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7-9) no longer held good. Caesar's prompt advance had surprised him and he was more inclined to confer. sine periculô: Ariovistus wanted to avoid seeming to be forced into a conference.

5, 6. ad sanitatem, to his senses. petenti, when he requested

sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāset, ūltrō pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs cōgnitīs suis postulātis fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquīō
 10 dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe ūltrō citrōque cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum ēquitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod ne-
 15 que colloquium interpositā causā tolli volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallis equitibus dētractis eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē

8. **sānitās, -tātis** [sānus, sound (*in mind or body*)], *F.*, soundness of body, good health; soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 2

7. **dē-negō, 1. [negō, say no]**, say not, deny, refuse. 1

ūltrō, adv. [ūterior, farther], on the farther side, beyond; of one's accord, willingly. *

9. **pertinācia, -ae** [pertināx (*fr. pertineō, hold through*), *that holds fast*], *F.*, perseverance; obstinacy, pertinacity. 2

10. **citrō, adv.** [cis, on this side], hither; ūltrō citrōque, back

and forth, hither and thither. 1

12. **pedes, peditis** [pēs, foot], *M.*, foot soldier: *pl.*, infantry, foot. *

15. **inter-pōnō, -ere, posui, positus** [pōnō, place], place between, insert, interpose. *

16. **commodus, -a, -um** [modus, measure], convenient, suitable.

17. **dē-trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractus** [trahō, draw or drag], *A.*, draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove; disparage, detract. 5

18. **legiōnārius, -a, -um** [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. *

it. Cf. use of perf. part. in 31, 19 and of pres. part. in 25, 20.

7. **māgnamque** etc., and he began confidently to expect that he would abandon his obstinate course.

8. **beneficiīs**: from Caesar's point of view, Ariovistus was showing great ingratitude.

12. **nē quem**: for the pronominal force after *nē* cf. 7, 20; 20, 2;

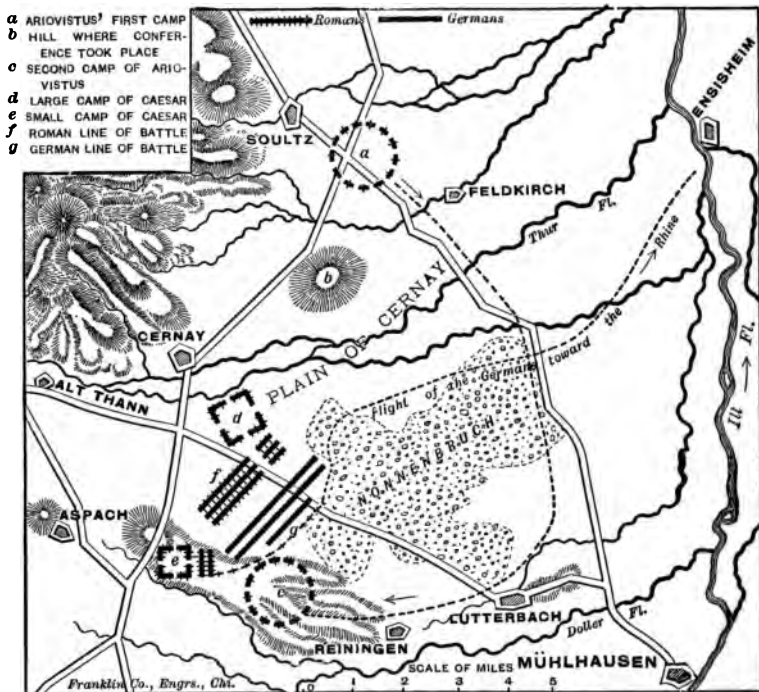
30, 15; 31, 48. For mood of *addūceret* cf. 2, 4; 30, 13.

14. **aliā ratiōne**, on other terms.

15, 16. **salūtem . . . audēbat**: Caesar's natural distrust of the Gallic cavalry (see 18, 26-28, text) may have been increased by Ariovistus' demand that cavalry only should escort him.

18. **eō, adv.** = *in eōs*.

cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdī-20 culē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dixit: plūs quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis



BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS.

19. *impōnō, -ere, posuī, positus* [*pōnō, place*], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount; embark. 5

20. *irridiculē (inr-), adv.* [*ridiculē, humorously*], without humor or wit. 1

19, 20. *sī... esset, if there should be any occasion for their service.* *factō*: a participle, not the noun; for the case see A. 243 e, N.; B. 88, d; G. 406 *ad fin.*; H. 414, iv, N. 3; B. 218, 2, c. When a thing (not

an act) is needed Caesar uses only the construction found in 34, 6. *nōn irrīdīculē, wittily.* What figure? Cf. 39, 11.

22, 23. *cohortis praetōriae*: see 40, 48. *ad equum resectū-*

praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum re-
scribere.

*Place of the
Conference.
Caesar's ad-
dress and de-
mands.*

43. Plāniciēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus
terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē
spatiō ā castrīs utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat
dictum, ad colloquium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam
5 equīs vēxerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōstituit.
Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovis-
tus, ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad
colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar
initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemo-
10 rāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod

23. re-scribō, -ere, scripsī, scrip-
tus [scribō, write], write again,
transfer (by writing), re-enlist. 1

1. plāniciēs (plānit-), -ēi [plā-
nus, level], f., level ground, flat
surface, plain. *

tumulus, -ī [tumeō, swell], m.,
swelling; mound, hill, hillock. *

2. terrēnus, -a, -um [terra,

earth], of earth, earthen. 1

grandis, -e, great, large, bulky. 4

aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal;
equitable, impartial, just. *

5. vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, a.,
carry, convey, bring. 1

7. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*,
[decem, ten], ten each, ten at a
time, by tens. 2

bere: this phrase means (1) to
transfer to the cavalry, a part of
the army looked down upon by the
soldiers of the legion, and (2) to
raise to the rank of knights, held
in high honor at Rome. The jest
consists in pretending to consider
the first act as the second.

1. plāniciēs māgna: near Cern-
nay. Belfort, some distance south-
west of Cernay is thought by some
authorities to be the place near
which these negotiations were car-
ried on; but there is no large plain
near Belfort. erat, there was; for
use of the expletive see on 6, 1.

3. spatiō: the verb aberat im-

plies comparative distance, for the
ablative therefore see A. 257 b;
B. 92; G. 403, N. 1; H. 423, N. 2;
B. 223.

5, 6. equīs: for case cf. cōpūs
3, 20. passibus, intervāllō: for
case cf. spatiō above.

8. postulāvit: Caesar does not
say that he made any objection to
this request, or demand. Probably
he agreed to it at once, being desir-
ous to let nothing prevent a meet-
ing. ventum est: (=vēnērunt)
for trans. cf. 31, 8; 26, 6; 23, 5.

9. sua . . . commemorāvit, re-
minded him of his own (javors) and
the senate's favors to him.

10. amicus: sc. appellātus esset.

mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam haberet beneficiō ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque iustae causae neces-15 situdinis ipsis cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senatus consulta quotiens quamque honorifica in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo 20 sui nihil deperdere, sed gratiam, dignitate, honore auctiores

11. mūnus, -eris, n., duty, burden; present. 3

amplē [amplus, large], largely, widely, liberally; comp. amplius; superl. amplissimē. 1

12. doceō, -ere, -uī, doctus, a., show, teach, instruct; inform. *

13. aditus, -ūs [ad + eō, go], m., going to, approach, means of approach, access. *

iustus, -a, -um [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, righteous, reasonable, valid, just. *

14. praemium, -ī [prae-ēmō, buy or get before others], n., advantage, distinction, prize, reward. *

15. necessitudō, -inis [necesse,

necessary], f., close or necessary connection, intimacy. 1

16. consulum, -ī [consulō, deliberate], n., result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. 2

17. quotiens [quot, how many], how many times, how often, as often as. 2

honorificus, -a, -um [honor + faciō], conferring honor, honorable. 1

21. de-perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus [perdō, destroy], a., destroy utterly, ruin; lose entirely, forfeit, lose. 3

dignitas, -tātis [dignus, worthy], f., worthiness, merit, rank. *

auctus, -a, -um, partic. adj., (augeō), increased. 1

11, 12. mūnera: these were a crown and a goblet of gold, a curule chair, an ivory scepter and embroidered robes. quam . . . tribui, a mark of respect which, he showed, had come to few (persons) and was usually bestowed in recompense for men's important services.

13. aditum, (right of) access. haberet: for mode see on 14, 16; cum is concessive.

14. praemia, honors.

15. quam etc., how ancient and

how reasonable were the occasions for an alliance between them (the Romans) and the Aedui.

16, 17. intercēderent, essent: for mode cf. 12, 3; 32, 6; 34, 12. ut, how; here an interrogative adverb, introducing an indirect question. In what other sense has the adverb ut been used? Cf. 38, 9; 22, 3.

18. Galliae, i. e. Celtic Gaul.

20-22. esse consuetudinem, ut velit, the practice was to wish

velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiā populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs eripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs
 2 bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nullam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē
 5 māgnīsque praemiīs domum propīnquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habere in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuērunt. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse
 10 ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē

22. afferō (ad-), ferre, attulī, allātus, a., bring, take or carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. *

26. re-mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus [mittō, send], a., send or drive back, return, restore; remit, release, relax. *
 at, conj., but, at least. *

etc. For the Subj. 4,4; 5,3; 31,50.
 4. sed auctiōrēs esse, but rather to be advanced. grātiā etc.: for case see on 1, 3.

23, 24. iīs: for case see on 17,
 9. posset: for mode see on 40,
 11. dederat: in 35, 2.

1, 2. pauca, multa (sc. verba), briefly, much. His reply is in indirect discourse. Give the direct form in both Latin and English.

3, 4. suā sponte: cf. 9, 3.
 rogātum et arcessitum = quod

rogātus esset et arcessitus esset; what force have the participles? Gallīs: i. e., the Sequani and Arverni; see 31, 12.

6, 7. ipsīs: sc. Gallīs. iūre: for case see on mōribus 4, 2. victīs: for case cf. 2, 5; 23, 5; 36, 11; so Gallīs and sibi in l. 8.

9. oppūgnandum: Gerund or Gerundive? Cf. 38, 8; 38, 3.

10. castra habuisse, had encamped. ūnō proeliō: see 31, 42, 43.

12, 13. pāce: for case cf. 20,

stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportere, idque sē eā spē petisse.¹⁵ Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere: eiūs rei testimōniō esse²⁰ quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret? Prōvinciam suam²⁵ hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs

12. **dē-certō**, 1. [certō, contend], *n.*, fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. *

iniquus, -a, -um [aequus, even, just], uneven, unjust, unfair, unfavorable. *

14. **ōrnāmentum**, -ī [ōrnō, adorn], *n.*, mark of honor, distinction. 2

15. **dētrimentum**, -ī [dē-terō, rub or wear out], *n.*, rubbing or wasting away; harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. *

17. **sub-trahō**, -ere, trāxī, trac-

tus [trahō, draw], draw or carry off, take away, withdraw. 2

libenter [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 3

20. **impūgnō**, 1. [in+pūgnō, fight], *a.*, fight against, attack, assail. 2

testimōnium, -ī [testor, be a witness], *n.*, witness, testimony, proof; testimonial. 4

23. **numquam** (nun-) *adv.* [nē+umquam, ever], never. 4

26. **sic-ut** (sicuti) [ut, as], so as, just as, as. *

7; 16, 6 (*frūmentō*): 2, 6. **dē** ... **recūsāre**, make objections to.

14. **sibi ōrnāmentō**: for cases cf. 18, 28.

15. **id**: neuter because it refers to the phrase *amīcitiam populī Rōmānī*. Of what gender is any phrase, clause, or term, when used substantively? **id ... petisse**: the king admits that he had sued

for the honor.

24, 25. **sibi** = *Caesari*; for case see on 28, 2. **suās** refers to Ariovistus. **vellet, veniret**: for mood cf. 40, 11. **prōvinciam suam**: i. e., his right of possession was as clear as that of the Romans to the Roman Province.

26, 27. **hanc Galliam, this part of Gaul. ut ... oportēret**,

esse iniquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frā-
trēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barba-
30orum neque tam imperitū esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque
bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxiliū tulisse
neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et cum
Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dē-
bēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā, quod exercitū
35in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi
dēcēdat atque exercitū dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē
illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī
eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōnīlibus prīncipibusque populī
Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūn-

28. *interpellō*, 1. *a.*, interrupt, hinder, interfere with. 1

32. *contentiō*, -ōnis [contendō, stretch out, struggle], *r.*, stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. *

34. *suspīcor*, 1. [suspīciō, suspect], *a.*, suspect, distrust. *

simulō, 1. [similis, like], make like, counterfeit, pretend. 2

35. *opprimō* (obp-), -ere, *pressī*, *pressus* [premō, press], *a.*,

press against or down; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. *

36. *dē-dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductus* [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead down or away, withdraw, conduct, induce, influence; launch (nāvēs). *

regiō, -ōnis [regō, direct, mark (by a line)], *r.*, direction, line; boundary; quarter, district, region, country. *

39. *grātus*, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable, welcome. 2

just as there ought to be no yielding to him (lit. *to be yielded to etc. ought not*). For use of *concedī* and constr. of *ipsī* see on 40, 7, 8.

28, 29. *in*, in the exercise of. *quod*: for the clause cf. 14, 11; 17, 12; 18, 26. *diceret*, i. e., *Caesar* (direct: *you*).

30. *imperitū rērum*, ignorant of political matters. For the Gen. cf. 2, 14; 14, 5; 18, 8.

31. *bellō Allobrogum*: see on 6, 7.

33, 34. *auxillō ūsōs esse*, had the assistance, for case cf. l. 12. *Ariovistus* here lays his finger upon a weak point in *Caesar's* argument.

dēbēre sē suspicārī, he had a right (legal and moral) to suspect. *simulātā amicitīā*, although he made a pretense of friendship. Note the concessive force of the Abl. Abs. State other uses of this construction.

36, 37. *sēsē . . . amīcō*, habitūrum (*esse*), he would not regard him (*Caesar*) as a friend. *quod sī*: cf. 20, 9; 40, 10. It is entirely possible that *Caesar's* enemies at the capital, embittered by his acts as consul (see Int. 20-24) had indicated to the king their desire to have him put out of the way.

39, 40. *id compertum habēre*, he had ascertained this. For the

tiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amī-
citiā ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī discessisset et
liberā possēsiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum
praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine
ullō ēius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta Caesar insists
on Roman
rights in
Gaul.
sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam

neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuetūdinem pati, utī optimē merentēs
sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse Ario-
vistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et
Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ig-
nōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium

42. liber, -era, -erum, unre-
strained, free; undisputed. *

43. remūneror, 1. [mūnus, gift],
a., repay, reward, requite. 1

44. labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort,
striving; labor, hardship. *

1. sententia, -ae [sentio, think],
f., way of thinking, opinion, a
sentiment, feeling, purpose; deci-
sion, verdict. *

3. bene [benus = bonus, good],
well, rightly, successfully: comp.
melius; sup. optimē. 2

4. dē-serō, -ere, serū, sertus
[serō, join], a., disjoin, disunite,
abandon, desert: in p. p. as adj.,
deserted, solitary. *

potius, [neut. sing. acc. of potior
comp. of potis, able], comp. adv.,
rather. *

6. Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic
people bordering on the Province. *

Q., abbreviation for Quintus, a Roman
praenomen. 2

Fabius, -i, m., a Roman gentile
name: Quintus Fabius Maximus,
conqueror of the Arverni and Ru-
teni on the Rhone, 121 B. C. *

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in-
+(g)nōscō, know], n., forgive,
pardon. 5

7. redigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [agō,
put in motion], a., drive or bring
back; get together, collect; ren-
der, reduce. *

use of the participle *compertum* of.
redēpta 18, 10; *coāctum* 15, 4.

2. *posset*: for mood of. 12,
3; 34, 12; 40, 4.

3, 4. *pati, utī dēsereret*, al-
lowed him to abandon. For the *ut*
clause cf. 2, 4; 31, 4; 39, 14.
Galliam etc., that Gaul belonged to
Ariovistus rather than to the Roman
people. This was the real question
between Caesar and Ariovistus.
Ariovistī. Note the *possessive*

force of the Predicate Genitive.
What other Gen. is common in the
predicate?

5, 6. *bellō superātōs esse*: in
the year 121 by Quintus Fabius the
consul, who killed 120,000 men and
carried off the king and his son as
captives. *quibus ignōvisset*,
whom had pardoned: for case of
quibus cf. 2, 4; 18, 19; 33, 19.

7. *in prōvinciam redēgisset*:
as the Cevennes formed the natural
boundary of the Roman Province,

imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

The conference is broken up by an attack from the German cavalry.

46. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem fecit seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ulla periculo legionis dellectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat ut pulsus hostibus dici posset eos ab se per

10. ob-servō, 1. [servō, give heed], a., heed, observe, mark, regard, celebrate. *

3. ad-equitō, 1. [equitō (fr. eques), ride], n., ride up to or

towards. 1

lapis, lapidis, m., stone; collectively, stone, stones. *

6. et-si, conj., even if, although, though. *

this was probably the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans. Notice that *redēgisset* is transitive and that from *quibus* standing next to the intransitive *ignōvissent* we must supply *quōs*.

8. *antiquissimum quodque tempus, all the past, i. e. priority of time.* For force of *quisque* with the superl. see on 31, 44. See 44, 22, where Ariovistus claims priority of conquest. Caesar's answer is that the defeat of the Arverni and Ruteni give the Romans the first claim.

11. *lēgibus*: for case cf. 5, 10; 20, 7; *voluisset, had allowed.* The subject is *senātus*.

1. *geruntur*: for rendering with *dum* see on 27, 8.

2. *propius tumulum, nearer*

the hill. For the Acc. with *propius* see A. 261, a; G. 416, 22; H. 437, 1; B. 141 3,

4. *in nostrōs*: notice the repetition of the pronoun.

5, 6. *nē . . . reicerent, not to hurt in return etc. quod, any: what kind of a pronoun? For quod instead of quid see A. 104 a; B. LIX, 6; G. 107; H. 190 N. 1; B. 91. legionis dellectae, to the chosen legion.* Which legion? See 40, 47-50.

7. *committendum (esse) ut etc., that he ought to permit it to (be able to) be said.* For trans. of the impersonal cf. 43, 8; 31, 8; 26, 6. For the *ut* clause cf. 13, 18, but notice that here the verb *committendum* is passive, and the clause is therefore subject.

8. *nōn putābat, etc.*: Caesar

fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteaquam in volgus militum elatum est, quā arrogantiam in colloquiō Ariovistus usus¹⁰ omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut dirēmisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi manus exercitui iniectum est.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos *Ariovistus again requests a conference in person or through envoys. He sets the envoys of Caesar.* mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e suis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesaris causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad

11. inter-dico, -ere, dixi, dictus [dico, say], *a., say among other things; intervene by an order; prohibit, exclude, interdict. **
 12. dirimo, -ere, emi, emptus

- [dis+emo, take], *a., take apart interrupt, break off. 1*
 14. in-icio, -ere, ieci, iectus [iacio, hurl], *a., throw or cast into or upon, put or place on; put into, inspire, infuse, inject. 5*

would have his readers believe that Ariovistus was the aggressor. As the whole expedition was of doubtful legality, the Roman general would naturally put prominently in view the plea of necessity. *pulsis hostibus, in case of the defeat of the enemy. Case?*

10. quā arrogantiam usus, *with what insolence. arrogantiam: for case cf. 5, 10. The participle of utor may often be translated by the prep. with.*

11. omni . . . interdixisset, *had forbidden the Romans all Gaul. Gallia: for case cf. 1, 14; 8, 16; 8, 12. Romanis: for case cf. 2, 4; 33, 19.*

12. eaque . . . dirēmisset, *and how this circumstance etc. ut: see*

on 43, 17 and explain mode of dirēmisset. What part of speech is ut?

2, 3. quae agi coeptae essent, *which had begun to be discussed. The passive forms of coepi are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.*

5, 6. colloquendi . . . est, *there did not seem to Caesar to be any occasion for a conference. eo: for case cf. hoc 32, 9; multo 16, 18.*

7, 8. retineri quin conicerent: *for the constr. of quin after expressions of hindrance and refusal see A. 319 d: G. 554; H. 504, 4; B. 295, 3, a. Translate quin with its Subj. by from with the present participle: kept from casting. magno cum periculo, at a great risk.*

eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat.
 10 Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri
 Caburi filium, summam virtute et humanitate adolescentem
 cuius pater a C. Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et prop-
 ter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quam multa
 iam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in
 15 eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M.
 Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut,
 quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent.
 Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu
 suo praesente conclamavit: quid ad se venirent? an specu-

10. Procillus, -i, m., a Roman family name. E. g., a Gaul sent to Ariovistus by Caesar. 2

11. Caburus, -i, m., Caius Valerius Caburus, a Celt honored with Roman citizenship by C. Valerius Flaccus, father of (C. Valerius) Procillus and Domotaurus. 2

adulescens (ado-), -entis, [adolescō, grow up], m., f., youth; young man or woman, from seventeen to forty years of age. *

12. Flaccus, -i, m., a Roman cognomen. Caius Valerius Flaccus, praetor in Gaul, 83, B. C. 1

donō, 1. [donum, gift], a., give, bestow, endow with. 2

13. scientia, -ae [sciō, know],

r., knowledge, science, experience, skill. *

14. longinquus, -a, -um [longus, long], far off, distant; long continued, protracted. 5

15. peccō, 1. a., miss or fail (doing one's duty), mistake; transgress, do wrong, sin. 1

16. Metius, -i, m., Marcus Metius, an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus. 2

18. con-spiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [speciō, look], a., look at attentively, observe, descry, perceive. *

19. con-clamō, 1. [clamō, cry out], a., n., shout or cry out together, call aloud, cry or shout out. *

10. visum est, seemed best. The subject is C. Valerium . . . mittere, lines 10-15.

12. civitate donatus erat, had been presented with citizenship.

13, 14. quam multam utebatur, which Ariovistus spoke fluently; lit., much of which A. used. et etc., and because in his case the Germans did not have any grounds for doing wrong.

15. Germanis: for case cf. 7, 10; 11, 13; 34, 5. esset, did not

have (as he thought) any grounds; for mood cf. 16, 17; 23, 9; 37, 4.

19. conclamavit, cried aloud. Ariovistus' course can be accounted for only on the theory that he had expected Caesar to accede to his suggestion for a second personal interview, and was disappointed and angry. quid, why? For case see the refs. on minimum 20, 6.

20. conantibus, while they were attempting: cf. use of pres. part. in 25, 20,

landī causā? Cōnantīs dicere prohibuit et in catēnāszo coniecit.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus pas- *He advances*
 suum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. *toward Cae-*
 Postrīdiē eius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cō- *sar's camp.*
 piās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra *Cavalry*
 fēcit eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēqua- *skirmishes.*
 nīs et Aeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō
 diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās
 prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus
 proeliō contenderē, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs

20. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter.
 speculor, 1. [speciō, look], a., n.,
 observe, reconnoitre, spy. 1

1. prō-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus
 [moveō, move], a., n., move for-
 ward, advance; extend, enlarge;
 put off. 4
 4. ūltrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond,

on the farther side of, past. 2
 7. continuus, -a, -um [contineō,
 hold together], holding together,
 unbroken, uninterrupted, contin-
 uous. 5
 prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus
 [dūcō, lead], a., lead out or
 forth, bring forth, produce; draw
 up (cōpiās); prolong, protract. *

1. milibus: for case cf. 43, 6;
 43, 3.

2. sub monte: at the foot of
 the Vosges and north of Caesar's
 camp, from which he was separated
 by a heavy forest.

3. praeter castra: why Caesar
 did not attack him on the flank
 while executing this maneuver does
 not appear. Probably the forest
 protected him from observation.

5, 6. fēcit = *posuit*. utī . . .
 interclūderet: this skilful move-
 ment was embarrassing to Caesar
 and made him anxious to fight, as
 Ariovistus knew it would. ex
 Sēquanīs: this route led up from
 the south. The communications
 with the Leuci and Lingones far-
 ther north, were not affected, so
 that Caesar was not entirely cut off
 from supplies; but only a small

part of his supplies came from
 that quarter.

6. interclūderet: for mode of
 30, 8.

7. diēs continuōs quīnque:
 for the case see on 3, 12. prō cas-
 trīs: the Romans preferred to fight
 with the camp in the rear as a
 place of retreat in case of necessity.

8. aciem: what was the ordin-
 ary arrangement of the cohorts in
 line of battle? See Int. 87. sī
 vellet, etc. As a matter of fact, it
 was Caesar who wished to fight;
 but he was naturally reticent on
 this point, knowing that his oppo-
 nent had scored an advantage over
 him.

9. eī . . . deesset, *he would not*
be without an opportunity. All
 compounds of *esse* (except *abesse*
 and *posse*) govern the dative,

10 omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestrī proeliō cotidiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs velōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salutis causā delēgerant: cum hīs in proeliis
 15 versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant: hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut

11. **genus, -eris** [gen- in gignō, beget], *n.*, descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. *
12. **exerceō, 2. [arceō, ward or drive off]**, *a., n.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. *
- totidem, indecl. adj.** [tot, so many +idem], just as many, the same number. *
13. **velōx, velōcis**, swift, rapid. 2
15. **versō, 1. [freq. of vertō, turn]**, *a., n.*, turn frequently, change; *pass. as dep.*, remain, dwell, stay; be engaged in, busy, associated, or employed with, occupy, act. *
16. **dūrus, -a, -um**, hard, rough, difficult; severe, inclement, unfavorable. 4

- con-currō, -ere, curri, cursus** (currō, run], *a., n.*, run or rush together; encounter, engage in conflict; concur, happen together. *
- dēcidō, -ere, cidi** [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall from or down, fall off. *
17. **circum-sistō, -ere, stiti** [sistō, stand], *a.*, stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. *
- quō** [old dat. of quī], *adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.* whither, to or into which, as far as; (3) *indef.* (after sī, nē, etc.) if any whither, if to any place. *
- prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, itus** [prō+eō, go], *n.*, go or come forth, go forward, advance. 4

10. **exercitum . . . continuit:** Ariovistus was perfectly satisfied with his position and hoped to compel Caesar to retreat in order to secure his communications with the Sequani and Aedui.

11. **genus etc.** English order; *genus pūgnae, quō . . . exercuerant, erat hōc* (was as follows). The tactics here described were not really original with the Germans, but a common device among many ancient peoples. See Int. 194.

12. **numerō:** for case see on 1, 3.

13, 14. **singulī singulōs:** the pairs were composed of close friends.

15, 16. **hī . . . concurrēbant,** *these (peditēs), if there was anything too hard* (for the cavalry to accomplish) *quickly ran* (to their aid).

17, 18. **sī . . . recipiendum,** *if it were required to advance anywhere for a considerable distance (longius) or to withdraw quite rapidly. longius, celerius:* for trans. see on 14, 16. **sī quō, if anywhere.** The adverbs derived from *quis*, as well as the pronoun itself, are indefinite if preceded by *sī, nisi, num, nē*.

celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevatī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciē- que triplicī instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciē in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omnī equitatū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcius Caesar, utī ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et

To insure supplies, Caesar constructs a second, smaller camp.

18. celeritās, -tātis [celer, swift], f., swiftness, quickness, speed. *

19. iuba, -ae, f., mane. 1
cursus, -ūs [currō, run], m., running, speed; course, career; passage. *

ad-aequō, 1. [aequō, level or equal], a., n., make level with or equal to, equalize, equal, keep up with. *

4. idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, adapted. *

10. sēcius (sēt-), adv. comp., less, in a less degree. Only with negatives: nihilō sēcius, never the less. 4

11. prōpulsō, 1. [freq. of prōpellō, drive forth or away], a., drive forth or back, repel. 2

1. eum = Ariovistum.

2. prohibērētur: Ariovistus was in a position to cut off Caesar completely from his base of supplies by a further advance. ūltrā, beyond, from the point of view of the camp of Caesar, and between Ariovistus' camp and the road along which Caesar's supplies from the south came.

4. passūs sexcentōs: how many English feet? castrīs: for case cf. 1, 10; 9, 6; 28, 14. idōneum locum: about two and one half miles south of his other camp. What did the Romans consider a fit site for a camp? see Int. 129. aciē triplicī:

see Int. 145.

5. vēnit; Caesar at first advanced towards the German camp as if to offer battle as usual, then moving to the right he marched past Ariovistus to the site chosen for the new camp.

6. in armīs: to repel the expected attack.

8. circiter . . . expedita, light armed troops numbering about sixteen thousand. hominum = pedītum. numerō: for case cf. 1, 8.

9. perterrērent: what was the German method of attack? see Int. 192.

partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

*Ariovistus
assaults this
without de-
cisive result*

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibus pūgnandi potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit,
- 5 circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et illātis et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex cap-
- 10 *Superstition
of the Ger-
mans.* tivīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō non dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset, ut matrēsfamiliae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārarent, utrum proe-

2. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat. *
3. prōgredior, gredī, gressus sum [gradior, step], *n.*, step or go forward, come or march out, advance, proceed, go. *
5. merīdiēs, -ēi [for mediīēs, from medius, middle + diēs], *m.*, the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. *
7. utrimque (utrin-), *adv.* [uterque, both], on both sides. 5

- usque, *adv.* [us = ubs *fr.* ubi, where], all the way to, even to, as far as, even, till. *
12. matrēsfamiliae, *f.*, (*nom. pl.*, only), *matrons*.
13. sors, sortis, *f.*, lot; casting or drawing of lots; chance, fate. vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vāticinor, predict], *f.*, prediction, prophesying, divination. dēclārō, 1. [clārus, clear], *a.*, make clear or plain, declare.

13. redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

1. diē: for case cf. 4, 4; 15, 1. institūtō suō: for case cf. 44, 7; 4, 2.

6, 7. quae oppūgnāret, to storm; for the relative (= *ut ea*) and the mode cf. 7, 10; 15, 5; 21, 4.

8. pūgnātum est: for trans. see on 22, 9.

10. quam ob rem, *why*. How does its use here differ from that in 34, 1?

12. ut matrēsfamiliae etc., that the matrons indicated whether or not it was advantageous to engage in battle.

13. sortibus, by casting lots. The 'lots' were wooden rods with magic marks cut upon them. These were tied in a bundle and when dried a

lium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō conten-1 5
dissent.

51. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidium ^{Caesar arrays his troops for battle.} utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnīs ālāriōs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit quod minus multitudine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūteretur; 5

14. necne, conj. [nec, nor + nē] or not (used in alternative questions).

15. fās [fari, to speak], n., (only nom. and acc. sing.), divine sanction or law (opp. to iūs, human law), divine will; right.

lūna, -ae [for luc-na fr. lūceō,

give light], f., the moon.

3. ālārius, -a, -um [āla, wing], on the wings: in pl. as subst., ālārii, the auxiliaries, who occupied the wings of the army.

5. speciēs, -ēi [obsol. speciō, see], f., seeing, sight, look, appearance. *

slight shake would cause one to drop out. The mark upon this one gave the answer. vaticinātiōnibus: other methods of prophesying, such as observations of the whirling of water in eddies, the sounds of the waves, etc. utrum, necne: for the use of these particles in Double or Alternative questions see A. 211; G. 459; H. 353 N. 3; B. 162 4.

15. fās, the will of the gods. novam lūnam: Tacitus says that the Germans considered the days of the new moon and full moon lucky days, and so, were wont to begin important undertakings on these days. The Greeks had the same notion, as is shown by the refusal of the Spartans to march to the help of the Athenians until after the full moon. Moberly quotes Winer in explanation of this superstition: "For simple nations the first new light of the moon is most cheering and joyful. From its appearance they obtain the order of the months, and, in the absence of astronomical observations, that of

the whole civil and religious year."

1. postridiē: September 10 is a probable date. diēi: for case see on 23, 1.

2. quod . . . visum est, (a gar- rison) which seemed to be sufficient.

3. ālāriōs: the socii were called ālārii from their position in the line of battle: see Int. 146. in cōspectū hostium: to conceal the fact that the two legions had been withdrawn. At a distance the Germans could not tell the difference between auxiliaries and legionaries. Meanwhile the two legions marched out by the rear gate of the camp and secretly joined the four other legions in the larger camp. By this clever ruse, Caesar concealed his weakness in legionaries and concentrated those he had for the battle that he was determined to force.

4, 5. minus prō hostium numerō valēbat, he was weak compared with the enemy's forces. ālāriīs, case?

ipse, triplicī instrūctā aciē, usque ad castra hostium accessit.

*Array of the
Germans.*

Tum dēmum necessariō Germanī suās cōpiās cas-
tris edūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis,
Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedu-
1 osiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam rēdis et carrīs circum-
dedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs im-
posuērunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs passis manibus
fientēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

*A close and
furious con-
flict.*

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs
et quaestōrem praefecit, uti eōs testēs suae quis-

7. **necessariō**, *adv.* [*abl. cf., ne-
cessarius*], unavoidably, under
compulsion. *

8. **generātim** [*genus, race or
tribe*], *adv.*, by tribes, nation by
nation. 2

9. **Marcomanī (-mannī), -ōrum**,
m., a German tribe on the upper
Maine. 1

Tribocēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), m., a
German tribe on the Rhine about
modern Strasburg. 2

Vangionēs, -um m., a German tribe
on the west bank of the Rhine
about modern Worms. 1

Nemetēs, -um, m., a German tribe
on the Rhine about modern Speier. 2

Sedusī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe
between the Maine and Neckar. 1

10. **rēda, -ae, f.**, a wagon (*with
four wheels*). 2

12. **pandō, -ere, pandī, passus**
(*pānsus*) [*cf. pateō, extend*], *a.,
n.*, spread or stretch out, extend:
passis capillis, with dishevelled
hair; **passis manibus**, with out-
stretched hands. 4

2. **quaestor, -ōris** [*quaerō, seek*],
m., a quaestor, one of a class of
officers in charge of the public re-
venues or the finances of the army;
quartermaster. *

6. **triplicī... aciēs**: see Intr. 145.

7. **necessariō**: the camp of the
Germans was not entrenched (see
Int. 196, 197) and its slight defences
would not have availed long against
the vigorous attack of the Romans.

8. **cōstituērunt**: the Germans
faced west, the Romans east. There
were probably about 50,000 men
under Caesar and a much larger
number under Ariovistus.

10. **rēdis et carrīs**: the former
had four wheels, the latter two. **circumdedērunt**: i. e., the rear and on
both flanks.

11. **eō**: i. e., on the wagons and
carts. What part of speech? Cf.
42, 18.

1, 2. **legiōnibus**: for case of
2, 5; 16, 13; 23, 5. **lēgātōs et
quaestōrem**: as there were six le-
gions, Caesar must have had five
lēgātī in this campaign. The
quaestor probably commanded the
legion with which Caesar stationed
himself. What were the ordinary
duties of the quaestor? See Int.
94, 95.

que virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium com-
mīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fecē-
runt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spa-
tium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlis,
comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex
cōnsuetūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpē-
runt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī milītēs, quī in phalan-
gas īnsilirent et scūta manibus revellerent. Cum hostium

3. **dexter, -era, -erum, and -tra, -trum**, right, on the right.*

cornū, -ūs, n., a horn; the wing (of an army.) *

6. **repente, adv.** [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 5

prō-currō, -ere, curri, cursus [currō, run], *n.*, run or rush forward, rush out, charge. *

8. **com-minus, adv.** [manus,

hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 3

9. **ex-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus** [capiō, take], *a.*, take out, off, or up, catch, receive; take up (in turn), succeed; intercept. *

11. **insiliō, -ire, silui**, leap in or on, mount. 1

re-vellō, -ere, velli, vulsus (vol-) [vellō, pluck], *a.*, pluck or tear away, pull or tear out. 2

3. **ā dextrō cornū**: it was Caesar's usual practice to open a battle with his right wing. He mentions a special reason for doing so on this occasion. **eam partem**: i. e., the enemy's left wing.

4. **minimē firmam**, *weakest*: for the figure cf. 42, 20; 39, 11.

5. **signō datō**: the signal was given upon the *tuba*, or trumpet. See Int. 125. **impetum**: see Int. 148, 149, for the details of the usual mode of attack.

7. **pīla coniciendī**: what was the usual effect of the shower of *pīla*? Owing to the speed of the enemy's advance, the Romans lost this advantage (*spatium nōn darētur*). This fact may in part account for the length of the battle. **rēiectīs**, cast aside, because useless at close quarters.

8. **comminus gladiīs**: the favorite method with the Roman soldier.

See Int. 149. The short sword of the Romans was a better weapon for hand-to-hand fighting, than the long sword of the Germans.

9. **phalange**: i. e., a phalanx formation, hence the singular number. Below (line 10) *phalngas* is used because the different groups are referred to. These were composed of three or four hundred men each, who stood on the defensive against the attacks of the legionaries.

10. **phalngas**: for the form of the Acc. pl. see on *Lingonas*. 26, 18.

11. **insilirent**: i. e., sprang bodily upon the "shield-wall". **scūta manibus**: grasping the tops of the shields and uncovering the bodies of their antagonists. On the *scūtum* see Int. 106, 107. The usual method was to push the shield under that of the enemy and wound him from beneath.

aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, 15 quī equitātūi praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam iī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidiō misit.

The Germans are defeated and flee to the Rhine.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus 5 cōnfisī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēli-

13. **premō, -ere, pressī, pressus,** a., press, oppress, burden, annoy, press upon, press hard. *

16. **subsidiū, -ī** [subsidiō, sit near or in reserve], n., sitting in reserve, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

2. **tergum, -ī, n.,** the back; the rear: **terga vertere,** to flee. * **vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, a., n.,** turn, turn around or about. *

fugiō, -ere, fugī, n., flee, fly, run away; escape. *

5. **trānō, 1. [trāns-+nō, swim],** a., n., swim across or over. 1 **in-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus** [veniō, come], a., come upon, meet, find out, discover. *

6. **nāvicula, -ae** [dim. of nāvis, vessel], f., skiff, small vessel. * **dē-ligō, 1. [ligō, bind], a.,** bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 4

12. ā sinistrō cornū: this was the weakest part of the enemy's line, as stated above (line 3).

13, 14. **vehementer . . . premēbant:** does this show that Caesar made a mistake in not taking the command of his left wing? **adulēscēns, the young man** as distinguished from his father, **Marcus Crassus,** the triumvir. Many of Caesar's best officers were young men. **expeditior:** as the cavalry was not engaged in the battle, Crassus was, "freer to act", or had a "more unrestricted" view of the field than any of the other officers.

16. **tertiam aciem:** which, in accordance with Roman military tactics, was being held in reserve.

labōrantibus nostris subsidiō, to the assistance of our men who were engaged in a hard struggle. **nōstris subsidiō:** for case cf. 18, 28.

1. **omnēs:** as the Germans had no reserves, they fled *en masse* when the phalanx was broken.

4. **quinque:** It seems probable that the Germans in flight followed the route by which they had advanced, viz., the valley of the Ill, and reached the Rhine near Rhein-an. See map. **viribus, trusting in** (*confident because of*) *their strength.* The case here is doubtful as *cōnfidō* takes either dative or ablative.

6. **Ariovistus:** he died shortly after this, possibly from wounds received in the battle.

gātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs equitatū cōnsecūtī nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Voccīōnis soror, quam in Gal-
Fate of the household of Ariovistus. 10
 liā dūxerat, ā frātre missam: utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae filiae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitatū persequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn minōrem
Rescue and tale of Caesar's envoys. 15
 quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et

7. nanciācor, -ī, nactus (nactus) sum, a., get, obtain; meet with, find. *
9. Suēbus, -a, -um, of or pertaining to the Suevi (Suebi), Swabian. *
- nātiō, -ōnis [nāscor, be born], f., race, tribe, people, nation. Usually applied to a distant and barbarous people. *
10. Voccīō, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum. 1
11. per-eō, -īre, īi, itus (per+eō, go), n., go through, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 4
13. trīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [trēs, three], by threes;

- threefold, triple. 4
14. vinciō, -īre, vīnī, vinctus, a., bind, fetter. 1
- trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, a., drag, draw; drag along or in. 2
15. in-cidō, -ere, cidi, [cadō, fall], n., fall [into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, befall. 5
16. voluptās, -tātis [volō, wish], f., what one wishes: pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. 3
17. honestus, -a, -um [honor, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 3
18. hospes, -itis, m., f., host, entertainer; guest, friend. 3

7. eā, in this (nāviculā); for the case of. 3, 20. reliquōs: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 men were killed in the battle and retreat.

8. duae uxōrēs: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.

9. Suēba nātiōne, a Swabian by descent. nātiōne, for case of. 49, 8; 1, 12.

11. dūxerat, missam: sc. in mātrimonium.

13. Procillus: see 47, 10.

14. persequentem, who was pursuing.

16. voluptātem attulit: these generous words do credit to Caesar's heart and let us into the secret of his wonderful influence over all who came into close contact with him. See Int. 26.

19. neque etc., nor had Fortune, by injury to him, abated, in any degree (quicquam) his great (cause for) satisfaction and rejoicing.

20 grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus resevārētur: sortium beneficiō se esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Fate of the Suebi. Winter arrangements.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubīi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īsecūtī māgnūm ex iīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar, 5 ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

20. grātulātiō, -ōnis [grātulor, express joy], F., expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 3

21. ter, num. adv. [trēs, three], three times, thrice. 1

statim [stō, stand], adv., as one stands; forthwith, immediately. * necō, 1. [nex, death], a., put to death, slaughter, kill. *

22. re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], a., keep back, save up, reserve. 4

23. in-columis, -e, unhurt, uninjured, safe. *

3. Ubīi, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on the east bank of the lower Rhine, near Cologne. *

5. aestās, -tatis, f., the hot season: summer. *

7. prae-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], place or put before or over, put in command of

20. quicquam: for case cf. 35, 17; 31, 22; 20, 6. sē praesente, while he was standing by.

21. ter: a sacred number. sortibus: see on 50, 13. utrum, an: for use in double questions cf. 50, 13. ignī: see 4, 3.

2. domum: for case see on 5, 7.

3. proximī Rhēnum, next to the Rhine. Rhēnum: see on 46, 2, contrast Germānis, 1, 10.

5. ūnā aestāte: usually but one campaign was conducted each year. mātūrius paulō, a little earlier: about the middle of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. hīberna: on the winter camp see Int. 139. in Sēquanōs: the stationing of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul.

7. Labiēnum: see on 10, 8. He had the rank of *prōpraetor*.

8. ad conventūs agendōs, to hold the proconsular courts which Caesar held each year in Cisalpine Gaul. In them he decided such cases as came before him on appeal from the local courts, or were directly within his jurisdiction as *prōcōnsul*. Caesar had another object, for which see Int. 34; also Plutarch's Caesar. For the use of the Gerundive cf. 1, 9; 38, 8.

BOOK II.—THE CONQUEST OF NORTH- WESTERN GAUL.

The transfer of central Gaul from German to Roman control was quietly effected, and the victorious legions were quartered for the winter in the newly acquired territory. The Belgae, alarmed at the turn of affairs, and perhaps affected through their close relations with the Germans, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of three hundred thousand men, which they massed on the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgica as the Aedui had in Celtica, came to terms with him, and furnished valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his greatly inferior force an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae, but established himself in a strong position on the Axona (*Aisne*) river, and despatched a force of the Aedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci. He hoped by this means to hasten the dissolution which the rivalry and jealousy existing among the allies made inevitable. After an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, the chief town of the Remi, the army of the league attacked Caesar's outposts on the Axona, but was defeated in a sanguinary engagement. The coalition at once collapsed, and Caesar was left free to deal with the separate tribes.

Sweeping through western Belgica, he quickly subdued the Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, Viromandui, and Atrébatés assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (*Sambre*) river, and informing themselves accurately as to the movements of the Roman army, planned to surprise and destroy the legions in turn. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to stake out a camp, the barbarians suddenly burst out of the cover's near by and fell upon it. Caesar was evidently taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so imminent the danger, that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Aduatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery.

Meanwhile, the coast tribes had submitted to Publius Crassus and the conquest of Belgica was complete. With his customary moderation, Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were elevated to supreme power in Belgica, and were thus more firmly attached to the Roman interest. With the exception of the country of the Menapii and Morini, all of central and northern Gaul was now in the grasp of Rome.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy and courage are seen at their best. Political sagacity and personal power enabled him to secure the submission of many tribes with very little fighting. The surprise at the Sabis on the other hand, was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed entirely to the excellence of his soldiers. The withdrawal of his troops from the *oppidum* of the Aduatuci was a military mistake, and the postponement of the reception of the German envoys was a political one.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 189-195. (Harper's ed.).

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. III. (Ancient Classics Series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 300-304.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. I. pp. 265-286.

NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. pp. 106-131.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita uti ^{League of the Belgian tribes against the Romans.} League of the Belgian tribes against the Romans. 5
suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs
afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs
Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā
populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.
Coniūrāndi hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur, nē
omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; de-
inde, quod ab nōnnūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut

2. crēber, -bra, -brum [crēō, crēscō], thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent; *comp.* crēbrior; *superl.*, crēberrimus. *
rūmor, -ōris, m., hearsay, report, rumor, common opinion, reputation. *
3. afferō (ad-), ferre, attulī, allātus, a., bring, take, or carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. *
4. contrā, *prep.* with acc., con-

- trary to, opposite to, against. *
6. con-iūrō [iūrō, swear], 1. n., swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. *
8. sollicitō [sollus = tōtus + cieō, rouse], 1. a., move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. *
partim, *adv.* [acc. of pars], partly, in part; partim . . . partim, some . . . others. *

1. esset: form of cf. I, 4, 9. citeriōre Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps, divided by the Padus river into *Gallia Transpadāna* and *Gallia Cispadāna*.

2. suprā: in I, 54. dēmōnstrāvimus, the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. certior fiēbat, *was informed from time to time*. The imperfect of repeated action. So in *afferēbantur*, I. 3.

4. Belgās: they were essentially Celts with some admixture of German blood. "The Belgian is the German grafted on the Gaul." *quam . . . partem, who, we had*

said, (see I, 1, 1, 2) *constituted the third part of Gaul*. For *quam* instead of *quōs* (i. e. Belgās) see on I, 38, 3.

6. verērentur: for mood cf. I, 16, 17; 23, 9; 47, 15. nē: meaning after verbs of *fearing*? See on I, 19, 11.

7. omnī Galliā: i. e., *Gallia Celtica*. pācātā: the arrogant Romans looked upon opposition to them as wrong; hence "any war against Rome was a 'conspiracy,' and a nation enslaved by Rome was 'pacified'" (Moberly).

8. Gallis: the Gauls were startled by the quartering of Roman soldiers in Gaul. partim quī, *some of whom*; i. e. the opponents of all foreigners.

Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rō-
 10 mānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā moles-
 tē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs im-
 periīs studēbant, ab nōnnūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā
 potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facul-
 tātēs habēbant, volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile
 15 eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

*Caesar makes
 preparations
 and moves
 against them.*

2. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar
 duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit

9. versō [*freq. of* vertō, turn], 1.
a., turn or move often, change;
in pass. as dep., dwell, live, be;
 be occupied or engaged.

10. in-veterāscō, -ere, veterāvī
 [in-vetus, old + scō], *n.*, grow
 old, become settled or established.

molestē [molestus], with trouble
 or difficulty: molestē ferre, be
 annoyed or vexed.

11. mōbilitās, -tātis [mōbilis,
 movable], *r.*, movableness, activ-
 ity, speed; changeableness, fick-
 leness, inconstancy.

levitās, -tātis [levis, light], *r.*,
 lightness, restlessness, inconstancy,
 levity.

14. volgō (vul-) [vulgus], *adv.*,
 commonly, everywhere, publicly,
 universally.

10. inveterāscere: how are *in-*
ceptives or *inchoatives* formed?
 What action of the verb is implied?
 A. 167 a; G. 133, V; H. 337; B. 155 l.

11. partim quī, *others of whom*:
 cf. l. 8. Caesar probably had in
 mind the Aeduan faction headed by
 Dumnorix. novīs imperiīs etc.,
desired a new government. impe-
 riīs: for case cf. I, 2, 4; 9, 8; 18,
 19.

12. nōnnūllis (sc. *sollicitāban-*
tur); such as Orgetorix, I, 2, Casti-
 cus, I, 3, and Dumnorix, I, 18.

13. ad . . . hominēs, *for em-*
ploying mercenaries. For use of
 Gerundive cf. I, 1, 9; 3, 6; 5, 8.

14. minus facile: the absence
 of political unity exposed the var-
 ious tribes to the intrigues of

ambitious chiefs. A centralized
 government, jealously guarding
 its own interests and those of the
 people at large and insisting upon
 the subordination of the tribe to
 the nation, was what these petty
 tyrants most dreaded to see estab-
 lished in Gaul.

15. imperiō nostrō, *under our*
rule. See for case on I, 18, 23.

2. duās legiōnēs: the XIII and
 XIV. These, like the two levied
 the spring before, were raised by
 Caesar upon his own responsibil-
 ity: see Int. 32. The eight legions
 and the auxiliary forces now under
 Caesar's command had an effective
 strength, according to Napoleon
 III, of at least 60,000 men. ūlteri-
 ōrem Galliā: the land of the
 Sequani.

et in itā aestāte, in ūlteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus 5 reliquīsque Gallīs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit, quā ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frumentāriā 10

3. in-eō, ire, ivi (ii), itus, *a., n.*, go into, enter upon, begin; adopt, undertake, form (cōsiliū), estimate (numerum). * aestās, -tātis, *f.*, (the hot season) summer. *

dē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *a.*, lead down or away, withdraw, induce, conduct; (with *nāvēs*) launch; (with *mulierem*) marry; unfurl or set (*vēla*); bring (rem in periculum or aliquem in sententiam). *

Q. abbreviation for the praenomen Quintus. 3

4. Pedius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. *E. g.*, Q. Pedius, a nephew of Caesar and one of his legati. 2

5. incipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, undertake, begin, commence. *

negōtium, -ī [nec + ōtium, leisure], *n.*, concern, business, undertaking, matter; negōtium dare, employ, assign a matter; quid negōtīi, what business. * Senonēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Sens. *

8. cōstanter [cōnstō, stand together, be consistent or steadfast], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2

9. vērō, *adv.*, [vērus, true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. *

3. in itā aestāte, after the beginning of summer. For the Abl. cf. I, 2, 2; 16, 11; 25, 5. quī (eās) dēdūceret, to bring them: probably by the pass of Great St. Bernard.

3, 4. Q. Pedium: nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. He was consul with Octavius in 48. lēgātum: Caesar's lieutenants during this year were T. Labienus, C. Fabius, Q. Cicero, L. Roscius, L. Munatius Plancus, C. Trebonius, Q. Titurius Sabinus, L. Arunculeius Cotta and Quintus Pēdius. M. Crassus was his quaestor. cum primum: in the early part of May or June.

5. inciperet: for mode of 1, 1. ad exercitum vēnit: at Vesontio

(Besancon). See map and I, 38.

6. Belgīs: for case of. I, 1, 10; 9, 6; 28, 14; 49, 4. utī ea etc., to find out . . . and inform him about . . .

7. gerantur: for mode see on I, 8, 7. cōgnōscant: for mode see on I, 30, 8; so faciant in I. 8.

8. manūs cōgī, that armed bands were gathering. What is the relation of this clause (also the following) to nūntiāvērunt?

9, 10. (sibi) dubitandum . . . quā . . . proficiscerētur, that he ought not to hesitate to set out to them. For dubitandum (esse) see on I, 7, 15; for mode of proficiscerētur I, 3, 20.

Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rō-
 1 omānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā moles-
 tē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs im-
 periis studēbant, ab nōnnūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā
 potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facul-
 tātēs habēbant, volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile
 15 eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

*Caesar makes
 preparations
 and moves
 against them.*

2. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar
 duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit

9. versō [*freq. of vertō*, turn], 1.
 a., turn or move often, change;
in pass. as dep., dwell, live, be;
 be occupied or engaged.

10. in-veterāscō, -ere, veterāvī
 [in-vetus, old + -scō], n., grow
 old, become settled or established.

molestē [molestus], with trouble
 or difficulty: molestē ferre, be
 annoyed or vexed.

11. mōbilitās, -tātis [mōbilis,
 movable], f., movableness, activ-
 ity, speed; changeableness, fick-
 leness, inconstancy.

levitās, -tātis [levis, light], f.,
 lightness, restlessness, incon-
 stancy, levity.

14. volgō (vul-) [vulgus], adv.,
 commonly, everywhere, publicly,
 universally.

10. inveterāscere: how are in-
 ceptives or inchoatives formed?
 What action of the verb is implied?
 A. 167 a; G. 133, V; H. 337; B. 155 1.

11. partim quī, others of whom:
 cf. l. 8. Caesar probably had in
 mind the Aeduan faction headed by
 Dumnorix. novis imperiis etc.,
 desired a new government. impe-
 riis: for case cf. I, 2, 4; 9, 8; 18,
 19.

12. nōnnūllis (sc. sollicitāban-
 tur); such as Orgetorix, I, 2, Casti-
 cus, I, 3, and Dumnorix, I, 18.

13. ad . . . hominēs, for em-
 ploying mercenaries. For use of
 Gerundive cf. I, 1, 9; 3, 6; 5, 8.

14. minus facile: the absence
 of political unity exposed the va-
 rious tribes to the intrigues of

ambitious chiefs. A centralized
 government, jealously guarding
 its own interests and those of the
 people at large and insisting upon
 the subordination of the tribe to
 the nation, was what these petty
 tyrants most dreaded to see estab-
 lished in Gaul.

15. imperiō nostrō, under our
 rule. See for case on I, 18, 23.

2. duās legiōnēs: the XIII and
 XIV. These, like the two levied
 the spring before, were raised by
 Caesar upon his own responsibil-
 ity: see Int. 32. The eight legions
 and the auxiliary forces now under
 Caesar's command had an effective
 strength, according to Napoleon
 III., of at least 60,000 men. ūlteri-
 ōrem Galliam: the land of the
 Sequani.

et initā aestāte, in ūleriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus 5 reliquīsque Gallis, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit, quā ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frumentāriā 10

3. in-eō, ire, ivi (ii), itus, *a., n.*, go into, enter upon, begin; adopt, undertake, form (cōsiliū), estimate (numerum). * aestās, -tātis, *f.*, (the hot season) summer. *

dē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *a.*, lead down or away, withdraw, induce, conduct; (with *nāvēs*) launch; (with *mulierem*) marry; unfurl or set (*vēla*); bring (rem in periculum or aliquem in sententiam). *

Q. abbreviation for the praenomen Quintus. 3

4. Pedius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. *E. g.*, Q. Pedius, a nephew of Caesar and one of his legati. 2

5. incipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, undertake, begin, commence. *

negōtium, -ī [nec + ōtium, leisure], *n.*, concern, business, undertaking, matter; negotium dare, employ, assign a matter; quid negotiū, what business. * Senonēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Sens. *

8. cōstanter [cōstō, stand together, be consistent or steadfast], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2

9. vērō, *adv.*, [vērus, true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. *

3. initā aestāte, after the beginning of summer. For the Abl. cf. I, 2, 2; 16, 11; 25, 5. quī (eās) dēdūceret, to bring them: probably by the pass of Great St. Bernard.

3, 4. Q. Pedium: nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. He was consul with Octavius in 43. lēgātum: Caesar's lieutenants during this year were T. Labienus, C. Fabius, Q. Cicero, L. Roscius, L. Munatius Plancus, C. Trebonius, Q. Titurius Sabinus, L. Arunculeius Cotta and Quintus Pēdius. M. Crassus was his quaestor. cum primum: in the early part of May or June.

5. inciperet: for mode of 1, 1. ad exercitum vēnit: at Vesontio

(Besancon). See map and I, 38.

6. Belgīs: for case of. I, 1, 10; 9, 6; 28, 14; 49, 4. utī ea etc., to find out . . . and inform him about . . .

7. gerantur: for mode see on I, 8, 7. cōgnōscant: for mode see on I, 30, 8; so faciant in l. 8.

8. manūs cōgī, that armed bands were gathering. What is the relation of this clause (also the following) to nūntiāvērunt?

9, 10. (sibi) dubitandum . . . quā . . . proficiscerētur, that he ought not to hesitate to set out to them. For dubitandum (esse) see on I, 7, 15; for mode of proficiscerētur I, 3, 20,

comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

Submission of the Remi.

3. Eō cum de imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecombogium, primōs cīvītātis, mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittēre, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populū Rōmānū conīūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reli-

2. opīniō, -ōnis [opīnor, think], *f.*, way of thinking, opinion, reputation, impression, expectation. *

Rēmūs, -a, -um, belonging to or one of the Remi, *as subst. pl. m.*, the Remi, a Belgic tribe between the Marne and the Aisne. *

3. Iccius, -ī, *m.*, the name of one of the leaders of the Remi. 3

Andecombogius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi. 1

6. per-mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus [mittō, send], *a.*, let go or loose; give up or over, entrust, commit. *

cōnsentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus [sentīō, feel], *a., n.*, think together, agree, combine; conspire. 3

7. imperātum, -ī, *n.*, order, command. *

8. cēterus, -a, -um (*nom. sing. m. not in use*), the rest of, the remainder: *in pl.*, the rest, remaining, others. *

11. ad finēs: Caesar marched in a northwesterly direction from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier, about 145 miles, in fifteen days, including stops for rest. Part of the way he followed the route he had taken the year before when moving upon Vesontio (I, 38, 14 *huc... contendit*).

1. eō: to the Belgian frontier. dē imprōvisō, *unexpectedly, suddenly. omnium opīniōne, than any one had anticipated* (lit. *than [the general] opinion*). For case cf. I, 22, 3; 15, 15.

2. Rēmī: they were next to the Aedui in power, having occupied a part of the territory of the Sequani, when the latter fell under the sway of Ariovistus. proximī Galliae, *the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul.*

i. e., on the line of Caesar's march toward the Belgian frontier. ex Belgīs: the Abl. with ex or ē (also dē) is sometimes used instead of the partitive Gen.

4. quī dicerent, etc., *to say that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions to the protection, etc.* The subj. acc. sē is omitted to prevent its concurrence with the object sē. The Remi were impressed by the decision of Caesar's movements. They had not committed themselves to the Belgian coalition, and were able to give Caesar full information of the enemy's designs before they should be carried out.

6. conīūrāsse: for the contraction see on I, 12, 11.

8. recipere: sc. eōs, i. e., Rōmānōs,

quōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dētterrēre potuerint, quā cum hīs cōsentirent.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae civitatēs quaetaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antiq̄uitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse sōlōsque esse, quī patrūm nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexā-

Origin and number of the Belgio tribes.

9. *cis*, *prep.* with *acc.*, on this side of. 2
 10. *con-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnc-tus* [iungō, join], *a.*, join together, unite. *
 11. *furor, -ōris* [furō, rage], *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 3
Suessionēs, -um, m., a *Gallie* tribe about modern *Soissons*. 5
 2. *sic*, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner.*

3. *plērīque, -aeque, -aque, adj. pl.*, very many, the most of. *
 4. *antiq̄uitus, adv.*, [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times, long ago, anciently. *
fertilitās, -tātis, f., fertility, fruitfulness. 1
 5. *ex-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus* [pellō, drive], *a.*, drive out or forth, expel. *

9. *cis Rhēnum*, on this (the *Gallie*) side of the *Rhine*.

10. *sēsē coniūnxisse*, had united: *esse*, was (direct: *is*).

11. *nē . . . quidem*, not even etc. The words enclosed by these particles are emphasized by such position. *Suessionēs*: according to *Strabo* they ranked next to the *Bellovaci* in point of valor.

12. *iūre, lēgibus*: for case cf. I, 2, 6; 16, 6; 20, 7.

13. *ūtantur*, possessed, enjoyed.

14. *quā cōsentirent*: for the constr. with *quā* after words of *hindrance* and *trans*. see on I, 47, 7.

1. *hīs*: who are meant? See 3, 2.

2. *essent, possent*: for mode of

I, 12, 3; 21, 8; 45, 2. For the tense foll. a secondary tense see A. 286; B. 267; G. 510; H. 493, 1. *quid possent*, how powerful they were. Cf. a like use of *posse* in I, 3, 20; for case of *quid* cf. I, 53, 20; 20, 6.

3. *plērōsque Belgās*, that most of the *Belgae*, for the use of the adjective see on I, 22, 1. These (*plērōsque Belgās*) were especially the *Nervii* and *Treviri*, who, according to *Tacitus*, claimed descent from the *Germans*. *ortōs ab Germānīs*: see on I, 4.

6. *memoriā*: about 50 years before. For case cf. I, 4, 4; 12, 15. *omnī Galliā*: in the widest use of the word, including the *Provincia*.

tā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā finēs suōs ingredī prohibue-
rint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi
auctoritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē
10 numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicēbant, prop-
terēā quod propīnquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūctī, quan-

7. Teutonī, -ōrum (*gen. pl. some-
times -um*), *m.*, a Celtic people of Jut-
land, who with the Cimbri overran
Gaul, 113 B. C., and also suffered
defeat from Marius. 5

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic people
from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jut-
land). Having invaded Italy they
were defeated by C. Marius near
Verona, 101 B. C. 5

intrā [*interior, inner*], *adv. and
prep. c. acc.*, inside, into, within. *

ingredior, gredi, gressus sum
[*gradior, step, go*], *a. n.*, go or
walk into, march or advance up-
on, enter. 2

9. spīritus, -ūs [*spirō, breathe*],
m., breath, air; high spirit, haugh-
tiness, pride (*mostly in pl.*). 2

10. ex-plōrō, 1. [*plōrō, weep,
flow*], *a.*, cause to flow out,
search or find out, investigate;
spy out, reconnoitre. *

11. propīnquitās, -tātis [*pro-
pīnquus, neighboring, near*], *f.*,
nearness, vicinity; nearness of
blood, relationship. *



Gallic Warrior.

7. Teutonōs Cimbrōsque: on
this invasion see Int, 63, and Momm-
sen, III, pp. 232-235. ingredī
prohibuerint: hindered from enter-
ing. The Subj. with *nē* or *quōmi-
nus* is commonly used with verbs of
hindering but with *prohibere* Caesar
always employs the Inf. or the
Acc. with Inf. n.

9, 10. sūmerent: for mode cf.
I, 46, 8; 2, 13. dē numerō: i. e., the

numerical strength of the Belgian
soldiery. omnia... explorāta, that
they had ascertained everything. For
the participle with *habeo* cf. I, 44,
40; 18, 10. What one word would
almost express the meaning of the
two?

11, 12. propīnquitātibus af-
finitātibusque, relationship by
blood and marriage. quisque: sc.
lēgātus, delegate.

tam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellocōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valere: hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum; pollicitōs ex eō **nu-15** merō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessionēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciacum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium ob-**20** tinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstiti-

12. **commūnis**, -e [mūniō, serve], serving together, hence common, general, universal, ordinary. *

13. **Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Belgic* tribe between the *Sequana*, *Samarā*, and *Isara*. The modern city *Beauvais* derives its name from it. Their town *Bratuspan-tium* (II, 13) is the ruin *Bratus-pante* near the modern *Breteil*. *

15. **armō**, 1. [arma, arms], *a.*, equip, arm: *in pf. part.*, armed (men, etc.) 1

16. **ēligō**, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctus* [lēgō, choose], *a.*, choose or pick out, select: *in pf. part.*, picked (men, etc.) 1

sexāgintā, *ind.*, *num. adj.*, sixty. 1
postulō, 1. [poscō, demand], *a.*, request, ask, demand. *

17. **ferāx**, -ācis [ferō], productive, fertile. 1

18. **possidēō**, -ēre, *sēdī*, *sessus* [potis, able + sedeō, sit], *a.*, to sit as master; hold possession of, occupy, possess. 3

rēx, *rēgis* [rēgō, rule], *m.*, ruler, monarch, king. *

20. **regiō**, -ōnis [regō, direct, mark (by a line)], *f.*, direction, line; boundary; quarter, district, region, country. *

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*). *

21. **nunc**, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. *

Galba, -ae, *m.*, (1) a king of the *Suessiones*. (2) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a *legatus* of *Caesar* in *Gaul*, said to have been one of his assassins. *

13, 14. **pollicitus sit**: for mode cf. 4, 2; I, 34, 12; 21, 8; 15, 5. **plūrimum valere**: almost equivalent to *plūrimum posse* cf. I, 20, 6. For case of *plūrimum* cf. *quid* 1. 2. **virtūte, auctōritāte, numerō**: for case of I, 2, 12; 14, 6. (eō). **hōs**: who?

16. **sexāgintā**: sc. *milia*.

17. **suōs finitimōs**: whose neighbors? See line 10, and the map.

19, 20. **Diviciacum**: of course not the *Aeduan* mentioned in *Bk. I*. The historian *Dio Cassius* gives the *Belgian King* another name, and it may be that *Caesar* is mistaken in the name *Diviciacus cum . . . tum*, not only . . . but also. **Britanniae**: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite to the *Belgian coast*. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.

am prūdentiamque summam tōtius bellī omuium voluntāte dāferri; oppida habere numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs
 25 habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduātucōs xix mīlia; Condrusōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL
 30 somilia.

22. prūdentia, -ae [prūdēns *contr. fr. prōvidēns*, foreseeing], f., foresight, discretion, prudence. 1

23. dē-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, a., bring from or down, convey; confer, bestow. *

24. quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num.*, fifty. *

totidem [tot, so many + idem], *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number. *

Nervii, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe, between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde in Namur and Hennegau. *

ferus, -a, -um, wild, fierce: *fem. as subst.*, wild beast, *cf. ferōx*. *

25. Atrebas, -bātis, m., an Atrebatian; Atrebatēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), the Atrebatēs, a Belgic tribe. The name survives in Artois and Arras. *

26. Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe, chief town Samarobriva, now Amiens. 3

Morini, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe,

near the channel, in Picardy. *

Menapii, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt. *

27. Caletī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um), m., a Belgic tribe near the mouth of the Seine. 2

Veliocassēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe on the Seine. 2

Viromandui, -ōrum, m., the Viromandui, a Gallic tribe in the modern Dept. de l' Aisne. 3

Aduātucī, -ōrum, m., a people of Belgic Gaul, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. *

28. Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., clients of the Treveri, east of the Meuse about modern Condroz. 3

Eburōnēs, -um, m., clients of the Treveri, living between the Meuse and Rhine. *

Caeroesi, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul. 1

Paemānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe. 1

29. Germānī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic word meaning "hill-folk." 1

22. summam: the noun; not the superl. adj.

25. longissimē, absint: i. e., from the southern frontier. Their territory extended to the ocean on the northeast.

29. Germānī: this is a Celtic word meaning "hill-folk" and having no reference to Germanic origin. On the formation of leagues among the Gauls see Int. 68, 96.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberaliterque orātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principum-que liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae ^{Caesar secures the alliance of the Remi.} omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciacum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei publicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium disti-
nērī nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōnfigendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datis

1. liberaliter [liberalis], graciously, generously, kindly. *
- prō-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], follow (in a friendly or hostile manner), accompany, attend, continue, pursue. 5
4. diligenter [diligēns], adv., carefully; with exactness, pains or care. *
5. doceō, 2. a., show, teach, instruct, inform. *

- rēs publica, rei publicae [rēs, matter + publicus], public affairs; state, commonwealth; republic.
6. distineō, -ere, tinui, tentus [taneō, hold], a., hold or keep apart; sunder, divide, isolate. *
 7. cōn-figō, -ere, fixi, flictus, a., a., strike or clash together, dash against, contend, fight. *
 9. intrō-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [intrō, within], lead or bring in, march in, introduce. 3

1, 4. liberaliter... prōsecūtus, and accompanying (his exhortation) with courteous words. liberaliter, diligenter: how are these adverbs formed? A. 148, b; H.304 iv n. 1; B. 76, 1. senātum: a Roman term used to describe a Gallic institution. obsidēs: Caesar follows his 'gracious speech' by a demand for hostages. diligenter ad diem: the Remi felt that Caesar was not to be trifled with.

5, 6. quantō opere... intersit, how greatly it concerns etc. For the Subj. cf. 4, 2. rei publicae salūtis: for the genitive with interest (and refer) see A. 222; B. 59; G. 381; H. 406, III; B. 211. commūnis salūtis: of both Aeduans and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Rom-

an interests.

7. nē... cōnfigendum sit, for fear that they (the Romans and Aeduī) be compelled to fight. For mode cf. I, 3, 5; 9, 12. For trans. of impers. cf. I, 7, 15; 23, 5; 26, 1, 31, 8.

8. in finēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovaci were already disaffected because they had not obtained the leadership of the league (see 4, 16 and 22) and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home. Diviciacus and the contingents of the Aeduī, Remi and Senones moved northwest from the Roman position (possibly near Chalons on the Marne).

9. intrōdūxerint, coeperint: for future perf. indic. indirect form.

- 10mandātis, eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sā venīre vidit neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit.
- 15Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae essent, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi

10. **mandātum**, -ī [mandō, enjoin, command], n., charge, injunction, order, command. *

13. **Axona**, -ae, m., a river of Gallia Belgica (now the Aisne) a tributary of the Isara (Oise). 2

16. **tūtus**, -s, -um [p. p. of tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. *
red-dō, -ere, reddidī, redditus [re-+dō], a., give back, re-

turn, restore; make or cause to be, render. *

commeātus (con-), -ūs [commeō, go and return, make a trip], m., communication, trip; supplies, provisions, (military) stores. *

18. **ef-ficiō**, -ere, feci, fectus [faciō], a., make or do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. *

11, 12. **in ūnum locum**: somewhere to the north and west of the Axona (Aisne). **coāctās venīre**, had been gathered and were coming. For the use of the perf. part. see on I, 5, 13. **neque . . . abesse** etc., and learned from the scouts whom he had sent and from the Remi that they were not far distant.

13, 14. **flūmen . . . exercitum trādūcere**: for the two accusatives cf. I, 24, 1, and see on I, 12, 6. **castra**: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III. have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is the hill of Mauchamp situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little tributary, the Miette, flowing through low, marshy ground which formed an excellent defense in front. The hill is eighty

feet above the river, with gentle slopes well adapted to the deploying of the Roman army.

15. **quae rēs**, this position. For the relative of. I, 1, 11; 14, 4. **et**, correlative with the *et* after **mūniēbat** and the *et* in l. 16; what case therefore is *latus*? Do not translate the first *et*. **latus ūnum**: i. e., the rear. It would seem to be a mistake to have the stream in his rear, but his camp was fortified with great strength and the bridge gave him uninterrupted communication with the country from which his supplies came.

16. **essent**: for mode see on I, 3, 3. **post . . . reddēbat**, rendered safe from the enemy (all) that was behind him.

18. **possent**: for mode cf. I, 6, 5; 12, 4; 13, 17; 25, 10.

praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in 20 altitudinem pedum XII vällō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūnīre iubet.

6. Ab hīs castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Assault of the Belgians upon Bibrax. Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārū oppūgnā-

19. Q., abbreviation for praenomen Quintus. 3

Titūrius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. *

20. Sabinus, -ī, m., a Roman cognomen: Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

cohors, -rtis, f., a cohort. The tenth part of a legion, numbering from 300 to 600 men. *

21. duo-dē-vigintī, card. num. indec., eighteen.

2. Bibrax, -ctis, f., a town of the Remi, supposed to be the modern Bievre. *

3. aegrē, adv. (aeger), hardly, with difficulty, scarcely; comp. aegrius, sup. aegerrimē. *

4. sustentō, 1. a. n., (sustineō), to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer. 4

oppūgnatiō, -ōnis [oppūgnō, storm], f., a storming, besieging, assault, attack. *

19. praesidium: here a 'bridge-head,' defending the north end of the bridge. in alterā parte, on the other side, i. e., at the other end of the bridge thus completing the arrangements for the defense of the bridge, the preservation of which was essential to the safety of his army. The bridge was at Berry-au-Bac, not immediately in the rear of the camp. Although nothing is said about it, it seems probable that a castellum was constructed at the south end of the bridge for the protection of the detachment under Sabinus.

20. sex cohortibus: how many soldiers? See Int. 87 for details about the cohort. castra: the main camp on the hill of Mauchamp. pedum: for case see on

I, 5, 8.

21. duodēviginti pedum: i. e., in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension he always means the width, as it was the more important. The depth was about ten feet.

1. nōmine: for case cf. I, 1, 3; 1, 12; 48, 12.

2. Bibrax: this place was north of Caesar's camp, on the present hill of Vieux Laon. ex itinere: i. e., without making any formal disposition of their troops.

3, 4. impetū: for case cf. I, 12, 3; 25, 11. aegrē . . . sustentātum est, translate personally: (the Remi) held out etc. eadem atque: (being) the same as that of the Belgae; for atque=as see on I, 28, 17.

5 tiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci coepti sunt mūrūque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōn-

5. circumiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō], *a.*, hurl, set or place around. *

6. moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, [mūnio,] defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses, a walled town. 4

lapis, -idis, *m.*, a stone. *

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *a.*, make or cause to go; throw, cast, fling; throw up, construct. *

7. dēfēnsor, -ōris [dēfendō] *m.*, one who wards off or averts; defender, protector. *

nūdō, *l. a.*, strip, expose, lay bare, deprive of. *

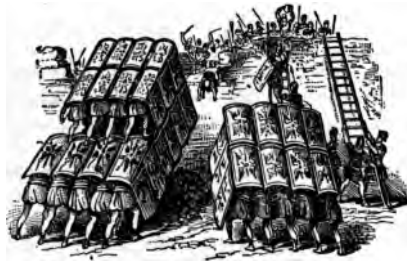
testūdō, -inis, *f.*, a tortoise; a covered column; a shed. *



Testūdō fossāria.

porta, -ae [portō, carry], *f.*, the place left for an entrance, over which the plough was carried marking the limits of a city, hence gate. *

8. sub-ruō, -ere, rūi, rūtus [ruō, fall], *a.*, cause to fall from beneath, dig under, undermine. 2



Testūdīnēs.

5. haec, as follows. Such bits of information are found frequently in the Commentaries and add greatly to their interest and value to the reader. ubi etc.: translate the ablative absolute by a coordinate clause, when a great number of men had been stationed around all the walls, (AND) stones etc.

6. moenibus: for case see on

I, 6, 8. What word is omitted? iaci coepti sunt: began to be thrown. Why not coeperunt? See on I, 47, 3.

7. dēfēnsōribus: for case cf. I, 1, 14; 8, 16; 23, 11. Signification of the -sor (-tor)? See on I, 9, 4. testūdine: see Int. 166.

9. tanta multitudō: what was the total number of soldiers? See

sistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī noxiō fecisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī ^{Caesar's aid} _{is sought.} lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

15

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiū ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et

14. **subsidium**, -ī, [subsideō], m., sitting in reserve, reserve; help, aid, assistance. *
sub-mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, a., send up, send to one's assistance, reinforce. *

2. **Numidae**, -ārum, m., the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. 3
Crētēs, -um, m., the Cretans, the people of Crete, modern Candia. 1
sagittārius, -ī [sagitta, an arrow], m., bowman, archer. *

4, 21-30. **conicerent**: for mode cf. I, 9, 3; 26, 18; 41, 14; plural from the individuals composing the subject, *multitūdō*. This "construction according to the sense" is called *Synesis*. **consistendī**: gerund or gerundive? See on *bellandī* I, 2, 14.

10. **erat nullī**, no one had. for case of nullī cf. I, 11, 18; 34, 12; 47, 15.

11. **nōbilitāte, grātiā**: (a man) of the highest etc. for case cf. I, 6, 12; 18, 7; 28, 15.

12. **oppidō**: for case cf. I, 2, 5; 12, 18; 23, 5; 44, 7. **ūnus ex iīs**, one of those. The adj. *ūnus* is used as a substantive in apposition (see on I, 3, 11) with *Iccius*: for *ex iīs* see on 3, 2. **lēgātī**: relation to quī? I, 3, 11.

13, 14. **nūntium . . . mittit . . . nōn posse**, sends word that he cannot.

1, 2. **eō**: to what place? **dē**, about. **īsdem . . . venerant**, employing the same persons as guides who had come as envoys etc. **īsdem**,

for case cf. *lēgibus*, 3, 12. **ducibus**: relation to *īsdem*? Cf. *ūnus* 6, 12; so also *nūntiū*. **Numidās**: allies



Arcus et sagitta. Sagittārius.
of Rome since the Punic Wars. In earlier times they had belonged to the cavalry, but in Caesar's army they were light infantry. On the *auxilia*, see Int. 99.

The Belgae, driven from Bibrax, ravage the country and attack Caesar.

5

funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque, quō adire potuerant, incēnsis ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab milibus passuum 10 minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque

3. funditor, -ōris [funda, a sling], m., slinger. 4

Baleāris, -e, Balearic. The inhabitants of the Balearic isles, Majorca, Minorca, and three others in the Mediterranean, off Spain, were famous slingers. 1

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], of or pertaining to a town: in pl. as subst., townspeople,



Funda.

inhabitants of a town. 5

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [dēfendō], f., a defending, defence. 2

5. prō-pūgnō, 1. n., fight forth. make sallies; fight for, defend. 3

6. paulisper, adv. [paulum, a little], a short time, a little while. *

8. ad-eō, ire, ii, itus [eō, go], a., n., go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. *

10. fūmus, -ī, m., smoke. 2

3. subsidiō oppidānis: for the two datives cf. I, 18, 28; 25, 6; 40, 34; 52, 16. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

4, 5. quōrum . . . accessit, by their arrival there came (was added to) the Remi along with the hope of (making a successful) defense, a desire for making sallies (against the enemy). The addition to the defense, though small, was sufficient to give the Remi hope; and the Belgae, not being used to siege operations, were easily discouraged. Caesar showed wise caution in keeping his force of legionaries intact.

7, 8. agrōs: the region north of the Axona. Bibrax was probab-

ly a frontier stronghold of the Remi. morātī, dēpopulātī: What Latin verbs only have a perfect participle with an active meaning? What do morātī and dēpopulātī agree with? Why does not incēnsis agree with the same? vicīs etc.: the Gallic houses were built of light materials, and had roofs thatched with straw.

9, 10. ab . . . duōbus, less than two miles away (from Caesar's camp); ab is here an adverb, and milibus is abl. of degree of difference. castra posuērunt: on the slopes across the Miette and facing southeast. The various contingents probably encamped without much regard to order. In striking contrast was the compact Roman camp, with its impregnable defences, the product of the best military science of the age. ut: part of speech? Cf. I, 22, 8; 16, 8.

ignibus significābatur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābatur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā oportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plāniciē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs

11. significō, 1. [signum + faciō],
a., make signs, show, indicate. *

1. primō, adv., (abl. of primus),
at first. *

2. eximius, -a, -um [ex-imō,
take out], taken from the mass;
hence choice, superior, eminent. 1

3. super-sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, ses-
sus, n., sit alone or over (rare);
hence refrain or desist from. 1

4. periclitor, 1. [periculum, trial,
danger], a., try, test, prove; en-
danger, risk. *

6. oportūnus, (opp-), -a, -um
[ob + portus, before the port],
fit, convenient, opportune.

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, ad-
apted.

7. paululum, adv. [paululus,
very little], a very little; some-
what.

plāniciēs (-itiēs), -ēī [plānus,
level], f., level ground, plain.

ē-dō, dere, didī, ditus [ex + dō,
give], give or place forth; raise,
elevate.

11. milibus: for case of 3, 2.

1. multitudinem: the total was
296,000: cf. chap. 4.

2. eximiam . . . virtūtis, their
extraordinary reputation for valor.
See I, 1, 6. For the Gen. cf. I, 30,
4; 14, 8. proeliō: a pitched battle.

3. supersedēre: great generals
combine caution with daring. quid
etc., what the enemy could (do) by
valor; for case of quid cf. I, 20, 6;
II, 4, 2.

4. posset: for Subj. cf. I, 12, 3;
21, 8. nostrī: especially his Gallic
cavalry. The Belgae were thought
to be better fighters than the Celts.
periclitābatur, attempted to ascer-

tain by experiment.

5, 6. locō . . . idōneō, since the
place was etc. The Abl. Abs. for
a causal clause. locō prō castris:
the ridge on which the camp was
pitched is two or more miles in
length, extending northeast and
southwest. The camp was at the
northeast end, facing southwest.
The Roman army was drawn up
along the ridge, facing northwest,
with its right wing resting on the
camp. atque idōneō, and also well
adapted. atque (ac) gives prom-
inence to that which follows.

7. paululum . . . ēditus: about
eighty feet.

8. tantum, quantum locī, as

instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris
1 odēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastigātus paulātīm ad
plāniciem redībat, ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam

9. **uterque, utraque, utrumque**
[uter, which of two + -que],
both, each.

10. **dēiectus, -ūs, m.**, a throwing
or casting down, felling; slope,
declivity, descent.

frōns, frōntis, f., the forehead,
brow, front.

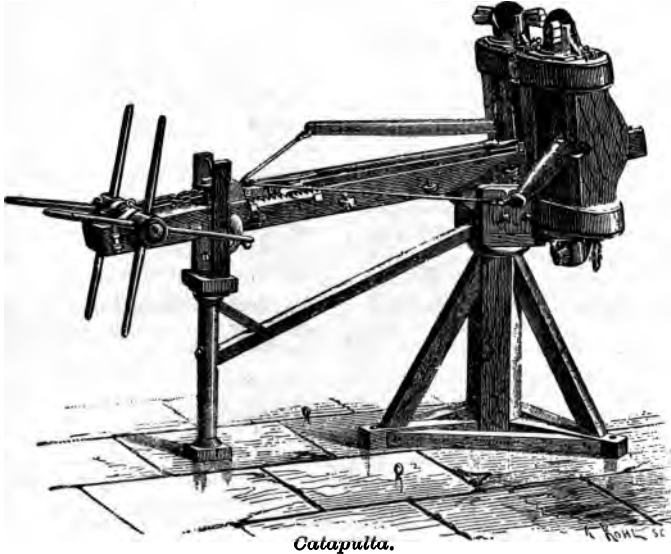
lēniter [lēnis], *adv.*, softly, smooth-

ly, gently, gradually.

fastigātus, -a, -um [fastigō, slope].
inclined, sloping.

paulātīm [paulum, a little], *adv.*
little by little, by degrees, grad-
ually.

11. **trāns-versus, -a, -um** [vertō,
turn], turned across, athwart,
transverse, at right angles.



Catapulta.

much space as. loci: Part. Gen. limiting *quantum*, the obj. of *occupāre*, and put into the relative clause while the English idiom takes it with *tantum*. **quantum loci**: How long would the front of an army of six legions be? See Int. 146.

9. **ex utrāque parte**; i. e., on

either side of the ridge at the north-east end, where the camp was.

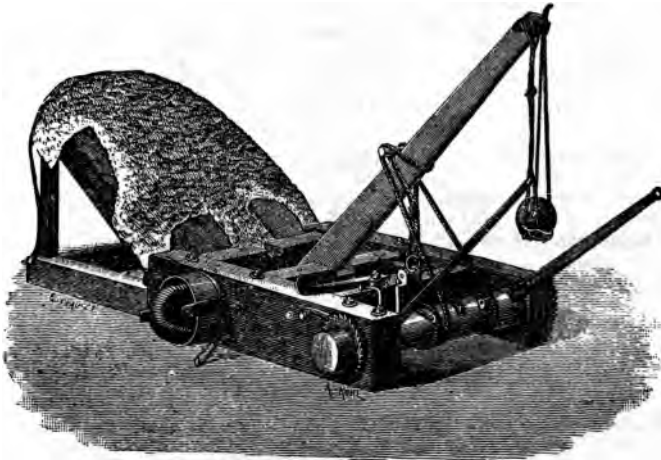
10. **in frontem**: i. e., the portion of the ridge extending north-east from the camp.

11. **trānsversam**, at right angles to the ridge. One ditch ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Aisne,

fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō,¹⁵ duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris

12. ob-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, a., lead forward or towards; prolong, extend.
13. tormentum, -ī [torqueō,

twist], n., means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, (e. g. *Catapulta* and *Ballista*); *fig.* torment, torture. *



Ballista.

12. ad extrēmās fossās: at the ends of the ditches, i. e., at the ends nearest the two streams. For the force of the adj. cf *plērōsque* I, 22, 1, *castella*: the redoubts were earthworks surmounted by palisades and usually more or less circular in form.

13. tormenta: see Int. 167-169. The enemy could not now take the Roman army in the flank, as the ditches and redoubts effectually closed up the gaps between the

camp and the two streams.

14. quod . . . poterant, because they had such numerical strength. multitūdine: for case cf. I, 1, 3; 48, 12. ab, on; with circumvenīre.

15. pūgnantēs: join with suōs and trans. while fighting.

16. proximē: i. e., in the previous spring; see note, 2, 2. Why did Caesar reserve these particular legions?

relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerant.

The Belgians attempt to cross the Axona.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent, hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trāseundī fieret, ut impeditōs aggredereentur, parātī in armīs erant.
- 6 Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trāseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suārum

17. quō [*old dat. of quī*] *adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what (place)? (2) *rel.*, whither, to or into which, as far as; (3) *indef.*, (after si, nē, etc.), if any whither, if to any place. *
opus, *indecl.*, n., [cf., opus, work, deed], need, necessity; used in the predicate with the *Nom.* of the thing needed; opus est, it is ne-

cessary. *

1. palūs, -ūdis, *r.* marsh, swamp; bog, fen. *
6. neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* -trius, *dat.* -tri) [ne-uter], neither: in *pl.*, neither side, neither party. 2
7. prōtinus, *adv.* [tenuis, *prep.* fr. teneō, hold], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 5

17. si . . . esset (*sc. dūcī*) in case there should be need of (their being led) anywhere. subsidiō: observe the care with which Caesar provided for contingencies.

18. sex legiōnēs: is this an exact statement? See 5, 20, *sex cohortibus* etc. prō castris: see note to line 5. The Belgae were drawn up on the opposite side of the Miette.

1. palūs: the marshy ground along the course of the Miette. nōn māgna: figure of speech? cf. I, 52, 4; 42, 20; 1, 8.

2. si: for use see on I, 8, 14.

4. ut aggredereentur parātī, ready to attack. For mode of, I,

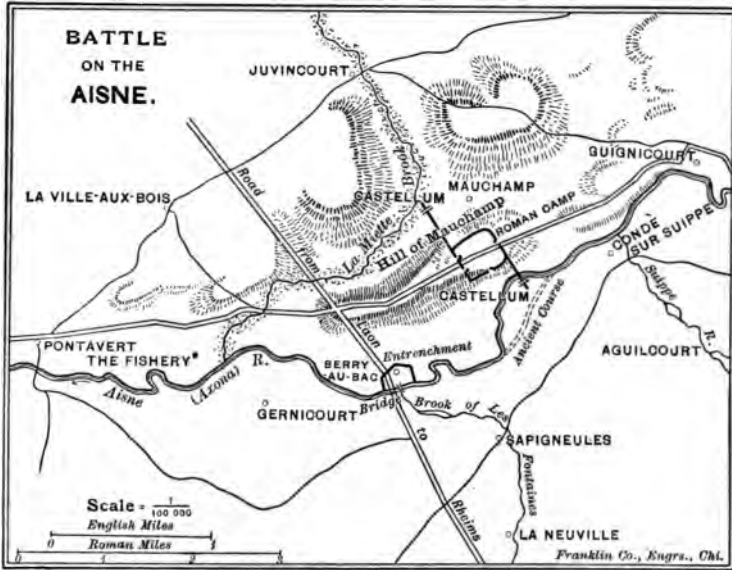
3, 5; 5, 8. impeditōs: i. e., thrown into disorder during the crossing of the stream.

5, 6. inter duās aciēs: on the low ground. secundiōre, rather favorable etc.

7, 8. nostris: for case cf. I, 1, 10; 9, 6; 28, 14. ex eō locō: i. e., the place where they had been drawn up in line for battle. contendērunt: Caesar did not perceive this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. vadis repertis: these were on each side of a sharp bend in the Aisne between Pontavert and Gericourt. It seems strange that Caesar was not aware of their existence.

cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent,¹⁰ castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pon-



temque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsui ad bellum gerendum

- 12. inter-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus [scindō, cut, destroy], a., cut through, tear or break down, cut off (between two points). 2
- 13. ego, mei, etc., pers. pron. I;

pl. nōs, we, us, etc. *
 ūsus, -ūs [ūtor, use], m., use, experience, service, advantage; ūsus est, it is necessary; ūsui (ex ūsu) of advantage, of service. *

10. eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., with this design, to storm, if they could, etc. possent, represents a future indicative in the mind of the Belgae: "we will storm if we can etc."

11. castellum, see on 5, 19. cui, for case cf. I, 2, 5. expūgnārent, for mode cf. I, 30, 8. pontem, see 5, 18.

12, 13. interscinderent, in the same construction as expūgnārent. minus, not, as always after sī (cf.

prefix *mis-* in words of French origin). potuissent, represents a future perfect indicative in the minds of the Belgae: "if we are not able etc." Why the future perfect idea instead of the future, as in l. 10? agrōs . . . populārentur: thus at one stroke they would be able to punish the traitorous Remi and to cut off Caesar's supplies. populārentur, governed by ut in l. 10 and therefore parallel with what

erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

They are driven back and determine to return home.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūrīō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occidērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlorum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfecērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellē-

2. *levis*, -e, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. *
armātūra, -ae [armō], f., armor,

equipment; armed soldiers, *always with adjective levis*. 4
9. fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsus, deceive, cheat, disappoint. 3

two verbs? māgnō . . . ūsui, of great value to us. For case cf. I, 18, 28; 52, 16.

14. *commeātū*: see Int. 117.



Funditor. Miles levis armātūrae

1. *ab Titūrīō*: the lieutenant was about a mile nearer the fords

where the Belgae were crossing the river than was Caesar.

2. *equitātum*: see Int. 100, 101. *levis armātūrae*: see Int. 99. For case cf. *legiōnum* I, 24, 4. *Numidās*: see on 7, 2.

3. *pontem trādūcit*: the Belgae and Romans were both north of the Aisne. Caesar crossed the bridge to the south bank to oppose the crossing of the enemy.

4. *eō locō*: i. e., where he met the enemy. Probably many had already passed the stream and were advancing toward the bridge. Caesar was not a moment too soon. *impeiditōs*: trans. by a rel. clause, *who were* etc.

5. *aggressī occidērunt*, *attacked and slew*.

6. *corpora . . . trānsire*: the heaps of bodies forming a sort of bridge. *audācissimē*: Caesar often mentions with admiration the valor of the Gauls.

7. *equitātū*: for case cf. I, 53, 7; 16, 6.

8. *hostēs*: the main body of the Belgian army.

xērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī¹⁰ causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et¹⁵ domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciacum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādēri, ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat. 20

10. inīquus, -a, -um [aequus, even], uneven, unequal, unfavorable. *

prōgredior, gredi, gressus sum [gradior, step], n., step or go forward, come or march out, advance, proceed, go. *

11. dēficiō, -ere, feci, fectus [faciō], a., n., fail, fall away, desert. *

12. optimus, -a, -um [*superl.* of bonus], very good, best, most excellent. *

15. potius [acc. neut. sing. of po-

tior, *comp. of potis, able*], adv. rather. *

dē-certō, 1. [certō, contend], n., fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, contend., vie. *

16. domesticus, -a, -um [domus], of or belonging to the home, home, domestic. 2

sententia, -ae [sentio, feel, think], f., feeling, opinion, view, sentiment; decision, sentence. *

18. ap- (ad-) propinquō 1. [propinquus, near], n., come near or close to, approach. *

10. neque nostrōs prōgredi, and that our men did not advance. locum inīquiōrem: the marsh along the Miette. For the reference see 9, 1.

11. ipsōs: the Belgae. rēs... dēficere: see Int. 184. coepit, etc.: the figure *Alliteration*, i. e., the concurrence of words beginning with the same letter or syllable.

12, 13. optimum esse, that it was best. The subj. of esse is the clause domum... reverti. reverti: thus dissolving the coalition.

18. Diviciacum: the Aeduan noble. finibus Bellovacōrum:

see on 5, 8. finibus: for case cf. I, 2, 5; 12, 18.

19, 20. hīs persuādēri nōn poterat, these could not be persuaded. (lit., it could not be persuaded to them). See on I, 40, 7, 8. neque=et nōn as in line 10. poterat: for trans. of verbs used impers. I, 22, 9; 46, 7; 31, 8; 26, 1. For the *ut* clause as its subj. cf. 4, 9; I, 46, 8; 2, 12. Give the principal parts of occidērunt (5), repulērunt (7), fefellisse (9), reverti (13), cōgnōverant (19). Give the constr. of Tituriō (1) pōntem (3), oppidō (9), sē (9), domum (12), cōpiis (16), hīs (19).

They are pursued with great slaughter.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū āc tumultū castrīs ēgressi nullō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt, ut
 5 cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explorātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen morārētur,
 10 praemisit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia pas-

2. strepitus, -ūs [strepō, make a noise], m., noise, rattle, uproar 3
 tumultus, -ūs [tumeō, swell], m., uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult.*
 3. ōrdō, -inis, m., row, order, arrangement, series, rank. *
 4. properō, 1. [properus, quick], a., n., hasten, accelerate; make or do with haste. 3
 5. cōn-similis, -e, very like, just like. 3
 statim [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately. *
 6. speculātor, -ōris [speculor,

- spy out], m., scout. 2
 7. perspiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [obsol. speciō, look], a., see through, discern, perceive; view, examine, inspect. *
 10. Aurunculēius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. E. g., L. Aurunculēius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants. 5
 Cotta, -ae, m., a Roman family name. See above. *
 12. sub-sequor, sequī, secūtus, a., n., follow closely, follow up or on, succeed to. *

1. secundā vigiliā: about what time of night? See Int. 138.

3. ōrdīne . . . imperiō, not in orderly array or under orders. For the Abl. cf. I, 12, 3; 32, 2.

4, 5. peteret: for mode cf. 6, 9; I, 26, 18; 9, 3. fēcērunt ut vidērētur, they made their departure seem. For the mode cf. I, 13, 20; 9, 11 (dent). fugae: for case cf. I, 1, 10; II, 2, 6.

6. speculātōrēs: these were spies, while the explorātōrēs (below, line 8) were regular cavalry detailed for this special service.

7. exercitum: i. e., the infantry.

8. castris continuit: another

instance of Caesar's caution.

9. quī . . . morārētur, to delay the rear (of the Belgians). For the mode cf. I, 7, 10; 15, 5; 21, 4. novissimum āgmen: the rear guard as a whole, while extrēmum āgmen (line 14, below), is the hindmost line of troops. For the order of march see Int. 140-144.

11. Labiēnum: see on I, 10, 8. lēgātum: name of the officers of the legion. legiōnibus tribus: how many men? See Int. 86.

12. subsequī: to support the cavalry and attack the enemy when overtaken.

suum prōsecūtī māgnam multītūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinē-15 rent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur, neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multītūdinem nostrī interfecērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occā-20 sumque sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē Caesar marches against the stronghold of the Suessiones. hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum

13. fugiō, -ere, fūgī, *a., n.*, flee, fly, run away; escape. *

15. fortiter [fortis, brave], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, courageously. *

16. prior, prius, *comp. adj.* [superl. primus], former, previous, prior, first: *in pl. as subst.*, those in advance. *

17. necessitās, -tātis [necesse, necessary], *f.*, necessity, constraint, compulsion. 5

ex-audiō, 4. hear (*from a distance*), discern. *

clāmōr, -ōris [clāmō, cry out], *m.*, outcry, noise, din, clamor. *

18. per-turbō, 1. [turbō, disturb], *a.*, disturb greatly, throw in confusion, confound, embarrass, disturb. *

2. terror, -ōris [terreō, frighten], *m.*, fright, alarm, panic, terror. 5

13. fugientium, *who were fleeing.*

14, 15. cum ... cōnsisterent, *since those in the rear of the (Belgian) army, whom (our men) had overtaken, were making a stand.* ventum erat: impersonal. Trans. personally; cf. I, 22, 9; II, 10, 20.

16, 17. priōrēs: *sc. et.*; hence pōnerent (l. 18) is in the same constr. as cōnsisterent and sustinērent. vidērentur, continērentur: for mode cf. I, 16, 17; II, 1, 6.

19, 20. tantam ... spatium, *as great a number as the length of the day permitted.*

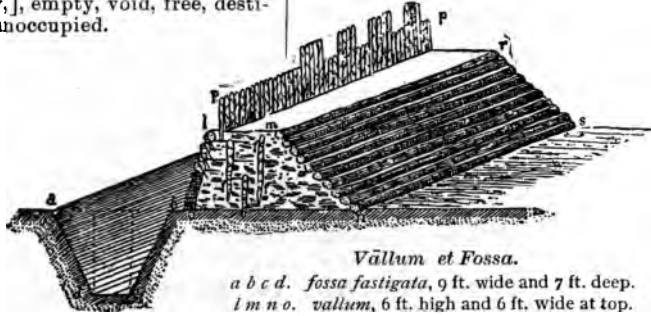
1, 2. priusquam ... reciperent: Caesar's plan for separating the Belgic tribes having been carried out successfully, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one. For mode of reciperent see on I, 19, 13.

3. Suessiōnum: for this people see on 3, 11.

dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum con-
 5 tendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab
 dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae
 mūrīque alitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn
 potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnan-

4. **Noviodūnum**, -ī, n., (1) the capital of the Suessiones, the modern Soissons, (2) a city of the Bituriges, now Nouan; (3) a city of the Aedui, now Nevers. 5
 5. **vacuus**, -a, -um, [vacō, be empty,], empty, void, free, destitute, unoccupied.

6. **audiō**, 4., a., hear, hear of: *in pr. p. as adj.*, obedient.
 8. **vīnea**, -ae [vīnum, wine], f., a vineyard, vine arbor, hence a shed (for the defence of a besieging party).



Vallum et Fossa.

a b c d. fossa fastigata, 9 ft. wide and 7 ft. deep.
l m n o. vallum, 6 ft. high and 6 ft. wide at top.
p p. palisades. *s* to *r*, ascending steps.

4. **māgnō itinere**: about 28 miles. **Noviodūnum**: Caesar marched west along the south bank of the Aisne.

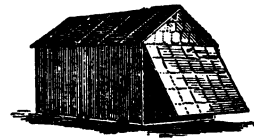
5. **ex itinere**: **ex** is here employed to denote the immediate succession of events: i. e. Caesar began the assault immediately at the end of the march, although it was late in the day and his troops were very tired from the long march.

6. **lātitudinem** etc.: Gallic towns did not often have such strong fortifications. Possibly Caesar is here plausibly accounting for this, his first reverse in Gaul.

7. **paucīs dēfendentibus**: the

Abl. Abs. for a concessive clause. Trans., *although but few were defending it.*

8. **castrīs mūnītīs**: see Int. 130-132, and cut of *vallum* and *fos-*



Vīnea.

sa. vīneās: see Int. 160. *quaeque = et quae* (not from *quisque*). For siege operations see Int. 158-163.

dum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit.¹⁰ Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs māgnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant. 15

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs primīs civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē

Caesar proceeds against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

11. **agger, -eris** [ad + gerō, carry], m., materials for a mound or earthwork; a mound, rampart; embankment.

turris, -is, f., tower.

12. **māgnitūdō, -inis** [māgnus great], f., greatness, great size,

extent, stature (corporum).

13. **celeritās, -tātis** [celer, quick], f., quickness, swiftness, speed, promptness.

15. **cōservō, 1. [servō, save], a.**, save, spare; protect, maintain.

9, 10. ūsuī, for case cf. I, 18, 28. omnis multitudō: how many? See 4, 24. They probably crossed the Aisne and entered the town on the north side, which Caesar had not had time to invest. Had he been able to do so, it seems certain that he would have prevented their entrance. ex fugā: see on *ex itinere* line 5. The Suessiones ended their flight and at once entered the town.

11. āctīs, moved up. aggere iactō, after an earthwork had been constructed. See vertical section of agger. vineīs, aggere, turribus: state the use of these Ablatives Absolute. turribus: see Int. 163.

12, 13. quae . . . audierant: these Gauls had not hitherto come in contact with the Romans. See I, 1, 6-9.

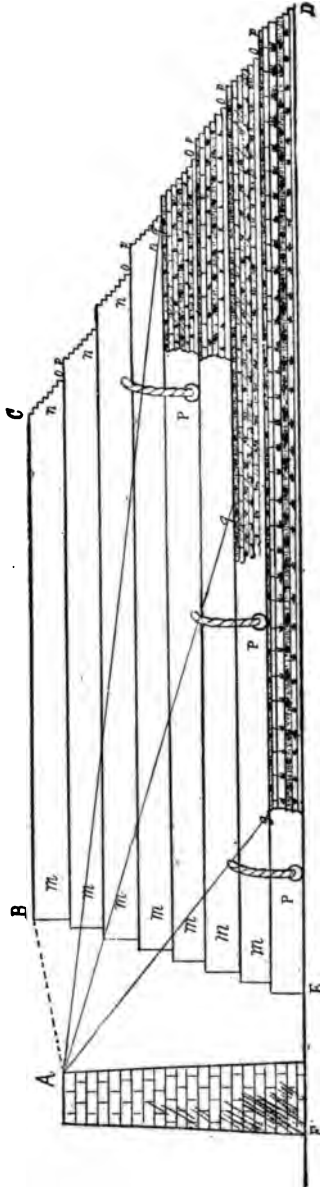
14, 15. petentibus . . . cōserv-

vārentur, since the Remi (whose allies they had been) asked that they be spared. Rēmīs: case? For the ut clause as obj. cf. I, 2, 4; 39, 14; 7, 13; 3, 13. impetrant, they (the Suessiones) obtain their request. cōservārentur: i. e., should be granted life and liberty.

1. primīs: the foremost citizens, not necessarily the public functionaries.

2. Galbae: the former head of the league; see 4, 22.

4. in Bellovacōs: west of the Suessiones. dūcit: Caesar probably followed the south bank of the Aisne to its junction with the Oise and there crossed the latter stream. See map. quī cum, now when these. For the use of the Rel. cf. I, 1, 11; II, 5, 15.



VERTICAL SECTION OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION.

See Int. 158-166.

- A F*, Represents the enemy's wall.
 - A B C D E*, Section to be filled.
 - A B E*, Part especially exposed to the enemy's missiles to be filled at last in any way possible.
 - q q D*, Part already constructed.
 - m m*, Covered passages through which material is carried.
 - n n n*, Stairs leading from one story to another.
 - op op*, Steps.
 - P P P*, Lines of *plutei* protecting the men at work.
- The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the *plutei*.

suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Diviciacus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmīssīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum re-<sup>Diviciacus
pleads for the
Bellovacī.</sup> verterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē

5. **Bratuspantium**, -ī, n., a town of the Bellovacī, now Breteuil. 1

7. **nātus**, -ūs [nāscor, be born], m., birth: māiōrēs nātū, greater by birth; elders, ancestors. 3

8. **tendō**, -ere, **tetendī**, (tentus), **tēnsus**, stretch, stretch out, extend. 4

vōx, **vōcis**, f., voice, cry, sound: word: pl. words, language,

speech; māgnā vōce, with a loud voice. *

11. **pandō**, -ere, **pandī**, **passus** [cf. pateō, extend], spread or stretch out, extend: **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. 4

1. **discessus**, -ūs, [discēdō, go asunder], m., a going asunder, departure, withdrawal; defec-tion. *

5. **Bratuspantium**: see map. Caesar would march northwest from the crossing of the Oise to reach it.

6. **milia**: for case see on I, 2, 17. **circiter** here is not a preposition.

8, 9. **vōce**: i. e. cries of supplication in an unknown tongue. **in fidem ac potestātem**, under his protection and power; a form of submission for which cf. 3, 4.

11, 12. **puerī**, children (of both sexes). **ex**, (standing) on. **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. What does the abl. abs. here express? **mōre**: for case cf. I, 50, 1 (*institūtō*); 44, 7 (*tūre*); 4, 2 (*mōribus*).

1, 2. **prō hīs**, in behalf of these

(Bellovacī). **discessum Belgārum**: described in chap. 11.

3, 4. **facit verba**, speaks. Give the direct form in both Latin and English. **omnī . . . fuisse**, had (direct: have) always been under the protection and friendship of the Aeduan (direct: our) state. **fidē atque amicitīā**: cf. the formula in 13, 9; the Bellovacī were clients of the Aedui, retaining, however, their independence and the control of their own army. Another class of client peoples existed in Gaul, which had ceased to form separate states and whose soldiers were incorporated into the armies of the states under whose control they were. **prīncipibus**: the leading citizens.

atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis prin-
 5 cipibus, qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitutem redac-
 tos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis
 defecisse et populom Romanom bellum intulisse. Qui eius con-
 siliu principes fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calami-
 tatem civitatu intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere
 10 non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua
 clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit,
 Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatum;
 quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, susten-
 tare consuerint.

Caesar grants
 terms to the
 Bellovac.

15. Caesar honoris Diviciaci atque Aeduorum
 causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservam

4. **impello** (in-), -ere, puli, pul-
 sus [pellom, drive], a., drive or
 urge on, incite, instigate, impel. *
5. **redigo**, -ere, egi, actus [agom,
 put in motion], a., drive or bring
 back; get together, collect; ren-
 der, reduce. *
6. **indignitas**, -tatis [indignus,
 unworthy], f., unworthiness, out-
 rage, disgrace. 2
9. **pro-fugio**, -ere, fugi, [fugiom,
 flee], flee from or before, run
 away, escape. *

11. **clementia**, -ae [clemens,
 gentle], f., gentleness, kindness,
 mercy, clemency. 2
- mansuetudo**, -inis, [mansuetus,
 tame], f., tameness; gentleness,
 compassion. 2
12. **amplificom**, 1. [amplus, full
 all around + faciom], a., extend,
 enlarge, increase, expand. 2
13. **incidom**, -ere, cidi, [cadom,
 fall], n., fall into or upon; fall in
 with, meet, happen, occur. 5

5. **dicerent**: for the mode see
 on I, 7, 12. Point out the other
 illustrations of this principle in
 this speech. **Caesare**: direct, by
 you. For case cf. I, 14, 6; 16, 17.

6. **indignitates**, etc.: under the
 vigorous military rule of Labienus
 (cf. I, 54, 7) the Aedui had already
 largely lost their independence.
Aeduis: for case cf. I, 1, 14.

7. **populom**: for case cf. I, 2, 5;
 II, 6, 12. **qui**, those who; sc.
 eos, subject of profugisse line 9.

9. **Britanniam**: the relations
 between the Belgae and Britons
 were quite close. See 4, 19-21.

10, 11. **ut . . . utatur**, to exer-

cise his (well known) clemency etc.
 For the mode cf. I, 2, 4: for the
 Abl. cf. I, 2, 6; II, 3, 12. Notice care-
 fully the change to primary tenses
 in ll. 11-14, and see on I, 7, 13.
 Give the regular tense for each verb.

13. **si qua**, if any, may be
 translated whatever.

14. **consuerint**: sc. Aedui.

1, 2. **honoris . . . causa**: for
 meaning see on I, 18, 15. Caesar
 desired to strengthen the Aeduan
 power. **Diviciaci**: for case cf. I,
 4, 4. **conservatum**: see on 12, 14.
 What must be supplied to complete
 the verb?

tūrum dixit; quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque homiūm multitudine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō collātis, ⁵ ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē ^{The Ambient surrender.} suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs ^{Situation of the Nervii.} Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vinī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxu-¹⁰ riam pertinentium inferrī, quod iis rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent: esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs

4. sexcentī, -ae, -a [centum, a hundred], six hundred. 3

7. mora, -ae [moror, delay], f., delay. 4

dē-dō, -ere, didi, ditus [dō, give], a., give up or over, yield, surrender; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. *

9. aditus, -ūs [eō, go], m., going to, access, approach. *

10. vinum, -i, n., wine. 1
lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury, high living. 1

11. re-languēscō, -ere, languī [languēō, be faint], n., grow faint or weak. 1

12. re-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, a., send or drive back, return, restore; remit, release, relax. *

13. increpitō, -āre [freq. of increpō, chide], a., call or cry out to, chide, taunt, banter, blame. 2

incūsō, 1. [causa], a., bring a charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. 2

3. auctōritāte: for case of I, 6, 12.

4. multitudine: for case of I, 1, 3; 6, 1. sexcentōs obsidēs: Caesar combines mercy and firmness in his treatment of the Belgae.

6. eō locō: Bratspanium. finēs Ambiānōrum: north of the Bellovacī. Trace on the map Caesar's route from Berry-au-Bac to this point.

8. Nervii, they occupied the basin of the Sambre River; *Bagacum*, now Bavay, was their capital.

9, 10. nullum etc.: change to dir. disc. aditum . . . mercātōribus, that traders had no access to them. Cf. I, 1, 8. For case of mercātōribus of I, 7, 10. nihil patī vinī:

the most of the Gauls were addicted to the use of intoxicants. The temperate habits of the Nervii were a mark of their Germanic origin. vinī, rērum: for case of 8, 8.

11. relanguēscere: for signif. of the ending -scō see on 1, 10.

13. māgnae virtūtis, of great valor. For the case see A. 215; B. 58; G. 365; H. 396 V; B. 203. What special use of this genitive has already occurred in 5, 21; I, 38, 1; 5, 8? Could the ablative have been used here? increpitāre, they kept chiding. For the formation and signification of *Intensives* or *Iteratives* (*Frequentatives*) see A. 167 b; G. 191 A, 1; H. 336; B. 155 2.

Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque vir-
 15 tūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs
 neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*The Nervii
 encamp at the
 Sabis, pre-
 pared for bat-
 tle.*

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset,
 inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs
 suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse: trāns id
 flūmen omnēs Nerviiōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmā-
 5 nōrum expectāre ūnā cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduis, fi-
 nitimis suis (nam hīs utrisque persuāserant, utī eandem belli
 fortūnam experirentur); expectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucō-
 rum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetā-
 tem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum conīcisse,
 10 quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.

14. **patrius, -a, -um**, of a father,
 paternal, ancestral. 1

2. **in-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus**,
 a., come upon, find out, dis-
 cover. *

Sabis, -is, m., a tributary of the
 Meuse, now the Sambre. 2

7. **experior, periri, pertusum**,
 a., prove, try, test, experience. *

8. **aetās, aetātis** [*contr. of aevi-
 tās, fr. aevum, age*], f., period
 of life, age. *

9. **in-ūtilis, -e** [ūtilis, useful], use-
 less, worthless, unserviceable. *

14. **dēdidissent**: this verb (and
prōiēcissent l. 15) would have the
 subjunctive in the direct form also:
 see A. 320 e Note; G. 626; H. 517;
 B. 283, 3, a.

15. **cōfirmāre . . . missūrōs**,
asserted that they would not etc.
 Give the principal parts of **prae-
 stābat** (4), **poposcit, trāditis, col-
 lātis** (5), **atingēbant** (8), **quaere-
 ret** (9), **patī** (10).

1. **triduum**, for three days: for
 the case cf. I, 26, 15; 3, 12. What
 other case might have been used?
 Cf. I, 38, 1.

2. **Sabim**: see map for its
 course. Crossing the river Samara
 (Somme) at Amiens, Caesar turned
 to the northeast and marched to
 Bavay. Here he halted to ascertain
 the whereabouts of the Nervii.

castris: at Bavay.

3, 4. **trāns flūmen**: i. e., on
 the south bank. **cōnsēdisse**: prob-
 ably at Hautmont, a few miles
 southwest of Maubeuge.

5, 6. **Atrebatibus**: for case see
 on I, 10, 12. **his utrisque**, both
 of these. For case cf. I, 2, 4.

7, 8. **experirentur**: for mode
 cf. I, 2, 4; 3, 13. **ab his**: i. e.,
 the Nervii. **quique**: and (the men)
 who; sc. *eos* (the men) as object of
conīcisse line 9. Cf. *quī* 14, 7.

9, 10. **eum locum quō, a place
 where**: either Thuin, a short distance
 northeast of Hautmont, or
 Mons, ten miles north. **quō, to
 which**; the relative adverb instead of
 the relative pronoun with *ad*
 (= *ad quem*). **exercitū . . . esset**:
 for trans. and case cf. *mercātoribus*
 15, 10.

17. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionisque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum diorum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; 10

1. centuriō, -ōnis [centuria a division of one hundred], m., a centurion, the commander of a century; a captain.

4. qui-dam, quae-dam, quod-(subst. quid-) dam, indef. pron. used of that which is possible, but not clearly known; a certain,

a certain one, somebody, something: *in pl.*, some certain.

5. consuetūdō, -inis [consuēscō, become accustomed], f., habit, practice, custom, prevalent form or usage; intimacy, companionship.

1. exploratōres: see on 11, 6. centuriones: see Int. 91-93.



Centuriō.

Lictor.

2. qui deligant, to select: see Int. 129. For the use of the rel.

and the mode of I, 7, 10. castris: for case cf. I, 1, 10.

3, 4. dediticiis: what tribes had submitted? Caesarem . . . facerent, followed Caesar and were marching along (with him). secuti: trans. as a coordinate verb, cf. I, 5, 13. facerent: for mode cf. I, 9, 3; II, 6, 9.

5, 6. eorum . . . perspecta, having noticed our army's usual plan of march during these days. A noticeable accumulation of genitives. diorum and exercitus limit itineris. consuetudine: for order of march see Int. 140.

7. inter singulas legiones, between every two legions. impedimentorum: see Int. 118, 119.

8, 9. neque . . . negotii, and it was no trouble (not anything of difficulty). For the case cf. 15, 10; 8, 8. in castra: i. e., to the place selected for the site of the camp.

quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis futurum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervī antiquitus, cum equitatū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiis) quō facilius finitimōrum equitatum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātis et rubis sentibusque

11. diripiō, -ere, ripuī, reptus [rapiō, seize], *a.*, rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. *

12. ad-iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus [iuvō, aid], *a.*, aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. 5

15. quisquis, quaequae, quod-quod or quidquid, or quicquid, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, each, all. 2

pedester, -tris, -tre [pēs], on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cōpiaē, infantry. *

16. praedor, 1. [praeda, booty],

a., make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *

17. tener, -era, -erum, soft, tender; of tender age, young. 1

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. *

incidō, -ere, cidi, cīsus [caedō, cut], *a.*, cut into, notch. 1

18. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough, twig. 3

ē-nāscor, nascī, nātus sum, *n.*, be born from, spring or sprout up. 1

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. 1

sentēs, -ium, *pl. m.*, briers, thorns. 1

11. futurum (esse) ut, the result would be.

12. adiuvābat etc., the fact that the Nervii . . . assisted the design of those who reported the matter. The clause quod . . . effecerant (l. 19) is the subject of adiuvābat, which is here used impersonally.

13, 14. cum . . . possent, since they had no strength in cavalry. equitatū: for case cf. I, 1, 3; 48, 12 nihil possent: for trans. cf. quid possent. 4, 2. eī rei, this branch of the service, i. e. cavalry. For case of imperiis with same verb 1, 11.

15. quicquid . . . cōpiis, what-

ever strength they have consists in infantry. quō etc., in order to check the more easily etc. For quō in final clauses cf. I, 14, 14; 8, 7. What case is quō?

17. teneris arboribus, etc.: the trees were notched and bent when young and the branches were trained to grow out sidewise. In the spaces not filled by this method thorn-bushes were planted and by these means an impenetrable hedge was made. Napoleon remarks that hedges very similar to those here described are to be found at the present day in this part of France.

interiectis effecerant, ut instar mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quīdem posset. His rēbus cum iter āgminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum cōnsilium Nervī existimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castris delēgerant. Collis ab summō aequaliter declivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus 5

19. intericiō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō]. a., throw or hurl between; put, set or place between; interpose, interject. *

efficiō, -ere, fecī, fectus [faciō], a., make or do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. *

instar, n., indecl., likeness; with gen., like, in the manner of. 1

saepēs, -is [saepiō, hedge in], f., hedge. 2

mūnimentum, -ī [mūniō, fortify], n., fortification, bulwark, protection, defence. 1

20. praebēō, 2. [prae + habēō], a., hold out, proffer, offer, furnish, present. 5

intrō, 1. a., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. 3

22. omittō, -ere, misi, missus [ob], a., let go or fall; give up, neglect; pass over, omit. 3

2. aequaliter [aequalis, equal], equally, uniformly, regularly, evenly. 1

3. dē-clivis, -e [clivus, a slope], sloping downwards, declining; as subst., slope. †

nōminō, 1. [nōmen, name], a., call by name, name, mention, give a name to. 3

4. ac (ad-)clivitās, -tātis [acclivis, rising], f., a rising or ascending upwards, an acclivity, ascent. 1

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, n., be born or produced; rise, spring up, proceed. *

5. contrārius, -a, -um [contrā], lying over against, opposite, facing. †

inferus, -a, -um, below, beneath: comp., inferior, lower, further down, inferior: sup., infimus, or imus, lowest, at the foot or bottom. *

20, 21. quō . . . posset: change from the passive and impers. constr. and trans., into which one not only could not penetrate but could not even see. quō is the rel. adv. for in quae, cf. 16, 10.

1. locī: on the north bank of the Samore, opposite Hautmont. locum: omit in translation; cf. I, 29, 3; 16, 10; 6, 1.

2, 3. collis: called Neuf-Mesnil,

on the north bank. ab . . . declivis, with a uniform descent from the summit. summō: the abl. sing. neut. of summus, used as a noun.

4. parī acclivitāte, of equal steepness (to that of the other hill). For the case cf. I, 6, 12; 18, 7. collis: called Hautmont, on the south bank. huic: the height on the Roman side of the river. contrārius: parallel to the other hill.

apertus, ā superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitudō circiter pedum
10trium.

*Arrangement
of the forces.*

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbā-
tur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque āgminis aliter sē habē-
bat, āc Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostī ap-
propinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedi-
5 tās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat;
inde duae legiōnēs, quae proxumē cōscriptae erant, tōtum

6. **silvestris**, -e [*silva*, forest],
of a wood or forest, wooded,
woody.

intrōrsus [*contr. of intrōversus*],
adv., into the interior, into, in-
side, within.

7. **occultus**, -a, -um [*occulō*,
cover up], covered, concealed,
secret: in *occultō* (n. *as subst.*),
in a secluded or secret place.

8. **secundum**, *prep. with acc.* [*se-*
quor, follow], *of place*, by, along:

of time, rank, etc., after, next;
fig., agreeably or according to.

statiō, -ōnis [*stō*, stand], *r.*, a
standing or stationing; a military
post or station; sentries, pickets,
outposts.

2. **aliter** [*alius*, another], other-
wise, in a different manner, dif-
ferently; *with atque* (āc), **quin**
otherwise than, different from
what.

6, 7. **apertus**: as the slope of the
hill began at the river bank (cf. *ab*
flūmine, etc. l. 4) this must mean
that the hill was bare of trees for
two hundred feet up the slope.
ut . . . **posset**: for trans. cf. 17, 20:
for the mode cf. I, 6, 5.

8, 9. **statiōnēs equitum**: these
drew the attention of the Roman
van away from the woods and pre-
vented their discovery of the pres-
ence of the foe. **pedum**: for case
of 5, 21; I, 38, 1; 5, 8.

1. **praemissō**: i. e., from Bavay.
Caesar, after describing the dispo-
sition of the Nervian forces, takes
up the thread of his narration of
events where he had dropped it in
17, 2.

2, 3. **omnibus cōpiīs**, *with all*
his troops. The Abl. of Accompani-
ment often omits *cum* in military
expressions: for the regular form
cf. 16, 5. **sē habēbat āc**, *was*
different from what the Belgae had
reported to the Nervii (lit., had itself
otherwise than). For the number
see on *dividit* I, 1, 5. **dētulerant**:
see 17, 6 ff.

4. **cōnsuētūdine**: for case cf.
I, 4, 2; 44, 7; 50, 1. **expedi-**
tās: see Int. 119.

6. **duae legiōnēs**: the XIIIth
and XIVth, see 2, 2; 8, 16. As the
enemy was known to be in front,
the rear guard would not be brought
into battle and these new legions
were stationed there. On the order
of march in general see Int. 140.

āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitatū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in 10 nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs inse- quī auderent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae primāe vēnerant, opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedi-
 menta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, quī in silvis abditī The Nervii suddenly at- 15
 tack the Ro-
 man camp. latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs com- mittendi proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus

8. trāsgredior, -i, gressus, a., n., (trans + gradior), to go or pass over; to cross.
 10. identidem, again and again. 1
 12. porrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus [por=prō+rēgō, rule] a., reach or stretch forth, extend. 1
 cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessum, to yield,

withdraw, retreat, retire.
 14. di-mētiōr, -iri, mēnsus sum, a., measure out or off, measure. 2
 16. lateō, -ēre, -ui, n., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2
 18. subitō [subitus, sudden, fr. subeō, come up secretly from under], adv., suddenly, of a sudden.*

7. praesidiō, impedimentis: for cases cf. I, 18, 28; 25, 6. equitēs: see Int. 100, 101.

8. funditōribus, sagittāriis: see Int. 99.

10. reciperent: for the mode cf. I, 4, 9; II, 1, 1. so facerent l. 11 and auderent l. 13.

11. longius quam etc., further than the limit to which the (stretch of) open ground extended.

12. ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause: cf. I, 40, 29; 22, 16; 12, 17. From our idiom we should expect *ad finem ad quem*. porrēcta, lit. stretched out, agrees with loca and is pleonastic, having the same meaning as pertinēbant; it may be omitted in English or translated as above. cēdentēs, acc. pl., the cavalry of the enemy; trans. as (or when) they retreated.

14. opere dimēnsō, the work having been measured off. What kind of a verb is the participle derived from? For its use here see on I, 11, 10. The work had been done before the arrival of the legions. See Int. 130. castra mūnīre: the IXth and Xth began digging on the left of the site of the camp, the XIth and VIIIth in front and the XIIth and VIIth on the right. prima impedimenta: i. e. the head of the baggage train.

16, 17. quod . . . convēnerat, the time which had been agreed on etc. tempus: attracted into the relative clause very much as finem l. 12 above; trans. as if tempus, quod etc. For the meaning of convēnerat cf. I, 36, 12. ut intrā silvās etc., as they had arranged their line and ranks within the forest and had pledged each other etc.

cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fecērunt.
 20 His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incredibīli celeritāte ad flū-
 men dēcurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās et in
 flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eā-
 dem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs,
 quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

*Critical con-
 dition of the
 Romans.*

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda:
 vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insignē, cum ad
 arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere re-

19. prō-volō, -āre, -āvī. [volō, fly], *n.*, fly or rush forth. 1
 20. prō-turbō, 1. [turbō, disturb], *a.*, drive in confusion, dis-
 lodge, repulse. 2.
 21. dē-currō, -ere, currī (cucur-
 rī), cursus [currō, run], *n.*, run.
 from or away, hurry off; run
 down 4

2. vēxillum, -ī [*dim. of* vēlum],
n., standard, banner, flag. 3
 3. con-currō, -ere, curri, cursus
 [currō, run], *n.*, run or rush to-
 gether, run to, hasten; rush
 against, charge. *
 tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. 3
 re-vocō, 1. *a.*, call back, recall, call
 off, withdraw. 5

21. ūnō tempore: it is esti-
 mated however, that the actual time
 was about twenty minutes. The Ro-
 man camp was three quarters of a
 mile from the river and there was
 some delay in fording the river.
 Caesar was too busy to note the
 flight of time.

22. vidērentur, *seemed*. For the
 mode cf. I, 6, 5.

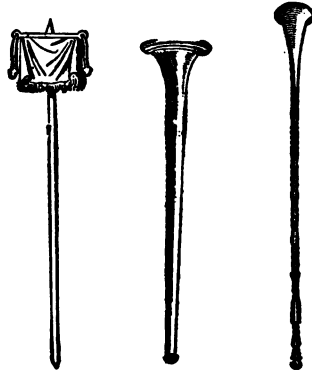
23. adversō colle: *up the hill*
 (lit., *the hill being against them*). i. e.,
 up the hill facing them as they
 dashed down to the stream. castra:
 i. e., the site of the camp.

24. opere: i. e. of fortifying the
 camp. contendērunt: the attack
 was a complete surprise. The Ro-
 man *speculātōres* had not scouted
 properly and Caesar himself was
 apparently careless in not having
 troops in line of battle to repel the
 attack, as was the usual method.

1. Caesarī: for case cf. I, 38, 5;
 37, 9; 11, 15. omnia . . . erant
 agenda, *Caesar had to do everything*

at once. Supply *erat* or *erant* with
 each of the following nominatives,
 thus completing the second peri-
 phrastic conjugation.

2. vēxillum: see Int. 123.



Vēxillum.

Tubae.

3. sīgnum tubā dandum (*erat*)
 the signal (to form ranks) had to be
 given with the trumpet. opere in
 the meaning of 19, 24.

vocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prō-
cesserant, arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, 5
sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis
brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. His difficultāti-
bus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus ^{Value of their}
militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri ^{discipline.}
oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere, quam¹⁰
ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiō-
nibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castris
vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium

4. paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat. *
prō-cēdō, -ere, cessi, *n.*, go forward, advance, proceed. *
5. arcessō, -cre, -ivī, -itus [ar = ad + cēdō], *a.*, cause to approach, call for, summon. *
7. brevitās, -tātis [brevis, short], *r.*, shortness, brevity. 2
successus, -ūs [succēdō], *m.*, an advance, approach, onset. 1
difficultās -tātis [difficilis, difficult], *r.*, difficulty, trouble, em-

barrassment. *

8. scientia, -ae [sciō, know], *r.*, knowledge, science, skill, expertness. *

9. exercitātus, -a, -um [*p. p.* of exercitō, train or practise well], well trained, practised, skilled, versed. 2

10. praescribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, *a.*, *n.*, write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. 4

13. vetō, -are, -uī, -itus, *a.*, forbid. 3

4. paulō longius, *a little too far*; the soldiers often had some distance to go to procure timbers, etc. paulō: for case cf. I, 16, 18; 14, 3; 14, 1. aggeris: here the materials used in the building of the rampart. See Int. 131; also vertical section of agger, p. 216.

5. cohortandī: this was always attended to, if possible.

6. sīgnum dandum: here the signal for the attack, made by the horns and trumpets together.

7. brevitās: the time was indeed scant for getting into line of battle 30,000 men, many at a distance, all with helmets and arms laid aside, busily engaged in the work of fortification.

8. duae rēs: first, the training of the soldiers; second, the assigning of a lēgātus to each legion.

subsidiō: for case cf. I, 18, 28. atque, and also, cf. 8, 6, shows that ūsus, *experience*, was more valued by Caesar than scientia, *knowledge* (of military tactics).

9-11. quid fieri oportēret, *what ought to be done*. For the mode cf. I, 12, 3; II, 4, 13. nōn . . . poterant: English order ipsī poterant praescribere sibi nōn minus commodē quam docērī ab aliīs. praescribere: this is high praise, but well deserved.

12. singulōs lēgātōs: see I, 52, 1, for a similar instance. The fact is here mentioned by Caesar because the lēgātī at this time did not have permanent commands; see Int. 95. nisi etc., *until the camp had been fortified*; lit. *unless* (they departed) *after the camp* etc. castris: for case cf. I, 2, 2.

nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae
 15 vidēbantur administrābant.

Caesar hastily rallies and directs his troops.

21. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis
 5 memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adigi posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causam

15. administrō, 1. *a.*, to serve, attend, wait upon, manage, guide. *

2. fors, fortis [ferō], *f.*, chance: forte, *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. 5
 offerō (obf.), offerre, obtulī, oblatus, *a.*, bring in one's way, present, offer, exhibit; proffer, bestow. *

3. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, [decem], tenth. *
 de-veniō, -ire, vēni, ventus, *n.*, come down, go or come to. 2

5. neu, (nēve) conj. [nē + ve, or], and not, nor; nēve(neu) . . . nēve, neither . . . nor. *

7. adigō, -ere, ēgi, āctus [agō], *a.*, drive or bring by force; thrust, plunge (*of weapons*); bind (*by an oath*). *

14, 15. persē: usually the *légātī* undertook no independent operations. quae vidēbantur, *what-ever seemed proper*.

1. necessariis: such as recalling the distant soldiers and forming all in line of battle.

2. cohortandos: no formal harangue was possible, so Caesar hurried from place to place giving such encouragement as the time permitted. quam in partem etc., *to that part* (of his troops) *which chance brought in his way*; quam in partem = in (eam) partem, *quam*.

3. ad legionem decimam: Caesar's favorite legion: see I, 40, 49. It was on the extreme left of the line. Next to it was the IXth, then the XIth, VIIIth, XIIth, and

lastly the VIIth, on the extreme right.

4. longiore etc., *with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should etc.* virtutis: for case cf. *iniuriarum* I, 14, 8.

5. retinerent, perturbarentur: subj. of purpose, standing for imperatives in his actual speech. So sustinerent in l. 6.

6, 7. quod . . . aberant, gives the reason for the following *signum dedit*. quam quō etc., *than* (the distance) *to which* (quō) *a pike could be thrown*. The adverb is often used for a pronoun (in the acc.) with a preposition: cf. 17, 20; 16, 10. Here it stands for *quem ad finem*: cf. 19, 11. The distance was about 60 feet. posset, is subj. of characteristic.

8. alteram partem: to the right wing.

profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmīcandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sēd etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque p̄ma signa cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pūgnandī tempus dīmīteret.

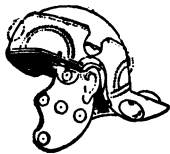
15

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra The result, at first, indecisive. dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut

9. oc-currō, -ere, currī (cucurrī), cursus [ob + currō, run], *n.*, run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. *

exiguitās, -tātis [exiguus, scant], *f.*, scantiness, meagerness, want. 5

10. dī-micō, 1. [micō, brandish], *n.*, brandish (*one's weapons*) in different directions; hence fight, struggle, contend. *



Galea.



Cassis.

11. galea, -ae, *f.*, a helmet (*usually of leather strengthened with brass*).

9. pūgnantibus: *he finds them (already) fighting.* For the case cf. I, 2, 5; II, 9, 11.

11. insignia: the ornaments on the helmets, etc., to distinguish the officers and perhaps the several legions. galeās induendās: they would be laid aside while the soldiers were working on the fortifications.

12. scūtis: for case cf. I, 1, 14;

The cassis, for horsemen, was of metal. 1

accommodō (adc-), 1. [commodō, adjust], *a.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. 2

in-duō, -ere, duī, dūtus, *a.*, put on: sē induere, fall into or upon, become entangled in. 3

12. tegimentum, -ī [tegō, cover], *n.*, a covering. 2

dē-trūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [trūdō, thrust], *a.*, thrust from or off, strip off, remove. 1

dē-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *n.*, be from, lacking or wanting, fail. *

14. cōspiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [speciō, look], *a.*, look attentively, observe, descry, perceive. *

8, 16. tegimenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields. These were removed before the soldiers went into action.

13. quam in partem, *to whatever division each man came etc.*

14. suis: *sc. signis.*

1. ut: *adv. or conj.?* Cf. I, 4, 11; 22, 3.

reī militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepi-
 6 busque dēnsissimis, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prō-
 spectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque,
 quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō om-
 nia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum
 inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*The Nervii
 attack the ex-
 posed Roman
 camp.*

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in
 sinistrā parte aciē cōnstitēbant pilis ēmissis cursū

3. dīversus, -a, -um [*p. p. of*
 dīvertō, turn in different direc-
 tions], facing different ways, op-
 posite, contrary; diverse, differ-
 ent. *
5. dēnsus, -a, -um, closely set or
 packed, thick, dense. 4
- prōspectus, -ūs [prōspiciō, look
 forth], m., a lookout, view, pros-
 pect. 3
7. prō-vidēō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus
 [vidēō, see], a., n., see before-
 hand, foresee, care for, provide. *
9. inīquitās, -tātis [aequus,
 equal], f., unevenness; unfairness,

unfavorable position. *

ēventus, -ūs [veniō, come], m.,
 out-come, issue, result, con-
 sequence. *

variū, -a, -um [*cf. vertō*], vari-
 egated, diverse; changing, mani-
 fold, various. 2

1. nōnus, -a, -um [novem],
 ninth. *
2. cursus, -ūs [currō, run], m.,
 running, speed; course: cursum
 adaequāre, keep up with: māgnō
 (incitātō) cursū, at full speed:
 cursum tenēre, keep a straight
 course. *

3. cum etc., since the legions were
 resisting the enemy separately, some
 in one place, others in another. dī-
 versae, for the adjective (*separate*)
 translated by the adverb (*separate-
 ly*) see A. 191; B. 18; G. 325 R. 6; H.
 443. B. 239.

4. aliae, for its elliptical use
 see on I, 39, 12; saepibus etc., by
 the interposition of very thick hed-
 ges etc.

5. ut, as in l. 1 above. ante:
 see 17, 17-21.

6. certa subsidia, the reserves
 could not be stationed definitely (= in
 definite places). For the adverbial
 force of the adj., see on l. 3. sub-
 sidia, collocārī: i. e., the regular

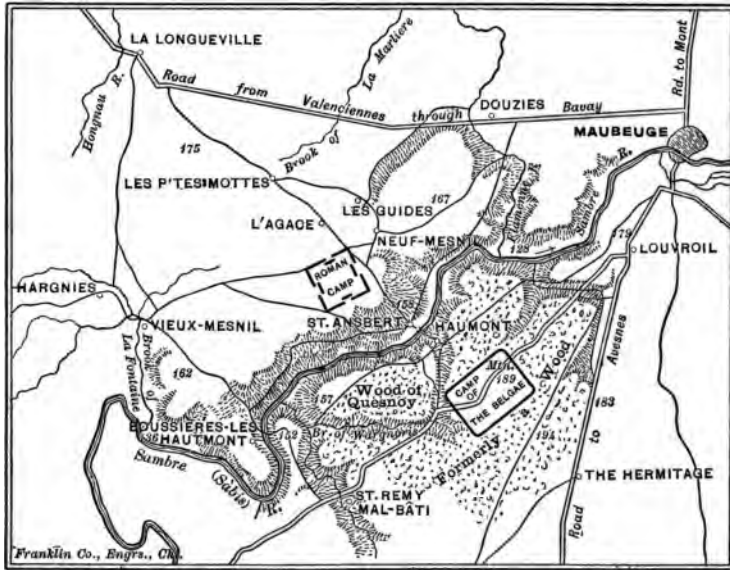
reserve could not be stationed so
 as to be counted on with certainty
 for needed aid.

7, 8. prōvidērī, administrārī:
 the intervening hedges made it im-
 possible for the commander (ab
 ūnō) to exercise any general over-
 sight. tantā, such. The narra-
 tive in resumed from *signum dedit*,
 21, 7, 8.

1. nōnae et decimae: Labienus
 was in command of these legions.

2. aciē=aciēi; A. 74 a; G. 69,
 2; H. 120; B. 52, 3. pilis ēmissis:
 see Int. 149. cursū: they had run
 as much as a mile, besides fording
 the river.

āc lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebatēs (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō supe-



BATTLE ON THE SAMBRE (SABIS)

riōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī s
gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impeditam interfecērunt. Ip-

3. lassitūdō, -inis, [lassus, weary],
r., weariness, faintness, exhaus-
tion, lassitude. 2

exanimō, 1. [animus, breath], a.,
deprive of breath or life, render
breathless, exhaust: in p. p. as
adj., breathless, exhausted. *

4. ob-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus

[veniō, come], n., come in the
way, come to, meet; fall to one's
lot. 3

5. compellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum
[con+pellō], to drive together,
assemble, collect; to force, com-
pel, constrain. *

3. exanimātōs, breathless. Con-
strue with *Atrebatēs*, the obj. of
compulērunt.

4. his: the Atrebrates. ea pars:
the Roman left wing.

5. cōnantēs: introduce with
'as': as they (the Atrebrates) were at-
tempting.

6. ipsī: the soldiers under Lab-
ienus.

sī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugamconiēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūn-
 1 odecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō
 1 5āgmīne duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiō-

9. ūndecimus, -a, -um [ūnus], eleventh. 2.

10. octāvus, -a, -um, [octō], eighth. 2

prō-flīgō, 1. [obsol. flīgō, strike], a., strike to the ground; overcome; put to flight. 2

11. congregior, gredi, gressus sum [gradior, step], a., n., step or come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. * proelior, 1. [proelium, battle], n.,

join or engage in battle, fight. * 12. at [cf. atque] conj., (strongly adversative) but, yet, on the other hand, at least. *

13. dexter, -tera, (-tra), -terum (-trum), on the right hand. * cornū, -ūs, n., a horn; the wing (of an army). *

duodecimus, -a, -um [duodecim], twelfth. 3.

15. Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Nervii. 1

7. locum inīquum: the slope of the hill of Hautmont up which they were charging. This gave the enemy the advantage in position and they quickly utilized it (rūsus resistentēs).

8. resistentēs: see on cōnantēs, line 5. in fugam: the Romans drove the Atrebatēs back through the forest on the hill of Hautmont and captured the Belgian camp.

9. dīversae: connect with proeliābantur l. 11 and translate as in 22, 3. These legions held the centre of the Roman line (aliā in parte).

11. ex locō superiōre: construe with prōflīgātīs. proeliābantur, were still fighting.

12. ā fronte: by the advance of the XIIth and VIIIth legions. ab

sinistrā parte: by the advance of the troops under Labienus. tōtīs nūdātīs castrīs: trans. as a Causal Clause. ā, ab, in, on.

13, 14. cum . . . cōstitisset, since . . . had taken its (their) stand. intervāllō, at no great distance. omnēs Nervii: 60,000 in number.

15. duce, under the leadership of. summam imperiī, the chief command. What part of speech is summam here? summum l. 17?

16. ab . . . latere, on the (left) flank left exposed (by the withdrawal of the IXth and Xth legions). apertō latere: the Nervii crossed the stream, scaled the steep bank and swept around the right flank of the Roman right wing.

nēs cīrcumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castris versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliūque aliam in partem

They get possession of the camp. Flight of the Roman auxiliaries.

2. pedes, -itis [pēs, foot], m., footman, foot soldier: *in pl.* footmen, infantry. *

5. cālō, -ōnis [cāla, a log of wood], m., a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. *

decumānus, -a, -um [decimus, tenth], of or pertaining to the tenth; decuman: decumāna porta, the rear gate. 3

6. porta, -ae, f., a gate, entrance. *

6. victor, -ōris [vincō, conquer] m., one who conquers, victor. *

7. respiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [obsol., speciō, look], a., look back or about; have respect to, regard. 4

8. praecipēs, -cipitis [caput, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous; hasty, precipitate. 3

10. fremitus, -ūs [fremō, murmur], m., murmuring, a confused noise, din. 3

17. summum locum: the height on which the camp was situated. petere coepit, *tried to reach.*

1, 2. equitēs: see Int. 100, 101. levis armātūrae peditēs: i. e. the slingers and bowmen, cf. 19, 8. iīs: refers to equitēs. fuerant: prior to their repulse. quōs = equitēs et peditēs.

3. dixeram: see 19, 20.

4. adversis hostibus: the Roman auxiliaries may have taken a circuitous route back to the camp. At any rate they entered it from the left side just as the Nervii, who had turned the Roman right flank,

poured into it from the right.

5, 6. fugam petēbant, *took flight.* cālōnēs: see Int. 102. decumānā portā: see Int. 132 and plan of Roman camp, p. 86. summō iugō: i. e. the rear of the camp was higher than the front; see Int. 129. victōrēs, *as victors*, in predicate relation with nostrōs.

8. versārī, *were busy.*

9. eōrum: the muleteers. It cannot refer to the soldiers of the XIIIth and XIVth legions, who had not yet arrived upon the scene.

10, 11. aliūque . . . ferēbantur, *and fled (were carried) in great terror (thoroughly terrified) in all*

perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singulāris, quī auxilii causā ab cīvitāte ad Caesarem missi vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium castra complēri nostra, legiōnēs
 15 premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potitōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

In their desperate situation, the Romans are re-animated by Caesar's valor.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impe-

12. Trēverī (irī), -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gaulic people on the Moselle about the modern Treves.* *
- singulāris, -e [singulī], one at a time, one by one, single, alone; singular, unique, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. *
14. com-pleō, -ēre, plēvi, plētus [pleō, fill], *a.*, fill up or completely; finish, complete. *
15. premō, -ere, pressi, pressus

a., press, oppress, harass; press upon, press hard. *

16. dis-sipō, 1. [obsol. supō = iaciō], *a.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. 3

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis [cohortor, exhort], *f.*, exhortation, encouragement, cheering. 1

2. urgeō (urgēō), -ēre, ursī, *a.*, press, press hard, impel, urge. 2

directions or some in one direction etc. For trans. of forms of *alius* cf. 22, 4; I, 39, 12.

12. virtūtis opiniō, *reputation for bravery.* virtūtis: for case cf. I, 4, 4.

13. ab cīvitāte missi: Caesar obtained most of his cavalry in this way: see Int. 100.

16. Numidās: see 19, 8. dīversōs dissipātōsque, *separated and scattered.*

17. domum: for case cf. I, 54, 2; 5, 7.

18. pulsōs, superātōs: why so. esse? castris, impedimentis: for case cf. I, 30, 8; 2, 6.

Caesar resumes the narrative of

the main action of the battle.

1-15. Caesar . . . prōcessit: note the periodic structure of the Latin sentences, bringing into view the various circumstances of the action before the result is announced. The long sentence with numerous particulars well represents the rapid succession of events.

1. cohortātiōne: see 21, 3 *ff.* and Int. 148.

2, 3. signis collātis: the standards by which the different maniples and cohorts were kept at their proper distances were too close together, hence the soldiers were too much crowded to fight effectively. urgērī, *overpowered.*

4. sibi . . . impedimentō, *vere*

dimentō vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs 5
signiferōque interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium
omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs
primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibus-
que vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reli-

5. **quartus, -a, -um** [quattuor], fourth. *

6. **signifer, -ī** [signum + ferō], m., standard-bearer. 1

8. **primipilus, -ī** [primus + pīlus, a century or maniple], m., the first or chief centurion. 4

Sextius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. E. g., (1) Titus Sextius,

one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion. *

Baculus, -ī [baculum, a staff], m., cognomen of Publius Sextius, a centurion of Caesar's army. 2

vir, virī, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor: cf. **hōmō**, a human being; generic man. *



Signiferi.

a hindrance to one another. For the cases of I, 18, 28; 25, 6.

5. **quartae cohortis:** this was the one farthest to the left in the front line and suffered the heaviest loss. **omnibus centuriōnibus:** see Int. 91-93. How many centurions were there in a cohort?

6. **signiferō:** see Int. 122.



Aquila.

signō: that of the first maniple: see Int. 122.

7. **centuriōnibus occīsīs** etc: translate these absolute constructions as if the Acc. with the infin. after *vidit*.

8. **primipilō:** see Int. 92. **Baculō:** he appears again in the next campaign.

10 quōs esse tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere āc tēla vītāre, hostis neque ā frōnte ex infēriōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset, scūtō ab novissimīs militī dētrac-
15 tō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in p̄mam aciem p̄cessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs s̄igna īferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius

10. tardus, -a, -um, tardy, sluggish, slow. 2

dē-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [serō, join], a, disjoin; abandon, forsake, desert. *

11. ex-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], n., go out or away, withdraw, retire. *

14. dē-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [trahō, draw or drag], draw off,

take away; take off, remove; disparage, detract. 5

17. manipulus, -ī, [manus+pleō, fill], m., a handful (of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard), a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), manipule. 3

laxō, l. a., n., stretch out, extend, open; loose, relax. 1

10. tardiōrēs: for trans. of the Comparative see on I, 14, 16. ab novissimīs, in the rear. dēsertō locō, leaving their posts.

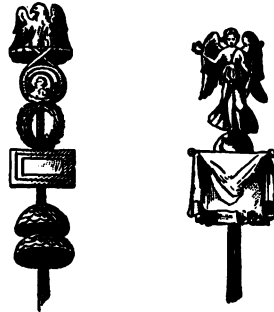
11. hostis etc., that the enemy did not stop their advance (coming up)... and were pressing on both flanks and affairs were in a critical situation. ā frōnte: construe with intermittere. ex infēriōre locō: the lower ground in front of the Roman position.

12. utrōque latere: i. e., both flanks had been turned by the Nervii.

13. vidit: a repetition of vidit in line 4 because of the length of the sentence. subsidium: usually the third line of cohorts formed the reserve but on this occasion all the soldiers were forced to defend themselves and no reserve was possible.

14. ab novissimīs: as in l. 10, above. militī: for case of. I, 43, 23; 17, 9.

15. p̄mam aciem: i. e., the first line of cohorts: see Int. 145.



Signa.

17. s̄igna īferre: see Int. 124. manipulōs laxāre: see Int. 145. By assuming the offensive the soldiers could get space in which to use the gladius. quō: for use of. I, 8, 7.

gladiis ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illātā militibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet,²⁰ paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā *The Romans begin to act on the offensive.* cōstitērat, item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit, ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste cir- 5 cumvenirentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō *They are reinforced by the reserves.* nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potitus¹⁰

19. imperātor, -ōris [imperō, command], m., commander-in-chief, general.
 20. opera, -ae [*fem. of opus, work*], f., work, service, pains, attention. *
 nāvō, 1. [nāvus, zealous], a., do or perform zealously, act with energy. 1
 21. paulum, adv. [paulus, little],

a little, somewhat. *
 tardō, 1. [tardus, slow], v., make slow, hinder, obstruct, check. *

1. iūxtā, adv. [iūgis, joined + ista], next, next to, near, near by. 1
 2. tribūnus, -ī [tribus, a tribe], m., a tribune, an officer in the Roman army. *

18, 19. gladiis: for case cf. I, 26; II, 3, 12. cūius adventū: see Int. 54. spē... animō, hope was inspired and courage renewed.

20. etiam... cuperet, even at the greatest personal risk, desired to do his part well.

1. iūxtā: sc. duodecimam legiōnem.

2, 3. tribūnōs militum: see Int. 89-90. coniungerent: so that the two legions might support each other. For mode cf. I, 2, 4; II, 12, 15. The clause is a secondary acc. after monuit.

4. conversa signa: this probably means that the two legions were placed back to back. quō factō: i. e., *conversis signis*. alius etc., cf. 24, 10; 22, 4.

5. nē: for trans. cf. I, 27, 10; 19, 11. timērent: plural to agree with *militēs* implied in *alius*. āversī: i. e., with their backs turned towards the foe.

7. duārum: the XIIIth and XIVth: see note on 19, 6.

9. cursū incitātō, moving more rapidly. summō colle: on the higher ground behind the camp. T. Labiēnus: see note on 23, 1.

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubissent, scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent; tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātis occurrērunt, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte

The Nervii, after a desperate conflict, are beaten with great slaughter.

2. prōcumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitum [cubō, lie down], *n.*, lean or fall forwards, sink or lie down, fall. 5

3. in-nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus) sum [nītor, lean upon], lean or rest upon, support one's self. 1

4. inermis, -e [arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3

5. turpitūdō, -inis [turpis, ugly, disgraceful], *f.*, ugliness; baseness, disgrace, infamy. 1

11. locō superiōre: on the hill of Hautmont, where the Belgian camp was situated: see on 18, 4. gererentur, cf. I, 12, 3.

12. quī: the soldiers of the tenth legion.

15. nihil . . . fēcērunt, *they made all possible haste* (lit. *nothing of a remainder in regard to quickness*). reliquī: for case cf. 17, 9; 15, 10; 8, 8. celeritātem: about how far did the tenth legion have to go? See note on 19, 21. It fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

1. adventū, *appearance*. For the case cf. 1, 15; I, 18, 23.

2. quī: what is supplied? Cf. I, 21, 4; 17, 2. vulneribus cōfectī: stronger than vulnerātī.

3. scūtis: for cases see on I, 13, 17.

5. armātis: for case cf. I, 2, 5; II, 10, 18.



Legionārius.

dēlerent, omnibus in locis pūgnārent, quō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestiterunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent, ¹⁰ ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iudicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere

6. **dēleō, -ēre, lēvī, lētus** [līnō, rub over], *a.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. *

legiōnārius, -a, -um [legiō], of or pertaining to the legion, legionary: *pl. as subst.* legionary soldiers. *

7. **prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** [prae+ferō], *a.*, place before, esteem above, prefer to (*quam*): **sē alicui** (*show one's self better than*). 2

9. **iaceō, -ēre, uī, n.**, lie, be prostrate, be slain.

in-sistō, -ere, stitī [sistō, place, stand], *a., n.*, stand upon; stand firm; press on, pursue. *

10. **coacervō, 1.** [acervō, heap up], *a.*, heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 2.

cadāver, -eris [cadō, fall], *n.*, a fallen or dead body, carcass, corpse. 2

11. **tumulus, -ī**, [tumeō, swell], *m.*, swelling, mound, hill. *

intercipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capīō, take], *a.*, take or catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt, intercept, cut off. 4.

12. **nē-quīquam (quic(d)quam), adv.**, [qui(d)quam, any one, anything], not in any way, in vain, to no purpose. 1.

6, 7. **omnibus in locis**: the ground was unfavorable for cavalry fighting, a fact which made the valor of the horsemen the more conspicuous. **quō...praeferrent**, to prove themselves superior to the legionaries; for mode cf. I, 8, 7; 14, 14; notice that *praeferrent* implies comparison (see the translation) and hence *quō* is used instead of *ut*. **legiōnāriis**: for the significance of the adj. ending *-ārius (-āris)*, English *-ary*, see A. 164 h; G. 189, 44; H. 330; B. 151 2.

9. **proximī...insisterent**, those who were nearest stood on those who were prostrate. For the Dat. cf. l.

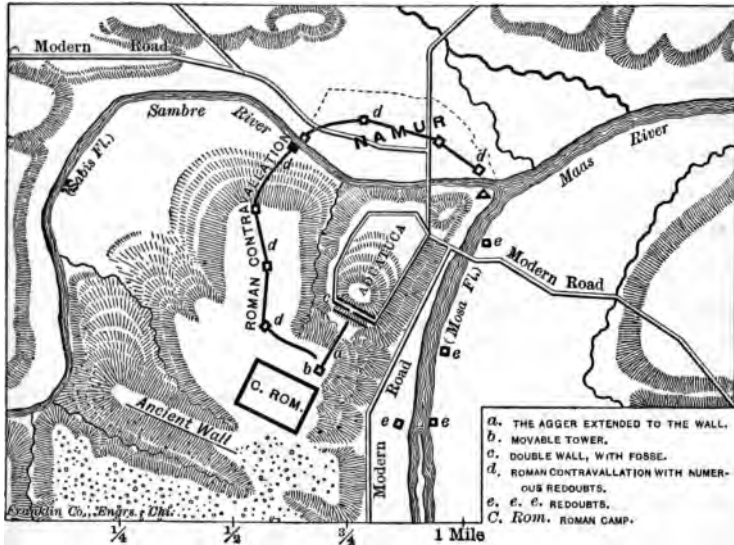
5 above. **ex corporibus**: i. e., from the tops of the heaps of dead bodies.

10. **his dēiectis**, when these (*proximī*) were cut down. **quī**, (*that those*) who survived threw their spears at our men as from a hill. Before *quī* repeat *ut* (l. 8) and supply the antecedent *eī*, cf. l. 2.

11. **ut**: the adv. **tumulō**: formed by the dead bodies. **pīla**: see Int. 110, 111.

12, 13. **ut iudicārī dēberet**, so that it ought not to be considered. **tantae virtūtis**, of such valor. For the Gen. see on 15, 13.

altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex
 15 difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.



The survivors
 submit to
 Caesar.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciō-
 nem gente āc nōmine Nerviorū redāctō māiōrēs
 nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc
 palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victō-
 5 ribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omni-

2. gēns, gentis [genō, old form
 of gignō, beget], f., race; clan,
 tribe, people. *

3. aestuārium, -ī [aestus, an un-
 dulating], n., low marsh-land,
 tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2

14, 15. altissimās: the north
 bank of the Sambre has a steep slope
 of from 20 to 30 feet at the point
 where the Nervii crossed it. inī-
 quissimum: the slope of the hill
 on which the Romans were posted.
 quae facilia redēgerat, had
 rendered these (bold deeds) easy.
 ex, from having been, a common
 meaning with adjectives.

1, 2. hōc . . . redāctō: render
 by a temporal clause, after etc.

3. puerīs: used here of both
 sexes.

4, 5. victōribus . . . tūtum,
 that nothing was an obstacle to the
 victors and nothing was secure for the
 conquered. arbitrārentur: for
 mode cf. I, 9, 3; II, 6, 9.

um, quī supererant, cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt sē- que eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte ex sexcentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīn- gentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dixērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, 10 diligētissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūti iussit et finitimis imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castel- lisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā

6. cōnsensus, -ūs [cōnsentiō, think together, agree], m., united opinion, agreement, coalition, consent. *

8. senātor, -ōris [senex, an old man], m., elder, senator. 1

10. miser, -era, -erum [maereō, be sad], wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate, sad. 3

supplex, -plicis [plicō, bend], suppliant: *as subst.*, a suppliant. 1
misericordia, -ae [misereō, pity

+ cor, the heart], f., pity, sym- pathy, mercy, compassion. 4

1. scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, a., write, describe by characters or in writing. 5

3. cūctus, -a, -um [contr. for coniunctus, joined together], all together, all. 3

4. ēgregiē [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remark- ably. 5

8. LX: the Nervii had promised 50,000 men at the opening of the war. quīngentōs: there is certainly some exaggeration in the statement, as the Nervii were strong enough to revolt in 54 B. C. and to send 5,000 men to the relief of Alesia in 52 B. C.

9. possent: for mode of I, 3, 3; II, 5, 16.

10. ut ... vidērētur, *that he might appear to have shown (ūsus esse) mercy etc.*

11. cōservāvit: see on cōservārentur 12, 15.

12. finitimis, *the neighboring (tribes).*

13. prohibērent: for mode of I, 2, 4; II, 14, 11.

1, 2. suprā: in 16, 7. cum venirent, *although they were on their way.* cōpiis: for case cf. 19, 2. How does this differ from the equivalent construction 16, 5? auxiliō Nervii: for case cf. I, 18, 28; II, 9, 13.

3. domum: for case cf. I, 5, 7. castellis: they were smaller than the oppida.

4. oppidum: it is with great probability placed on the plateau now occupied by the citadel of the city of Narnur, in the angle formed by the junction of the Sambre and Meuse. The distance from the battle field was about 35 miles and the direction northeast. The name of the oppidum is not given.

5 mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte leniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in
 10 *Their origin.* mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, iis impedimentis, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum ūnā reliquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bel-

6. rūpēs, -is [rumpō, break], f., rock, cliff. 1

7. acclīvis (ad-), -e [clīvus, a slope], sloping upwards, rising, ascending. 3

8. duplex, plicis [plicō, bend, fold], two-fold, double. 3

9. pondus, -eris [pendō, weigh], n., weight. 4

saxum, -i, n., a large stone, rock. *

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. *

trabs, trabis, f., timber, beam. *

11. prō-gnātus, -a, -um [nāscor,

be born], born, descended, sprung. 2

13. custōdia, -ae, f., custody, guard (*state of being guarded*).—*Plur.* guards, keepers. 5

15. obitus, -ūs [obeō, go in the way of], m., going to (death); destruction, overthrow. 1

ex-agitō, 1. [*freq. of agō, set in motion*], a., drive out or away, stir up, rouse, disturb, harass, persecute. 2

aliās, *adv.* [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere, at another time. aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another. 4

5, 6. quod cum habēret, *now while (=although) this had.* For trans. of the relative cf. I, 1, 11; 14, 4. ūnā ex parte: on the south.

8. pedum: for case cf. I, 5, 8; 38, 1. duplicī: commonly explained as meaning two parallel walls. Another view is that it means a wall of double the usual thickness, so built on account of its exceptional height. mūrō: see Int. 154.

9. ponderis: for case cf. 27, 12; 15, 18.

10. Cimbris, Teutonīs: this re-

puted origin of the Aduatuci is adduced to show that they were no mean foes.

11. iter: see Int. 63-64.

12, 13. iis . . . dēpositis, *having placed those incumbrances which they could not drive etc.* citrā: i. e., the west side. custōdiam: persons charged with the care of the *impedimenta*.

14. praesidium: the 6,000. eōrum: the Cimbri and Teutoni.

15. obitum: see Int. 64.

lum inferrent, aliās illatum dēfenderent, cōsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās They scorn the Roman preparations for attack. ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō passuum in circuitū xv milium crēbrisque castellis circummūniti oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis āctis aggere extructō turrim procul cōstituī vidērunt, primū irridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instrue-

17. **domiciliū**, -ī [domus + cēlō, conceal], *n.*, a fixed abode or residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 4

2. **excursiō**, -ōnis [excurrō, run forth], *f.*, a running out or forth, sally, sortie. 2

parvulus, -a, -um [*dim. of parvus*, little], small, insignificant, slight: **ab parvulis**, from childhood. 5

4. **circum-mūniō**, 4. *a.*, fortify

around, fortify, protect. 1

5. **ex-struō**, -ere, **strūxi**, **strūctus** [struō, build], *a.*, build or pile up, rear, construct, build. * **procul**, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, aloof. *

6. **irrideō** (inr-), -ēre, **risi**, **risus** [rideō, laugh], *a.*, laugh at, jeer. 1

7. **māchinātiō**, -ōnis [machinor, contrive], *f.*, a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derriek. 3

16. **illatum** (sc. *bellum sibi*), *warded off the war which was waged upon themselves.*

17. **hunc . . . locum**: *i. e.*, the tract of country occupied by the Aduatuci at this time. **sibi domiciliō**, *as their home.* For the *Dat. of auxiliō Nervii* l. 2.

2. **excursiōnēs**: see Int. 165. **parvulis**: for the significance of the Diminutive ending -lus (-ulus, -olus) see A. 164 a; G. 189, 6; H. 321; B. 148, 1.

3. **vāllō**, etc. English order: **vāllō XV milium passuum**. For case of *passuum* cf. 8, 8; 17, 9; 15, 10. For case of *milium* cf. I, 5, 8; 38, 1. On the *vāllum* see Int. 156. **in circuitū**: apparently only from the Sambre to the Meuse.

4, 5. **oppidō**: the preposition is omitted in this (military) expression because of the instrumental (rather than locative) idea. Cf.

I, 49, 1; 48, 10; 40, 26. **sēsē continēbant**, *remained.* **vineis āctis**: see Int. 160. **aggere**: see Int. 158, 159. **turrim**: Int. 162, 163.

6. **irridēre**: *i. e.*, by means of gestures. In distinction from **vōcibus**. **irridēre**, **increpitāre**: for the *infm.* see on I, 16, 2.



*Turris
ambulātōria.*

7. **ab tantō spatiō**, *so far away (from the point of attack).* For *ab* see on 7, 9. Notice that it does not govern **spatiō** as a preposition. For case of **spatiō** cf. 7, 9; I, 48, 1; 43, 3. **instruerētur**: I, 16, 15, 17.

concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut
 ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis iniquō locō contrā eōs,
 15 quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum
 in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad
 hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt.
 Postridiē ēius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet
 nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs sectiōnem ēius op-
 20 pidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab hīs, quī ēmerant, capi-
 tum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quinquāgintā trium.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā

18. refringō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus
 [frangō, break], *a.*, break in or
 open; break, destroy. 2

19. intrō-mittō, -ere, mīsi, mis-
 sus [intrō, within], *a.*, send into
 or in, let go in, introduce.

sectiō, -ōnis [secō, cut], *x.*, a cut-

ting or parcelling out (*of booty*)
 booty.

20. ūniversus, -a, -um [ūnus +
 vertō, turn], turned into one, all
 together, whole, universal.

vēndō, dere, didī, ditus [vē-
 num, sale + dō], *a.*, put to sale,
 sell at auction.

18. *concursum est*: i. e. by
 the Romans: Caesar repulsed the
 Helvetians in the same way: cf. I,
 8, 15. *concursum est, pūgnātum*
est: for trans. cf. 11, 14; 10, 20.
ut etc., lit., *as the fight ought to have*
been carried on by brave men etc.
 For the sake of English idiom
 trans.: *as brave men ought to have*
fought etc.

15. *pūgnārī*: used impersonal-
 ly, cf. *persuādērī* 10, 19. Notice
 carefully that the present tense is
 to be represented in English by a
 perfect. After past tenses the Latin
 employs the present infin. with
 verbs of necessity and possibility
 (as *dēbeō, possum* etc.) instead of the
 perfect of the English idiom.

16. *in . . . cōsisteret*, *depend-*
ed on valor alone. *ad*: used adverb-

ially with numerals = *circiter*.

19. *sectiōnem*: a perfectly
 justifiable procedure, according to
 ancient ideas, as a punishment for
 treachery. Caesar's firmness gained
 for him the respect of the Gauls.

20. *hīs*: see Int. 102. The slave
 market at Rome was supplied by
 these *mercātōrēs*. *capitum*: as in
 I, 29, 6.

1. *eōdem tempore*: i. e. when
 the stronghold of the Aduatuci fell.
 As the 7th legion was detached
 from the Roman army just after
 the battle of the Sambre to reduce
 the western tribes to submission it
 is clear the siege must have lasted
 a long time, probably over a
 month. *P. Crassō*: see note on
 I, 52, 14.

miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritumae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque 5 populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

Crassus subduces the Veneti and other maritime tribes.

35. His rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgatiōnēs 5

German envoys offer submission. Caesar quarters his troops and goes to Italy. Supplicatio in his honor.

2. Venetī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern Vannes. *

Venelli, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in modern Normandy. 4

Osismi, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in modern Brittany. 3

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern Corseult. 4

3. Esubiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people near the Veneti, near modern Essey. 3

Aulerci, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people divided into four branches; (1) Aulerci Ebuovices, in modern dept. de l'Eure, in Normandy; (2) Aulerci Cenomani; (3) Aulerci Brannovices, in modern dept. le Briennois; (4) Aulerci Diablin-

tes, in modern dept. de la Sarthe. *

Redonēs, -um, m., a Gallic people in Brittany near the modern Rennes. 2

maritimus, (-umus) -a, -um, adj., of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the sea shore). *

5. diciō, -ōnis [dicō, say], f., saying (with authority), jurisdiction, dominion, sway. 3.

2. barbarus, -a, -um, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, savage, barbarous: as subst., foreigners, savages, barbarians. *

3. nātiō, -ōnis, [nāscor, be born], f., race, tribe, people, nation: usually applied to a distant and barbarous people. *

2. Venetī, etc., the student will note here, as in many other instances, that the Gallic names have been retained, in a modified form, in many of the departments and towns of France. A further account of these tribes is given in III, 7-19.

3, 4. Coriosolitas: notice the quantity of the termination and see on I, 26, 18. civitātēs, tribes.

5. diciōnem: i. e. a nominal submission, probably accompanied by the surrendering of hostages.

2. perlāta est, spread.

3. nātiōnibus: the German tribes, the Ubii in particular. incolerent: for mode cf. I, 3, 3.

4, 5. sē datūrās (not datūrōs) (esse), that they would give. What is the antecedent of sē?

Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricūque properābat, in itā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnūtēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquaē hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hibernācula dēductīs in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

6. Īllyricum, -ī, n., Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. 3

7. Carnūtēs, -um, m., a Gallic people between the Seine and Loire, about modern Chartres. *

Andēs, -ium, m., a Gallic people in modern Anjou about modern Angers. 3

8. Turonī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people on the Loire about modern Tours. 3

9. hibernāculum, -ī, [hibernō, pass the winter], n., a wintering-place; in pl. huts or tents for wintering, winter quarters. 1

11. supplicātiō, -ōnis, [supplex, supplicating], f., public prayer in humiliation for misfortunes, but esp. in thanksgiving for successes, thanksgiving.

dē-cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus [cernō, decide], a., decide, appoint, decree.

6. Īllyricum: see Int. 23.

7. in Carnūtēs etc., constr. with dēductīs.

9. hibernācula: see Int. 139.

11. supplicātiō: a public thanksgiving, decreed by the Senate in honor of a victory. The number of days in the festival was in proportion to the importance of the victory. At first the *supplicatio* lasted only one day, later three or

four. Pompeius' victory over Mithradates was honored by a twelve days' fete. The honor of a fifteen days' *supplicatio* was therefore unprecedented. quod, (an honor) which. The antecedent is the preceding clause diērum... est. Of what gender are phrases, terms, or clauses when used substantively? A. 29, 2 c; G. 20, III; H. 42 N.; B. 247, I, b ad fin.

BOOK III.—VARIOUS OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS AND IN WESTERN GAUL.

The great and growing importance of Roman interests in Trans-alpine Gaul made it necessary that a shorter route be secured from thence into Italy. Caesar accordingly sent Galba, in the fall of this year (57 B. C.) to take possession of the passes over the Pennine Alps and suppress the hostility of the natives. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position, abandoning for a time the object of the campaign.

During the winter of 57-56 B. C., Caesar was in Illyricum, the extreme eastern portion of his vast province. Whatever confidence he may have felt in the permanence of the arrangements he had made in Gaul, was rudely dispelled by the news of a widely extended sedition in the lately subdued Armorican states. Though they had submitted to Publius Crassus and given hostages, they wore the yoke lightly, ready to be thrown off when the time came for action. Confidence in their own prowess and ignorance of the power and resources of the foe they were dealing with, led them to take the fatal step of arresting the Roman officers sent among them to levy contributions of corn for the support of the legions quartered in that region. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of all the coast tribes between the Loire and Seine. The Britanni (here mentioned for the first time in Roman history) sent supplies of men and ships, and the sympathy and secret support of the Belgic tribes were assured.

Early in the spring Caesar hastened to Gaul and issued orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent north to check the threatened uprising of the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing the Rhine. Quintus Titurius Sabinus penetrated the country of the Veneti to cut off communications between the eastern and western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus went south into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful Armorican state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. The country was wild and barren and the Venetan strongholds were erected on the extremities of narrow promontories which the daily tides cut off from the main land. Hence supplies for the campaigning army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or in case of necessity could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The co-operation of the Roman fleet—which would have prevented this—was made impossible by the prevalence of stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the Veneti confidently gave a challenge to battle. Their fleet was far superior both in size and equipment to that of their adversaries; yet in the conflict that ensued, Roman valor and ingenuity won the day, and the great naval armament, at once the pride and hope of the allies, was almost entirely destroyed. The submission of the Armorican states soon followed. The prominence of the Veneti in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment as a warning to the Celtic nation. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The lieutenants of Caesar were as successful as himself. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the league. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. The Roman eagles now dominated the seacoast of Gaul from the Pyrenees to the Seine and beyond. Only the Menapii and Morini, far to the north, held out in the impenetrable morasses. Even thither Caesar's daring spirit led him; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartersing his legions upon the conquered tribes as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.

In the two previous campaigns Caesar had proved his skill in directing the operations of a single large army. The present one showed that he was a master of "grand strategy" as well. With forces much smaller than those opposed to him, but directed by experienced subordinates with reference to a well considered plan, he struck his enemies at many points and with complete success. The contrast to this policy presented by the jealousy and lack of unity that prevailed among the Gauls is very instructive. The political constitution of Gaul bound her hand and foot in a contest with the centralized power of Rome.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

- PLUTARCH: Caesar.
 FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 223-226. (Harper's ed.)
 TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. iv. (Ancient Classics Series).
 MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 304-308.
 MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. i. pp. 286-297.
 NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. chap. vi.

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione XII et parte equitatus in Nantuatis, Varagrōs Sedunōsque misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portoriis mercatorēs ire consuerant, patefieri volebat.

Caesar sends Galba to seize the passes of the Alps. He overcomes the neighboring tribes and occupies Octodurus.

1. Servius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

3. Nantuātēs, -um, m., a Gallic people on the Loire about Nantes. 4 Varagrī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people on the Pennine Alps. 3

Sedunī, -ōrum, m., a Helvetian people about modern Sitten. 3

7. patefiō, fierī, factus sum, pass. of patefaciō, make or lay open. 3

The narrative of the campaign of Galba, given in the first six chapters of this book, belongs chronologically to Book II.

2. XII: see note on II, 2, 2.

3-5. Nantuātis, etc.: fix the location of these tribes by the map. The two legions raised by Caesar in Cisalpine Gaul for the Belgian war (see II, 2, 1) were, according to Strabo, attacked by these mountaineers, and this expedition was planned to check them. As Roman interests north of the Alps grew in importance, it became more and more necessary to maintain an uninterrupted communication with Italy. qui pertinent, whose country extends. summās Alpēs: the

peaks Mt. Blanc and the Great St. Bernard. For trans. cf. I, 22, 1.

6. iter per Alpēs: by the pass of the Great St. Bernard, leading from Martigny (Octodurus) to Aosta (Augusta Praetoria Salassorum) or by the Simplon, farther east. There was another route opened by Pompeius in 77 B. C. over Mt. Genevre; but this was not convenient for reaching northern Gaul. periculō: owing to the hostility of the natives.

7. portoriis, with heavy imposts, levied by these Alpine tribes upon all merchandise carried through their country. mercatorēs: Caesar makes frequent reference to this class; see I, 1, 8; 39, 4; II, 15, 10.

Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba secundis aliquot
 10 proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expūgnātis
 missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse
 cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Varagrōrum,
 quī appellātur Octōdūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle
 15 nōn māgnā adiectā plāniciē altissimis montibus undique
 continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab
 hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

9. aliquot [alius + quot], *indecl.* num. *adj.*, some, a few, several. 3
 14. Octōdūrus, -ī, m., a town of the Varagri, now Martigny. 1
 vallis (vallēs), -is, f., valley, vale.*
 15. adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus

- [ad-iacio], *a.*, throw to: tēlum adicī (reach); aggerem (throw up).—*Fig.*, add: adiecta plānicies (with the addition of). *
 18. attribuō (ad-), -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribuō, assign], *a.*, assign, allot. *

8, 9. huic: i. e. Galba. utī . . . collocāret: for mode cf. I, 2, 4; II, 16, 7.

10, 11. castellis: these were strongholds permanently occupied, but distinct from the *oppida*. obsidibus datis: this method of securing submission was especially effective with the Gauls among whom the tribal form of government prevailed.

12. cohortēs duās: how many men? in Nantuātibus: probably at St. Maurice, on the Rhone between Martigny and Lake Lemane. ipse: sc. cōstituit.

14. quī vicus etc. trans. as a principal clause. valle: this is comprised in the Swiss canton called Valais.

15. nōn . . . plāniciē, with a little level ground adjacent. For the

Figure of. I, 1, 8; 39, 11; 52, 4; II, 9, 1. altissimis montibus; the Bernese and Pennine Alps, the highest mountains in Europe.

16. flūmine: Dranse, a mountain torrent merely, which empties into the Rhone near Martigny. dīviderētur: for mode cf. I, 9, 3; 26, 18; II, 28, 5.

17. alteram partem: the part on the eastern side of the Dranse, which here flows north. alteram: i. e., the western portion of the village. By fixing the camp here, Galba placed himself within easy supporting distance of the two cohorts at St. Maurice.

18, 19. eum locum: i. e., *alteram . . . relictam*. vāllō, fossā: see Int. 130, 131. The vāllum often, as here, meant the rampart, comprising both *agger* and palisade.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsis- *The Gauls se-*
 sent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subi- *cretly with-*
 tō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte *draw and*
 vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse mon- *seize the*
 tēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitudine Sedūnōrum *neighboring* **5**
 et Varagrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut
 subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsi-
 lium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem neque eam plēnissi-
 mam dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm,
 quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, propter paucitātem **10**
 dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum
 ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē
 primum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant.
 Accedēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nō-

7. re-novō, 1. [novus, new], a.,
 renew. 2
 opprimō (ob-), -ere, pressī,
 pressus [premō, press], a., press
 against or down; overwhelm,
 overpower, destroy; surprise. *
 8. plēnus, -a, -um [pleō in com-
 pleō, fill], full, complete. 4

9. singulātīm (-illatīm) [singu-
 lī, single], singly, one by one. 3
 10. paucitās, -tātis [paucus,
 few], f., fewness, scarcity, small
 number. *
 14. abs-trahō, -ere, -āxī -ac-
 tum, to drag away, carry away
 by force. 3

2, 3. eō: i. e., to *Octodurus*.
 explorātōrēs: see on II, 11, 6.

4. concesserat: why not subj.
 according to the rule for dependent
 clauses in indir. disc.? A. 336, 2 b,
 p. 372; H. 524, 2, 1); B. 314 3. mon-
 tēs: the foot-hills, bordering on
 the valley.

5. multitudine: for case cf. I,
 14, 6; 16, 17; 17, 10.

6-8. acciderat: this verb here,
 as usual, denotes the event as un-
 foreseen or unfavorable. ut...
 caperent: relation to *id*? Cf. I,
 43, 20; 5, 2; 4, 4. neque eam
 plēnissimam, and that not at its
 full strength, explained by the ff.
 and in II, 25.

9. dētractīs etc.: trans. by a
 causal clause. complūribus, mas-
 culine, not agreeing with *cohortibus*,
 as does *duābus*; trans. *many men*
 etc.

11-13. tum...quod...exis-
 timābant: the second reason. inī-
 quitātem loci: the Romans usually
 avoided placing the camp on a
 site commanded by an elevation.
 Galba had departed from the rule,
 for some reason not stated. ipsī;
 i. e., the Gauls.

14, 15. accedēbat...dolē-
 bant, a further reason was, that
 they were indignant etc. obsidum
 nōmine: see on I, 11. They were
 really reduced to the condition of
 slaves.

mine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Galba's forces, in council, resolve to defend their camp.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīri neque com-

16. **perpetuus**, -a, -um [perpetuō, cause to continue.] continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual, permanent; entire: in perpetuum, forever. *

culmen, -inis (cont. from columen) [columna, column], n., top, summit, ridge, height. 1

17. **ad- iungō**, -ere, -ūnxī, -ūnctus,

join to, attach; apply to: *p. p. as adj.*, adjoining; suitable to. *

2. **plēnē** [plēnus, full], *adv.*, fully, completely, entirely. 1

6. **exquirō**, -ere, quisivī, quisītus [quaerō, search], *a.*, seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2

15. **itinerum**: the frequent traversing of the route is indicated by the use of the plural.

17, 18. **finitimae**: the Roman province bounded them on the west. **sibi persuāsum habēbant**, had persuaded themselves (that) etc; lit., had it (= Rōmānōs . . . adiungere) persuaded to themselves. For gender of *persuāsum* see on II, 35, 11.

2. **opus hibernōrum**: a general expression for the winter camp. **mūnitiōnēs**: special term describing the fortifications themselves. **perfectae**: refers both to **opus** and **mūnitiōnēs**. For the gender see A. 187, a 2; G. 290; H. 439, 1; B.

235 b γγ.

3, 4. **neque satis esset prōvisum**, and he had not taken sufficient precautions. For the trans. cf. II, 33, 13; 5, 7; I, 50, 8; 23, 5. **dēditōne**: a complete submission without conditions.

5. **cōnsiliō**: a council of war, composed of the military tribunes and the centurions of the first rank, i. e., the highest in his rank in each cohort.

7. **repentinī**: trans. adverbially, since suddenly such great peril etc. **periculī**: for case cf. II, 26, 15; 17, 9; I, 14, 2; 11, 14.

9. **venīri**: used impersonally. Trans. *neither could (any) come to their assistance etc.*

meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam¹⁰ dēspērātā salūte nōnnullae hūiusmodī sententiae dicēbantur ut impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā isdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō in-
terim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut rēbus, quās
cōstituissent, collocandīs atque administrandīs
tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō
datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conice-
re. Nostrī primō integrīs viribus fortiter repugnāre neque
ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, ut quaeque

15

The Gauls in great numbers attack the camp. The Romans are hard pressed.

10. sup-portō (sub-) 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, bring up, carry or convey to. 5
14. placeō, 2. please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good, be decided, resolved, or determined. *
re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], *a.*, keep back, save up, reserve. 4
1. brevis, -e, short (of time or

space), brief. *

4. gaesum, -ī, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). 1
5. integer, tegra, tegrum [tango, touch], untouched, intact, whole, fresh, unimpaired. *
6. frūstrā, *adv.* [fraus, deceit], in deception or error; without effect, in vain. 5

10. interclūsīs itineribus: particularly the road west, along the left bank of the Rhone. This road connected Octodurns with the place where the two cohorts were stationed.

11. hūiusmodī, of this sort, to this effect; really two words, a genitive of quality.

13, 14. māiōrī . . . cōnsiliō, the majority determined to reserve this plan for a last resort, (and) in the meantime etc.

15. experiri . . . dēfendere: relation to placuit? Cf. I, 17, 8; 10, 3; 7, 12.

2. cōstituissent: for mode cf. I, 3, 3; 6, 2; II, 35, 3.

4. dēcurrere, conicere, etc., for

mode cf. I, 16, 2; 32, 7; II, 30, 6. So also repugnāre (l. 5), mittere (l. 6), occurrere (l. 7), ferre and superārī (l. 8). dēcurrere: see superiōra loca 3, 8. gaesa: javelins of great weight and length, which seem to have been peculiar to the Alpine Gauls. They had a thick shaft and a barbed iron head. Varro says that two gaesa were carried by each soldier. vāllum: here the palisade crowning the agger; see Int. 131.

5. viribus: while their strength was fresh, an abl. abs.

6. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart of the camp, which was higher than the plain into which the Gauls had descended. Cf. dēcurrere, line 4. ut quaeque, as each (whenever any).

rētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque hominibus Gallis oprae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemp-
tūi est) tantī oneris turrīm mōtūrōs sēsē cōfiderent?

*They propose
a conditional
surrender.*

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropīnquāre moeni-
bus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōti
lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum
locūtī: nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere,
5 quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre
possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittēre dīxērunt.
Unum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac

8. quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, *interrog. pron., who, pray? which, pray? what, pray? The nam has the force of pray.*

9. tantulus, -a, -um [*dim. of tantus, so great*], so small or little, of such diminutive (stature). 4
statūra, -ae [*status, fr. stō, stand*], *r.*, a standing upright, size or height of the body, stature. 2
plērumque, *adv.* [*plērusque, the greater part*], for the most part, commonly, frequently. *

10. prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of: in comparison with; *in comp.*, before, on account of, surpassing, very. 2

contemptus, -ūs [*contemnō, despise*], *m.*, a despising; an object of contempt. 1

11. onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden. 5

2. in-ūsītātus, -a, -um [*ūtor*], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3

speciēs, -ēi [*obsol. speciō, see*], *r.*, seeing, sight, appearance. *

3. modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, quantity, manner, method, style. *

4. dīvinus, -a, -um [*dīvus, divine*], of the gods, celestial, divine. 3

5. prō-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [*moveō, move*], *a.*, move forward, advance, extend, enlarge; put off. 4

7. dē-precor, 1. [*precor, pray*], pray against, pray for deliverance, beseech, entreat, plead for. 5

8. quibusnam manibus, etc; for (as they reasoned) by what hands or strength did men, especially of such small stature, hope, etc.

9, 10. tantulae: see Int. 85. For the ending see on line 2. statūrae: for case of. 15, 13; 27, 12. Gallis contemptui; for case of. 1, 18, 28; 25, 6. prae, in comparison with.

11. oneris: cf. statūrae, line 9.

1. movērī (sc. the subj. turrīm), that the tower moved. moenibus: for case cf. 1, 2, 5.

3. ad hunc modum, as follows.

4. nōn existimāre etc.: put their speech into the direct form.

7. ūnum, one favor. petere, dēprecārī, we beg and pray. Caesar uses two synonymous verbs for special emphasis.

mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audirent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrū ariēs attigisset,

They submit to Caesar's terms but stealthily retain part of their arms.

9. dē-spoliō, 1. [spoliō, rob, spoil], *a.*, strip off, plunder. 1

10. in-vidēō, -ēre, vidī, visus [videō, see], *a.*, look at [*with evil intent*], be jealous of. 1

12. qui-vis, quaevis, quidvis (quod-) [volō, wish], *indef pron.* who or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3

13. cruciātus, -ūs [cruciō, cru-

cify], *m.*, crucifying, torture, torment. *

14. dominor, 1. [dominus, master], *a., n.*, be lord or master, have dominion. 1

3. ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. 3

8. quam . . . audirent: probably the report of Caesar's treatment of the remnant of the Nervii had reached them: see 28, 12.

9. nē . . . dēspoliāret, *he should not* (direct: *do not deprive us*) *deprive them of their arms.* The clause explains *unum*, line 6. For the mode cf. 9, 12; 9, 11; 2, 7. armīs: for case of. I, 1, 14; II, 6, 7.

10. inimicōs: see 29, 15.

11. trāditīs armīs: trans. by a cond. clause, *if they should* etc. sibi praestāre, *they preferred* (*it were better for them*). The subject is *quamvis . . . patī*, *to suffer any fortune whatever*.

12. cāsum, *extremity*.

13. ab hīs, *by the people*.

1. cōsuētūdine: it was Caesar's policy in this campaign to in-

duce the Belgae to submit. Their fidelity was secured by the surrender of their arms and the giving of hostages. The strong tribal feeling among them made the latter an especially effective means of curbing them.

2. meritō: they had tried to bring succor to the Nervii, see 29, 1-3. cōservātūrum (*esse*), *would spare*.

3. sī etc., direct: *if you surrender before the battering ram touches your wall*. ariēs: see Int. 162, 163. attigisset: as soon as the battering ram touched the wall, the besieged place was looked upon as already captured and offers of submission were then too late. attigisset and dēdidissent (l. 4) represent future perfect indicatives in the direct form.

sē dēdidissent: sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi
 5 armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviiis fēcisset, factūrum fi-
 nitimisque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmāni
 iniūriam inferrent. Rērenūtiatā adsuōs, quae imperārentur,
 facere dixerunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō in
 fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut prope summam
 10 mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et
 tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā
 atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

10. acervus, -ī [acer, sharp, pointed], m., a heap. *

ad-aequō, 1. [aequus, even, equal], a., make level with or equal to, equalize, equal: cursum adaequāre, keep pace with. *

11. cēlō, 1. a., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal: *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. 3

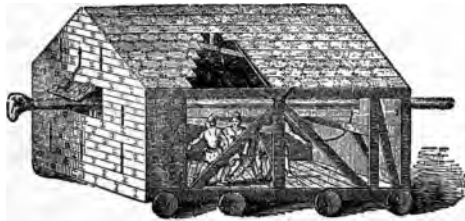
12. patefaciō, facere, fēcī, factus [pateō, open], a., make or throw open, open. 3

5. sē... factūrum (*esse*), *he would do this which he had done with the Nervii.* fīnitimīs: see 28, 12.

6-8. nē... inferrent, *not to inflict any evil upon* etc. quam:

9. ante oppidum: i. e., on the side where the Roman approaches were. iactā: construe with *multitudīne*.

10. mūrī: the wall of the town: see 29, 8. aggeris: the end of the



Vinea et Ariēs.

for signif. cf. I, 42, 12; 30, 15; 20, 2; 18, 22. quae... (*se*) facere, *that they would immediately execute his orders:* the pres. tense is here employed to denote an immediate future.

mound, which had reached the outer edge of the fosse.

12. pāce sunt ūsī, *remained quiet.* pāce: for case cf. 25, 18; 14, 11, I, 2, 6.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlī-
tēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū op-
pidānī ab mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante
initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditōne factā nos-
trōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātū- 5
rōs crēdiderant, partim sūmptīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāve-
rant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus in-
textīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus
indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mū-
nitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbatur, omnibus cōpiīs repentinō ex 10
oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar im-
perārat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā ex proximīs castellīs eō

*They renew
the contest,
are defeated
and sold as
slaves.*

5. indiligenter, *adv.* [indili-
gēns, careless], carelessly, heed-
lessly. 1
servō, 1. *a.*, save, preserve, main-
tain, keep; keep guard, watch. *
6. crēdō, dere, didī, ditus [*San-
scrit krat*, trust + dō], *a.*, give
trust or confidence, trust, entrust,
believe, suppose. *
7. cortex, corticis, *m.*, *f.*, bark. 1
vimen, -inis [vieō, bend or weave
together], *n.*, a pliant twig,
switch, withe, osier. 3
in-texō, -ere, texui, textus [texō,

weave], weave in or together. 1
8. pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin
(either on or off the body of an ani-
mal): sub pellibus (in tents, *i. e.*
in the field). *
9. arduus, -a, -um, high, steep,
difficult. 2
10. repentinō, *adv.*, suddenly. 1
11. ēruptiō, -ōnis [rumpō,
break out], *f.*, a breaking out,
bursting forth, sortie, sally. *
12. significātiō, -ōnis [signum,
sign + faciō], *f.*, making of
signs, signal, indication, notice. 5

1. sub, just before, towards (in
expressions of time).

2. nē quam etc.: a humane
action, but dangerous to the su-
premaccy of the Romans. quam:
as in 32, 6.

4. ante initō cōnsiliō, accord-
ing to a plan previously formed.

5. praesidia: the detachments
holding the castella mentioned in
30, 4.

7. factis: trans; by a rel. clause.

9. quā: the adv. quā minimē
arduus: this passage seems to
show that the Roman lines were on
high ground. tertiā vigiliā: what
time of night?

11. ut...imperārat: Caesar
had foreseen the possibility of an
attempt at treachery.



Fire-signal Tower.

12. īgnibus: signals to give
the alarm. ex proximīs castellis:
those nearest the point where the
attack on the Roman works was
being made. These castella are
the towers mentioned in l. 15 below.

concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō contrā eōs, 15 quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in unā virtūte omnis spēs salutis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi refractīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs sectiōnem eius oppidī unīversam Caesar vēdidit. Ab hīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne unā

18. refringō, -ere, frēgī, fractus [frangō, break], *a.*, break in or open; break, destroy. 2

19. intrō-mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus [intrō, within], *a.*, send into or in, let go in, introduce.

sectiō, -ōnis [secō, cut], *f.*, a cut-

ting or parcelling out (*of booty*) booty.

20. unīversus, -a, -um [unus + vertō, turn], turned into one, all together, whole, universal.

vēndō, dere, didī, ditus [vēnum, sale + dō], *a.*, put to sale, sell at auction.

13. *concursum est*: i. e. by the Romans: Caesar repulsed the Helvetians in the same way: cf. I, 8, 15. *concursum est, pūgnātum est*: for trans. cf. 11, 14; 10, 20. ut etc., lit., as the fight ought to have been carried on by brave men etc. For the sake of English idiom trans.: as brave men ought to have fought etc.

15. *pūgnārī*: used impersonally, cf. *persuādērī* 10, 19. Notice carefully that the present tense is to be represented in English by a perfect. After past tenses the Latin employs the present infin. with verbs of necessity and possibility (as *dēbeō, possum* etc.) instead of the perfect of the English idiom.

16. *in . . . cōnsisteret, dependēd* on valor alone. *ad*: used adverb-

ially with numerals = *circiter*.

19. *sectiōnem*: a perfectly justifiable procedure, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for treachery. Caesar's firmness gained for him the respect of the Gauls.

20. *his*: see Int. 102. The slave market at Rome was supplied by these *mercātōrēs*. *capitum*: as in I, 29, 6.

1. *eōdem tempore*: i. e. when the stronghold of the Aduatuci fell. As the 7th legion was detached from the Roman army just after the battle of the Sambre to reduce the western tribes to submission it is clear the siege must have lasted a long time, probably over a month. *P. Crassō*: see note on I, 52, 14.

miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritumae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque 5 populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

35. His rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātīōnēs 5

Crassus subduces the Veneti and other maritime tribes.

German envoys offer submission. Caesar quarters his troops and goes to Italy. Supplicatio in his honor.

2. Venetī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern Vannes. *

Venellī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in modern Normandy. 4

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in modern Brittany. 3

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern Corsault. 4

3. Esubiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people near the Veneti, near modern Essey. 3

Aulercī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people divided into four branches; (1) Aulerci Eburovices, in modern dept. de l'Eure, in Normandy; (2) Aulerci Cenomani; (3) Aulerci Brannovices, in modern dept. lé Briennois; (4) Aulerci Diablin-

tes, in modern dept. de la Sarthe. *

Redonēs, -um, m., a Gallic people in Brittany near the modern Rennes. 2

maritimus, (-umus) -a, -um, adj., of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea; aestus (in the sea); ora (the sea shore). *

5. diciō, -ōnis [dicō, say], f., saying (with authority), jurisdiction, dominion, sway. 3.

2. barbarus, -a, -um, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, savage, barbarous: as subst., foreigners, savages, barbarians. *

3. nātiō, -ōnis, [nāscor, be born], f., race, tribe, people, nation: usually applied to a distant and barbarous people. *

2. Venetī, etc., the student will note here, as in many other instances, that the Gallic names have been retained, in a modified form, in many of the departments and towns of France. A further account of these tribes is given in III, 7-19.

3, 4. Coriosolitas: notice the quantity of the termination and see on I, 26, 18. cīvitātēs, tribes.

5. diciōnem: i. e. a nominal submission, probably accompanied by the surrendering of hostages.

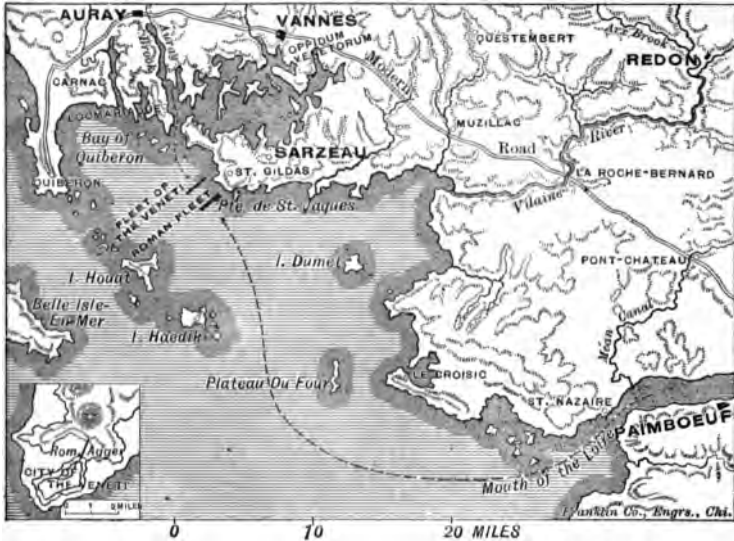
2. perlāta est, spread.

3. nātiōnibus: the German tribes, the Ubii in particular. incolerent: for mode cf. I, 3, 3.

4, 5. sē datūrās (not datūrōs) (esse), that they would give. What is the antecedent of sē?

The Veneti
prepare for
attack and
summon al-
lies.

reliquaeque item civitatēs cōgnitō Caesaris adven-
tū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīssissent,
intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nā-



10. iōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē
et in vīcula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculi bellum parā-

8. **facinus**, -oris [faciō], n., deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. *

10. **sānctus**, -a, -um [sanciō, make sacred], sacred, holy, in-

violable. 3

in-violātus, -a, -um [violō, in-
jure], uninjured, unharmed, in-
volute. 4

8. **quantum . . . admīssissent**,
how great a wrong they had done.
For the mode cf. I, 12, 3; 21, 8;
II, 5, 6; 20, 10.

9-11. **lēgātōs . . . coniectōs**
(esse), *that ambassadors had been
arrested etc.*, in appos. to *facinus*.
These (lēgātōs) were not envoys in
any proper sense. Cf. the state-
ment in 7, 8-10, relative to the ob-

ject of Crassus in sending them
out. However, from Caesar's
point of view, they were his *lēgātī*,
charged with a highly important
duty. **quod nōmen**, *a name which*.
When the antecedent (*nōmen*) of the
relative is in apposition with the
main clause, or with some word of
it (lēgātōs), it is always put in the
relative clause (*quod nōmen not nō-
men quod*).

re et m̄ximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitatemque por-
15
tuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant: āc iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nā-

13. multum *adv.* [*acc. of multus*, much], much, very, greatly, especially.

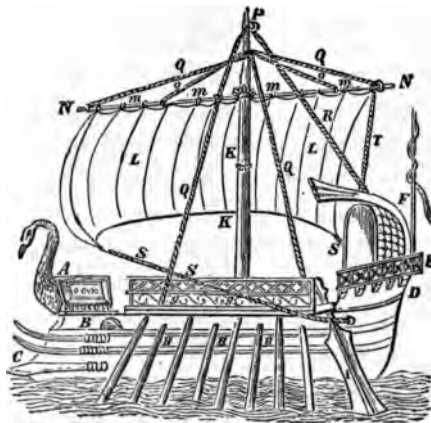
14. nāvigātiō, -ōnis [nāvigō,

sail], *v.*, sailing, voyage, navigation.

15. īnscientia, -ae, [īnsciēns, not knowing], *v.*, want of knowledge, ignorance.

14. aestuāriis: inlets in which the tide (*aestus*) rose and fell.

bant. ut, although, even if. For the concessive use of *ut* see A. 313,



A. *prōra.*
B. *oculus.*
C. *rostrum.*
E. *puppis.*
F. *aplustre.*
H. *rēmī.*

I. *gubernāculum.*
K. *mālus.*
L. *vēlum.*
m. *antenna.*
N. *cornua.*
s. *pedēs.*

15. *impeditam (esse), was difficult.*

17. *apud . . . posse, would not be able to stay among them.* The future idea is contained in *cōfidē-*

a; G. 610; H. 515, III; ~~K. 200~~

18, 19. *plūrimum* ~~trans. see on I, 3, 20~~
a sufficient number.

vibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium
 20 neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs,
 insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclusō
 marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebānt.
 Hīs inītis cōsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs
 in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prī-
 25 mum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possent,
 cōgunt. Sōciōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Nam-
 netēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt;
 auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est,
 arcessunt.

*Caesar plans
 to prevent
 their union.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās
 suprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad

21. insula, -ae, f., island.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, a., learn,
 become acquainted or familiar
 with; in *pf.*, have learned (and
 hence) know.

concludō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus
 [claudō, close], a., shut up, im-
 prison, close, confine: conclū-
 sum mare, an inland sea.

22. vāstus, -a, -um [vāstō, lay
 waste], waste; vast, boundless,
 immense.

24. Venetia, -ae, f., the territory
 of the Veneti.

26. Lexovī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic
 tribe southwest of the Seine; capi-
 tal, Noviomagus, now Lisieux. *

Namnetēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe
 about modern Nantes. 1

27. Ambiliāti, -ōrum, m., a Gal-
 lic people about modern Abber-
 ville in Picardy. 1

Diablintēs, -um: see Aulercī, II,
 34, 3. 1

20. locōrum: limits *vada*, etc.

21, 22. longē aliam . . . atque,
 that navigation was a very different
 thing . . . from (what it was) etc.
 See on atque, I, 28, 17. conclusō
 marī: in allusion to the Mediter-
 ranean, the "Roman Lake."

23. hīs inītis cōsiliīs: refer-
 ence is made to the preparations
 mentioned in lines 11 and 12,
 above. frūmenta: meaning in
 pl.? see on I, 16, 4.

24. Venetiam: the fleet of the
confederates probably rendezvous-

ed in the Bay of Quiberon at the
 mouth of the Auray river.

25. quam plūrimās: for trans.
 cf. I, 33, 19; 7, 3; 3, 3.

26. Osismōs, etc.: coast tribes
 reaching as far north as the mouth
 of the Rhine.

28. ex Britannīā: the Gauls
 were accustomed to draw support
 in their wars from their kinfolk in
 Britain.

2. ostendimus: in 9, 13-20.
 multa, many considerations.

id bellum incitabant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānō-
rum, rebelliō facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus,
tot civitātum coniūratiō, imprimīs, nē hāc parte neglētā reli- 5
quae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum
intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bel-
lum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nā-
tūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, prius-
quam plūrēs civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius 10
distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

4. rebelliō, -ōnis [rebellō, renew war], *r.*, renewal of war or hostilities. 3
dēfectiō, -ōnis [dēficiō, fail], *r.*, falling away, desertion, revolt. *
5. tot, *indecl. num. adj.*, so many. *imprimīs* (*inpr-*), *adv.* [in + *abl. pl. of primus*], among the first, especially, chiefly. *
neglēgō, -ere, lēxi, lēctus [nec + legō, pick up, choose], *a.*, not heed, disregard, neglect. *
8. mōbiliter [mōbilis, movable],

- adv.*, rapidly, easily. 1
excitō, 1. [citō, rouse], *a.*, call or rouse forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). *
10. cōn-spirō, 1. [spirō, breathe], *n.*, breathe or agree together, combine, unite; plot, conspire. 1
partior, 4. [pars, part], *a.*, part, share, divide, distribute. 5
11. dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribuō, assign], *a.*, assign apart, divide, distribute. *

3. iniūria: the outrage of having retained Roman Knights. The wrong had not been done to them, but to the Roman state through them. equitum: i. e., the *tribuni militum*; see Int. 89. For the case see A. 214 f; G. 361; H. 396, VI; B. 202.

4. post dēditionem: see on II, 34, 5. datīs obsidibus: the stability of Caesar's conquests in Gaul would be seriously shaken if this breach of good faith were not speedily punished.

5, 6. imprimīs nē, and particularly (the apprehension) that. For trans. of nē cf. II, 1, 6; I, 19, 11. hāc parte neglētā: The Abl. Abs. is here equivalent to a conditional clause; if he should not attend to etc. parte: i. e., the part of Gaul which

was in open revolt. reliquae nātiōnēs: such as the Belgae. sibi idem licēre: since they had all likewise submitted and given hostages to Caesar.

7. intellexeret: for mode cf. I, 9, 3. rēbus: for case cf. I, 2, 4; 25, 20; 45; 6; II, 16, 6. So also libertātī l. 9.

10. cōnspirārent: translate its clause after the principal clause, and for mode cf. II, 12, 2; I, 19, 13. partiendum: remember that the gerundive of deponent verbs is always passive in meaning; hence *partiendum* and *distribuendum* are parallel. sibi: for case cf. II, 20, 1; I, 38, 5; 11, 15.

11. distribuendum: so as to occupy the country and overtake the Gauls.

He sends troops to the neighboring tribes and marches against the Veneti.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūmiī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō
 5 ā Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātū
 10 tum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum

4. officium, -ī [opus, work + faciō], n., service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. *

11. D., abbreviation for the praenomen Decimus. 1

Brūtus, -ī, m., a Roman family name. E. g., Decimus Junius

2. cum equitātū: Caesar had no need of the cavalry in his projected maritime operations against the Veneti.

3. Rēmōs: this tribe may have needed military support at this time in view of the unrest prevailing among the Belgae. adeat, to visit: for mode cf. I, 20, 14. What conj. is omitted? Notice that Caesar's directions to Labienus are put in the indirect form.

4. Germānōsque etc., and to stop the Germans (who were said to have been sent for as aid by the Belgae), in case (sī) they tried etc. auxiliō: for case cf. I, 18, 28, contemptū; I, 25, 6 impedimento.

5. Belgīs: they were repeating the mistake of the Sequani (see Int. 79), with, however, more justification, since they sustained closer relations with the Germans (II, 1, 3). arcessitī: sc. esse, and for the case see A. 271 c; H. 536 2 1; B. 332, c). dicēbantur: not part of Caesar's directions to Labienus, but inserted by way of ex-

planation to the reader. All such clauses take the indicative: cf. 2, 4. flūmen: the Rhine.

6. cōentur: part of his instructions to Labienus. Why therefore the mode? prohibeat: for mode cf. l. 3. What other verb in the sentence is a parallel? cohortibus: see Int. 87, 88. legiōnāriis: i. e., Roman infantry in distinction from the cavalry mentioned above, which was drawn from the Gauls and other allies. XII: about 4,000 men.

8. nātiōnibus, i. e., the Aquitanians. auxilia mittantur: there was little danger of this, on account of the lack of race sympathy between the Aquitanians and Celts; but Caesar probably knew nothing of this at the time. Galliam: i. e., Celtic Gaul, in the western part of which the main operations were to be carried on.

10. tribus: how large a force? See Int. 86.

11. quī . . . cūret, to see that these troops be kept away (from the

adulēscēntem classī Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetōs proficiscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

15

12. Erant ēiusmodī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārū XXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus,

Situation of the strongholds of the Veneti.

Brutus Albinus, one of Caesar's legati in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompeius. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed in Gaul by order of Antonius. 4

12. classis, -is, f., class, division; army, called out for duty; esp. fleet, including the marines. 5

Pictonēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe, south of the Loire. 3

1. ēiusmodī [for ēius modī, a genitive of quality], of such a kind or sort, such.

situs, -ūs [sinō, let (be in a place or condition)], m., situation, site, position. 5

2. lingula, -ae [lingua, tongue], f., a little tongue, a tongue of land. 1

prōmunturium, -ī [prō-mineō, be prominent, project], n., headland, promontory. 1

3. aestus, -ūs, m., heat, boiling, surging; tide. minuenta aestū, at ebb tide. *

4. bis, num. adv. [for duis, fr. duo, two], on two occasions, twice. 4

Veneti). *distinendam*: for this use of the gerundive see on I, 13, 2. *cūret*: for mode cf. I, 7, 10; 21, 4; 50, 7; II, 17, 2.

12. *classī*: where was it? See 9, 3. *classī, nāvibus*: for the case cf. I, 2, 5; 12, 18; II, 14, 7.

14. *cum primum*: as in II, 2, 4.

15. *eō*: Caesar probably visited the fleet first, then moved along the coast, laying siege to the towns in succession. After the distribution of troops described above, Caesar had left three legions and eight cohorts (see on II, 2, 2), supposing Galba to have joined his chief with his one legion. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar a force of

two legions and eight cohorts, or about 10,000 men, with which to operate against the Veneti.

1. *sitūs oppidōrum*: see map of the campaign against the Veneti, p. 264, small plan.

2. *extrēmīs lingulis*: for trans. cf. II, 8, 12. For the ending *-ulus* see on II, 30, 2. *prōmunturiis*: Compare the ending *-urium* (*-ārium, -ōrium*) with the English ending *-ury, -ary, -ory*, in designations of place.

3. *pedibus, on foot*, i. e., by land. At high tide the low ground behind the towns was overflowed. *ex altō, from the deep (sea)*. *sē incitāvisset, had rushed in*.

4. *nāvibus*: sc. *aditum habērent*.

Huic permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legi-
ōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba secundīs aliquot
10 proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expūgnātis
missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce fac-
tā cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse
cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Varagrōrum,
quī appellātur Octōdūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle
15 nōn māgnā adiectā plāniciē altissimis montibus undique
continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, al-
teram partem eius vicī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab
hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum lo-
cum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

9. aliquot [alius + quot], *indecl.*
num. adj., some, a few, several. 3
14. Octōdūrus, -ī, *m.*, a town of
the Varagri, now Martigny. 1
vallis (vallēs), -is, *f.*, valley, vale. *
15. adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus

- [ad-iacio], *a.*, throw to: tēlum
adici (reach); aggerem (throw
up).—*Fig.*, add: adiecta plāni-
ciēs (with the addition of). *
18. attribūō (ad-), -ere, -uī,
-ūtus [tribuō, assign], *a.*, assign,
allot. *

8, 9. huic: i. e. Galba. utī...
collocāret: for mode cf. I, 2, 4; II,
16, 7.

10, 11. castellis: these were
strongholds permanently occupied,
but distinct from the *oppida*. ob-
sidibus datis: this method of se-
curing submission was especially
effective with the Gauls among
whom the tribal form of govern-
ment prevailed.

12. cohortēs duās: how many
men? in Nantuātibus: probably
at St. Maurice, on the Rhone be-
tween Martigny and Lake Leman.
ipse: sc. cōstituit.

14. quī vicus etc. trans. as a
principal clause. valle: this is
comprised in the Swiss canton
called Valais.

15. nōn... plāniciē, with a
little level ground adjacent. For the

Figure cf. I, 1, 8; 39, 11; 52, 4; II,
9, 1. altissimis montibus; the
Bernese and Pennine Alps, the high-
est mountains in Europe.

16. flūmine: Dranse, a moun-
tain torrent merely, which empties
into the Rhone near Martigny.
dīviderētur: for mode cf. I, 9, 3;
26, 18; II, 28, 5.

17. alteram partem: the part
on the eastern side of the Dranse,
which here flows north. alteram:
i. e., the western portion of the vil-
lage. By fixing the camp here,
Galba placed himself within easy
supporting distance of the two co-
horts at St. Maurice.

18, 19. eum locum: i. e., *alte-
ram... relictam*. vāllō, fossā:
see Int. 130, 131. The vāllum often,
as here, meant the rampart, com-
prising both agger and palisade.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsis-
sent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subi-
tō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte
vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse mon-
tēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitudine Sedūnōrum 5
et Varagrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut
subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsi-
lium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem neque eam plēnissi-
mam dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm,
quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, propter paucitātem 10
dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum
ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē
prīmum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant.
Accedēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nō-

*The Gauls se-
cretly with-
draw and
seize the
neighboring
heights.*

7. re-novō, 1. [novus, new], a.,
renew. 2
opprimō (ob-), -ere, pressī,
pressus [premō, press], a., press
against or down; overwhelm,
overpower, destroy; surprise. *
8. plēnus, -a, -um [pleō in com-
pleō, fill], full, complete. 4

9. singulātīm (-illatīm) [singū-
lī, single], singly, one by one. 3
10. paucitās, -tātis [paucus,
few], f., fewness, scarcity, small
number. *
14. abs-trahō, -ere, -āxi -ac-
tum, to drag away, carry away
by force. 3

2, 3. eō: i. e., to *Octodurus*.
explorātōrēs: see on II, 11, 6.

4. concesserat: why not subj.
according to the rule for dependent
clauses in indir. disc.? A. 336, 2 b,
p. 372; H. 524, 2, 1); B. 314 3. mon-
tēs: the foot-hills, bordering on
the valley.

5. multitudine: for case cf. I,
14, 6; 16, 17; 17, 10.

6-8. acciderat: this verb here,
as usual, denotes the event as un-
foreseen or unfavorable. ut...
caperent: relation to *id*? Cf. I,
43, 20; 5, 2; 4, 4. neque eam
plēnissimam, and that not at its
full strength, explained by the ff.
and in II, 25.

9. dētractīs etc.: trans. by a
causal clause. complūribus, mas-
culine, not agreeing with *cohortibus*,
as does *duābus*; trans. *many men*
etc.

11-13. tum... quod... exis-
timābant: the second reason. inī-
quitātem locī: the Romans usually
avoided placing the camp on a
site commanded by an elevation.
Galba had departed from the rule,
for some reason not stated. ipsī;
i. e., the Gauls.

14, 15. accedēbat... dolē-
bant, a further reason was, that
they were indignant etc. obsidum
nōmine: see on I, 11. They were
really reduced to the condition of
slaves.

mine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Galba's forces, in council, resolve to defend their camp.

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnesque plēnē essent perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīri neque com-

16. perpetuus, -a, -um [perpetuō, cause to continue.] continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual, permanent; entire: in perpetuum, forever. *

culmen, -inis (cont. from columen) [columna, column], n., top, summit, ridge, height. 1

17. ad-iungō, -ere, -ūnxī, -ūnctus,

join to, attach; apply to: *p. p.* as *adj.*, adjoining; suitable to. *

2. plēnē [plēnus, full], *adv.*, fully, completely, entirely. 1

6. exquirō, -ere, quisivī, quisitus [quaerō, search], *a.*, seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2

15. *itinerum*: the frequent traversing of the route is indicated by the use of the plural.

17, 18. *finitimae*: the Roman province bounded them on the west. *sibi persuāsum habēbant*, had persuaded themselves (that) etc; lit., had it (= Rōmānōs . . . adiungere) persuaded to themselves. For gender of *persuāsum* see on II, 35, 11.

2. *opus hibernōrum*: a general expression for the winter camp. *mūnitiōnes*: special term describing the fortifications themselves. *perfectae*: refers both to *opus* and *mūnitiōnes*. For the gender see A. 187, a 2; G. 290; H. 439, 1; B.

235 b γγ.

3, 4. *neque satis esset prōvisum*, and he had not taken sufficient precautions. For the trans. cf. II, 33, 13; 5, 7; I, 50, 8; 23, 5. *dēditōne*: a complete submission without conditions.

5. *cōnsiliō*: a council of war, composed of the military tribunes and the centurions of the first rank, i. e., the highest in his rank in each cohort.

7. *repentīnī*: trans. adverbially, since suddenly such great peril etc. *periculī*: for case cf. II, 26, 15; 17, 9; I, 14, 2; 11, 14.

9. *venīri*: used impersonally. Trans. neither could (any) come to their assistance etc.

meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam 10
dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae hūiusmodī sententiae dicēbantur
ut impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus,
quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī
tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō in-
terim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut rēbus, quās 15
cōstituissent, collocandīs atque administrandīs
tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō
datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conice-
re. Nostrī primō integrīs vīribus fortiter repūgnāre neque 5
ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, ut quaeque

The Gauls in
great numbers
attack the
camp. The
Romans
are hard
pressed.

10. sup-portō (sub-) 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, bring up, carry or convey to. 5
14. placeō, 2. please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good, be decided, resolved, or determined. *
re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], *a.*, keep back, save up, reserve. 4
1. brevis, -e, short (*of time or*

space), brief. *

4. gaesum, -ī, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (*of the Gauls*). 1
5. integer, tegra, tegrum [tangō, touch], untouched, intact, whole, fresh, unimpaired. *
6. frūstrā, *adv.* [fraus, deceit], in deception or error; without effect, in vain. 5

10. interclūsīs itineribus: particularly the road west, along the left bank of the Rhone. This road connected Octodurus with the place where the two cohorts were stationed.

11. hūiusmodī, *of this sort, to this effect*; really two words, a genitive of quality.

13, 14. māiōrī . . . cōnsiliō, *the majority determined to reserve this plan for a last resort, (and) in the meantime etc.*

15. experīrī . . . dēfendere: relation to *placuit*? Cf. I, 17, 8; 10, 3; 7, 12.

2. cōstituissent: for mode cf. I, 3, 3; 6, 2; II, 35, 3.

4. dēcurrere, conicere, etc., for

mode cf. I, 16, 2; 32, 7; II, 30, 6. So also *repūgnāre* (I. 5), *mittere* (I. 6), *occurrere* (I. 7), *ferre* and *superārī* (I. 8). *dēcurrere*: see *superiōra loca* 3, 8. *gaesa*: javelins of great weight and length, which seem to have been peculiar to the Alpine Gauls. They had a thick shaft and a barbed iron head. Varro says that two *gaesa* were carried by each soldier. *vāllum*: here the palisade crowning the *agger*; see Int. 131.

5. *vīribus*: while their strength was fresh, an abl. abs.

6. *ex locō superiōre*: the top of the rampart of the camp, which was higher than the plain into which the Gauls had descended. Cf. *dēcurrere*, line 4. *ut quaeque, as each (whenever any)*.

pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo currere et auxilium ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diurnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant, quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

Galba's centurions desist on a sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostras deficerent atque hostes acrius instarent languidiorebusque nostris vallum scindere et fossas complere coepissent,

8. diurnitas, -tatis [diurnus, prolonged], *r.*, long duration or continuance. 2

12. saucius, -a, -um, wounded, hurt. 2

-8. languidus, -a, -um, spiritless, faint, languid. 1

4. scindo, -ere, scidi, scissus, a., split, cleave; tear down, destroy. 2

7. defensoribus: for case cf. I, 1, 14; 8, 12; II, 31, 9.

8. hoc superari, in this they were overmatched, explained by quod . . . succedebant.

9, 10. alii . . . succedebant, others with fresh energies took their places. viribus: for case cf. I, 6, 12; 28, 15; II, 18, 4. Contrast the construction carefully with that of the same words in l. 5. nostris: for case cf. I, 14, 6.

11. ac etc., and not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted (man) of retiring from the fight, but not even to a wounded (man) of leaving etc. Notice that the second 'not,' printed in small capitals above, is not expressed in the text: see A. 149 e; G. 482 5, R. 1; H. 552 2; B. 343 2 a. excedendi, the gerund: read the reference given on I, 2, 14, and explain the case.

12. saucio: the care of the wounded was entrusted to surgeons who, at first slaves, later free men,

were released from all other service. The wounded were carried or led to the rear, or to the camp, where their wounds were attended to. It was considered disgraceful to leave the wounded without protection. constiterat, had taken his stand. relinquendi, the gerundive: read the reference on I, 1, 9, and give the gender, number and case.

13. sui recipiendi, of recovering, i. e., attending to his wounds.

1. horis: for case cf. I, 15, 15; II, 7, 11.

3, 4. languidiorebusque nostris, and, as our men were quite faint. vallum scindere: i. e., to tear up the valli forming the breast-work (lorica: Int. 131) and thus to gain an entrance to the camp. fossas: the plural is used because the operation of filling the ditch was going on at several points at the same time.

rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius 5
 Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūri-
 bus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tri-
 būnus militum, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam
 accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne
 factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis 10
 centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper inter-
 mitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sē-
 que ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castris ērumpe-
 rent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt ac subitō omni- *The Gauls are
 driven back
 with loss.*
 bus portis ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī,

6. pilus, -ī, m., century, centurion; primī pilī centuriō, chief centurion. 3

Nervicus, -a, -um, of or with the Nervii, Nervian. 1

7. C., abbreviation for the praenomen Gāius. *

Volusēnus, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry. 5

12. tantummodo, adv. [tantum

+ modo], so much only; only, merely. 1

excipiō, -ere, cēpi, ceptus [capiō, take], a., take out, off, or up, catch, receive; take up (in turn), succeed. *

13. labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil, hardship, trouble. *

reficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō], a., remake, renew, refresh, recruit (body or mind). *

ē-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [rumpō, break], n., break out or forth, sally. 1

5, 6. cāsum, extremity. primī pilī: see Int. 92. quem etc., in II, 25, 7, 8.

10. extrēmum auxilium: see on cōsiliō 3, 14. experirentur: for the tense see on I, 3, 13.

11. centuriōnibus: how many were there in the eight cohorts? militēs . . . facit, directs the soldiers. intermitterent, to leave off; for the mood see on I, 20, 14: so also the three following verbs.

12. exciperent, intercept. i. e., shield themselves from.

13. post, afterwards: an adv. = deinde.

1. quod: for omission of the antecedent (what?) of. I, 1, 2.

2. portis: abl. instr. cōgnōscendī etc., of finding out what was going on or recovering themselves. The sortie was a complete surprise to the enemy, who had inferred an early surrender from the cessation of fighting on the part of the Romans. On the Gallic mode of attack, see Int. 181-3.

quid fieret, neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relin-
quunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā eōs, qui in spem potiundōrum
5 castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex
hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum
ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reli-
quōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem
superiōribus cōsistēre patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium
10 cōpiīs fūsis armisque exūtis sē in castra mūnitiōnesque suās
recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortū-
nam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīber-
na cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat,
māximē frumentī commeātusque inopiā permōtus posterō diē,
15 omnibus ēius vicī aedificiīs incēnsis in prōvinciam revertī

*Galba retires
for the win-
ter.*

3. colligō (con-), -ere, lēgī, lēc-
tus [legō, gather], a., gather to-
gether, collect, assemble; recover
one's senses or courage, rally. *
7. cōn-stō, stāre, stitī, stātus
[stō, stand], n., stand together or
still, stand firm, be steadfast;
agree, correspond; be settled or
established: cōnstat, *impers.*, it

is evident.

10. fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, a.,
pour, discharge, scatter; over-
throw, rout. 2
exuō, uere, ui, ūtus, draw out or
off, put or strip off, divest, de-
spoil. 4
13. meminī, -isse, *def. a., n.*, re-
member, recollect. 2

3. suī colligendī: this con-
struction deserves careful study.
Read A. 298 a, Note; G. 428, R. 1;
H. 542, I N. 1; B. 339 5. What
kind of a pronoun is suī? Give
its gender, number, and case, and
the reasons therefor. Is colligendī
gerund or gerundive? How does
this construction differ from suī
recipiendī in 4, 13?

5. castrōrum: i. e. that part of
the town which was being used as
a camp. circumventōs: trans. by
a coordinate clause: cf. II, 17, 4;
5, 11; I, 5, 13.

6. XXX: the number would
seem to be exaggerated, in view of
the fact that Galba's force was
hardly in excess of 4,000 men.

10. fūsis . . . exūtis, routed and

disarmed. armīs: for the case cf.
I, 1, 14; II, 21, 12; 31, 9. What does
exūtis agree with? The outcome
of this combat illustrates a funda-
mental defect in the Gauls as war-
riors. They were exceedingly
brave, but lacked staunchness and
could not rally from a reverse.

11. saepius etc.: Galba felt
that it would be foolish to court
another attack by remaining in so
dangerous a position. The com-
plete victory which he had gained
made it possible for him to retire
with honor.

12, 13. aliō cōsiliō: what
was it? see 1, 5-7. aliīs . . . viderat,
(but) had found the situation
(rēbus) unfavorable (aliīs). rēbus:
for case cf. I, 2, 5; 16, 13; 23, 5;
II, 27, 5.

contendit ac nullō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātis, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātis Belgīs, expulsīs Germānis, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita inītā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī haec fuit causa P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in finitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsīt; quō in numerō est 10

Crassus sends officers to various Armorican states for supplies.

16. dē-moror, 1. [moror, delay], a., delay, restrain, hinder. 1 incolumis, -e, unhurt, uninjured, safe. *

4. hiems (hiemps), hiemis [*Sanscrit, himas, snow*], f., winter time, winter. *

5. subitus, -a, -um [subeō, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. 2

6. co-orior, oriri, ortus sum [cum + orior, rise], n., arise,

spring up, rise with force, break forth. *

7. adulēscēns (adō-), -entis [adolēscō, grow up], m., f., youth; young man or woman, from *seventeen to forty years of age*. * mare, -is, n., sea; mare Oceanum, the ocean. *

9. praefectus, -i [praeficiō, set over], m., overseer, commander, officer, general (equitum); governor of a province. *

17. inde in Allobrogēs: Galba marched west along the south shore of Lake Lemane and probably wintered at Vienna, the capital of the Allobroges.

The events recited in the following chapters belong to the year 56 B. C.

1. omnibus dē causīs: explained by the following abl. abs.

2, 3. pācātam, subdued. See on II, 1, 7. exīstimāret: for mode cf. I, 43, 13; 26, 6; 14, 17. superātis Belgis etc.: trans. by causal clauses: cf. II, 1-33. expulsīs Germānis: the army of Ariovistus (I, 30-54.)

Sedūnis: they were the most influential of the Alpine tribes and are mentioned as representing all of them.

4. inītā hieme: for trans. cf. II, 2, 3. profectus esset: from Cisalpine Gaul, whither he had repaired in the fall of 57 B. C.; see II, 35, 9; III, 1, 1. For mode cf. *existimāret* l. 2. eās: i. e. of *Illyricum*.

7, 8. proximus . . . Oceanum: i. e., nearer than any other of the officers of the army. For the case see on *propius*, I, 46, 2.

9. praefectōs: see Int. 101. tribūnōs: see Int. 90, 91.

T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

These tribes, led by the Veneti, unite and demand their hostages from Crassus.

8. Hūius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rerum reliquōs antecēdunt et in māgnō impetū maris atque apertō paucis portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō mari ūtī cōsuērunt, habent vēctīgālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendī Siliī atque Velānii, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recipērātūrōs existimābant.

11. **Terrasidius**, -ī, m., a Roman name. E. g. Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune. 2

Trebius, -ī, m., a Roman family name: Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune. 2

12. **Velānius**, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Quintus Velanius, a military tribune. 2

Silius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Titus Silius, a military tribune. 2

1. **amplus**, -a, -um, of large extent, spacious, large. *
2. **ōra**, -ae, f., border, margin; coast, shore. 4

4. **nāvīgō**, 1. [nāvis + agō, put in motion], n., set sail, sail; proceed. *

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta, sailor], of a sailor, naval, nautical. 1

5. **ante-cēdō**, -ere, cessī [cēdō, go], a., n., go before, precede, excel, surpass. *

6. **portus**, -ūs [portō, carry; cf. porta], m., harbor, haven, port. *

7. **vēctīgālis**, -e [vēctigal, revenue], paying revenue or tribute, tributary. 2

9. **recipērō** (recup-), 1. a., recover. *

1, 2. **hūius . . . eārum**, the power of this tribe (the Veneti) is very great along the whole sea coast in these parts. **longē**: the superlative with *longē* in Caesar, is commonly the superlative absolute.

3. in **Britanniam**: the Veneti seem to have monopolized the traffic between the continent and the southeastern coast of the island.

4. **scientiā, ūsū**: for case cf. I, 1, 3; 1, 12; II, 15, 4; 17, 14. **nauticārum**: the adj. ending -icus (-acus) signifies of or belonging to. A. 164, c; G. 185, 1; H. 330; B. 151 2.

What other endings have the same signification?

5, 6. in **māgnō**. . . **apertō**, in (consequence of) the great impetuosity of the open sea. What emphasis belongs to the word following *atque*? **māgnō impetū**: this part of the Atlantic has always been the terror of mariners.

7. **habent vēctīgālēs**, they treat all as tributaries. i. e., the ship masters paid a tax for the privilege of using these ports as harbors of refuge. **ab his** etc., these began (hostilities) by arresting Silius etc.

Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita 10
et repentina cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque
retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs p̄ncipēs inter sē
coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque
omnis fortunāe exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sol-
licitant, ut in eā libertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, per-15
manēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālent. Omnī
ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā com-
mūnem legātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suōs reci-
pere, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior <sup>Caesar
equips a fleet
to attack
them.</sup> factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim lon-
gās aedificārī in flūmine Ligere, quod influit in Ōceanum, rē-
migēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque compa-
rārī iubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum p̄- 5
mum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti

14. exitus, -ūs [eō, go], m., go-
ing out, exit; issue, result, end. *

15. per-maneō, -ēre, mānsi,
mānsus [maneō, remain], n.,
stay through or to the end; hold
out, endure. *

16. mālō, mālle, mālui [magis
+ volō, wish], a., n., wish more
or rather, prefer. 2

3. aedificō, 1. [aedēs, building

+ faciō], a., build, construct;
erect, establish. 3

Liger, -eris, m., the river Loire. *

rēmex, -igis [rēmus, oar + agō],
m., rower, oarsman. 1

4. nauta (contr. of nāvita), -ae
[nāvis], m., sailor, seaman, mar-
iner. 2

gubernātor, -ōris [gubernō, steer
or pilot], m., steersman, pilot. 2

10. finitimī: the *Esubii* and *Coriosolites*. ut, as, in fact. Ut here, as frequently, introduces what is asserted as a general truth in connection with some illustration. subita, etc. On this characteristic of the Gauls, see II, 1, 11.

13. commūnī cōnsiliō: see Int. 68. (sē) āctūrōs (esse), that they would do.

18, 19. velit, remittat: form in direct discourse?

2. aberat longius: in Illyricum.

nāvēs longās: see Int. 170.

3, 4. rēmigēs, gubernātōrēs: see Int. 172. nautās: they managed the sails exclusively. Why would it be difficult for Crassus to procure *nautae* and *gubernātōrēs* in sufficient numbers?

5, 6. cum . . . potuit, as soon as the time of year permitted. Caesar was at Luca in Cisalpine Gaul in April, (see Int. 28), and probably did not join the army on the Loire until sometime in May.

*The Veneti
prepare for
attack and
summon al-
lies.*

reliquaeque item civitatēs cōgnitō Caesaris adven-
tū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīssent,
intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nā-



10tiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē
et in vīncula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculi bellum parā-

8. *facinus, -oris* [faciō], *n.*, deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. *

10. *sānctus, -a, -um* [sanciō, make sacred], sacred, holy, in-

violable. 3

in-violātus, -a, -um [violō, injure], uninjured, unharmed, inviolate. 4

8. *quantum . . . admīssent, how great a wrong they had done.* For the mode cf. I, 12, 3; 21, 8; II, 5, 6; 20, 10.

9-11. *lēgātōs . . . coniectōs (esse), that ambassadors had been arrested etc., in appos. to facinus.* These (*lēgātōs*) were not envoys in any proper sense. Cf. the statement in 7, 8-10, relative to the ob-

ject of Crassus in sending them out. However, from Caesar's point of view, they were his *lēgātī*, charged with a highly important duty. *quod nōmen, a name which.* When the antecedent (*nōmen*) of the relative is in apposition with the main clause, or with some word of it (*lēgātōs*), it is always put in the relative clause (*quod nōmen not nōmen quod*).

re et m̄ximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidere
 instituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfidē-
 bant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigatiōnem
 impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque por-15
 tuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī ino-
 piam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfidēbant: ac iam ut
 omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nā-

13. multum adv. [acc. of mul-
 tus, much], much, very, greatly,
 especially.

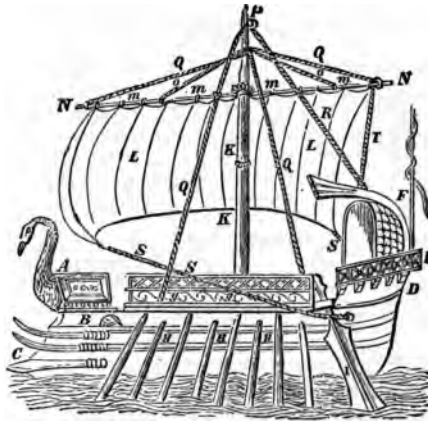
14. nāvigatiō, -ōnis [nāvigō,

sail], F., sailing, voyage, naviga-
 tion.

15. īnscientia, -ae, [īnsciēns, not
 knowing], F., want of knowledge,
 ignorance.

14. aestuāriīs: inlets in which
 the tide (*aestus*) rose and fell.

bant. ut, although, even if. For
 the concessive use of *ut* see A. 313,



A. prōra.
 B. oculus.
 C. rostrum.
 E. puppis.
 F. aplustre.
 H. remi.

I. gubernāculum.
 K. mālus.
 L. vēlum.
 m. antenna.
 N. cornua.
 s. pedēs.

15. impeditam (esse), was diffi-
 cult.

17. apud . . . posse, would not
 be able to stay among them. The
 future idea is contained in cōnfidē-

a; G. 610; H. 515, III; B. 308.

18, 19. plūrimum posse: for
 trans. see on I, 3, 20. facultātem,
 a sufficient number.

vibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium
 20 neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs,
 īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō
 marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebānt.
 His initīs cōsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs
 in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prī-
 25 mum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possent,
 cōgunt. Sōciōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Nam-
 netēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt;
 auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est,
 arcessunt.

*Caesar plans
 to prevent
 their union.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās
 suprà ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad

21. *insula, -ae, f., island.*

*nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, a., learn,
 become acquainted or familiar
 with; in pf., have learned (and
 hence) know.*

*conclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus
 [claudō, close], a., shut up, im-
 prison, close, confine: conclū-
 sum mare, an inland sea.*

22. *vāstus, -a, -um [vāstō, lay
 waste], wāste; vast, boundless,
 immense.*

24. *Venetia, -ae, f., the territory
 of the Veneti.*

26. *Lexovī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic
 tribe southwest of the Seine; capi-
 tal, Noviomagus, now Lisieux. **

*Namnetēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe
 about modern Nantes. 1*

27. *Ambiliātī, -ōrum, m., a Gal-
 lic people about modern Abber-
 ville in Picardy. 1*

*Diablintēs, -um: see Aulercī, II,
 34, 3. 1*

20. *locōrum: limits vada, etc.*

21, 22. *longē aliam . . . atque,
 that navigation was a very different
 thing . . . from (what it was) etc.*
 See on *atque*, I, 28, 17. *conclūsō
 marī: in allusion to the Mediter-
 ranean, the "Roman Lake."*

23. *his initīs cōsiliīs: refer-
 ence is made to the preparations
 mentioned in lines 11 and 12,
 above. frūmenta: meaning in
 pl. ? see on I, 16, 4.*

24. *Venetiam: the fleet of the
 confederates probably rendezvous-*

*ed in the Bay of Quiberon at the
 mouth of the Auray river.*

25. *quam plūrimās: for trans.
 cf. I, 33, 19; 7, 3; 3, 3.*

26. *Osismōs, etc.: coast tribes
 reaching as far north as the mouth
 of the Rhine.*

28. *ex Britannīā: the Gauls
 were accustomed to draw support
 in their wars from their kinfolk in
 Britain.*

2. *ostendimus: in 9, 13-20.
 multa, many considerations.*

id bellum incitabant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūratiō, imprimīs, nē hāc parte neglēctā reli- 5
 quae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius 10 distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

4. rebelliō, -ōnis [rebellō, renew war], *F.*, renewal of war or hostilities. 3
 dēfectiō, -ōnis [dēficiō, fail], *F.*, falling away, desertion, revolt. *
 5. tot, *indecl. num. adj.*, so many. imprimīs (inpr-), *adv.* [in + *abl. pl. of primus*], among the first, especially, chiefly. *
 neglēgō, -ere, lēxi, lēctus [nec + legō, pick up, choose], *a.*, not heed, disregard, neglect. *
 8. mōbiliter [mōbilis, movable],

- adv.*, rapidly, easily. 1
 excitō, 1. [cītō, rouse], *a.*, call or rouse forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). *
 10. cōn-spirō, 1. [spirō, breathe], *n.*, breathe or agree together, combine, unite; plot, conspire. 1
 partior, 4. [pars, part], *a.*, part, share, divide, distribute. 5
 11. dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribuō, assign], *a.*, assign apart, divide, distribute. *

3. iniūria: the outrage of having retained Roman Knights. The wrong had not been done to them, but to the Roman state through them. equitum: i. e., the *tribuni militum*; see Int. 89. For the case see A. 214 f; G. 361; H. 396, VI; B. 202.

4. post dēditōnem: see on II, 34, 5. datīs obsidibus: the stability of Caesar's conquests in Gaul would be seriously shaken if this breach of good faith were not speedily punished.

5, 6. imprimīs nē, and particularly (the apprehension) that. For trans. of nē cf. II, 1, 6; I, 19, 11. hāc parte neglēctā: The Abl. Abs. is here equivalent to a conditional clause; if he should not attend to etc. parte: i. e., the part of Gaul which

was in open revolt. reliquae nātiōnēs: such as the Belgae. sibi idem licēre: since they had all likewise submitted and given hostages to Caesar.

7. intellexeret: for mode cf. I, 9, 3. rēbus: for case cf. I, 2, 4; 25, 20; 45; 6; II, 16, 6. So also libertātī l. 9.

10. cōspirārent: translate its clause after the principal clause, and for mode cf. II, 12, 2; I, 19, 13. partiendum: remember that the gerundive of deponent verbs is always passive in meaning; hence partiendum and distribuendum are parallel. sibi: for case cf. II, 20, 1; I, 38, 5; 11, 15.

11. distribuendum: so as to occupy the country and overawe the Gauls.

He sends troops to the neighboring tribes and marches against the Veneti.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitatū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō
 5 ā Belgīs arcessitī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitatūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum

4. officium, -ī [opus, work + faciō], n., service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. *

11. D., abbreviation for the praenomen Decimus. 1 Brūtus, -ī, m., a Roman family name. E. g., Decimus Junius

2. cum equitatū: Caesar had no need of the cavalry in his projected maritime operations against the Veneti.

3. Rēmōs: this tribe may have needed military support at this time in view of the unrest prevailing among the Belgae. adeat, to visit: for mode cf. I, 20, 14. What conj. is omitted? Notice that Caesar's directions to Labienus are put in the indirect form.

4. Germānōsque etc., and to stop the Germans (who were said to have been sent for as aid by the Belgae), in case (sī) they tried etc. auxiliō: for case cf. I, 18, 28, contemptū; I, 25, 6 impedimento.

5. Belgis: they were repeating the mistake of the Sequani (see Int. 79), with, however, more justification, since they sustained closer relations with the Germans (II, 1, 3). arcessitī: sc. esse, and for the case see A. 271 c; H. 536 2 1); B. 332, c). dicebantur: not part of Caesar's directions to Labienus, but inserted by way of ex-

planation to the reader. All such clauses take the indicative: cf. 2, 4. flūmen: the Rhine.

6. cōentur: part of his instructions to Labienus. Why therefore the mode? prohibeat: for mode cf. I. 3. What other verb in the sentence is a parallel? cohortibus: see Int. 87, 88. legiōnāriīs: i. e., Roman infantry in distinction from the cavalry mentioned above, which was drawn from the Gauls and other allies. XII: about 4,000 men.

8. nātiōnibus, i. e., the Aquitanians. auxilia mittantur: there was little danger of this, on account of the lack of race sympathy between the Aquitanians and Celts; but Caesar probably knew nothing of this at the time. Galliam: i. e., Celtic Gaul, in the western part of which the main operations were to be carried on.

10. tribus: how large a force? See Int. 86.

11. quī . . . cūret, to see that these troops be kept away (from the

adulēscēntē classī Gallicisquē nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisquē pācātis regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetōs proficiscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

15

12. Erant ēiusmodī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārum XXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus,

Situation of the strongholds of the Veneti.

Brutus Albinus, one of Caesar's legati in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompeius. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed in Gaul by order of Antonius. 4

12. classis, -is, F., class, division; army, called out for duty; esp. fleet, including the marines. 5

Pictonēs, -um, M., a Gallic tribe, south of the Loire. 3

1. ēiusmodī [for ēius modī, a genitive of quality], of such a kind or sort, such.

situs, -ūs [sinō, let (be in a place or condition)], M., situation, site, position. 5

2. lingula, -ae [lingua, tongue], F., a little tongue, a tongue of land. 1

prōmunturium, -ī [prō-mineō, be prominent, project], N., headland, promontory. 1

3. aestus, -ūs, M., heat, boiling, surging; tide. minuente aestū, at ebb tide. *

4. bis, num. adv. [for duis, fr. duo, two], on two occasions, twice. 4

Veneti). *distinendam*: for this use of the gerundive see on I, 13, 2. *cūret*: for mode cf. I, 7, 10; 21, 4; 50, 7; II, 17, 2.

12. *classī*: where was it? See 9, 3. *classī, nāvibus*: for the case cf. I, 2, 5; 12, 18; II, 14, 7.

14. *cum primum*: as in II, 2, 4.

15. *eō*: Caesar probably visited the fleet first, then moved along the coast, laying siege to the towns in succession. After the distribution of troops described above, Caesar had left three legions and eight cohorts (see on II, 2, 2), supposing Galba to have joined his chief with his one legion. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar a force of

two legions and eight cohorts, or about 10,000 men, with which to operate against the Veneti.

1. *situs oppidōrum*: see map of the campaign against the Veneti, p. 264, small plan.

2. *extrēmīs lingulis*: for trans. cf. II, 8, 12. For the ending *-ulus* see on II, 30, 2. *prōmunturiis*: Compare the ending *-urium* (*-arium, -orium*) with the English ending *-ury, -ary, -ory*, in designations of place.

3. *pedibus, on foot*, i. e., by land. At high tide the low ground behind the towns was overflowed. *ex altō, from the deep (sea)*. *sē incitāvisset, had rushed in*.

4. *nāvibus*: sc. *aditum habērent*.

5 quod rursus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnatiō impediēbatur; ac sī
 quandō māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggre-
 re ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātis, suis for-
 tūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appulsō,
 10 cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant om-
 nia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rursus isdem
 oportunitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam
 partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus
 dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnis
 15 aestibus, rārīs ac prope nullis portibus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

5. **afflictō** (ad-), 1. [*freq. of affligō*, strike against, damage], *a.*, damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2

7. **quandō**, *adv.*, *indef.*, at any time, ever. 1

ex-trūdō, -ere, trūsī, trūsus [trūdō, thrust], *a.*, thrust or push out, shut out, drive away. 1

8. **mōlēs**, -is, *f.*, mass; massive structure; dam, pier, dike, mole. 1

9. **appellō**, -ere, pulī, pulsus, drive or force to; bring to or in, land. 3

10. **dē-portō**, 1. [portō, carry],

a., carry off or away, remove. 1

12. **oportunitās** (oppo), -tātis [opportūnus, fit], *f.*, fitness, convenience, suitability; fit time, favorable position or opportunity; advantage. *

13. **tempestās**, -tātis [tempus, time], *f.*, time, season; weather; *esp.* bad weather, storm, tempest. *

14. **dē-tineō**, -ēre, -uī, tentus [teneō, hold], *a.*, hold off or back; hinder, detain. 2

15. **rārus**, -a, -um, loose, thin; scattered, far apart; few. *

5, 6. **minuente aestū**, when the tide ebbs. For case cf. I, 2, 2; 25, 5; II, 2, 3. **utrāque rē**: both by high and low tide, making united effort impossible.

7, 8. **māgnitūdine**, *extent*. **operis**: explained by *extrūsō* etc. **extrūsō marī**, **hīs . . . adaequātis**: trans. by causal clauses: cf. II, 12, 14, 15. **hīs i. e.**, *aggere mōlibus*. Caesar's method of attack was to extend two parallel moles across the low ground towards the town. When these moles had nearly reached the walls,

the besiegers, taking advantage of low tide, completed them hastily, thus shutting the water out of the space between the dikes.

9. **māgnō . . . appulsō**: trans. by a principal clause and insert a connective.

10. **cūius rei** = *quārum*: a common circumlocution in Caesar. **facultātem**: see 9, 19.

12. **eō**: for case cf. II, 20, 4; I, 14, 1; 16, 18; 32, 9.

13. **partem**: for case cf. II, 16, 1; I, 26, 15; 3, 12.

14, 15. **summa**: construe with

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum *Description of their ships.* factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs
5 ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae, nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus

1. **namque** [nam, for + -que], *conj.*, for indeed, for; *more emphatic than nam.* 5

2. **carīna**, -ae, f., hull, bottom of a ship. 1

aliquantō, *adv.* [alius + quantus], in some degree, somewhat, a little. 1

plānus, -a, -um, even, level, flat, plain.

3. **dēcessus**, -ūs [dēcēdō, withdraw], m., withdrawal, departure; ebbing or fall (aestūs). 1

4. **prōra**, -ae, f., the fore part of a ship, prow. 1

ad-modum, *adv.* [modus, measure], up to the measure or degree; very much, very; *with num.*,

fully; *with neg.*, at all. *

ērigō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [regō, direct], a., lift or raise (up); *p. p. as adj.*, standing upright, high. 2

puppis, -is, f., stern or poop of a ship. 2

5. **fluctus**, -ūs [fluō, flow], m., flowing, billow, flood, wave. 4

ac(ad)-commodatus, -a, -um, fit, adapted to, appropriate. 1

6. **rōbur**, -oris, n., oak, oak timber. 1

7. **trānstrum**, -ī [trāns], n., crossbeam or timber; bench for rowers, thwart. 1

pedālis, -e [pēs, a foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. 1

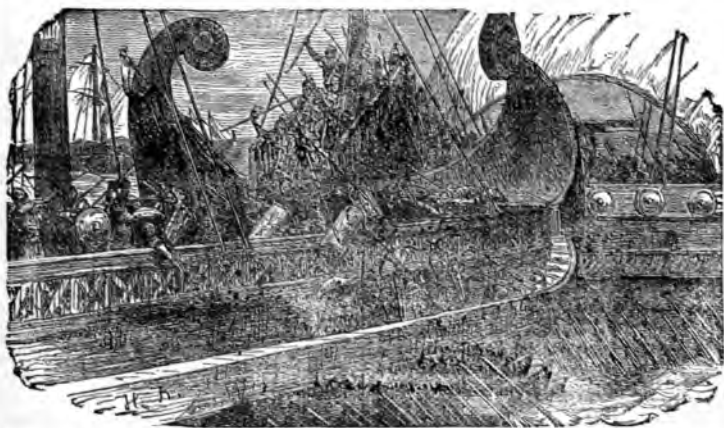
difficultās. **vāstō . . . portibus**: for case see on l. 7, 8 above.

1. **namque**: the superiority of the Veneti over the Romans in these waters is explained by reference to the construction of their ships.

2, 3. **aliquantō . . . nāvium**, (*were*) *considerably flatter than (the hulls of) our ships.* **quō facilius**, *to meet the shallows better at ebb tide.* **excipere**: lit., *to meet something coming, to withstand something.* The word belongs rather to *dēcessum* than to *vada*, with which a corresponding verb must be understood.

4. **possent**: for mode cf. I, 8, 7; 14, 14; II, 17, 17. **prōrae**, **puppēs**: see Int. 170.

6, 7. **tōtae**, *entirely.* How is the adj. used? Cf. II, 23, 9; 22, 6. **ad . . . perferendam**, *to withstand any violent shocks.* What does the phrase denote? Cf. II, 1, 13; I, 54, 8; 5, 8. **trānstra**: here the beams supporting the deck, not the rowers' benches, because the Veneti had no oarsmen. **pedālibus . . . trabibus**, (*made*) *of timbers a foot in thickness (in altitudinem).* For case of *trabibus* see A. 244, 2; B. 84; G. 396; H. 416, III; P. 405, c, Note.



cōnfixa clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter linī inopiam atque eius¹⁰ usūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vērisimile, quod tantās tempestātēs Oceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum his nāvibus nostrae classī eiusmodi congressus erat, ut unā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum¹⁵ praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illis

8. cōn-figō, -ere, fixī fixus [fīgō, fix], *a.*, fix, fasten or nail together; fasten. 1

clāvus, -i [claudō, close], *m.*, nail, pin, spike (*usually of metal*). 1

ferreus, -s, -um [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. 3

digitus, -i, *m.*, finger; *as measure of length*, an inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the thumb. 2

pollex, pollicis [polleō, be strong], *m.*, the thumb. 1

crassitūdō, -inis [crassus, thick], *f.*, thickness. 2

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor. *

9. fūnis, -is, *m.*, cable, rope. 4

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, fetter. 4

re-vinciō, -īre, vinxi, vinctus [vinciō, bind], *a.*, bind back or fast, fasten, bind. *

vēlum, -i, *n.*, covering, veil; sail; vēla dare or facere, set sail. 3

alūta, -ae [alumen, alum, used in tanning], *f.*, tanned leather, leather. 1

10. tenuiter [tenuis, thin], thinly, slightly, 1

linum, -i, *n.*, flax, linen, canvass. 1

11. vērisimilis, -e [vērum, truth +similis], like the truth; probable, likely. 1

12. ventus, -i, *m.*, wind. *

13. regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, guide, direct, control.

15. congressus, -ūs [congre-dior, meet], *m.*, meeting; hostile meeting, encounter, conflict. 1

pulsus, -ūs [pellō, strike], *m.*, stroke, beat: pulsus rēmōrum, rowing. 1

rēmus, -i, *m.*, oar. *

8. crassitūdine: for case cf. 4, 9: what takes the place here of the adjective? prō, instead of.

9, 10. pellēs ... cōnfectae, raw hides and thinly dressed leather (*served*) as sails. It has been suggested that the Veneti used sails of leather, so as to use them as tents when lying at anchor.

12. tantās ... ventōrum, so tempestuous a sea and such raging winds.

13, 14. regī nōn posse, could not be managed.

14. nostrae etc.: our fleet had a conflict of such a nature that it had the advantage merely in etc. classī: for case cf. I, 7, 10; 11, 13; 47, 15; II, 6, 10.

15. pulsū rēmōrum: the Gallic vessels were not propelled by oars.

16. reliqua, all other things. prō, such as.

essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim his nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē 20causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdebat, ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

Encounter of the fleets. The enemy's sail-yards are cut away.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iis

17. **aptus, -a, -um** [*p. p. of obsol. apō, fasten, fit*], fitted, suited, adapted: *illis aptiōra*, more favorable to their side. 3
 18. **rōstrum, -ī** [rōdō, gnaw, consume], *n.*, beak of a bird; mouth of an animal; beak or prow of a ship. 2
noceō, -ēre, -uī, n., injure, hurt. *
firmitūdō, -inis [firmus, strong], *f.*, strength, firmness, solidity. 2
 20. **cōpula, -ae** [cum + obsol. apō, fasten], *f.*, bond; grappling-hook; grapnel, hold-fast. 1
 21. **saeviō, -ire, -iī, -itus** [sae-

vus, raging], *n.*, rage; be fierce or violent. 1

22. **tūtō** [tūtus, safe], *abl. as adv.*, safely, securely. 3

23. **cautēs, -is** [akin to cos, cotis, whetstone], *f.*, a sharp or pointed rock, reef. 1

24. **ex-timēscō, -ere, timūi** [*incept. fr. timeō, fear*], be afraid or in a panic, fear much or greatly, dread. 1

3. **reprimō, -ere, pressi, pressus** [premō, press], *a.*, press or keep back, curb, check, restrain. 2

17. *his*: i. e., the ships of the enemy. For the case cf. I, 2, 4; *nostrae*: sc. *nāvēs*.

19. *facile adigēbātur*: turn into the active form in English: *it was not easy* etc.

20, 21. *accēdebat, ut, there was the additional (advantage) that*. What verbs does *ut* introduce? Explain their mode. *ventō*: the noun is employed instead of *eī* as *ventō sē dare, to run before the wind*, was a familiar nautical phrase. For similar repetitions cf. II, 19, 10; I, 43, 1, 2.

22. *cōsisterent tūtius*: for the reason, see line 2 above, *carinae* . . . *plāniōrēs*,

23, 24. *quārum* etc., *our ships had to dread peril from all these circumstances. nāvibus*: for case cf. I, 11, 15; II, 20, 1.

1. *expūgnātīs*: by the method described in 12, 6. ff.

2-4. *neque . . . posse, nor could they be injured*. For case of *iis* cf. *his* 13, 17. What voice is *nocērī*? Is it a trans. or intrans. verb? How are such verbs used in the passive? Cf. I, 22, 9. *exspectandam*: Caesar encamped on the heights of St. Gildas. *ubi*: join with *primum* and trans. like *cum primum*,

nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi con-
 vēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eō-
 rum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnatissimae
 profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis
 Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōni-
 busque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat,
 quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae insisterent. Rōstrō
 enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant: turribus autem excitātis
 tamen hās altitudō puppiū ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat,
 ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tela adigī possent
 et missa ab Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī
 rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtāe insertae affixaeque

6. **genus, -eris** [gen- in gignō, beget], n., descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. *

ōrnō, 1. adorn, furnish, equip: in p. p. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. 2

15. **prae-parō, 1.** [parō, prepare], a., prepare beforehand, provide. 3

falx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning-hook, falchion. *

in-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [serō, entwine], a., thrust in or into, insert. 1

af(ad)-figō, -ere, fixī, fixus [figō, fix], a., affix, annex, fasten to attach. 1

6. **armōrum:** including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

7. **portū:** see on 9, 24. The battle was fought in the Bay of Quiberon in full view of Caesar and his army. **nostrīs:** sc. *nāvibus* (cf. 13, 17) and for case cf. I, 1, 10; II, 2, 6; 9, 7.

8. **Brūtō, tribūnis, centuriōnibus:** constr. with *cōstābat*, l. 9.

10. **quid etc., what (they were) to do, or what plan of fighting to adopt.** **agerent, insisterent:** for mode cf. I, 12, 3. **rōstrō:** abl. of instrument,

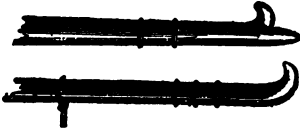
11. **nocērī:** sc. *nāvibus hostium* and for the voice and trans. see on l. 4. **cōgnōverant,** they knew. For the preteritive verb see on I, 19, 11. **turribus autem excitātis,** even though towers were erected. These *turrēs* were erected on the fore and hinder decks. When not in use they were taken down. Their object was similar to that of the fore-top in modern men-of-war, and like that they were often fitted with artillery.

13. **adigī possent:** like *adigēbātur* in 13, 19.

14. **missa:** and those thrown etc.

longuriis nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī ad ductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum
 20 omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsistere-
 ret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mili-
 tēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Cae-

16. longurius, -ī [longus], m., a long pole. 3
 ab-similis, -e [similis, like], un-
 like. 1
 fōrma, -ae, f., form, shape, ap-
 pearance. 4.
 mūrālis, -e [mūrus, wall], per-
 taining to a wall, mural. 3



Falcēs Mūrālēs.

17. antenna, -ae, f., sail-yard,
 yard-arm, sail. 3
 mālus, -ī, m., mast, pole, beam. 2
 dē-stinō, 1. [obsol. stanō = statuō,
 place], a., place or fasten down,
 secure, make fast, determine, des-
 tine, appoint. 3
 com-prehendō (prēndō), -ere, -dī,

- ēnsus [prehendō, grasp], a.,
 grasp or lay hold of on both
 sides, seize, catch, take; compre-
 hend, comprise. *
18. nāvigiūm, -ī [nāvīgō, sail],
 n., a sailing vessel, boat, craft;
 sailing, navigation. 3
 praerumpō, -ere, ruptus [rumpō,
 break], a., break off, tear away. 3
 19. abscidō, -ere, cidī, cīsus
 [caedō, cut], a., cut or lop off,
 tear off or away. 2
 necessāriō, adv., [abl. of necessā-
 rius], unavoidable, under com-
 pulsion. *
- concidō, -ere, cidī [cadō, fall], n.,
 fall down or together, collapse,
 fall. *
20. armāmenta, -ōrum [arma],
 n., implements, gear; esp. tackle
 or rigging of a ship. 2
 22. certāmen, -inis [certō,
 strive], n., strife, struggle, com-
 test, combat. 2

16. nōn absimilī etc. = formā
 nōn dissimilī fōrmāe etc. formā:
 for case cf. I, 6, 12. crassitudīne.
 mūrālium falcium: see Int. 164.
 These hooks saved the fleet from
 defeat, but Roman reluctance to
 admit even the possibility of failure
 does not allow Caesar to say so.
 his cum, whenever their ropes were
 caught by these (falcēs) and drawn
 toward (us).

17. comprehēnsī aductīque

erant, whenever the ropes, which . . .
 had been caught and pulled by these
 (hooks). Notice the pluperfect in-
 dicative after cum meaning when-
 ever and see A. 322 (last ex.); G.
 585; H. 521, II, 1; B. 288, 1, A.

19-21. quibus = fūnibus. cō-
 sisteret: for mode cf. I, 9, 3; 26,
 18. ūsus, control.

23. eo magis, the more. For
 the case cf. 12, 12, so also paulō,
 below.

saris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca supe-²⁵ riōra, unde erat propīnquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectis, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singu-^{They are de-} lās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs^{feated with} summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūrībus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperirētur auxilium,^{the loss of} fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam^{their ships.} partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent.

25. factum, -ī, [*p. p. of faciō, half noun, half participle, to be trans. according to the context*], *n.*, act, action, exploit, thing done, deed. *

26. dēspectus, -ūs, *m.*, view, outlook.

2. binī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [*bis, twice*], two each, two apiece, by twos. 5

ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [*ter, thrice*], three each, three apiece, three by three. 3

circum-sistō, -ere, -stetī or stitī,

a., stand, flock, gather or rally around, surround, hem in. *

3. trāscendō (trāssc-), -ere, -dī, [*scandō, climb*], *a.*, climb across or over into, board (*a ship*); surmount, excel. 2

7. malacia, -ae, *f.*, calm at sea. 1

8. tranquillitās, -tātis [*tranquillus, calm*], *f.*, calmness of mind or weather, serenity, stillness. 2

ex-sistō, -ere, -stitī [*sistō, cause to stand*], *n.*, stand or come forth, appear, arise, ensue. 5

24, 25. paulō fortius, a little braver than usual: for the meaning of the comparative cf. I, 14, 16; I, 48, 18; 20, 2.

1. cum: see on cum, 14, 16.

2. binae ac ternae, by twos or threes. Does the author mean that every Gallic vessel was thus surrounded, or only those that had been disabled? It is probable that the number of Gallic ships largely exceeded that of the Roman galleys. militēs: temporarily placed upon the Roman ships.

3. summā vī contendēbant,

kept striving with all their might. For the imperfect see II, 1, 3.

5. ei rei: this mode of attack, referring, like quod, to the statement militēs . . . contendebant.

6, 7. conversis . . . ferēbat, while they (the Veneti) turned their ships in that direction in which the wind was blowing. malacia: an unusual word (Greek), explained by the familiar (Latin) synonym that follows. The summer winds on the Biscay coast blow from the east or north-east, and a dead calm comes on about noon.

Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maximè fuit oportuna: nam singulas nostris consecratis expugnauerunt, ut perpaucæ ex omni numero noctis intervntu ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora ferè quartà usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

*The Veneti
surrender.
Caesar slays
their leaders
and sells the
rest into slav-
ery.*

16. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimæ confectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventus, omnes etiam gravioris ætatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eò conveniant, tum navium quod ubique fuerat in unum locum coegerant; quibus amissis, reliqui neque quò se reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dederunt. In quos eò gravius Cae-

10. cõn-sector, 1. [sector, freq. of sequor, follow], a., follow eagerly, pursue, chase. *

11. interventus, -us [veniõ, come], m., coming between, intervention, interposition. 1

terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil; in pl. earth, world: orbis terrarum, the world, all nations. *

12. usque, adv. [us = ubi, fr. ubi, where], all the way to, even

to, as far as, even, till. *

3. iuventus, -utis, f., the time or period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. 3

4. dignitas, -tatis [dignus, worthy], f., worthiness, merit; rank, dignity; position, importance. *

5. ubi-que, adv., in any place, everywhere. 1

10. singulas: i. e., naves Venetorum. The scattering of the Venetan vessels was unfortunate, because when the calm came on, they were too far apart to assist one another.

11. omni numero: how many? pervenerint: perf. subj. instead of the impf. to mark the actual completion of the act.

12. hora quartà: 10 a. m., if, as seems probable, the battle was fought near the autumnal equinox.

13. pugnaretur, since the battle was continued.

2. cum, tum (l. 5), not only... but also: used correlatively.

3. in etc., who were possessed of any discretion or respectability.

4, 5. consilii, dignitatis, navium: for case cf. II, 8, 8; 26, 15; 15, 10. navium quod... fuerat etc. = naves quae... fuerant (or quae naves... fuerant, eas)... coegerant.

6. quibus: including both men and ships. reliqui... habebant, the rest had not (a place) where they could retreat nor (did they know) how etc.

8. eò: as in I, 14, 1.

sar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū 10 necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēdidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius *Sabinus goes north among the Venelli and is threatened by them.* Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiis, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praerat Viridovix āc summam imperiī tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās cō- 5 gerat; atque hīs paucis diēbus Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, port-

9. vindicō, 1. [*vis, force or authority + dicō*], *a.*, assert authority, claim one's rights against; set free, deliver; avenge, punish, take vengeance upon. 3

11. necō, 1. [*nex, death*], *a.*, put to death, kill, murder. *

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, garland, chaplet; tiara, coronet, crown;

circle, crowd. 2

3. Viridovix, -icis, *m.*, a chief of the Venelli. 4

6. Eburovicēs, -um: see Aulerci. II, 34, 3. 2

7. auctor, -ōris [*augeō, increase*], *m.*, one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, originator, author. 3

9. quō: why not *ut*? Cf. 13, 3.
10. iūs lēgātōrum: referring to the treatment of the Roman officers; see 8, 7-11, and note 9, 9. senātū: the Veneti had no Senate in the Roman sense. Caesar uses a Roman term to designate a Gallic institution. reliquōs, *the rest*, evidently means all in his power, possibly the inhabitants of the capital, Daricoritum. It can hardly mean the whole nation. "The only naval power in Gaul that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul (Caesar) any more trouble." (Long).

11. sub corōnā vēdidit, *sold at auction*, the captives wearing chaplets of leaves to indicate that they were for sale, or, according to Aulus Gellius, that the seller gave no guaranty. The custom, however, was not observed in Caesar's time.

The auction was conducted by the *quaestor* and the buyers were the traders who thus supplied the slave market at Rome. See Int. 102, *mercātōrēs*.

1. dum geruntur: *while these things were being done*. For the tense see on I, 27, 8.

2. Sabinus, cōpiis: see 11, 9, 10.

3. hīs: the Venelli; for case of I, 2, 5.

4. summam: as in II, 4, 22.

5. exercitum: the regular force. cōpiās: a general levy of the allies: see Int. 176.

6. hīs paucis diēbus: after the arrival of Sabinus.

7. senātū: *i. e.*, the elders or chiefs: see note on 16, 10. quod . . . nōlēbant: the people had decided upon war, but the 'senators' would not ratify the decision.

ās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūxērunt: māgnaque
 praetereā multītūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum la-
 10 trōnumque convēnerat, quōsspēs praedandī studiumque bellan-
 dī ab agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabinus idōneō
 omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā
 eum duūm milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs
 cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hosti-
 15 bus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum
 militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem
 timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere
 audērēt. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multītū-
 dine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperiū

9. praeter-eā, *adv.* [eā *fr.* is], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *
- per-dō, -ere, didī, dītus [dō, give], *a.*, give over, ruin: *in p. p. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 2
- latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, freebooter, bandit, robber. 2
11. agricultūra, -ae [ager + colō, cultivate], *f.*, cultivation of the land, agriculture. *
13. prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring

- forth; draw up (cōpiās); prolong, protract. *
15. contemptiō, -ōnis, [contemnō, despise], *f.*, disdain, contempt. 4
16. nōn-nihil, *adv.* [nihil, in no respect, nothing], to some extent, somewhat. 1
- carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *a.*, pluck, pull away; pull to pieces, carp at, censure. 1
19. absēns, -entis [*pr. p.* of absum], absent, at a distance. *

9. undique ex Galliā = *ex omnibus partibus Galliae*. perditōrum, *desperate*. The natural result of the long continued war was to unsettle everything.

10. studium bellandī: see Int. 70. Are praedandī and bellandī gerunds or gerundives? What case and why?

11, 12. idōneō . . . locō, *in a place suitable in all particulars*. See Int. 129. According to Napoleon III, the camp was pitched on a hill about four miles east of Avanches, in the south of the Department of Manche. Notice the three

ablatives in juxtaposition: for rēbus cf. 8, 4; for locō cf. 12, 5; for castrīs (note the absence of *in*) cf. II, 30, 4; I, 49, 1.

13. duūm, *only two*. This contracted form for *duōrum* is found here only in Caesar. milium: *sc. passuum*. cōnsēdisset: on the other side of a little stream called the *See*, north of Sabinus' position.

16, 17. vōcibus, *talk*. tantam . . . praebuit, *manifested such an appearance of cowardice*. vāllum: see on 1, 19.

19. eō absente, *in the absence of*. Case of eō? What part of speech is summam?

tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā lēgātōꝝ dimicandum nōn existimābat.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnis praemiis pollicitatiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur, docet neque longius abesse, quā proximā nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem negōtiī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra irī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctatiō, perfugae cōfirmatiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui

Sabinus, by stratagem, induces them to attack the Roman camp.

20. aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just: aequō animō, with equanimity.*

2. callidus, -a, -um [calleō, be callous; know by experience], experienced, skilful, shrewd. 1

4. praemium, -i [prae-emō, buy or get before others], n., advantage, distinction, prize, reward. * pollicitatiō, -ōnis [polliceor, promise], f., promise, offer. 5

5. ē-doceō, 2. [doceō, teach], a., teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. 4

8. clam [cēlō, conceal], adv., se-

cretly, unawares. *

10. con-clāmō, 1. [clāmō, cry out], a., n., shout or cry out together. *

occāsiō, -ōnis [ob + cadō, fall], f., occasion, opportunity. *

bene [benus = bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully: comp. melius: sup. optimē. 3

13. cunctatiō, -ōnis [cunctor, delay], f., delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2

cōfirmatiō, -ōnis [cōfirmō, confirm], f., confirmation, assurance, evidence. 1

20, 21. lēgātō etc.: for trans. cf. 10, 10: how is dimicandum used here? For case of lēgātō cf. I, 11, 15.

2, 3. ex iis: connect with dēlēgit. auxiliī causā: see Int. 99.

4, 5. utī... trānseat: for the clause cf. I, 2, 4. quid... ēdocet, gave him his instructions. velit: for mode cf. I, 12, 8. prō, feigning

to be.

6. quibus, etc.: rumors of Caesar's lack of success (see 14, 2, 3) had probably reached Sabinus.

7, 8. neque... quā... ēducāt, and not later than the next night Sabinus would lead out etc.

11. iri oportēre: trans. by personal constr. rēs, considerations. Name the following appositives.

rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī,
 15 et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs
 rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex
 conciliō dimitunt, quam ab hīs sit concessum, arma utī ca-
 piant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut ex-
 plōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultisque collēctīs, quibus fossās
 20 Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

*The Veneti
 are defeated
 with great
 slaughter and
 forced to
 surrender.*

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab
 imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō
 cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatīi ad
 sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātique
 5 pervēnerunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat.
 Impeditīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera subitō
 duābus portīs ēruptionem fierī iubet. Factum est oportūni-

14. parum, *adv.* [parvus, little],
 little, too little, not enough, not
 very. 2

Veneticus, -a, -um, of or with the
 Veneti.

15. libenter [libēns, willing],
 willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 3

18. laetus, -a, -am [laetor, re-
 joice], joyful, glad, rejoicing. 1

19. sarmentum, -ī [obsol. sarpō,
 trim, prune], n., prunings, brush-

wood, faggot. 1

virgulta, -ōrum [fr. virgula,
 twig], n., a place of twigs, thick-
 et, copse; sprouts, cuttings of
 trees. 1

20. pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēt-
 tus [per + regō, direct], n., go
 on, continue, proceed, advance. 1

2. hūc, *adv.* [old form for hōc, fr.
 hic], to this place, hither, here. *

14. parum diligenter, *with too
 little care.* spēs . . . bellī, *the hopes
 (inspired by) etc.* They had not
 heard the result. See ch. 16.

16, 17. prius, quam . . . con-
 cessum, *until they had granted
 them permission.* Had the council
 not yielded to the wishes of the
 people, it would doubtless have suf-
 fered the same fate as had overtaken
 the senate (see 17, 7).

18, 19. ut . . . victōriā, *just as
 if victory were assured.* On the
 Abl. Abs. cf. 10, 5, hāc etc.

1, 2. ab imō, *from the bottom;*
 the neut. sing. of the superl. of
inferus, used substantively. For a
 like usage cf. II, 18, 2. The slope
 begins at the bank of the *See*. See
 on 17, 13. circiter: prep. or adv.?

3. quam minimum, *the least
 possible.* For *quam* cf. I, 3, 3.

5. cupientibus, (*and*) *as they
 were eager for battle.* Case of *cu-
 pientibus*?

6. onera: see 18, 19.

7. duābus portīs: the outline
 of the camp seems to have been

tāte locī, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs¹⁰ impeditōs integris vīribus militēs nostrī cōsecūtī māgnūm numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūrīō dēdidērunt.¹⁵ Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore Pūblius Crassus, cum Crassus, in Aquitania, is attacked by the Sottates. in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dic-

8. dē-fatigātiō, -ōnis [fatigō, weary], *f.*, a *wearying*; weariness, exhaustion, fatigue. 1

9. exercitātiō, -ōnis [exercitō, *freq. of exercoō*], *f.*, exercise, practice. *

10. tergum, -ī, *n.*, back, rear. *
vertō, -ere, vertī, *versus*, *n.*, turn, turn around or about: terga *vertere*, flee. *

13. ē-vādō, -ere, vāsī, vāsus [vādō, go], *n.*, go out, escape. 1

14. nāvālīs, -e [nāvis, ship], of

or pertaining to ships, naval. 2
16. alacer, -cris, -cre, active, eager, ready. 4

prōmptus, -a, -um [prōmō, give out, disclose], evident, manifest; prepared, ready, quick, prompt.

17. mollis, -e, soft, tender, yielding, inconstant. 2

18. mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought, purpose, determination. *

triangular (see Int. 129.) with the base of the triangle towards the Gauls and the gates at the angles. These facts have been ascertained by an examination of the remains of a Roman camp on this spot.

8. militum: the Roman soldiers.

10. ac . . . verterent, but fled at once. Like ac also trans. et and -que when they connect an affirmative proposition with a preceding negative.

14. Sabīnus: sc. certior factus est.

15. civitātēs: what tribes were

concerned in this revolt? See 17.

17, 18. animus here refers to natural impulse; mēns to a settled purpose based on the judgment; trans., as on the one hand the impulses of the Gauls are rash and inclined etc., so on the other hand their purposes are too inconstant and irresolute to bear up under misfortune.

1. Crassus: read 11, 6-9

2. ante: see I, 1, 2 text, where, however, the statement is simply that Aquitania was one of the three divisions of Gaul.

tum est, et regiōnum lātitudīne et multītūdīne hominū est
 tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in iīs lo-
 5 cīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius
 Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque
 unde L. Mallius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissis profūgisset,
 nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat.
 Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparā-
 10 tō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne, quae
 sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nō-
 minātīm ēvocātīs in Sotiatium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit.
 Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sotiatēs māgnīs cōpiīs coactīs equi-
 tātūque, quō plūrimū valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum
 15 adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equi-

4. **aestimō**, (-umō), 1. [**aes**, cop-
 per, money], *a.*, value, reckon,
 estimate, regard, consider. 4
 6. **Praecōnīnus**, -ī, [**praecō**, a
 herald], *m.*, see Valerius. 1
 7. **Mallius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile
 name: Lucius Mallius, proconsul
 in 78 B. C. 1
prō-cōnsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul,
 one who at the close of his consul-
 ship in Rome became governor of
 a province: one invested with the
 powers of a consul or military
 governor. 2
 8. **mediocris**, -cre [**medius**, the

- middle of], middling, ordinary,
 moderate. *
diligentia, -ae [**diligēns**, heedful],
f., heedfulness, pains-taking,
 care. *
 10. **Tolōsa**, -ae, *f.*, a town of
 Gallia Narbonensis, on the Gar-
 onne, the modern Toulouse. 1
Narbō, -ōnis, *m.*, a town of the Ro-
 man Province, now Narbonne. 4
 12. **ē-vocō**, 1. [**vocō**, call], *a.*, call
 forth or out, summon. *
Sotiatēs, -ium, *m.*, the most power-
 ful people of Aquitania.

2-4. **quae pars, ex ... aesti-
 manda**, a section which is to be re-
 garded as a third of Gaul. See Aquitania
 etc. I, 1, 21-23, and also note
 the relative size on the map and
 determine the correctness of Caesar's
 geographical knowledge.
 5. **paucis ante annis**: about
 22 years, 78 B. C. For the case cf. I,
 31, 36; 18, 26.
 8. **nōn ... adhibendam (esse)**,
 that he must take extraordinary
 care. For the figure in **nōn medio-**
crem cf. I, 15; II, 9, 1.

10. **Tolōsā, Narbōne**: see Int.
 62.
 11. **cīvitātēs, cities**, made up
 of a community of **cīvēs**. **hīs re-**
giōnibus i. e., Aquitania.
 12. **ēvocātīs**: see Int. 98. **in-**
trōdūxit: Crassus probably moved
 south from the rendezvous of Caesar's
 forces in the country of the
 Andes and crossed the Garonne into
 the territories of the Sotiates.
 14. **plūrimū valēbant**, as in
 II, 4, 13. Case of **plūrimum**?
 15. **prīmum**: adverb.

tātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostris subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotia- *They are over-*
tēs superiōribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius *come and sub-*
mit to Cras-
Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine *sus.*
imperātore et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce effi-
cere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōfectī vulneribus 5
hostēs terga vertēre. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō
Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatium oppūgnāre coepit. Qui-
bus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illi aliās
ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs
(cūius rei sunt longē peritissimī Aquitānī, proptereā quod 10
multis locīs apud eōs aerāriae strūctūrae sunt), ubi diligentīā

17. con-vallis, -is [vallis, valley],
r., an enclosed valley, basin, defile.

2. frētus, -a, -um, depending or
relying upon, confiding in.

4. adulēscentulus (adol-), -ī [ad-
olēscēns, a young man], m., a

a very young man, a stripling. 1
9. cuniculus, -ī, m., coney; bur-
row; tunnel, mine. 5

11. aerārius, -a, -um, [aes, cop-
per], of or for copper, copper. 1
strūctūra, -ae, f., structure, build-
ing; group of buildings, plant. 1

18. disiectōs, while scattered.
adortī: make a coordinate clause.

2. superiōribus . . . frētī, rely-
ing upon (confident because of) their
former victories (see 29, 5-7). For
the Abl. with frētus see A. 254 b 2;
G. 401 N. 6; H. 425 II 1 1) n;
B. 218, 3.

3-5. quid . . . possent: subj. of
perspicī; for the mode cf. 18, 5, ve-
lit; 14, 10; I, 12, 3. imperātore:
who? sine reliquis legiōnibus:
Crassus had only twelve Roman
cohorts. adulēscentulō: for the
termination cf. 12, 2; II, 30, 2.
For the case cf. 17, 12 locō; I, 2, 2.

6. vertēre: notice quantity of
the penult and tell where found.

7, 8. ex itinere: see on II, 12,
5. quibus . . . resistentibus: for
trans. cf. II, 12, 14. aliās . . .
aliās, at one time . . . at another.

9. ēruptiōne, cuniculīs: see
Int. 164, 165.

10. cūius rei, an art in which.
rei refers to the construction of
mines; for its position in the rela-
tive clause see on 9, 9; for its case
cf. I, 2, 14; 21, 10; 18, 8; 14, 5.
longē peritissimī: see on longē
8, 1.

11. aerāriae: mines of iron and
of copper are still worked in this
part of France. diligentīā, be-
cause of the watchfulness of our men.
For case cf. I, 18, 20; 14, 6; 2, 12.

nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in deditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetratā arma tradere iussi faciunt.

*Their chief
Adiatunnus,
with six hun-
dred followers
vainly at-
tempts to es-
cape.*

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrorum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperii tenēbat, cum de devōtis, quos illi soldūriōs appellat, quōrum haec est condiciō, uti omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iis fruuntur, quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cuius sē amicitiae devōvisset, morī recūsāret: cum his Adiatunnus 10. rēruptionem facere cōnātus clamōre ab eā parte munitiōnis

12. proficiō, -ere, feci, factus [faciō], *a., n.*, make progress, advance; profit, effect, accomplish. *

1. in-tendō, -ere, tendi, tentus [tendō, stretch], *n.*, stretch out or to, extend; direct *the eyes, ears, or mind*, be intent or absorbed, strive. 4

2. Adiatunnus, -i, *m.*, the leader of the Sotiates. 2

3. de-voveō, -ēre, vōvi, vōtus [voveō, vow], *a., n.*, vow away; consecrate; devote; *in p. p. as*

subst., a sworn follower. 3 soldūrii, -ōrum [Celtic word], *m.*, vassals, retainers. 1

5. commodum, -i [commodus, convenient], *n.*, convenience, advantage, privilege. *

fruo, frui, fructus sum [fruges, fruits of the earth], *a., n.*, enjoy, delight in, have the benefit of. 1

7. ad-hūc, *adv.* [hūc, hither], hitherto, thus far, as yet. 1

9. recūsō, 1. [causa, cause], *a., n.*, make cause against or objection to; decline, reject, refuse. *

12. nihil profici posse, *no progress could be made.*

14. faciunt, *they do so.*

1. atque, *now.* rē: what matter? omnium . . . animis, *when the attention of all our men was fixed.*

2. summam: cf. 17, 19.

3. soldūriōs: this was an institution similar to that of clientage among the Romans. The soldūrii lived on terms of intimacy and equality with their chief, wore the

same dress and ate at the same table.

4, 5. uti . . . fruuntur: relation to condiciō? commodis: for the case see on imperiō I, 2, 6.

6. quid: what kind of a pronoun?

7. ferant, cōnsciscant: sc. uti from line 4. sibi mortem cōnsciscant: for trans. see on I, 4, 11.

9. recūsāret: for mode cf. I, 3, 8; II, 35, 3. cum his: i. e. the retainers, a repetition from line 4; cf. II, 25, 13,

sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādē dēditiōnis condiōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversum dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae: inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitudine bellum gere-¹⁰re cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmāni

Crassus proceeds against other Aquitanian tribes. They assemble large forces and harass Crassus, who determines on immediate battle.

5

11. **vehementer** [*vehemēns, violent*], violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. *

2. **Vocātēs, -um, m.**, a people of Aquitania, south of the Garonne. 2
Tarusātēs, -ium, m., a Gallic people on the west coast of Aquitania. 2

5. **quōqueversum, adv.** [*abl. of quisque + versus, turned*], in every direction, every way. 1

11. **Sertōrius, -ī, m.**, a Roman gentile name: Quintus Sertorius, general of Marius in Spain against Sulla from 80 B. C. until assassinated by Perpenna, 72 B. C.

12. **tamen, notwithstanding** his attempted flight after surrender. eādē . . . condiōne: see 21, 14.

1, 2. **in finēs:** in what direction?

4, 5. **manū, art. paucīs . . . erat, in a few days after his arrival.** After the ablative of time "within which" the relative pronoun is almost equivalent to *postquam*. eō: the adverb, here = *ad id (oppidum)*: see on *quō* II, 21, 7, and cf. I, 51, 11; 42, 18. **ventum erat:** im-

personal (*it had been come by him, i. e., he had come*)

8. **citeriōris:** i. e. Tarraconensis. The affinity between the peoples on the northern and southern slopes of the Pyrenees has always been very marked.

10. **auctōritāte, prestige.**

12. **omnēs annōs:** i. e., during the war between Sertorius and the Sullan generals.

13. **cōnsuētūdine:** for case cf. II, 19, 4; 13, 12; I, 50, 1; 4, 2.

loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere
 15 instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās
 propter exiguitatem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et
 viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidiū relinquere, ob eam cau-
 sam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi suppor-
 tāri, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum exis-
 20 timāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium delātā,
 ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae
 cōstituit.

*Crassus ar-
 rays his
 troops. The
 Gauls remain
 in their camp,
 which he
 attacks.*

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiīs du-
 plicī aciē institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem con-
 iectis, quid hostēs cōsiliū caperent, exspectābat.
 Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī
 5 glōriam paucitatemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicitūrōs existi-
 mābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs com-

16. dī-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus
 [dis-, apart + dūcō], *a.*, lead in
 different directions, lead or draw
 apart, separate, divide. 2
 17. obsideō, -ēre, sedī, sessus
 [sedeō, sit], *a.*, sit in the way of,

obstruct, beset, besiege, block-
 ade. *

19. cunctor, 1. *n.*, delay, hesitate,
 be reluctant. 2

4. et-sī, *conj.* even if, although. *

14. loca capere, *to pick out
 and occupy suitable sites for camps.*

15. quod, *this*: explained by
 the preceding sentence and the fol-
 lowing infinitive clauses in apposi-
 tion.

16. nōn facile dīdūcī = *nōn pos-
 se didūcī. et, and yet.*

19, 20. in diēs, *from day to
 day*; used with expressions imply-
 ing proportion. nōn . . . dēcertā-
 ret, *he thought he must not delay to
 fight a decisive battle.* For the mode
 cf. I, 3, 20,

1, 2. primā lūce: as in I, 22,

1. duplicī aciē: see Int. 147. Cras-
 sus' force was much smaller than
 that of the Aquitanians. auxiliīs
 . . . coniectis: as a precaution
 against flight. mediam aciem,
*the center of the rear line, where they
 could be of assistance to the legion-
 aries in the front line.*

3. quid cōsiliū, *what plan.*
 For the case cf. 16, 4; II, 17, 9; I,
 31, 49.

6, 7. tūtius esse, *that it was a
 safer course*, explained by the fol-
 lowing. obsessīs . . . interclūsō,
*by obstructing the road and cutting
 off supplies.*

meātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potirī et, sī prop-
 ter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere
 coepissent, impedītōs in āgmine et sub sarcinīs adorirī
 cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ā ducibus prōductīs,¹⁰
 Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā
 Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs
 nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque
 omnium vōcēs audirentur, exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre,
 quīn ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus
 ad hostium castra contendit. 5

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complērent, alii multīs *The contest is
 tēlis coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque close and the
 dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn camp well de-
 multum Crassus cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministran- fended except
 at the decu-
 man gate.*

10. cōgitō, 1. [cum + agitō, put
 in quick motion; consider], a., n.,
 consider thoroughly or carefully,
 ponder, reflect; think, purpose,
 plan. *

3. dē-pellō, -ere, puli, pulsus
 [pellō, drive], a., drive from or

away, ward off. 4
 auxiliāris, -e [auxilium, aid],
 aiding, assisting, auxiliary: in pl.
 as subst., auxiliary troops, auxili-
 iaries. 1

4. sub-ministrō, [ministrō, wait
 upon] a., furnish, supply, afford,
 give. 3

9. impedītōs . . . sarcinīs, while
 hindered (by their crowded posi-
 tion), in the column of march and
 under their packs. sarcinīs: see
 Int. 118.

10, 11. prōductīs cōpiīs:
 trans. by a concessive clause. cas-
 trīs: for the omission of the prep.
 of. 17, 12. Notice the accumula-
 tion of ablatives and explain each.

12. opiniōne timōris: cf. 17,
 16.

14, 15. exspectārī . . . irētur,
 that they ought not to delay longer
 in going against the camp. For the
 mode see on I, 47, 8.

16. ad hostium castra: the
 only instance in the Gallic war of

an attack by the Romans upon a
 fortified Gallic camp; see Int. 185,
 186.

1. alii, alii, force when used
 correlatively?

2. vāllō, mūnitiōnibus: the
 second is more general than the
 first, covering all the parts of a
 regular fortification in the Roman
 fashion.

3, 4. quibus, in whom. For
 the case see on I, 53, 4. This state-
 ment explains Crassus' action in
 putting them in the center: see 24,
 2. subministrandīs: to the legion-
 aries fighting in the front rank: see
 on 24, 2.

5 *dīs et ad aggerem cēspitibus comportandīs speciem atque
opīniōnem pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōn-
stanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre
missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium cas-
trīs Crassō renūntiāverunt nōn eādē esse diligentīā ab
10 decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.*

*The Romans
capture the
camp. Most
of the enemy
are destroyed
in their flight.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut
māgnīs praemiīs pollicitatiōnibusque suōs excitā-
rent, quid fierī velīt ostendit. Illī, ut erat impe-
rātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relictāe in-
5 trītāe ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hos-
tium castrīs cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad
pūgnam intentīs celeriter ad eās, quās diximus, mūnitiōnēs per-
vērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōstitērunt
quam plānē ab hīs vidēri aut, quid rei gererētur, cōgnōscī posset.
10 Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātīs viri-

5. cēspes (caes-), -itīs [caedō, cut], m., a cut sod, turf. 3

7. timidē [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 2

8. circum (circu-) -eō, ire, ivī (ii), itus [eō, go], a., go or march around, traverse, visit. 4

4. in-trītus, -a, -um [terō, rub, wear], not worn or exhausted,

unwearied. 1

5. circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], a., lead or draw around.

8. prō-ruō, -ere, ruī, rūtus [ruō, rush down], a., rush forth; tear or pull down, overthrow, demolish. 1

9. plānē [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 2

5. ad aggerem, for an agger. The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. nōn timidē, fearlessly. This must have surprised the Romans; see 24, 12, opīniōne timōris. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

10. decumānā portā: see Int. 182. facilemque, but: see on 10, 10.

3. praemiīs: see Int. 114. excitārent: why subjunctive?

4. praesidiō castrīs: the Romans carefully guarded the camp as a place of refuge in case of defeat.

7. diximus: in 25, 10.

8, 9. prius, quam . . . posset, before they (hostēs) could clearly see them (Rōmānōs) or understand what was going on.

10. ab eā parte: the rear part of the camp.

29. Reliquis deinceps diibus Caesar silvas caedere instituit et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallō ad utrumque latas exstruebat. Incre-
dibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum
iam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur,
ipsi densiores silvas peterent, eiusmodi sunt tempestates con-
secutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur et continuatiōne
imbrium diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent.¹⁰
Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque in-
censis Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque,
reliquis item civitatibus, quae proximē bellum fecerant, in
hibernis collocavit.

*He ravages
their country
and quarters
his army for
the winter.*

1. **deinceps**, *adv.* [deinde, thence + capiō], next in succession, one after the other, in turn, successively. 5
caedō, -ere, cecidi, caesus, cut, kill, slay. 2
2. **im** (in-), -prūdēns, -entis [prūdēns, foreseeing], not foreseeing, off one's guard, imprudent, unwary.
4. **materia**, -ae, and **materies**, -em (*only in nom. and acc. sing.*)

[māter], *f.*, matter, materials of which anything is composed, timber dressed for building. *

7. **pecus**, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd: *esp. of small cattle, sheep.* *
9. **continuatiō**, -ōnis [continuō, make continuous], *f.*, continuance, succession. 1
10. **imber**, **imbris**, *m.*, a rain-storm, rain (*esp. sudden, heavy, or violent*). 4

2, 3. **ne quis impetus**, so that no attack.

4, 5. **materia**: the felled trees. **conversam ad hostem**, with their tops turned toward the enemy. **pro vallō**, to serve as a breastwork.

6. **celeritate**: Caesar had a number of excellent engineers (*praefecti fabrum*), among whom were Balbus and Mamurra. **con-**

fecto = caesō, cut away.

8. **ipsi**: the Gauls.

9. **intermitteretur**, stopped from time to time.

10. **sub pellibus**, in their tents, which were covered with hides (*pelles*).

13. **reliquis**: what tribes?

14. **collocavit**: *sc. eum, l. e., exercitum.*

BOOK IV.—THE CROSSING OF THE RHINE AND THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

“At the close of Caesar’s third campaign”, says Merivale, “the only members of the Gallic race who retained their liberty were the mountain tribes of the Pyrenees and the amphibious wanderers of the Waal and the Scheldt”. But the limits of his ambition had not yet been reached, and the campaign of 55 B. C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were for the first time carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel.

The Germans themselves gave the occasion for the first of these enterprises. The Usipetes and Tencteri, two tribes that dwelt on the right bank of the lower Rhine, being hard pressed by the Suebi, a tribe from the interior of Germany, betook themselves in a body across the river into the territory of the Menapii, and there established themselves. Nothing shows more clearly the low state of Gallic patriotism than the indifference with which the nation regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some of the tribes even went so far as to welcome them, and to propose to make common cause with them against their enemy, Caesar. Encouraged by this, the Germans spread into the adjoining regions and had advanced as far south as the country of the Eburones when Caesar appeared in their front.

After some negotiations terminating in an act of seeming treachery on the part of the barbarians, Caesar, with a treachery as deep as their own, attacked without warning the unwieldy mass of men, women, and children, and drove them with great slaughter into the Rhine. Survivors of the German host, mainly a body of cavalry that had not been present at the battle, succeeded in making their escape across the Rhine, and took refuge among the Sugambri, who refused to give them up at Caesar’s demand, asserting their own independence of Roman authority. This refusal and the entreaties of the Ubian tribe, the sole ally of Rome on the eastern bank of the Rhine, determined the Roman general to pass that stream. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge, over which he led his whole army, and then went in search of the Suebi and Sugambri. **They, however** had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests

at the first intimation of his purpose. Thither he did not choose to follow them, but contented himself with ravaging the land of the Sugambri that lay in the vicinity of the river. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and broke down his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

The project of an invasion of Britain had previously taken shape in Caesar's mind. There was fame to be earned by being the first Roman general to land in that little-known region. Under the impulse of this desire, he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition. Taking only two legions, he sailed from Portus Itius, modern Boulogne, crossed the strait, and effected a landing near Deal, despite the efforts of the Britons. Throwing up fortifications near the sea, he awaited the arrival of his cavalry before undertaking to penetrate into the interior. Meanwhile, his fleet, lying in the exposed roadstead, was shattered by a storm which came in conjunction with an unusually high tide. He therefore decided to return to the mainland, and having repaired his fleet and repulsed an attack of the islanders on his camp, he sailed back to Gaul a few days before the autumnal equinox. After another and successful effort to subdue the obstinate Menapii and Morini, Caesar placed his legions in winter quarters among the Belgae and repaired to Italy.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, A sketch, pp. 226-233. - (Harper's ed.)

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. v. (Ancient Classic Series.)

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 308-313.

MERIVALE: History of the Romans under the Empire. vol. i. pp. 365-383.

NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. chap. VII.

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus, Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germāni et item Tencterī māgnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō
- 5 Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs hābere dicuntur.
2. Cn., abbreviation for the praenomen Gnaeus. 4
- Pompēius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name, esp. Cn. Pompeius Magnus, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B. C. 5
- Usipetēs, -um, m., a German tribe beyond the Rhine below Cologne

*which, forced by the encroachments of the Suevi to leave its home in eastern Germany, settled near the mouth of the Rhine. **

3. Tencterī, -ōrum, see Usipetēs. *

5. Suēbī, -ōrum, m., a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *

1. hieme: the crossing took place later than Jan. 1., 55, the date of the induction of the consuls into office. quī: for agreement see on quod, I, 38, 3.

2. Cn. Pompēiō, etc. The two triumvirs were elected consuls in pursuance of the arrangement made the year before at Lucca; see Int. 28. They had been joint consuls once before (70 B. C.); see Int. 10, 11.

4. nōn longē ā marī: probably near Xanten or Cleves, where

there are gaps in the heights at whose foot the river formerly flowed. This was not far from the branching off of the Vacalus (Waal) from the Rhine.

7. Suēbōrum gēns est, etc. Caesar here gives a brief account of the Suebi, apparently to emphasize the importance of resisting Germanic incursions. The word *Suebi* seems to mean *nomads*, or *wanderers*, a term probably suggested by their mode of life, as detailed here and in Tacitus.

tur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causā ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt; hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agrī apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco colendi causā licet. Neque multum frumentō sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, cum a pueris nullo officio aut

*Character
and customs
of the Suebi.* 10

9. quotannis [quot, how many, every+annus], adv. every year, yearly. 4

11. maneō, -ēre, mansi, mansus, n., stay, remain, continue, abide. *

vicis (gen. no nom.), change; only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alternately, in turn. 2

2. re-maneō, -ēre, -si, -sus [maneō, remain], n., stay or remain behind, remain. *

14. se-parō, 1. [se = sine, without, aside], sever, separate: in p. p. as adj., separated, marked off. 2

15. colō, -ere, colui, cultus, till, cultivate; inhabit, dwell; honor, cherish; observe. 2

16. lac, lactis, n., milk. 3

vivō, -ere, -vixi, victum, n., live. 3

17. venatio, -onis [venor, hunt], f., hunting, the chase, hunting expedition. 3

cibus, -i, m., food. 3

8. pagos: often used in the sense of a district; here it seems to mean the individual tribes making up the loose confederation known as the Suebi.

11, 12. illos, those (engaged in war). hi, illi: for use and trans. see A. 102, a, b; G. 307, 4. R. 1; H. 450, 2; B. 246, 1.

13. ratio atque usus, instruction and practice in. The verb intermittitur is singular because the two nouns express the single idea of equipment for war.

14. agrī: individual ownership of land is not usual among uncivilized peoples. Tacitus tells us that the Germans raised corn only and not much of that. apud eos: the fact stated was equally true of the Germans in general. anno = uno anno.

15, 16. neque multum frumentō, etc. The civilized Romans, on the other hand subsisted largely on grain foods. The statement emphasizes the barbarous nature of the Germans. maximam partem, to a very great extent. lacte atque pecore, on milk and meat (lit. herds). The abl. follows vivere as it does the dep. uter etc.

17. sunt in . . . venationibus, are devoted to the chase. quae res, a practice which. For the position of res cf. III, 21, 10; 9, 9; it is subject of alit and efficit l. 20. Notice that et occurs five times in this sentence: the first three (ll. 17, 18) are correlative, (both) . . . and . . . and, the last two (l. 20), not only . . . but also. genere, from the character. What kind of an ablative?

18, 19. cum . . . faciant, since,

disciplinā assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciant,
 20 et virēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit.
 Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locis frigidis-
 simis neque vestītūs praeter pellis habērent quicquam, quā-
 rum propter exiguitātem māgnā est corporis pars aperta, et
 lavārentur in flūminibus.

*Their com-
 merce and
 cavalry tac-
 tics.*

2. Mercatōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae
 bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō
 ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentis,
 quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant
 5 pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud
 eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne

19. disciplina, -ae [*contr. of disci-
 pulina, fr. discipulus, learner*], *r.*, instruction, training, drill,
 discipline. *

as(ad)-suēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -fac-
 tus [suēscō, be accustomed
 + faciō], accustom, habituate,
 inure.

20. immānis, -e [*old Lat. ma-
 nus = bonus, good*], out of pro-
 portion, huge.

21. frīgidus, -a, -um [*frīgus*,
 cold weather], cold. 1

22. vestītus, -ūs [*vestiō, clothe*],
m., clothing, garments.

24. lavō, -āre, (-ere), lāvī, lau-
 tus (lōtus), *a., n.*, wash: *in pass.*,
 bathe. 1

3. dēsiderō, 1. *a.*, crave, yearn,
 long for, desire; miss, lose.

4. dēlectō, 1. [*freq. of deliciō*,
 entice, delight], *a.*, allure; delight:
in pass., delight or take pleasure
 in. 1

impēnsus, -a, -um [*p. p. of impen-
 dō, weigh out, expend*], expen-
 sive, high; great. 1

6. dēfōrmis, -e [*fōrma, form*],
 misshapen, deformed, unsightly;
 debasing, disgraceful. 2

*having been accustomed from boy-
 hood to no service or training, they
 do nothing at all against their will.*
 officiō, is an ablative of means.

20. immānī etc.: cf. I, 39, 4, *in-
 gentū māgnitūdine. māgnitūdine:*
 for case of. I, 6, 12; III, 13, 8.

21. in . . . addūxērunt, *have
 brought them into such training.*

22. vestītūs quicquam, *any
 clothing.* For the genitive cf. II, 8,
 8; 17, 9.

1. mercatōribus est: for case
 cf. I, 7, 10; II, 6, 10. magis eō.

*etc., more that they (the Suebi)
 may have (persons) to whom they
 may sell what they have taken in war,
 than because etc. ut: introduces
 habeant l. 2.*

2, 3. Notice the four subjunc-
 tives: for cēperint cf. II, 2, 7; I, 8,
 7; for vēndant I, 3, 8; 6, 2; for
 habeant I, 3, 5; I, 22, 11; for dē-
 siderent see A. 321, R.; G. 541. R. 1;
 H. 516, II, 2; B. 286 1 b. The necessary
 negative is implied in 'more
 than.' quin etiam, *moreover.*

4. parant: the subject is Gallī.

5. pretiō: for case see on I, 13, 9.

summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut 10 inertius habētur, quam ephippiūs ūti. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adire audent.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam ^{Their neighbors the Ubii.} lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē signīficārī māgnū numerum cīvitatū suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter mīlia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, 5 quōrum fuit cīvitas ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Ger-

8. dēsiliō, -īre, siluī, sultus [saliō, leap], n., leap from or down, alight, dismount. *
9. vestīgium, -ī [vestīgō, trace out], n., trace, track, footprint; spot, place; point, moment, instant. 4
10. turpis, -e, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful. *
11. iners, ertis [ars, art, skill], unskilled; inactive, shiftless. 1 ephippium, -ī, n., horse-cloth, riding-pad, caparison; housing, trappings. 5
12. ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephip-

pium], caparisoned (as a horse-man), using housings or pads. 1 quamvīs, adv., as you will, however (much). 1

1. laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation, renown, popularity. *
5. Ubiī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on the east bank of the lower Rhine, near Cologne. *
6. flōrēns, -entis [flōrēō, flower], flowering, blooming; flourishing, prosperous. 3
- captus, -ūs [capiō, take], m., taking, seizing; power of comprehension, capacity. 1

7. summī . . . labōris, so that they are (capable) of the severest toil. For the case (here in predicate) cf. II, 30, 11; 27, 12; 15, 13.

8. pedibus, on foot.

9. ūsus, occasion.

10. eōrum mōribus, in their eyes. For the case cf. III, 23, 13; II, 13, 12; I, 4, 2.

11. habētur, is esteemed. ephippiūs: the ancients rode without stirrups.

12. quamvīs paucī, however few.

1. pūblicē, for the state. quam: for its use cf. III, 19, 3; I, 3, 3.

4. ūnā ex parte: i. e., on the east side of the territory of the Suebi. mīlia . . . sexcenta: measuring from the eastern frontier of the Suebi (ā Suēbis). The width of this waste strip is much exaggerated.

6. fuit, was, referring to the period previous to their being defeated by the Suebi. ut est captus Germānōrum, according to the German standard.

mānōrum, et paulō sunt eiusdem generis ceteris hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propīnquitātem Gallicis sunt 10 mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitūdinem gravitatemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vētīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The expelled German tribes dispossess the Menapii on the Rhine.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencetērī, quōs suprā diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multis locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt: quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant et ad 5 utramquē rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterritī ex iis aedificiis,

7. hūmānus, -a, -um [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, refined, cultivated. 2
 9. ventitō, 1. [freq. of veniō, come], n., keep coming, be wont to come, resort. 3
 11. amplitūdō, -inis [amplus, large on both sides], f., wide extent, size; importance, consequence. 3
 gravitās, -tātis [gravis, heavy], f., heaviness, weight; power,

dignity. 2

13. humilis, -e [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject. *

4. Germānia, -ae, f., Germany, including the country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea. *
 triennium, -ī [trēs + annus, year], n., period of three years, three years. 1

7. eiusdem . . . ceteris = ceteris Germānis.

8. multum = saepe.

10. mōribus: for case see on officiō 1, 13. bellis experti: the participle expresses a concession to the cum . . . potuissent clause, which is also concessive. Trans: in spite of (having often attempted) many attempts in numerous wars.

12. vētīgālēs: i. e., they paid tribute on account of their defeat.

13. multō humiliōrēs redēgē-

runt, reduced them to a much lower condition.

1. in eādē causā, in the same condition of subjection to the Suebi.

2. suprā: in 1, 2.

4. triennium: for case cf. I, 3, 12; II, 16, 1. ad Rhēnum: i. e., to the vicinity of the stream.

6. aedificia, vicōs: see on I, 5, 4 and 5.

7. multitudinis: according to a later chapter, 480,000 persons.

quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium¹⁰ neque clam trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūsus revertērunt atque omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitātū cōfectō insciōs inopināntesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs cer-¹⁵ tiōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāvērunt. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs

Caesar distrusts the inconstancy of the Gauls.

8. dē-migrō, 1. [migrō, move, migrate], *n.*, move from or away, emigrate, remove. 8

12. sēdēs, -is [sedeō, sit], *f.*, seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 5

simulō, 1. [similis, like], make like or similar; feign, pretend. 2

14. in-scius, -a, -um [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, unconscious, unawares. 2

16. metus, -ūs [metuō, fear], *m.*,

fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension. *

re-migrō, 1. [migrō, move], *n.*, move or go back, return. 2

1. infirmitās, -tātis [in-firmus, not strong], *f.*, weakness, fickleness, inconstancy. 3

3. mōbilis, -e [contr. for mobilis, *fr.* moveō, move], movable, changeable, inconstant, hasty. 1

8. trāns: i. e., east. cis, west. Caesar is speaking from the standpoint of Gaul. habuerant: before the arrival of the two German tribes.

10. vī contendere, to force their passage.

12, 13. reverti sē, that they were returning. Why Infin.? viam prōgressī, after marching. viam: for the case see A. 238; G. 333 2; H. 371 2, (1); B. 176 4.

14. insciōs inopināntēs: trans. by a clause with *while*.

18. fieret: for mode cf. I, 19, 18; II, 12, 2.

19. eōrum = Menapiōrum.

20. cōpiis, resources.

1. infirmitatem: for the fact see II, 1, 11; III, 10, 7.

3. nihil etc., that they must not be trusted at all.

committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumstiat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, prōnūntiāre cōgant. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti, dē summīs
 10 saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō poenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rumōribus serviant, et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Caesar learns of the preparations of the Germans, and plans for war.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae

5. viātor, -ōris, m., traveller. 1
 8. prō-nūntiō (nūnciō), 1. [nūntiō, announce], a., announce or set forth, publish; tell, relate, report. *
 9. auditiō, -ōnis [audiō, hear], f., hearing; hearsay, report. 2
 10. poeniteō (pae-), 2. repent, be sorry: *impers.*, it repents, one regrets or is sorry. 1
 11. necesse, *indecl. adj.* [nē + cēdō, yield], unyielding; una-

- voidable, indispensable, necessary. *
 in-certus, -a, -um [certus, determined], uncertain, indefinite, vague, untrustworthy. *
 serviō, 4. [servus], a., n., be a slave, be subservient, follow, heed. 2
 12. fingō, -ere, finxi, fictus, a., form, shape, devise, invent. 3
 2. mātūrē [old *abl.* of mātūrus], *adv.*, early, speedily. *

4. Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, characteristic of Gallic habits. For the Gen. see A. 214, d; G. 366, R. 1; H. 401; B. 203, 1, 5.

5. utī etc., this result clause (in app. with hōc, cf. I, 4, 4) contains eight subjunctives. Of these four (cōgant l. 5, quaerant l. 6, circumstiat l. 7, and cōgant l. 9) depend upon utī l. 5. For the other four (audierit and cōgnōverit l. 6, veniant and cōgnōverint l. 8) cf. III, 21, 5 possent; I, 12, 3; II, 20, 10; I, 20, 21.

7. vulgus: subject of circumstiat and cōgant l. 9: why the difference of number in these words?

8. quāsque = et quās.

9. his . . . auditiōnibus, by such facts and reports.

10, 11. quōrum eōs . . . est, of which it is necessary that they should repent on the spot (= at once). For the cases of quōrum and eōs see A. 221 b; G. 377; H. 409, III; B. 209. plērique: i. e., mercātōrēs. ad, according to.

12. ficta respondeant, shape their answers.

1. quā . . . cōgnitā: for trans. of II, 12, 14, 15. graviōrī, beyond his control.

2. bellō: for case of III, 17, 3; II, 27, 5; I, 2, 5. mātūrius,

fore suspicātus erat, facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātīōnēs ab nōn-
nūllis cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs, uti ab Rhē- 8
nō discēderent, omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore parā-
ta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius vagābantur et in finēs
Eburōnum et Condūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs,
pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea, quae
cōgnōverat, dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvīt eōrumque animīs 10
permulsīs et cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō bellum cum
Germānis gerere cōstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectis, iter

4. **suspīcor**, 1. [suspīciō, sus-
pect], *a.*, mistrust, suspect. *

5. **invītō**, 1. *a.*, invite, summon,
urge. *

10. **dis-simulō**, 1. [simulō, make

like], *a.*, make unlike; disguise,
dissemble. 1

11. **per-mulceō**, -ēre, -sī, -sus
(-tus) [mulceō, stroke, soothe],
stroke gently; soothe, calm, ap-
pease. 1

earlier in the year. Caesar often anticipated the movements of his foes and prevented their success by his celerity; see Int. 52. **ad exercitum**: where were its winter quarters located? See III, 29, 12, and map of Gaul.

3, 4. **proficiscitur**: it is probable that in accordance with his custom (see Int. 34.) he had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul. **ea . . . facta (esse)**, that those things had been done: explained by the following clauses.

5, 6. **ab Rhēnō discēderent**: i. e. to penetrate the interior of the country. **fore parāta**: the infn. depends on a verb of saying implied in *missās lēgātīōnēs esse*.

7, 8. **lātius**: i. e., they no longer confined themselves to the territory of the Menapii west of the Rhine. **et in finēs . . . pervēnerant**: the course of the Germans was south along the valley east of the Mosa (Meuse). **quī** refers to *Con-*

drūsōrum only. **clientēs**: see on I, 4, 6.

9. **prīncipibus ēvocātis**: this *concilium* was probably called at Samarobriua (Amiens). In the early part of the Gallic war Caesar called such meetings occasionally to test the feelings of the chieftains or to demand their assistance. In the second period, meetings were regularly held in the spring and fall, at which the proconsul administered justice, and arranged the details of the civil and military affairs of the province.

10, 11. **animis . . . cōfirmātis**: the personality of Caesar was one of the strongest sources of his success: see Int. 26 and 58. **equitātū**: each state was bound to furnish its quota of cavalry: see Int. 100. Caesar had 5,000 cavalry in this campaign.

1. **comparātā**: by requisitions upon the tribes represented at the conference at Amiens.

in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānōs audi-
He is met by German envoys. Their address. ēbat. A quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abes-
 set, lēgātī ab hīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit orātiō:
 6 Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre ne-
 que tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armīs contendant,
 quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus trādita, quī-
 cumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec
 tamen dīcere, vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā
 10 Rōmānī velint, posse iis utilēs esse amicōs; vel sibi agrōs at-
 tribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sē-
 sē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortalēs
 parēs esse possint; reliquū quidem in terrīs esse nēminem,
 quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus

7. quī-cumque (-cunque), quae-
 cumque, quod-cumque, *indef.*
rel. pron. [cumque, ever], who-
 ever, whatever, everyone who,
 everything that. *
 9. ēiciō, -ere, iēci, ictus, cast

- or drive out, expel. **
 10. utilis, -e [ūtor, use], useful,
 profitable, serviceable. 3
 11. possīdō, -ere -sēdī, -sessus,
 a., take possession of, occupy,
 seize. 1

2. loca, locis: for the repeti-
 tion cf. II, 18, 1; I, 29, 3; 16, 10.
 iter . . . coepit: northeast from
 Amiens, past the old camp on the
 Sabis through Tongres to Maes-
 tricht where he crossed the Meuse
 and marched down its right bank.

3. quibus: sc. locis.

4. ab hīs: i. e., the Germans.

5. Germānōs etc.: put the
 speech into the direct form in both
 English and Latin. neque . . . in-
 ferre, had not taken the initiative in
 making etc.

6. tamen . . . contendant, and
 yet they did not refuse, if assailed,
 to use their weapons. quā is less
 courteous than quōminus which is
 more commonly employed after re-
 cūsāre. For the mode after quā

see on I, 3, 20, and cf. III, 23, 20.

7, 8. quīcumque etc.: Eng. or-
 der, resistere (iis), quīcumque
 etc. dēprecārī, beg off.

9. ēiectōs domō: see 1, 5.

12. ūnīs, alone.

13. reliquū nēminem, no
 one besides. The energy of this
 haughty speech is enhanced by the
 omission of the subject sē with the
 Infin. dīcere, vēnisse, posse; by
 the omission of conjunctions; and by
 the emphatic arrangement of words,
 as nēminem. Its tone of superior-
 ity recalls the speech of Divico, I,
 13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.

1. quae vīsum est, what seemed
 best. quae is the obj. of respondere
 understood. What is the subj. of
 vīsum est? sed marks the contrast

fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliam remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in Galliam vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus considerare, quorum sint legati apud se et de Suebōrum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

He demands that the Germans withdraw from Gaul.

9. Legati haec se ad suos relaturōs dixerunt et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trans Mosam

They try to gain time. Caesar refuses.

4. tueor, -eri, tuitus (tutus) sum, a., look or gaze at, watch, regard, guard, protect. *

grain], a., fetch or get grain, forage. *

3. propius, compar. adv. [prope, near], nearer. *

Ambivariti, -orum, m., a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse. 1

6. frumentor, 1. [frumentum,

Mosa, -ae, m., the Meuse or Maas a river of Belgic Gaul. *

between the first part of Caesar's reply, which he does not think it necessary to insert, and the conclusion (*exitus*) containing his demands. *sibi esse posse, he could have.*

2, 3. *sibi*: for case cf. 2, 1; I, 7, 10; II, 15, 10. *amicitiam*: a form of alliance between the Roman state and foreign powers. It bound each of the parties not to molest the friends or give aid to the enemies of the other. It was different from the form of treaty called *societas*, which was an alliance for offensive or defensive purposes. *verum, reasonable.*

7, 8. *apud se querantur, were*

with him to complain. de Suebōrum iniuriis: see 3, 10-13. hoc: i. e., ut eos finibus suis recipiant.

2. *post diem tertium, on the third day, i. e., the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.*

3. *propius se, nearer them.* For the Acc. see on I, 46, 2. *castra moveret: see Int. 140.*

4. *se*: for case cf. III, 6, 10; II, 31, 9; I, 23, 11.

5. *diebus*: for case cf. III, 20, 5; I, 31, 36; 18, 26.

6. *trans Mosam: i. e., to the west side of the stream.*

missam; hōs expectārī equitēs atque ēius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Sources and course of the Meuse and Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius ab eō milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum in-
- 5 fluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lēpontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediōmātricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars māgnā ā feris bar-

7. mora, -ae [moror, delay], *r.*, delay. 4

8. inter-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], *a.*, place or put between, insert, interpose. *

1. prō-fluō, -ere, flūxī, [fluō, flow], *n.*, flow forth or along, issue, proceed. 1

Vosegus, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges mountains, west of the Rhine. 1

3. Vacalus, -ī, *m.*, the Waal, a branch of the Rhine, near its mouth. 1

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Batavians, a Celtic people inhabiting Insula Batāvōrum; capital Lugdunum, the modern Leyden. 1

5. Lēpontiī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic

people among the Alps between St. Gothard and Lake Maggiore.

7. Mediōmātricēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum) *m.*, a Gallic people between the Vosges and Moselle about modern Metz. 2

Tribocī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um) *m.*, a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Strasburg. 2

citō, 1. [freq. of cieō, put in motion], *a.*, put in quick motion; hasten, incite. 1

8. dē-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus [fluō] flow from or apart, separate, divide. 1

9. in-gēns, -entis [in, neg. + gēns, race, kind, lit. not of the kind *t. e.* out of proportion], enormous, huge, vast, great. 3

7, 8. hōs expectārī . . . interpōnī: in view of Caesar's undoubted respect for the German cavalry, this reason may well have weighed strongly with him.

1. ex monte Vosegō: more correctly the plateau of Langres, north of the Cote d'or, which unites the Cevennes with the Vosges.

2. parte quādam receptā, receiving an arm.

3. insulam efficit: with the north arm of the Rhine and the

North Sea.

4. eō, *i. e.*, the Vacalus. LXXX the distance from the present confluence of the Waal and Meuse to the North Sea is much less than eighty miles; but a careful study of the old water courses of the Rhine has made it clear that these streams formerly united their waters farther east, near Battenburg.

6. longō spatiō, for a long distance.

7. citātus, with a swift current,

barisque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus¹⁰ atque ōvis avium vīvere exīstimantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohiberet, sibi que ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī: quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūreiūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar¹⁰ eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābatur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessū-

At Caesar's approach the Germans again seek delay and gain a truce.

10. piscis, -is, m., a fish, *collectively*, fish. 1

11. ōvum, -ī, n., an egg. 1
avis, -is, f., a bird. 1

13. aquātiō, -ōnis [aquor, get water], f., getting or bringing water. 1

11. ōvis avium: a favorite article of food with the Hollanders of the present day, who dwell along the Zuyder Zee. piscibus, ōvis: for case see on 1, 16. multis capitibus: inexact, according to good authorities, who claim that in Caesar's time the Rhine had but two mouths.

2. ut erat cōstitutum: see 9, 2.

3. in itinere congressī: in the forenoon of the third day: see Int. 143.

5. antecessissent: see Int. 141.

7. quōrum sī, and if their. For

trans. of the relative cf. II, 29, 5; 13, 4; I, 27, 2; 14, 4.

8, 9. eā . . . ūsūrōs (*esse*), that they would avail themselves of those terms which were proposed by Caesar (8, 6). condiciōne: for case cf. I, 5, 10; 20, 7.

10. trīduī spatium: this was too brief a time in which to do what they proposed. daret: what mode in the direct form? Cf. III, 8, 19; I, 35, 10; 7, 20.

12. equitēs eōrum: see 9, 7.

13. aquātiōnis causā: Caesar was approaching a small stream now called the Niers,

rum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī con-
 15 venīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cōgnōsceret. Interim ad
 praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī
 nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserent-
 tur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

*They treacher-
 ously attack
 and rout the
 Roman caval-
 ry.*

12. At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōn-
 spēxērunt, quōrum erat quīnque milium numerus,
 cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habē-
 rent, quod iī, quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōn
 5 dum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum
 paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtīs erat ab
 hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt;
 rūsus resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt,

14. frequēns, -entis, constant, regular; repeated, common, frequent; numerous, crowded, in great numbers. 3
 15. postulātum, -ī [postulō, demand], n., demand, claim, requirement, request. 4
 16. quo-ad, adv., as long as, as

far as; till, until. 4

3. octingenti, -ae, -a [octō+centum], num. adj., eight hundred. 3
 6. indūtiae, -ārum, [indu=in+eō, ire], f., cessation of hostilities, truce, armistice. 2

14. hūc: i. e., to the camp by the Niers. quam: for force cf. 3, 1. frequentissimī: Caesar's purpose seems to have been to get as many of the chiefs as possible into his power. venīrent: like *daret* above, line 10.

16, 17. quī nūntiārent, *men to give orders*. For the Subj. cf. I, 7, 10; II, 17, 2. For the omission of the antecedent cf. I, 1, 2; II, 27, 2; I, 21, 4; 17, 2.

18. accessisset: for mode see on *dum*, I, 7, 18.

2. quōrum . . . milium: a double Gen. depending on *numerus*. In such a case the governing noun is usually between the genitives.

3. amplius octingentōs equitēs: before nouns of quantity *am-*

plus and *plus* often do not influence the construction. So we may say in English 'more than 800' or '800 and more.' Contrast the use in I, 15, 15. octingentōs: both Caesar and Tacitus bear witness to the efficiency of the German cavalry; the latter in fact mentions the Tencteri by name. Still it seems improbable that, with all their valor, the German cavalry would venture to attack a force more than six times their own number. Caesar seems to throw upon them the blame of the attack in order to justify his subsequent action. habērent: for the mode cf. I, 14, 16; III, 7, 4.

4. iī, quī ierant: see 9, 6.

8. resistentibus: sc. *nostrīs* fr. line 5. cōnsuētūdine: see 2, 7,

suffossis equis complūribusque nostris dēiectis reliquōs in fugam coniecērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius 10 fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōspectum āgminis nostrī vēnis- sent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quat- tuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitate suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frā-15 trī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit: cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptis cecidis- set, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul ani- madvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque inter-20 fectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs au-

0. suffodiō, -ere, fodī, fos-
sus [fodiō, dig], a., dig under,
stab or pierce underneath. 1

13. septuāgintā, indecl. num
adj., seventy.

11. vēnissent: for mode cf. I, 19, 13.

12, 13. quattuor et septuā-
gintā: a heavy loss in view of the
small number of the enemy; see
Int. 152.

14. amplissimō genere nātus,
*descended from a very illustrious
line.* genere: for the case see A.
244 a; B. 84; G. 395; H. 415 II;
B. 215. rēgnum: monarchy was
an exception in Gaul in Caesar's
time, most of the states being dem-
ocratic in form of government.
The kings were elected and their
power was not absolute. Caesar
sought to revive monarchy in Gaul
as an offset to the power of the no-
bility and priesthood.

15. amīcus: see on I, 3, 13.
The same title was conferred upon
states with which Rome had con-

cluded the form of treaty called
amicitia: see on 8, 2.

16. interclūsō: trans. by a rel-
clause.

1. hōc factō proeliō: the re-
sult of this engagement made it
clear that little dependence could
be placed upon the Gallic cavalry
in case of a general battle. A bad
effect would be produced upon the
disaffected Gauls unless a brilliant
victory followed. Caesar accord-
ingly decided to attack the Ger-
mans without inquiring too closely
into the causes of the cavalry en-
gagement. lēgātōs etc.: in the
conference which had been arrang-
ed for the next day; see 11, 14.

2, 3. condiciōnes: stated in
11, 5. ab iis, by those: for case

Caesar determines on decided action and detains German envoys.

diendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābā-
tur ab iīs, quī per dolum atque insidiās petita
pāce ūltrō bellum intulissent; expectāre vērō, dum
5 hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, sum-
mae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmi-
tāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis
essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil
spatiū dandum existimābat. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus et cōnsiliō
10 cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūg-
nae praetermitteret, oportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē
ēius diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulatiōne ūsī Germānī
frequentēs omnibus pīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs
ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, suī pūrgandī

6. dēmentia, -ae, [dē-mēns, out of one's mind], *r.*, madness, infatuation, folly. 1

10. quaestor, -ōris [quaerō, seek], *m.*, a quaestor, an officer in charge of the public revenues, or the finances of the army. *

commūnicō, 1. [commūnis, common], *a.*, make common, communicate, impart, share. *

11. praeter-mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, send or let go by; let pass, overlook. 3

12. māne, *adv.*, in the morning. 3
perfidia, -ae [per-fidus, faithless], *r.*, treachery, falsehood, dishonesty, perfidy. *

simulatiō, -ōnis [simulō, make like], *r.*, simulation, pretence, deceit. *

see A. 232 note; H. 388 note; B. 189, 1, a.

4. expectāre etc., that to wait . . . was (a sign of) the utmost folly. Having determined to fight, right or wrong, Caesar's reason for engaging at once was a good one. The advantage to be gained by an immediate attack evidently weighed more with him than the possibility that he might be wrong in attacking at all.

5, 6. augērentur: for mode see on 1, 7, 13; cf. the mode with *quod* 11, 18. dēmentiae: for the case see on 5, 4: what is here the subject of *esse*? Cf. I, 17, 8; 10, 3; 7, 11. infirmitāte: a consideration of *reat weight just then, in view of*

the disaffection among the Gauls forming the allied contingent in his own army, a symptom of which was the flight of the cavalry.

10. lēgātīs, quaestōre: see Int. 94, 95. nē quem etc., not to let a day for fighting go by.

11. rēs accidit: it was hardly an accident. Caesar himself had ordered them to return. quod, *inasmuch as*.

12. perfidiā: observe how Caesar multiplies his charges of faithless conduct.

13. frequentēs: cf. *frequentissimi*, 11, 14.

14. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

causā, quod contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium prīdiē commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendō impetrarent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinēri iussit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, āgmen subsequi iussit.

20

14. Acie triplici institutā et celeriter VIII milium itinere cōfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid ageretur Germāni sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti, et celeritate adventūs nostri et discessū suōrum, neque cōsiliū habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum

17. gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, n., be delighted, rejoice. 1

6. adversus, prep. with acc.,

against. 1

7. an, conj. used in second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. *

14-16. simul—simul: used to denote the simultaneous occurrence of unlike things; at once—and also. sui pūrgandi, of freeing themselves. See on III, 6, 3: is pūrgandi gerund or gerundive? Give gender, number and case of sui, and reason for each. atque, contrary to what. For use cf. I, 28, 17; II, 6, 4; III, 28, 6. ut etc.: to obtain whatever (lit. if anything) they could in the way of a truce by means of deceit.

17. quōs . . . gāvīsus: because the Germans without their leaders would be less capable of resisting him. retinēri: does Caesar's action here differ materially from that of the Veneti (see III, 16, 9, 10) which he punished so severely? illōs: not necessary after quōs but emphasizes the condition of the ambassadors and Caesar's immediate course.

1. acie triplici: see Int. 145. The legions probably marched in column of cohorts (see Int. 140) until the vicinity of the enemy was reached, when they deployed into line of battle.

3. quid ageretur, what was going on. For mode cf. I, 12, 3. possent: for mode cf. I, 19, 13.

4. omnibus rēbus, by the whole state of affairs; explained by the following ablatives.

5. suōrum: i. e., principum et māiōrum natū, 13, 13.

6, 7. spatiō datō, and because time was not afforded. perturbantur etc., they were in great perplexity, (not knowing) whether it were better to . . . or . . . or etc. -ne, an, an: for the use of the particles in Double or Alternative questions see A. 211; G. 460; H. 353; B. 162 4. praestāret: imperfect, because perturbantur is a historical present,

timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī
 prīstinī diēi perfidiā incitatī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō
 10 quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs resti-
 tērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commī-
 sērunt: at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque (nam
 cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant)
 passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitā-
 15 tum mīsit.

*The Germans
 flee with great
 loss.*

15. Germānī post tergum clamōre auditō
 cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīs-
 que militāribus relicētīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad
 cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dē-
 5 spērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen prae-

9. ir (in-) -rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [rumpō, break], a., break in or into, storm. 5
 14. passim, adv. [passus, p. p. of pandō, stretch out], hither and thither, in every direction. 1
 2. abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectus

- [iaciō, hurl], a., throw away or down, cast aside, abandon. *
 4. cōnfluēs, -entis [cōnfluō, flow together], m., a flowing together, confluence. 1
 5. praecipitō, 1. [praeceps, headlong], a., throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. 2

9. quō locō = in castrīs Germānōrum.

11. carrōs: impedimenta: see I, 26, 6-10.

14, 15. ad quōs . . . mīsit: the cold-blooded cruelty of this order is almost incredible and has left an indelible stain upon Caesar's fame. When the proposal was made in the Roman Senate to proclaim a public thanksgiving for this victory Cato declared that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Germans, in order to avert from Rome the wrath of the gods for his perfidious act done in her name.

1. Germānī: those in the camp who were resisting the Romans.

clāmōre: the cries of the women and children.

4. cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī: see on 10, 4. Rhēnī here means the *Vaalus* (Waal) the southern branch of the Rhine, connecting it with the Meuse. The scene of this battle is by some placed at Coblentz in the angle between the Moselle and the Rhine. It is more satisfactory on the whole to follow the inference from the text and the local topography, that the battle took place near Goch on the Niers and that the routed Germans fled north to the Waal. reliquā, further.

5-7. reliquī . . . periērunt: probably an exaggeration. ❧

cipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppres-
sī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis
vulnerātis ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capi-
tum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar
iīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit.¹⁰
Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs
vēxāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. Hīs Cae-
sar libertātem concessit.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multīs dē Caesar re-
solves to cross
the Rhine. causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseun-
dum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod cum vidēret Germā-
nōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque
rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegent, et posse et audere
populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam,
quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam
suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam
trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē

7. per-eō, ire, ii (ivī), itus [eō,
go], n., go through, pass away,
be destroyed, perish. 4

1. Germānicus, -a, -um [Germā-
nus, German], of or pertaining

to the Germans, German, Ger-
manic. 1

3. iūstus, -a, -um [iūs, right], in
accordance with law or right,
lawful, righteous, reasonable,
valid, just. *

praecipitāvērunt, *plunged head-
long.* ad ūnum, *to a man.*

8. ex . . . timōre, *after the fear;*
ex is used in a temporal sense, but
may be freely translated: *relieved*
from.

10. discēdendī potestātem fē-
cit: what light does this action
throw upon Caesar's real belief with
respect to the charges he made
against these chiefs?

11, 12. quōrum . . . vēxāve-
rant: such as the Menapii, Ambi-
varitī and possibly the Eburones

and Condrusi.

13. libertātem, *permission* (to
remain).

3. illa, *the following.*

4, 5. suis rēbus, *for their own*
possessions. cum intellegent,
on perceiving (since they would per-
ceive).

6. accessit: the subject is the
subst. cl. *quod . . . recēperat.*

8. suprā: see 9, 5. comme-
morāvī: see on *dēmōstrāvimus*, II,
1, 2.

10 trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum
Haughty re- iis coniūnerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs
sipy of the Su- mīssisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque
gambri to his bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rō-
messenger. mānī imperium Rhēnum finīre: sī sē invitō Germānōs in
 15 Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam
 esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī
 autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīse-
 rant, amīcitiā fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrā-
 bant, ut sibi auxiliū ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs
 20 premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reipūblicae
 prohibērētur, exercitū modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi
 ad auxiliū spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tan-
 tum esse nōmen atque opiniōnem eīus exercitūs Ariovistō

10. Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. 5
 14. finīō, 4. [finis, limit], *a.*, limit, bound; determine, appoint; end, finish. 3
 15. cūr (quōr=quārē), *interrog. adv.*, why? for what reason? 4
 17. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um [trāns+Rhēnus], beyond or across the Rhine; *in pl.* as subst.,

- the people across the Rhine. 3
 20. occupātiō, -ōnis [occupō, seize, occupy], *f.*, seizing, occupying; occupation, business, engagement. 2
 21. trāns-portō, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry over, convey across, remove, transport. *
 23. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, king of the German tribe, Suebi. *

10. in finēs: see map. They must have swept around in the rear of Caesar's army.

13. dēderent: object of *postulārent*. For the omission of the conjunction cf. III, 11, 3; 5, 11. *respondērunt*: give the direct form of their answer in both Latin and English.

14. sē (also suī, line 15) refers to the subject of the dependent verb, i. e. to Caesar and not to the subject of the main verb, *respondērunt*.

15, 16. suī . . . Rhēnum, *that*

anything across the Rhine belong to his (military) authority or (civil) jurisdiction. suī agreeing with *imperiī*, and understood (*suae*) with *potestātis*. *imperiī, potestātis*: dependent upon *esse*, not *quicquam*, cf. 5, 4. *postulāret*: for mode see on I, 40, 11.

17. ūnī, *alone*.

18. amīcitiā: see on 8, 2. ōrābant: the envoys from the Ubiī were then in camp: see 8, 7.

20. premerentur: for mode cf. I, 16, 17; 23, 9; II, 11, 17.

21. trānsportāret: for mode cf. I, 7, 20.

pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ūltimās Germanōrum nātiōnes, utī opiniōne et amicitīā populī Rōmānī²⁵ tūtī esse possint. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, *Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.* Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinē, rapiditatem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis intervāllō

5. rapiditās, -tātis [rapidus, swift], *f.*, swiftness. 1
8. tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, beam, piece of timber. 2.

sēsqui-pedālis, -e [sēsqui, (*fr. semis*, qui) more by a half + pēs, foot], of a foot and a half eighteen-inch. 1

2. Rhēnum trānsire: probably at Bonna (Bonn), so as to meet the wishes of the Ubii (see 16, 18) and to be as near the Sugambri as possible. The bridge must have been over a quarter of a mile long. The time of its construction is placed by Rüstow, between the 12th and the 21st of June. nāvibus for case cf. I, 3, 20; 53, 7; II, 10, 7.

3. satis tūtum: the boats were probably small and could carry but few soldiers each. Broken up into so many small portions, the fighting power of the army would be greatly reduced and the enemy could more effectively oppose the landing. In case of defeat, the hazard of the retreat would be greatly increased.

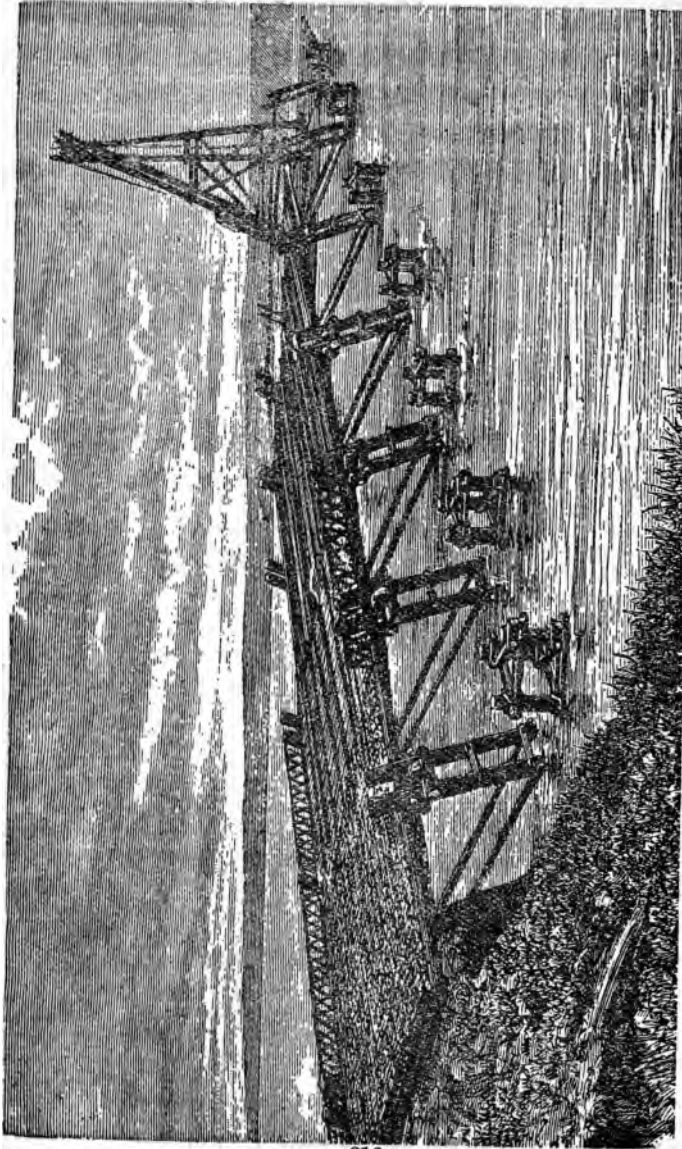
4. dignitātis esse, *worthy of his own prestige* etc. For the genitive cf. 16, 16. What is the subject of *esse*? If he depend-

ed upon the Ubii to help his army across, the effect upon the Germans would be much less than if he devised his own means of crossing. The very construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4, 5. etsī... prōpōnēbātur, *although the difficulty of making a bridge was represented to him as very great.* summa: in predicate with the verb. id contendendum etc., *that he ought to strive for this* (i. e. *ut pontem faceret*) or *else not* etc.

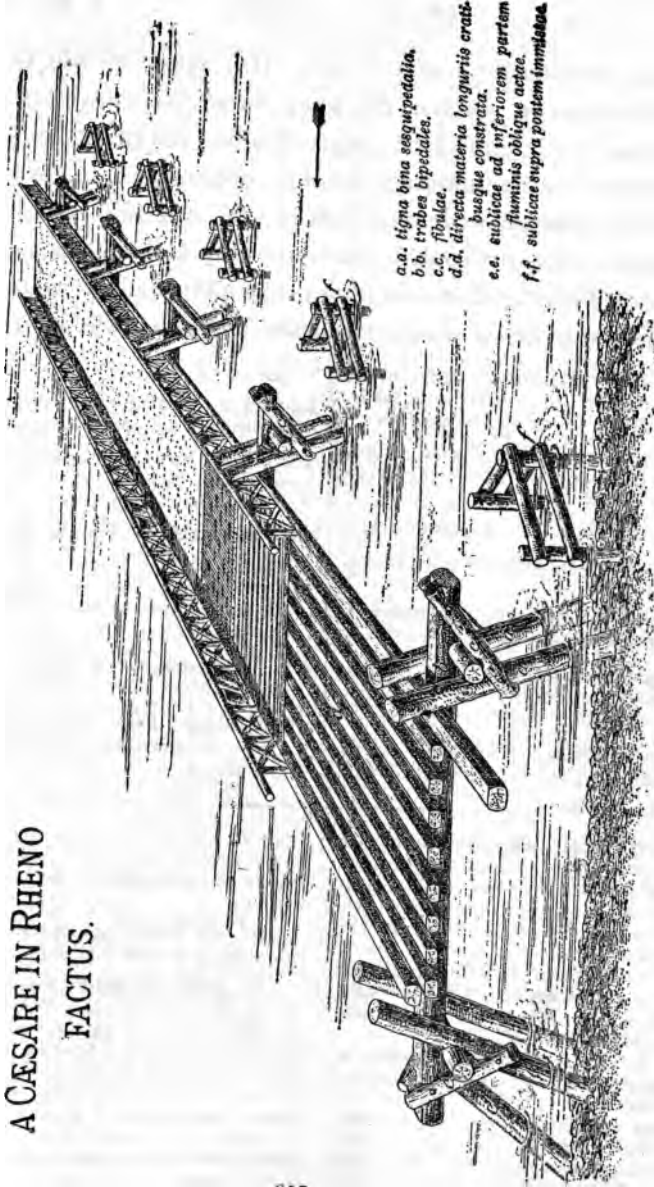
8. bīna, *in pairs.*

9. dīmēnsa: i. e., longer or shorter according to the depth of the river where they were driven into its bed. The average depth of the river at this point is about 16 feet. For the use of the participle cf. I, 11, 10.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE.
(From the Museum de St. Germaine.)

PONS
A CÆSARE IN RHENO
FACTUS.



- a.a. tigna bina sesquipedalia.
 b.b. trabes bipedales.
 c.c. fribulae.
 d.d. directa materia longioris crasti
 busque constricta.
 e.e. sublicae ad inferiorem partem
 fluminis oblique actae.
 f.f. sublicae supra pontem immixtae.

10 *pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōni-*
bus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn
publicae modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastī-
gātē ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, hīs item
contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūcta intervāllō pedum XL
 15 *ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis con-*
versa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus trabibus
immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūctūra distābat, binīs

11. *im (in-)mittō, -ere, misī, missus, a., send or let into, let in or down, insert, introduce. 5*

dē-figō, -ere, fixī, fixus [figō, fix], a., fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. 3

fistūca, -ae, f., beetle, pile-driver. 1

12. *publica, -ae, f., pile, stake, palisade. 3*

dērēctē (dir-) [dērēctus, straight], adv., straight, directly, exactly. 1

perpendiculum, -ī [per-pondō, weigh carefully], n., plummet, plumb-line. 1

prōnē [prōnus, inclined], in an inclined position, sloping down-

wards. 2

fastigātē [fastigātus, sloping], sloping, in a sloping direction. 1

14. *XL, here for quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quadrāgintā], forty each, forty. 2*

16. *in-super, adv. [super, above], above, on the top, from above. 2*

bi-pedālis, -e [bis, twice + pēs], of two feet, two feet in length, thickness, etc. 1

17. *iūctūra, -ae [iungō, join], f., a joining, joint, fastening. 1*

distō, -stāre [dis- apart], n., stand apart; be apart, removed, or separated. 5

10. *inter sē iungēbat: he joined together, by means of braces. This method of construction permitted the use of lighter timbers, which presented less surface to the current.*

11. *dēfixerat, adēgerat: for the mode see on III, 14, 17. nōn etc., not vertical (dērēctē ad perpendiculum) like a pile.*

13. *ut . . . prōcumberent, so as to slope according to the flow of the stream.*

14. *duō: sc. tigna (with which contrāria agrees). Another double pile was driven into the bed of the river forty feet below the first and*

inclined toward it so that the tops of the two were about 25 feet apart, which would be the width of the bridge.

15. *ab inferiōre parte: (sc. flūminis), i. e., down stream.*

16. *haec utraque: the corresponding double piles. They were connected by a beam 25 feet long and two feet thick whose ends were let in (immissis) between the tigna filling the space exactly (cf. I. 9, pedum duōrum) and resting upon cross-ties. A pair of braces (binis fibulis) ran from each double pile to the beam.*

utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sēsō incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōnster-nēbantur; ac nihilō sēcūs sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item sēsō suprā pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nā-

18. utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, both], on both sides. 5

fibula, -ae [*contr. of figūbula fr. figō*, fasten], *f.*, a fastening, clasp, brace, pin. 1

disclūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus [claudō, shut, close], *a.*, shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. 2

20. aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. *

21. artē [artus, narrow, tight], *adv.*, in narrow compass, closely, tightly.

il (in-) ligō, 1. [ligō, bind], tie or bind on, attach, fasten.

dērēctus, -a, -um (dir-) [dērigō, straighten], direct, straight.

22. iniciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus

[iaciō, hurl], *a.*, throw or cast into or upon, put or place on; put into, inspire, inject.

con-texō, -ere, texui, textus [texō, plait], *a.*, plait, weave or bind together, unite, connect.

crātis, -is, *f.*, wicker-worker, a hurdle; in war, fascines.

cōn-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus [sternō, strew], *a.*, strew over, cover, thatch.

23. sēcūs, *comp. adv.*, less: nihilō sēcūs, none the less.

24. obliquē [obliquus, slanting], in a slanting direction, obliquely.

26. truncus, -ī, *m.*, stem, stock, trunk.

18. ab extrēmā parte, at each end of the beam. quibus, refers to haec, line 16. disclūsīs, kept apart by the beam.

19. in contrāriam partem revinctīs, braced in opposite directions by the fibulae.

20. ea rērum nātūrā: i. e., the relation of the various parts of the structure to each other.

21. illigāta: sc. tigna. haec i. e., the piers described above. It is estimated that there were about fifty of these in the bridge.

23. sublicae: shores to brace the whole pier.

24. obliquē: driven in at a greater angle of inclination than the double pile so that its top was fastened to the latter. prō ariete, acting as a buttress.

25. vim flūminis exciperent: i. e., these shores reinforced the resisting power of the whole bridge. aliae: sc. sublicae: they were detached from the bridge so as to sustain all the force of trees, boats, etc. which might be swept down by the current.

vēs dēicendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

The army crosses into the country of the Sugambri who withdraw.

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns institui coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus iis quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

He ravages their country.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsis frūmentis succīs sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iis auxilium suum pol-

10. ex-portō, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry out or away, export. 1 sōlitūdō, -inis [sōlus, alone], *f.*, loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, desert, wilderness. 2

2. suc-cidō, -ere, cidī, cisus [sub + caedō, cut], *a.*, cut from beneath, cut through or down, fell. 3

27. dēiciendī operis, for the purpose of throwing down the work.

28. neu . . . nocērent, and that they might not etc. pontī: for the case of I, 2, 4; III, 14, 3.

1. diēbus decem, quibus, within ten days from the time when, or in ten days after: see on III, 23, 4. The actual time used in the construction of the bridge was probably much less: see on 17, 2. coepta erat: for the voice see on I, 47, 3.

3. partem, ends. praesidiō: in a "bridge-head" or entrenchment, enveloping the end of the bridge: see II, 5, 18—20.

6. amicitiam: see on 8, 2. pe-

tentibus: trans. by a clause, and when etc.

8, 9. fugā comparātā: without awaiting the completion of the bridge. hortantibus iis, urged by those (lit., those urging them). quōs . . . habēbant: mentioned in 16, 6—10. It is probable that the survivors of the massacre (see note 15, 5) also fled to the Sugambri.

10, 11. sōlitūdinem ac silvās = sōlitūdinem silvārum. For the figure of speech see on I, 31, 45.

2. vicīs . . . succisis: "The consequence must have been that in the next winter many Germans died of cold and hunger" (Long).

licitus, si ab Suëbīs premerentur, haec ab iis cōgnōvit Suëbōs, posteāquam per explorātōrēs pontem fieri com- The Suëbi pre-
pare resist-
ance. 5
perissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in om-
nēs partēs dimississe, uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs,
uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī
arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenirent: hunc esse
dēlectum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suëbī obtinē- 10
rent: hic Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcer-
tāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit omnibus rēbus
iis cōfectis, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exer- Caesar re-
crosses into
Gaul.
citur cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret,
ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diē- 15
bus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptis satis et ad laudem
et ad ūtilitātem profectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit
pontemque rescidit.

5. **posteāquam** (**posteā quam**),
adv. [**posteā**, afterwards], after.*

11. **hic**, *adv.* here, in this place;
(of a place just mentioned), there,
in that place. 4

15. **obsidiō**, -ōnis, [**ob-sideō**, sit

at, besiege], *v.*, siege, investment,
blockade; peril, oppression. *
liberō, 1. [**liber**, free], *a.*, make or
set free, release, deliver. 5

17. **ūtilitās**, -tātis [**ūtilis**, use-
ful], *v.*, usefulness, utility, advan-
tage, service. 2

5. **fieri**, *was being made.*

6, 7. **nūntiōs dimississe uti dēmigrārent**, *had sent messengers (to urge them) to leave.*

8, 9. **dēpōnerent, convenirent**: in the same constr. as **dēmigrārent**, above. **hunc**: *sc. locum.*

10. **delectum etc.**, *as this (place) had been selected almost exactly the central point of the lands etc.*

11. **hic, ibi**: both words refer to the same place.

14, 15. **ut ... liberāret**: for the *ut* clauses cf. II, 31, 9; 9, 12; 2, 7; I, 48, 6; 30, 8. The moral effect

of this military demonstration was no doubt considerable. During the whole of the next year's campaigning on the Rhine frontier, the Germans could not be induced to cross the stream.

15. **obsidiōne**: the Ubii could not be driven from their homes; yet they were, so to speak, in a state of siege.

16, 17. **satis profectum (esse)**, *that enough had been accomplished.* Give the principal parts of the verbs from which we get **profectum** and **profectum**. **ad laudem**: *i. e.*, for the honor of Rome.

He plans an expedition to Britain. 20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris 6 inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsui fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset, et genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō 10 adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus insti- 15 tūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrum nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

1. *exiguus, -a, -um* [exigō, *drive or weigh out*], *weighed out exactly*; scanty, short, small, meagre, limited. *
9. *in-cōgnitus, -a, -um* [cōgnōs-

cō, learn, know], not ascertained, unknown. 2
 temerē, [cf. *temeritās*, chance], *adv.*, by chance, rashly, blindly. 4

1. *exiguā . . . reliquā*: the ablative absolute is concessive and the sentence contains besides a formal concessive clause, *etsi . . . hiemēs*. Cf. 3, 10, and trans.: *although only a small part of the summer was left, in spite of the fact that the winters are early (mātūrae) because etc.*

4, 5. *quod hostibus . . . intellegēbat*, because he knew that assistance was rendered from thence to our enemies. *tempus annī*: cf. *exiguā aestāte*, line 1, above.

6. *māgnō . . . fore*, it would be of great advantage to him. For the case cf. I, 18, 28; 25, 6; II, 20, 8; 30, 9, 10.

7. *si adisset, if he should (mere-*

ly) visit. For mode and tense see on II, 9, 12.

9, 10. *temerē illō adit, incur the risk of going there*. *mercātōrēs*: the trade was controlled by the Veneti (see III, 8, 3), the traders usually avoiding the land of the Belgae for the reason stated in I, 1, 8. *iis ipsis = mercātōribus*.

12. *neque etc.*, he could not learn what the size of the island was etc.

13, 14. *esset, incolerent*: for mode cf. I, 12, 3.

15. *māiōrum nāvium*: i. e. the ships of war and transports, which were much larger than the trading vessels used by the Gauls.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrā-

He proceeds against the Morini. Negotiations with the Britons.

6. trāiectus, -ūs [trāiciō, cross over], m., crossing over, crossing, passage. 2
 10. Britannus, -a, -um, of Britain, British, Britannic: *in pl. as subst., the people of Britain, the Britons.* 4
 12. ob-temperō, 1. [temperō,

rule], n., be subject to rule, attend to, comply with, obey. 2

14. Commius, -ī, m., a prince of the Atrebatēs (living in Belgic Gaul).

16. fidēlis, -e [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 2

1, 2. priusquam . . . faceret, before incurring the risk. For mode cf. I, 19, 13; IV, 4, 18; 12, 11.

3. Volusēnum: see what Caesar says of him in III, 5, 8. nāvī longā: see Int. 170. Sc. eum as subject of esse or object of praemittit.

7. hūc: refers in general to the country of the Morini, but specifically to the port in which the fleet was to assemble.

11, 12. dare, obtemperāre: a

rare use of the complementary infinitive with a verb of promising. The usual construction is the (future) infinitive with subj. acc.

15. rēgem: Caesar mentions by name eleven Gallic kings. ibi: i. e., among the Atrebatēs.

16. sibi fidēlem: Commius, however, deserted Caesar in 52 B. C. arbitrābātur, supposed, indicates that the author knew better when he wrote. This, then, was written at the conclusion of the war.

bātur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque
 20 oceleriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredi āc sē barbarīs committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

*The Morini
 make terms.*

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperīti bel-
 5 lum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis oportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britan-

3. excūsō, 1. [causa, cause, charge], a., release from a charge, free from blame; justify, excuse; make excuse or explanations, apologize. 1

4. imperītus, -a, -um [perītus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. *

6. oportūnē (opp-), adv., fitly, at the right time. 1

17. hīs regiōnibus: in Belgic Gaul. māgnī habēbātur, was held in high estimation. māgnī: for case see on I, 20, 15.

18, 19. adeat, hortētur: what is omitted? Cf. I, 20, 14; III, 5, 11. ut fidem sequantur, to continue under the protection.

21, 22. quī nōn auderet, seeing that he did not dare. For the mode see on II, 15, 14.

2. morātur: for the tense cf. III, 17, 1; I, 27, 8.

3. temporis: i. e., the previous summer. cōnsiliō, behavior, see III, 28.

4. hominēs barbarī, being strangers or since they were strangers. For a like (predicate) use of hominēs see I, 2, 14. cōsuētūdinis: viz. of treating with clemency those who submitted.

5. fēcissent: for mode cf. I, 16, 17.

8. annī tempus: i. e., there was not enough of the campaigning season left for both the reduction of the Morini and the expedition to Britain.

9. hās . . . occupātiōnēs, engaging in such trivial matters. tantulārum: for signification of the ending see on II, 30, 2.

niae antepōnendās iudicābat, māgnūm iīs numerum obsidum¹⁰ imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coactis cōstrātisque, quot ^{Further preparations for the invasion.} satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existi- mābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōri, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII¹¹ onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Tūriō Sabinō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn²⁰ vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

23. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus nactus idōneam ad ^{Caesar crosses to Britain.}

10. ante-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], a., place or set before, regard of more importance, prefer. 1

12. onerārius, -a, -um [onus, burden], fitted for burdens, transport: sc. nāvis, transportship, freight-ship. *

21. Rūfus, -ī, m., (red, red-headed), *The cognomen of Publius Sulpicius, Caesar's lieutenant.* 1

1. nanciscor, -ī, nactus (nactus) sum, a., get, obtain; meet with, find. *

11, 12. eōs: the Morini, not the hostages. nāvibus onerāriis: see Int. 175.

12, 13. cōstrātis, *decked*. duās legiōnēs: the 7th and 10th. What would be the number of legionaries on each vessel? See Int. 87.

14. quod . . . habēbat, *the ships of war he had besides* (lit. *what of ships etc.*). Cf. III, 16, 5.

15. hūc: i. e., in addition to the transports and the war ships. XVIII: it has been estimated that 450 horsemen with their horses could be conveyed in this number of transports.

16. eō locō ab: at the port of Ambletuse. For *ab* cf. II, 30 7;

7, 9; its use with another preposition (*ex*) is exceedingly rare.

17. quō minus . . . possent, *from being able to* etc. For the mode see on I, 31, 25. eundem portum: i. e., Boulogne.

18. equitibus distribuit: about twenty-five men and the same number of horses in each transport.

21. dūcendum: construe with *reliquum exercitum*; for its use cf. III, 11, 11; I, 19, 4.

22. portum: as in line 16.

1, 2. rēbus, *measures*. idōneam tempestātem: the wind was from the south and the weather

nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ūlteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequī iussit. **Ā** quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae

2. solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *a.*, loosen, untie, unbend, disengage; *sc. nāvēs*, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 5
 3. cōn-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [*scandō*, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 3
 4. tardē, *adv.*, slowly, with delay. 1
 6. ex-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus

[*pōnō*, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; set forth, explain. *

8. angustē, *adv.*, narrowly; in close quarters.
 9. litus, -oris, *n.*, sea shore, beach, shore. *
 nēquāquam [*nec, +abl. of quisquam*], in no way, by no means, not at all. 2

settled. *tertiā vigiliā*: about midnight of the 26th of August. *solvit*: *sc. nāvēs* or *ancoras*.

3. *sequi*: the same wind which had prevented them from joining the fleet at Boulogne (see 22, 16) would be favorable now.

4. *ā . . . administrātum*, since these (*equitēs*) executed his orders too slowly to take advantage of the wind, which soon changed and kept the cavalry in port three days. *quibus*: for case cf. I. 14, 6; III, 2, 5; how does this differ from 13, 3?

6. *ibi*: probably a little southwest of Dover, where the chalk cliffs

came close to the water's edge.

10. *reliquae nāvēs*: including the eighteen transports, of whose detention Caesar knew nothing. *convenirent*: for mode cf. I, 7, 18.

11. *in ancoris*, at anchor.

13, 14. *ut, ut, ut*: the uses must be carefully distinguished. The two before *postulārent* are adverbs, *as*, and are ordinarily used with the indicative (cf. II, 22, 1; 7, 10; I, 22, 3; 16, 3); the subjunctive is due to *administrārentur* l. 16, see on I, 8, 7. The *ut* before *quae* is not to be translated and might be omitted from the text without affecting the sense, see on II, 15, 14.

celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad¹⁵ tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum datō sīgnō et sublātis ancoris circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac p. ānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō *The Britons attack the Romans on landing.* praemissō equitatū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in⁵ altō cōstitui nō poterant, militibus autem ignōtis locīs, impeditīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut ex āridō aut

15. celer, -eris, -ere, swift quick speedy, fast. motus: sudden.

in-stabilis, -e, unsteady. 1
mōtus, -ūs [mōvō, move], m., movement, motion; political movement, uprising. *
nūtus, -ūs [nuō, nod], m., nod, sign, command. 3

18. septem, indecl. num. adj.

seven. 2

2. essedārius, -ī [essedā, a war chariot], m., a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. 4

6. ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, unfamiliar; base. 1

9. āridus, -a, -um [āreō, be dry], dry; neut. as subst., dry land. 4

16. administrārentur: depends upon *monuit* with *ut* omitted as in 21, 18.

17. aestum: the tidal current turns west about 11:30 A. M., and runs west until 6:30 P. M.

19. apertō . . . litore: the low shore of Romney, about seven miles west of Dover.

2, 3. quō genere, a class (of troops) which; for position of *genere* cf. III, 9, 9; 21, 10.

4. ēgredi: for mode see on II, 4, 7.

5. nisi etc., could not be moored except in deep water.

6. militibus etc., the soldiers, burdened by the great and heavy weight of their armor, their hands occupied, the ground unknown (to them), had to leap etc. For case of *militibus* cf. I, 11, 15; II, 20, 1. locis: abl. abs. For the gerundive constr. cf. II, 20, 1. oppressis: constr. with *militibus*.

7, 8. manibus: abl. abs. onere: join with *oppressis*, which agrees with *militibus*. in fluctibus: the gradual shoaling of the water prevented the heavily laden ships from reaching shore. cōsistendum, get a footing.

9. cum illi, while the enemy.

10 paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membris expeditis nōtissimis locis audācter tēla cōnicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus utī proeliis cōsuērāt, utēbantur.

Caesar brings
the war-ships
into action.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerariis
5 nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitūtū atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiōtō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem
retulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus,
10 māmīmē propter altitudinē maris, quī decimae

Bravery of a
Roman signi-
fer.

10. membrum, -ī, N., member of the body, limb. 2

nōtus, -a, -um, known; famous; notorious. *

11. insuēfactus, -a, -um [insueō, accustom + faciō], accustomed, well trained. 1

13. alacritās, -tātis [alacer, active], F., activity, spirit, eagerness. 3

5. funda, -ae, F., a sling. 5

sagitta, -ae, F., an arrow. 3

7. figurā, -ae [figō, form], F., form, shape, figure. 5

12. hūius etc., entirely unacquainted with this method of warfare. How different it was from their usual method of fighting may be seen from Int. 148, 149.

13. pūgnae: for case cf. I, 2, 14; I, 44, 30; 21, 10; 18, 8.

14. nōn utēbantur, did not exhibit. quō: refers both to alacritāte and studiō.

2. quārum . . . inūsitiōr, whose form was less familiar, than that of the trading vessels.

4. latus apertum: the right flank.

5. fundis, sagittis: see Int. 99.

6. quae . . . fuit, these measures were of great advantage to our troops.

7. figurā = speciēs line 2. See Int. 179. rēmōrum mōtū: the Britons were not accustomed to the use of oars in propelling large vessels.

8, 9. ac . . . retulērunt, and then withdrew a very little. atque, and now, introducing a new and important incident.

10. quī, the man who: see Int. 120, 121. On the omission of the anted. cf. I, 1, 2; II, 27, 2.

legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs le-
giōnī feliciter ēveniret, 'Dēsilitē,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs
nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum rei
pūblicaē atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hōc cum
vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiecit atque in hostēs aequi-
lam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum
dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiliērunt. Hōs item
ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūti hostibus
appropinquārunt.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācritur. Nostrī tamen quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter
insistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex
nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māg-
nopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi

11. aquila, -ae, f., an eagle: a standard, (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 4
obtestor, 1. [testor, witness], a., call to witness, appeal to, invoke. 1
12. feliciter [felix, happy], happily, auspiciously. 1
ē-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], a., come or turn out, result, happen. 1
inquam, -is, -it, perf. inquii, defect. verb. say. *
commilito, -ōnis [com+militō, from miles], m., fellow-soldier,

comrade.
13. certē, adv. [compare certus], certainly; at least, at all events. 5
meus, -a, -um, adj. pron. [cf. oblique cases of ego], of me, my, mine, my own. *
17. dēdecus, -oris [decus, honor], n., dishonor, infamy. 1
2. firmiter, [firmus, strong], strongly, steadily, firmly. 1
4. aggregō, (ad-), 1. [ad+grēx, flock], a., unite in flock, gather, assemble, attach one's self to, join, attach. 2

13, 14. ego certē officium praestiterō, I, at least, shall have done my duty. The tense indicates that the resolute soldier thought of his duty as already done.

16. cohortātī inter sē, urging one another. For inter sē see on I, 1, 4.

17. tantum dēdecus: see especially Int. 124. admitterētur, not to commit so disgraceful an act: for mood cf. I, 3, 5; II, 5, 7.

18. ex proximīs nāvibus=ū, qui in proximīs nāvibus erant.

1. pūgnātum est: as in I, 22, 9, 2, 3. firmiter insistere, to get a firm footing. sīgna subsequi, keep up with the standards, i. e., to keep their company formation. alius . . . aliā etc., men from different ships. For the elliptical use of alius cf. I, 39, 12; II, 22, 4.

4. quibuscumque . . . aggregābat, gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon. For a similar instance see II, 21, 13.

5, 6. nōtis . . . vadis: and hence where it was safe to go. ubi cōn-

ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspēxerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circum-sistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārū nāvium, 10 item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspēxerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īsu- 15 lam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

*The Britons
make peace.*

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāset factūrōs polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem 5 suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris

9. scapha, -ae, f., small boat, skiff. 1

10. speculātōrius, -a, -um [speculator, spy, reconnoitre], scouting, reconnoitering. 1

11. labōrō, 1. [labor, toil], m.,

toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor; suffer, be hard pressed. *

6. ōrātōr, -ōris [ōrō, speak], m., one who speaks; speaker, orator; ambassador, envoy. 1

spēxerant, as often as they saw: the frequentative use of the pluperf. aliquōs singulārēs: for the fact see l. 2.

7. plūrēs: i. e., hostēs.

8. latere apertō: see on 25, 4.

9. scaphās: carried upon the war-ships to facilitate communication with the land or with the fleet.

10. speculātōria nāvigia: see Int. 175.

12. simul (=simul atque), as soon as.

13. longius, very far from the

sea-shore.

14, 15. cursum . . . potuerant: see on 23, 4, and on 23, 10. hōc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement. Hence Caesar's apology for the deficiency here. As a matter of fact this was only the beginning of disaster to the expedition.

5. suprā: see 21, 14.

6, 7. hunc . . . comprehendērant, they had seized this man

mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant, tum proelio factō remiserunt. In petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō¹⁰ in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis accessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agrōs iusserunt,¹⁵ principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

28. His rebus pāce confirmatā post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris videntur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum

The ships conveying the cavalry are driven back by a storm.

9. culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt. 2
 imprudentia, -ae, f., want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. 3
 10. ignoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in- + (g)nōscō, know], n., forgive, pardon. 5

14. longinquus, -a, -um [longus, long], far off, distant, remote. 5
 17. commendō, 1. [mandō, give into, one's hands], a., entrust entirely or completely, entrust, commend, surrender. 1

4. lenis, -e, gentle, mild, smooth. *

(Commius) as soon as he landed, although he was carrying Caesar's dispatches in the capacity of an envoy. How Caesar regarded such an action in others is shown by his punishment of the Veneti, III, 16, 10.

8, 9. eius rei: the treatment of Commius. imprudentiam, ignorance of the rights of envoys, or of the fact that Commius was clothed with that function.

10. ignosceretur, that they might be pardoned. How is an in-

transitive verb used in the passive? In what case would 'they' be if expressed here?

11. legatis missis: see 21, 10.

12. intulissent: for mode of I, 16, 17; IV, 22, 5. ignoscere imprudentiae, that he overlooked their indiscretion. For the case of I, 2, 4.

1, 2. post . . . ventum: on August 30, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckoning.

cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magnō suī cum periculō dēicerentur; quae
 10 tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum profectae continentem petierunt.

The tide and storm shatter the rest of the fleet.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Oceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum
 5 cūrāverat quasque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabatur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis ad
 10 nāvigandum inūtīlēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere,

1. lūna, -ae [for lūc-na fr. lūceō, give light], *f.*, the moon. 3
 6. dē-ligō, 1. [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 4
 7. auxiliōr, 1. [auxilium, aid],

- a.*, give aid, help, assist, render assistance. 3
 8. frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *a.*, break, shiver, smash; crush, subdue, discourage. 2

8. ad inferiorem partem: *i. e.*, the southern shore, west of the location of the Roman camp.

9. occasum: for case see on I, 46, 2. magnō . . . dēicerentur, were driven from their course to their great peril. suī: for case cf. II, 24, 12; 8, 2; I, 30, 4; 14, 8.

11. adversā nocte, in the face of the night; cf. II, 19, 28.

2. diēs, a time which. aestūs māximōs: the 'spring' tide, said to rise 19 feet at Dover.

3. nostris . . . incōgnitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean Sea, in which high tides do not occur. ūnō tempore: there was a conjunction

of a high tide and a storm.

5. in āridum subdūxerat: by means of tackle and rollers the ships were drawn up entirely beyond the reach of the ordinary waves. In the present instance, however, the unexpected 'spring tide' reached them.

6. quae . . . dēligātae, which were riding at anchor. It was not the custom to beach the transports.

7. administrandī, to manage the ships. auxiliandī, to render assistance from the shore.

9. ancoris: see Int. 172.

10. id quod: *id* is often prefixed to a relative to summarize its antecedent, if the antecedent is a clause.

tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs ērant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat, hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsū nōn erat.

15

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britan- *The Britons
plan to renew
hostilities.*
nae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellexerent et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, 5 quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō com- meātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsis nēminem postea belli inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. 10 Itaque rūsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātīm ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

11. perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbō, disturb greatly], *r.*, disturbance, alarm, confusion. 1
12. re-portō, 1. [portō, carry],

- a.*, carry or bring back, convey. 2
9. reditus, -ūs, *m.*, a going back, returning, return. 3

11. neque enim, etc: Caesar was in the very same situation that he had so carefully avoided at the Rhine. Cf. 17, 2 and note.

13-15. quod . . . erat, and because it was manifest to all that they must pass the winter in Gaul, supplies of grain had not been prepared in this place (Britain) for the winter.

2. convēnerant: see 27, 16.

3, 4. equitēs . . . deesse, that the Romans were without etc. Rōmānīs: for case see on I, 48, 9.

7. optimum: pred. adj. in agreement with prohibēre and prō-

dūcere. factū: see on I, 3, 18. rebelliōne factā, to renew the war: trans. as coordinate with the infinitives. frūmentō: for case cf. 9, 4; III, 6, 10.

8. rem, operations. in hiemem prōdūcere: so as to prevent the Romans' return to the continent.

9. hīs superātis, if these (troops) were overpowered: abl. abs. aut, or at least.

11. rūsus: i. e., returning to their former hostility.

12. suōs ex agrīs dēdūcere: see 27, 15.

*Caesar refits
his fleet.*

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat.
- 5 Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reli-
- 10 quīs ut nāvīgārī commodē posset, effēcit.

*The Britons
attack the Ro-
man foragers.*

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuetūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra
- 5 ventitāret, ii, quī prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant, Cae-
6. affligō (adf-), -ere, fixī, flic-tus, strike, overthrow; damage, injure. 4
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; any-

thing made of copper or bronze, coin, money: aes aliōnum, another's money, debt. 4

2. ex . . . eō, from the disaster to his ships and from the fact.

6. quae, etc., he employed the timber and metal of the ships which had been most disastrously shattered for fitting up the others. quae . . . nāvēs: for the position of the anteced. and agreement of relative cf. I, 12, 17; 22, 15; 40, 29; II, 19, 16. aere: iron was not much used in the construction of ships. For instance, the beak was made of copper or bronze, and the nails likewise.

7. eās rēs: i. e., the repairing and equipment of the vessels.

8, 9. cum . . . administrārētur, since the work (of refitting the fleet) was pushed forward by the soldiers with the utmost energy. summō studiō: due in part to their eager

desire to leave (cf. 29, 11. perturbātiō) and in part no doubt, to their loyalty to their commander (see Int. 53). reliquīs: sc. nāvibus. Explain the four different ablatives in the sentence.

10. ut . . . posset, that the voyage could be readily made. For mode of posset cf. I, 9, 11; II, 11, 5. How is nāvīgārī used?

1. geruntur: for tense cf. 22, 2.

2. frūmentātum: for the form and use cf. I, 11, 5; 31, 30; 18, 18. appellābātur: see Int. 88.

3. interpositā, having arisen.

4. hominum, i. e., the natives. in agris remanēret: ostensibly engaged in labor in the fields close to the camp.

5. ventitāret: for signification see on II, 15, 13.

sarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs 10 succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegre sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspī-15 cātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis dēlituerant: tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Primō *Their mode of fighting from war-chariots.* per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt

atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plē-

6. pulvis, -eris, m., dust. 1
 11. cōnfestim [festinus, in haste], hastily, at once, immediately. *
 15. dē-metō, -ere, messuī, messus [metō, cut, mow], a., mow or cut down, reap, harvest. 1
 16. dēlitiscō (ēscō), -ere, lituī [incept. of lateō, hide], n., hide away, skulk, lurk. 1
 17. metō, -ere, messuī, messus, a., cut, mow, reap. 1

19. essedum, -ī, n. (a Celtic word), a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. 5

circum-dō, dare, dedī, datus [dō, give], a., give or put around, encompass, surround. *

2. per-equitō, 1. [equitō, ride], n., ride about, ride hither and thither, ride through or around. 2

6. quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, than ordinarily appeared.

8, 9. id, quod: for use of *id* see on 29, 10. quod erat, which was really the fact. aliquid... initum (esse) cōnsiliī, that some new plan etc. cōnsiliī: for the case cf. II, 8, 8.

12. paulō longius, a considerable distance.

18. incertis ōrdinibus: owing

to the surprise, the ordinary formation in line of battle could not be made.

19. essedis: we have no precise and reliable description of the British war-chariot.

1. genus hōc est, this is the method.

2. perequitant: sc. the subject essedārū.

rumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuā-
 5 vērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae
 interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collo-
 cant, ut, si illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum
 ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabili-
 tātem peditum in proeliis praestant, āc tantum ūsū cotidiānō
 oet exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclivī āc praecipitī locō in-
 citātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere et per
 tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs
 citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

*Caesar res-
 cuit his for-
 agers.*

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte
 pūgnae tempore oportunissimō Caesar auxilium
 tulit: namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex

4. turma, -ae, f., troop or squad-
 ron of cavalry, the tenth part of
 an ala. 5

in-sinuō, 1. [sinuō, wind], a. n.,
 wind or work one's way into;
 work or introduce into; intro-
 duce; penetrate. 1

5. auriga, -ae [aurea, headstall
 +agō], m., driver, charioteer. 1

6. currus, -ūs [curro, run], m.,
 chariot, car; fig., team. 1

8. receptus, -ūs [recipiō, with-
 draw], m., a place of withdrawal,
 retreat, refuge, shelter. 3

stabilitās, -tātis [stabilis, steady],
 f., steadiness, fixedness. 1

11. moderor, 1. [modus, limit],

a., limit, mitigate, temper, con-
 trol, guide, regulate. 2

flectō, -ere, flecti, flexi, flexus, a., n.,
 bend, curve, turn, turn around,
 direct in turning. 2

12. tēmō, -ōnis, m., beam, pole
 (esp. of a chariot). 1

per-currō, -ere, cucurri, (curri),
 cursus [currō, run], a., run
 through or over, traverse, pass
 over or along. 1

13. cito, adv., comp. citius and
 superl. citissimē [fr. citus],
 quickly, speedily. 1

1. novitās, -tātis [novus, new],
 f., newness, novelty, novel kind
 or nature, strangeness. 1

4. cum insinuāvērunt: see on
 III, 14, 17. turmās: see Int. 101.
 Caesar had no cavalry with him;
 but the description here given is a
 general one.

7, 8. illi: those who alighted
 from the chariots, the warriors. ex-
 peditum receptum, a safe retreat.
 habeant: for mode of. I, 6, 5; 6,
 12; 25, 10; II, 19, 22.

10. in . . . praecipitī, on slop-
 ing and even precipitous ground.

11. brevī, quickly; lit., within
 a short (time).

1-3. quibus . . . tulit, Caesar
 brought aid, at a critical moment, to
 our men who were confused by these
 tactics because of the unusual nature
 of the contest, rēbus: for case

timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacesendum et ad com-
mittendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē 5
locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs
redūxit. Dum haec geruntur nostrīs omnibus occupātis,
quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt con-
tinuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs
continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbari 10
nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrō-
rum militum suis praedicāvērunt et, quanta prae- *The Britons
gather a large
force and
march against
the Roman
camp.*
dae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī
facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent,
dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus, celeriter māgnā multitudīne 15
peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diē- *They are de-
feated and
flee.*
bus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs
pulsī, celeritātē perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs

8. continuus, -a, -um [con-
tineō, hold together], holding
together, unbroken, uninter-
rupted, continuous. *
12. prae-dicō, 1. a., n., speak
before others; proclaim, state,
declare. 5
praeda, -ae, [praehendō fr. pre-

hendō, seize], f., property seized
in war; booty, plunder, spoil. *

16. peditātus, -ūs, [pedes, foot-
man], m., foot soldiers, infantry. *

3. ef-fugiō, -ere, fūgī [fugiō,
flee], a., n., flee from or away,
avoid, shun, escape. 3

(with perturbātis) cf. 17, 2. novi-
tate: for case cf. I, 2, 12; 14, 6; III,
21, 11. tempore: for the case cf.
I, 4, 4; I, 50, 1; 16, 10.

4, 5. ad . . . esse, was unfavor-
able for provoking a contest etc.

7. haec: the attack of the Brit-
ons described in chap. 32.

8. quī . . . reliquī: mentioned
in 32, 4. For the meaning and use
of reliquī see on I, 12, 7. disces-
sērunt: they also repaired to the
rendezvous (cf. 30, 11).

9. diēs, several days in succes-
sion: for case of diēs cf. I, 3, 12. tem-
pestātēs: how does this expression

differ from the similar one in III,
29, 8?

12, 13. praedae faciendae: as
Caesar had left all his baggage be-
hind (cf. 30, 5), the Britons were
under a false impression. suī libe-
randī what kind of a pronoun is
suī? Give its gender, number, and
case. Is liberandī gerund or gerun-
dive? Cf. 13, 14; III, 6, 8.

15. hīs rēbus, at the mention of
etc.

1, 2. idem fore, that the same
thing would occur.

circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est,
 5 sēcum transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit.
 Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hos-
 tēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spa-
 tiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, com-
 plūrēs ex iis occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque
 10 aedificiis incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

*They give hos-
 tages to Cae-
 sar, who goes
 back to Gaul.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad
 Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar nume-
 rum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in
 continentem addūcī iussit, quod propīnquā diē aequinoctiū
 5 infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn ex-
 istimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post
 mediam noctem nāvēs solvit: quae omnēs incolumēs ad con-
 tinentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iis onerāriae duae eōsdem,
 quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā
 10 delātae sunt.

3. duplicō, 1. [duō + plicō, fold],
 a., double; increase. 2
 4. aequinoctium, -ī [aequus,
 equal + nox, night], n., the equi-
 nox. 2
 5. in-firmus, -a, -um [firmus,

strong], not strong, weak, feeble;
 faint, discouraged. 4

9. infrā, adv. and prep. with acc.
 [for infera (sc. parte) from in-
 ferus, below], below, beneath;
 inferior, under; after. 4

4. ante: see 21, 13, 14. dic-
 tum est, we have spoken. How is
 the verb used here?

6. commissō proeliō: see Int.
 148, 149. diūtius, for any length of
 time.

7, 8. ac: for trans. see on III,
 19, 10. quōs . . . potuērunt, (our
 troops) following these as far as
 their powers of running permitted.
 cursū et vīribus: for the figure of
 speech cf. I, 31, 45.

2. his, in their case; for the
 case see on I, 28, 2.

3. ante: see 27, 3.

4. propīnqua diē aequinoctiū,

at the near approach of the equinox.

5. infirmis . . . subiciendam
 (esse), that with shattered ships his
 (return) voyage should be exposed to
 the (equinoctial) storm.

6. idōneam tempestātem, fa-
 vorable weather.

8, 9. ex iis: see on II, 3, 2.
 onerāriae etc. English order: duae
 onerāriae nōn potuērunt eōsdem por-
 tūs capere, quōs reliquī (militēs)
 cepērunt, et delātae sunt paulō infrā.
 et: in the same sense as ac 35, 6.
 paulō infrā: a short distance to
 the south of the port of Boulogne.
 For case of paulō cf. diēbus 9, 5.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interficere non possent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia sex convenerunt. Quam rem nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissimè pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga vertērunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

The Morini revolt, attack Caesar's troops on landing, and are repulsed.

38. Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellione fecerant, misit. Qui cum prop-

Labienus ravages their country.

2. trecenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj. [tres-centum], three hundred. 3

6. orbis, -is, m., anything circular; orb, ring, circle: orbis terrarum, the world. 4

1. quibus ex nāvibus: i. e., *onerariae duae*, 36, 8.

2. castra: at Boulogne, which P. Sulpicius Rufus had had made (see 22, 21).

4. pacatos: for the fact see 22, 10, 11. praedae: the booty which they supposed the Romans were bringing back.

5. magno . . . numero, with an *inconsiderable number*. For the figure cf. I, 1, 8; III, 20, 8.

6, 7. orbe: a formation similar to the hollow square (see Int. 140), assumed in circumstances of great danger. The soldiers faced out from the center, and stood mainly on the defensive. hominum: i. e.,

of the Morini; join with *milia*.

8. omnem: i. e., all that were at the camp, comprising the detachment that Caesar had intended to take with him to Britain, and whatever horsemen Rufus had with him.

9. suis auxiliō, to the assistance of his troops. For cases cf. 20, 6.

12. postea . . . quam = *posteaquam*.

14. magnus numerus: see Int. 152.

2. iis legionibus: i. e., the 7th and 10th,

ter siccitatēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō
 5 superiōre annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestā-
 tem Labiēni pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lē-
 gātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus
 eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succīsīs, aedificiis incēnsis,
 quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē
 10 *The Romans are quartered for the winter among the Belgae.* ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgis omni-
 um legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omni-
 nō civitatēs ex Britannā obsidēs mīsērunt, reli-
 quae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex litteris Caesaris
 diērum vīginti supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

4. siccitās, -tātis [siccus, dry],
 r., drought, dryness. 2
 5. perfugium, -ī [perfugiō, flee

for refuge], n., place of refuge,
 shelter, asylum, refuge. 1

4, 5. quō sē reciperent, a place to retreat, lit., whither they might retreat. The clause is object of habērent; quō, is an adverb: see on II, 21, 7. quō perfugiō . . . ūsī, a place of refuge which they had used the previous year. Our idiom would lead us to expect the genitive for perfugiō (i. e., perfugii, quō) in apposition with palūdum: for its position here cf. III, 9, 9; 21,

10; and for its case I, 5, 10. superiōre annō: for the fact see III, 28, 9.

12, 13. reliquae neglēxērunt: a good reason in Caesar's mind for the expedition of the following year. ex litteris, in accordance with Caesar's despatches to the Roman Senate. diērum vīginti supplicatiō: see on II, 35, 11, and notice the increased number of days.

BOOK. V—INVASION OF BRITAIN. REVOLT OF THE EBURONES AND TREVERI.

Reasons of policy and desire for personal glory led Caesar to undertake an invasion of Britain in force. It would impress both Gaul, and Britain with the power of Rome, and cut off from the malcontents on the mainland a source of strength. Determined to carry the project into execution the next year, he planned for the winter of 55-54 B. C. the construction of a great fleet of a peculiar pattern. Leaving this in competent hands, he repaired to Illyricum to settle the affairs of that section, which had been disturbed by the revolt of the Pirustae.

At the beginning of June, 54 B. C., he returned from the East to find his fleet in readiness. Orders were given to collect the armament at Portus Itius. Meanwhile Caesar took necessary precautions against disturbances in his absence.

The army concentrated at Portus Itius numbered eight legions and four thousand Gallic and Spanish cavalry. Three legions and two thousand cavalry, under command of Labienus, were to guard the coast and keep open the communications. Unfavorable winds retarded the fleet twenty-five days; finally the wind changed and orders were given to embark.

Weighing anchor about sunset on the 20th of July, according to Napoleon III., the fleet came about noon to the coast of Britain near Deal. Caesar proceeded inland, leaving ten cohorts and three hundred cavalry to guard the camp and fleet. At a distance of twelve miles the natives were found in position to dispute the passage of a small stream (the Stour). Defeated here, they withdrew into a well-fortified stronghold, from which they were soon driven. Here Caesar halted and fortified a camp. On the following morning came the news of the partial destruction of the fleet by a great storm in the preceding night. Caesar at once ordered a retreat and hurried ahead to the shore. Viewing the scene of disaster, he gave orders for hauling the vessels on shore and enclosing them in a retrenchment, which was done by hard labor in ten days. He then again took up his march into the interior.

The interval had been utilized by the Britons in concentrating their forces, and Caesar found them in large numbers under the command of Cassivellaunus. After meeting with one reverse, the British chieftain determined not to combat with the Romans but to annoy and retard them on the march and thus to prolong the campaign. Caesar, on the other hand, determined to bring it to a conclusion as quickly as possible, and to this end advanced toward the territory of Cassivellaunus. Reaching the river Thames, he signally defeated the Britons there, and soon after captured the stronghold of Cassivellaunus, who thereupon made his submission. All the principal tribes of southeast Britain followed his example. Caesar exacted hostages and fixed an

annual tribute to be paid to the Roman state, and in the latter part of August returned to the continent. It can not be said that Caesar in any true sense subdued the island of Britain. His immediate object was doubtless gained in impressing the inhabitants with a due sense of respect for Roman military power. It may be that they were thenceforth less ready to strengthen the hands of Gallic revolt, but they were still substantially free.

In Gaul there had been a drought and a scanty harvest. Caesar in consequence of this fact found it necessary to divide his forces. This he did being careful, however, to keep them within what he thought was a safe distance of each other. The Gauls saw in this disposition of the Roman forces a chance to throw off the yoke of oppression. Sabinus and Cotta had been stationed with a legion and a half at Aduatuca among the Eburones. Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, the chiefs, instigated by the Treviran Indutiomarus, attacked the Roman camp, but were defeated. The wily Ambiorix then asked for a parley, and under the pretence of friendship induced the Romans to abandon their camp and march to join Labienus or Cicero, fifty miles away. He promised under oath not to hinder their passage. Scarcely had they gone two miles when they were attacked in a narrow defile, and after a desperate conflict prolonged from sunrise until the middle of the afternoon, were cut off almost to a man.

Before this great disaster became known, the Gauls suddenly attacked Cicero's camp among the Nervii. The besieged resisted with great energy and heroism, but their effective strength diminished daily and the outlook was becoming desperate. At last, after many attempts, a Nervian slave brought to Caesar news of his lieutenant's danger. Moving at once to the rescue, he defeated the Gauls and raised the siege. This success checked the projected general uprising, but the gravity of the situation led Caesar to forego his usual winter visit to Italy and remain in Gaul watching developments. The whole land was in a state of unrest; conspiracy was rife, and only the Aedui and the Remi were free from the infection of revolt.

In this outbreak Caesar received his first serious check, and while discipline and courage won the day for him, still his adversaries were encouraged by their partial success to make further trial in behalf of freedom. From this time the war took on a different aspect. Common hatred of Roman rule drew the people together and a measure of unity in effort became apparent.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 233-249. (Harper's ed.)

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. VI. (Ancient Classics series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 313-321.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. I. pp. 384-398.

NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. chap. VIII.

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus discē- *Naval prepara-*
dēns ab hibernis Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannis *rations for*
facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, *the invasion*
utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēs- *of Britain.*
que reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmaque dēmōn- **5**
strat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēque paulō facit
humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī utī cōsuēvimus, at-
que id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aes-
tuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc
multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, **10**

1. **Domitius, -ī, m., a Roman gen-**
tile name: Lucius Domitius
Ahenobarbus, consul in 54 B. C.,
fell at Pharsalus, 48 B. C. 1

Ap., abbreviation for the praenomen
Appius. 1

Claudius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile

name: Appius Claudius, consul in
54. B. C. 1

6. **onerō, 1.** [onus, load], a., load,
burden, freight *with anything*;
burden, oppress, overwhelm. 1
subductiō, -ōnis [dūcō, lead], f.,
leading or drawing from beneath,
drawing ashore, beaching. 1

1, 2. **L. Domitiō, Ap. Clau-**
diō cōsulibus: in the year 54 B. C.
discēdēns ab hibernis: where was
the army wintering? See IV, 38,
10. in Ītaliā: see II, 35, 9.

4. **veterēs:** i. e., those that had
formed the fleet of the expedition
to Britain in 55 B. C.

6. **ad,** with a view to.

7. **humiliōrēs:** (sc. nāvēs) with
greater breadth of beam and less
depth of hold. *quam quibus, than*
those which. nostrō marī: what
sea?

8. **propter . . . aestuum:** an in-
correct reason.

9. **onera:** baggage of all kinds:
see Int. 118, 119.

quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs actuāriās imperat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportāri iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae ceteriōris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirūstis finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitatibus militēs imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum publico factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā orātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitatem persecūtūrum dēmōstrat. Iis ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitatēs dat, quī litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

16 He goes to Illyricum and receives the submission of the Pirustae.

11. **actuārius, -a, -um** [agō, set in motion], pertaining to motion; swift sailing: nāvis or nāvīgium, see Int. 175. 1
 12. **humilitās, -tātis** [humilis, low], *r.*, lowness, shallowness; humility, weakness. 2
 13. **apportō (ad-)**, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry, bring, or convey to. 1
 14. **per-agō -ere, ēgī, āctus** [agō], *a.*, drive or carry through; execute, accomplish, complete. 4

15. **Pirūstae, -ārum, m.**, a people in Illyricum. 2
 16. **incursiō, -ōnis**, [in-currō, run against], *r.*, onset; incursion, invasion, inroad, attack. 4
 21. **percipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus** [capiō, take], *a.*, take fully, acquire; perceive, hear, learn, bear through. 4
 24. **arbitēr, -trī, m.**, a bystander: a judge, umpire, arbitrator. 1
 25. **lis, litis, f.**, strife, quarrel, lawsuit; damages. 1

11. **reliquīs maribus**: i. e., the different parts of the Mediterranean Sea. **actuāriās**: see Int. 175.

12. **ad rem**: i. e., for being fitted with oars. **humilitās**: the low bulwarks making it easier to use oars and to load and unload the ships.

13. **ex Hispāniā**: from the time of its conquest, Spain furnished the Romans with materials for naval equipment, such as iron, copper, the esparto grass (*spartum*),

for cables etc.

14. **conventibus**: the proconsular courts, over which it was the duty of Caesar to preside.

16. **partem**: i. e., *Illyricum*.

19. **eārum rērum** = *incursiōnum*.

20, 21. **omnibus ratiōnibus, in every way**. i. e., by giving hostages, and paying the damages and a fine.

25. **dat, appoints. quī aestiment, to assess.**

2. His cōfectis rēbus conventibusque perāctis *Caesar returns to Gaul and goes to the country of the Treveri.* in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summā omnium rerum inopiā circiter sexcentās eius generis, cuius suprà dē- 5 mōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invēnit instrūctās neque multum abesse ab eō, quā paucis diēbus dēdūci possint. Colaudātis militibus atque iis, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portam Itium convenire iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum 10 esse cōgnōverat, circiter milium passuum xxx ā continēti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis IIII et equitibus DCCC in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō parēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicē- 15 bantur.

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut

7. collaudō (conl-), 1. [laudō, praise], praise highly or in set terms, eulogize. 4
9. Itius, -a, -um, sc. portus, a port of the Morini, whence Caesar

embarked for Britain, perhaps Boulogne, or Witsand. 2
10. commodus, -a, -um [modus, measure], in full measure; complete; suitable, favorable. 5

2. ad exercitum: still in winter quarters: cf. IV, 38, 10.

3. circuitis etc., having made the rounds of etc.

4, 5. in ... inopiā: a concessive phrase, trans. although there was etc.

6, 7. neque ... possint, and that they were not far from being ready to be launched.

11. cōgnōverat: by his experience of the previous year.

12. quod ... militum, what seemed to be a sufficient force. For the expression cf. IV, 22, 14; III, 16, 5.

13. expeditis: see Int. 119.

14. concilia: see on IV, 6, 9. Attendance upon these councils was made a test of fealty to Rome.

1. haec civitās: i. e., the Treveri. equitātū: for case cf. III, 17, 12 (rēbus); 8, 4; II, 17, 14.

- The rival chiefs, Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, seek his support.*
- suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitātum peditātumque cōgere iisque, qui
- 10 per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īstituit. Sed posteaquam nōnnullī prīncipēs ex eā civitāte et familiāritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nos-
- 15 trī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnerunt et dē suis privātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitātī cōsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur,
3. tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *a.*, touch, reach, border on. 1
4. Indutiomarus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Treveri.
5. Cingetorix, -īgis, *m.*, a Treveran chieftain, rival of Indutiomarus. *
10. Arduenna, -ae, *f.*, the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul. 4
14. familiāritās, -tātis [familiāris, of the family, intimate], *f.*, familiar intercourse, intimacy. 1
16. quoniam, *adv.* [quom = cum + iam, now], when now, since, whereas. *
- cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *a., n.*, go to for advice, take counsel, consult: with *dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, promote the welfare of. *

3. suprā: in III, 11, 2. Rhēnum tangit: this proximity to the Germans rendered the Treveri more restless and dangerous.

4. Indutiomarus was the father-in-law of Cingetorix.

5. alter, the latter. simulatque, as soon as.

6. suōs, his party.

10. Arduenna: it was the largest of the Gallic forests, extending over the most of the country between the Rhine, Meuse, and Moselle. It is the seat of the Belgian

iron mines.

11. māgnitūdine: for case of. IV, 1, 20; III, 4, 9; II, 6, 11.

12. initium: i. e., the northern frontier.

13. prīncipēs: probably partisans of Indutiomarus, but personal friends of Cingetorix.

16. civitātī: for case of. IV, 27, 12; III, 14, 3; II, 16, 6 (*his*); I, 18, 19.

17. nē: for meaning after verbs of fearing of. II, 26, 5; I, 27, 10; 19, 11.

légatōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō contineret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter²⁰ imprudentiam lāberetur: itaque esse cīvitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitātisque fortunās eius fidei permissūrum.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea ^{Caesar decidēs to favor Cingetorix.} dicerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōsumere cōgeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātis, Indutiomarum ad sē cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His ⁵ adductis, in iis filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nōminatim evocāverat, cōsolātus Indutiomarum hortātusque est, uti in officiō maneret; nihil tamen sēcius p̄ncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillatim Cingetorigi conciliāvit, quod cum meritō eius ā sē fieri intellegēbat, tum māgnū¹⁰

18. idcirco, *adv.* [circa, round about], on that (this) account, therefore. 1

21. lābor, -ī, lapsus sum, *n.*,

slide, slip; fall in or away; go wrong; fail, be disappointed in. 2

4. Britannicus, -a, -um [Britannia], of Britain, British. 1

19. quō: for use cf. III, 16, 9; II, 27, 6; I, 14, 14.

20, 21. propter imprudentiam: as in IV, 27, 9. nē, *for fear that.* itaque . . . potestāte, *therefore* (since he had remained at home) *the whole state was in his power*, and he alone had the right to treat with Caesar.

2. quae rēs: the submission of the chiefs to Caesar (cf. 3, 18). cōnsiliō: i. e., *bellum parare* (cf. 3, 12).

3. aestātem: it was already June.

6. filiō, propinquis: for case of I, 16, 12.

8. p̄ncipibus: those who had held out with Indutiomarus.

9. hōs . . . conciliāvit: thus using his influence to secure for Cingetorix the power he coveted.

10, 11. quod etc., *and he not only knew that he was doing this (active for passive) in accordance with his (Cingetorix's) deserts, but also thought etc.* cum . . . tum: force when used correlatively?

meritō: for case cf. IV, 2, 10; III, 23, 13; II, 13, 12. māgnī interesse, *that it was of great importance.* māgnī: for case of IV, 21, 17; with *interesse* the degree is expressed as here, or by an adverb as in II, 5, 6.

interesse arbitrābātur eīus auctōritātem inter suōs quam plū-
 rimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspē-
 xisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiam
 inter suōs minui, et quī iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuis-
 15 set, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

*Caesar's fleet
 and troops as-
 semble at
 Portus Itius.*

5. His rēbus cōstitutīs Caesar ad portum
 Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX
 nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cur-
 sum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae,
 5 revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvīgandum atque omnibus
 rēbus instrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae
 convenit numerō milium quattuor principēsque ex omnibus
 cīvitatibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem per-
 spēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum
 10 dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae
 verēbātur.

*Treachery of
 Dumnorix.*

6. Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Aeduus, dē
 quō ante ā nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primīs
 cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum

15. ex-ārdescō, -ere, ārsī, ārsus
 [*incho. of ardeō, burn*], set on
 fire; be inflamed; be excited. 1

3. Meldī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic peo-
 ple on the Marne about modern
 Meaux. 1

12. cūius . . . perspēxisset, *since he had* etc. For trans. and mode cf. IV, 21, 22; II, 15, 14.

13. id . . . graviter, *was greatly vexed at this course*; explained by the clause *suam . . . minui*.

14. quī . . . fuisset, *and although he had been*; *quī = cum* is with concessive (as well as causal) force takes the subjunctive.

3, 4. in Meldīs: across the Marne from the territory of the Suesiones. The vessels would follow the Marne and Seine down to

the mouth of the latter: see on 1, 4. tempestāte rēiectās: while sailing from the mouth of the Seine to Boulogne. *cursum tenēre*: as in IV, 26, 14. *eōdem*: i. e., to the mouth of the Seine.

7. numerō: abl. of specification, in its common pleonastic use with numerals: cf. I, 49, 8; 5, 4. milium: join with *equitātus*, for case cf. II, 30, 4; 5, 21; I, 38, 1; 5, 8.

2. ante: see I, 3, 14.

3, 4. cupidum . . . auctōritātis: see I, 18, 8. rērum, imperii:

imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dum-
 norix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri; quod
 dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprē-
 candī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id fac-
 tum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus pri-
 mō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur,¹⁰
 partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod
 religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē
 sibi negārī vidit, omnī spē impetrandī adēptā prīncipēs
 Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in
 continentī remanērent: metū territāre: nōn sine causā fierī,¹⁵
 ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Cae-

7. dictum, -ī, n., a saying, remark; command. 5
 9. hospes, -itis, m., f., entertainer, host; guest, sojourner, stranger; hereditary or family friend. 3
 11. insuētus, -a, -um [suēscō, accustom], unaccustomed, unused, unfamiliar with. 2
 12. religiō, -ōnis [ligō, bind], f., reverence for the gods, piety, religion; religious matters (rites, scruples, feelings, etc.). 5
 13. obstinātē, adv., [obstinātus, re-

- solved], firmly, inflexibly, resolutely. 1
 13. adimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus [emō, take], a., take away to one's disadvantage, remove. 2
 14. sē-vocō, 1. [vocō, call], a., call aside or apart; separate, withdraw. 1
 15. territō, -āre, [freq. of terreō, frighten], a., keep frightening, alarm. 4
 16. spoliō, 1. [spolium], rob, despoil, plunder. 2

for case cf. IV, 24, 18; II, 21, 4; I, 44, 30; 21, 10. animi, auctōritātis: for case cf. IV, 2, 7; II, 30, 11; 27, 12; 16, 13.

5. accēdēbat hūc, and besides.

6, 7. quod dictum, this statement. graviter ferēbant: because they had, and preferred, a democratic form of government with an annual magistracy: see on rēgnum, IV, 12, 14.

8. audēbant: because of their fear of Dumnorix, who was power-

ful and apparently unscrupulous.

11, 12. nāvigandī: gerund or gerundive? For case cf. imperii l. 4. timēret: for mode cf. IV, 27, 12; 16, 19; II, 11, 17; I, 23, 9. diceret: a peculiar idiom deserving careful study, see A. 321, Note 2, ad fin.; G. 541, N. 3; H. 516, II, 1; B. 286 l. a.

15. territāre: complementary with coepit supplied from l. 14. So also interpōnere and pōscere, below, while fierī l. 15 and esse l. 16 are in indirect discourse.

saris, ut quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūsiūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae
 20 intellēxissent, commūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

He flees, is overtaken and killed.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspici-
 5 endum, nē quid sibi āc reipūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ēius cōn-
 10 silia cōgnōsceret: tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium impeditīs animīs, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castris inscīente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā

4. āmentia, -ae [mēns, mind],
 r., bewilderment of mind, madness, folly. 2

6. commoror, 1. [moror, tarry],
 n.. tarry, wait, stop. 2
 Cōrus, -i, m., the northwest wind. 1
 8. flō, 1. a., blow. 1

18. trāductōs necāret, take over and put to death. fidem interpōnere, he pledged his own word. reliquīs: possibly the chiefs whom Caesar was leaving behind. These Dumnorix tries to draw from their allegiance.

1-3. quod . . . tribuēbat . . . statuēbat: since the Aedui were so influential, the plots of Dumnorix to draw them from their friendly attitude toward Rome and Caesar, were all the more dangerous.

7. māgnam partem: "Agcord-

ingly when the hydraulic windmills came into use in Holland, as they could not be turned to the varying winds, they were built so that the plane of the sails faced the northwest" (Moberly).

10. militēs = peditēs.

11, 12. impeditūs, occupied. cum equitibus Aeduōrum: Dumnorix may have been their commander, as on a former occasion (I, 18 28, 29).

14. omnibus postpositis, disregarding everything else,

Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis māgnam partem equitatūs ad eum insequendum mittit 15 retrahique imperat; sī vim faciat neque pareat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitatīs. Illi, ut 20 erat imperātum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt: at equitēs Aedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

8. Hīs rēbus gestis Labiēnō in continentī cum *Caesar sails to Britain.* tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō

14. post-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], *a.*, place behind, postpone; neglect, disregard.

16. re-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [trahō, drag], drag or bring back.

17. sānus, -a, -um, sound in body or mind, discreet, sensible.

19. implōrō, *l.* [plōrō, call out]. *a.*, beseech, entreat, implore.

20. clāmitō, *l.* [freq. of clāmō, call out], *a., n.*, call out loudly or repeatedly, exclaim.

16. interficī iubet: Dumnorix by his act of desertion had rendered himself liable to the penalty of death.

17. nihil prō sānō, *nothing rational.*

19. manū: *i. e.*, with the weapons in his hands.

20. liberum . . . cīvitatīs: the assertion is as creditable to the free spirit of Dumnorix as the record of it here is to Caesar's candor: see Int. 47.

21. erat imperātum: Caesar does not shrink from the responsibility of an act which doubtless seemed to him both just and expedient. interficiunt: this deed must have made a deep impression upon the Gallic nobles, who saw

one of their order struck down for asserting his liberty of action. "Everyone who was conscious of similar sentiments—and they formed the great majority—saw in that catastrophe the picture of what was in store for himself" (Momm. vol. IV, p. 816).

2, 3. portūs tuērētur: as Sulpicius Rufus had done the year before; see IV, 22, 21. rem frūmentāriam: to be forwarded to Britain as needed. quaeque etc.: Caesar feared the effect of the death of Dumnorix.

4, 5. prō rē, *according to the occasion and circumstances.* quīnque legiōnibus: the 7th is the only one especially mentioned. About

5 rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī reliquerat, ad sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit et lēnī Āfricō prōvēctus mediā circiter noctē ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspēxit. Tum rūrsum aessum commūtatiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vēctōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent,

7. **Āfricus**, -a, -um, of Africa: **ventus**, the southwest wind (blowing from Africa to Italy). 1
prō-vehō, -ere, vēxi, vēctus, carry forward.—Usually passive: move forward, advance, set sail. 1
 11. **ēgressus**, -ūs [gradior, go], m., going forth, landing. 1
 12. **laudō**, 1. [laus, praise], a.,

praise, commend. 1

13. **vēctōrius**, -a, -um [vehō, carry], for carrying: nāvigiā, transport-ships. 1

rēmigō, -āre [rēmus, oar + agō], a., propel the oar; row. 1

15. **meridiānus**, -a, -um [meridiēs, midday], of midday: **tempus**, noon. 1

how large a force did Caesar have? See Int. 86. **parī numerō**, and a force of cavalry equal (to that) which, etc.

6, 7. **ad sōlis occāsū**: probably on the 20th of July. **nāvēs solvit**, set sail. From what port?

8. **cursum**: northwest. **longius**: past the place on the coast where Caesar wished to land. **aestū**: the tide was running toward the northeast. **ortā lūce**, at day-break: abl. abs. expressing time of. II, 35, 6, 7.

10. **eam partem**: probably between Nalmer and Deal, about

seven miles northeast of Dover. Follow on the map the route as described in the text.

11. **superiōre aestāte**: on the first expedition cf. IV, 23.

13. **vēctōriīs . . . nāvigiīs**, although the transports were heavily laden. For trans. cf. II, 12, 7. **vēctōriīs**: these were purposely built very broad of beam (cf. I, 10 and Int. 75), and were naturally much slower than the narrow warships.

14, 15. **accessum est**: trans. by personal constr.

multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privātis-
que, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius octin-
gentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in 20
superiōra loca abdididerant.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idō- *Caesar en-*
neō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō *counters the*
hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare *natives for*
relictis et equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē ter- *the first time*
tiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod 5 *and compels*
in litore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat, *them to flee.*
et praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prō-
gressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus
est. Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō
superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepē- 10
runt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt locum
nanti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domesticī
bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crē-
bris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praecūsī. Ipsī

18. annōtinus, -a, -um [annus, year], of last year, a year old. 1

7. Ātrius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Quintius Atrius, an officer in Caesar's army. 1

14. introitus, -ūs [intrō-eō, go within], m., going within, entrance, access. 1

praecūsō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus [claudō, close], a., close or shut in front, shut or cut off. 1

17, 18. eō: to the vicinity of the landing place. privātis: belonging to wealthy officers or volunteers, or possibly to traders.

21. superiōra loca: i. e., the heights some twelve miles inland. For the case cf. I, 12, 12.

1. locō: probably close to the sea-shore.

3. cohortibus X: a guard composed of a contingent of two co-

horts from each of the five legions

5, 6. eō minus veritus: Caesar did not heed the lesson of his previous experience; cf. IV, 29. mollī atque apertō: cf. IV, 23, 19, apertō ac planō.

7. et connects contendit (l. 5) and praefēcit.

9. essedis: see on IV, 32, 19.

10. proelium committere: after the cavalry had forced the passage of the stream.

15 *sex silvis rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At milites legiōnes septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūram*
20 *ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi consūptā mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.*

A storm damages the fleet.

10. *Postridiē eius diēi māne tripartitō milites equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs, qui fūgerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem*
5 *vēnērunt, qui nūntiarent superiōre noctē māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati possent: itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnū esse incommodū acceptum.*

1. *tripertitō, adv., [tripertitus] in or into three parts. 3*
2. *expeditiō, -ōnis, f., an enterprise against the enemy, expedition.*
3. *aliquantus, -a, -um [alius +*

quantus, how much], some; considerable; in neut. as subst. with part. gen., a good deal, not a little: in abl. as adv., in some degree, considerably. 2

15. *rārī, in small detachments. ingredi: for the mode cf. IV, 24, 4; II, 4, 7.*

16, 17. *legiōnis septimae: this legion had met with a reverse on the previous expedition (see IV, 32, 12-19.) and was no doubt eager to try conclusions with the foe again. testūdine factā: see Int. 155. aggere: a roughly-made mound of earth, trees, etc., high enough to permit the soldiers to reach the top of the breastwork. For a similar instance see III, 25, 5, and note.*

20, 21. *mūnitiōni castrōrum: see Int. 180-181. tempus relinqui: at what time of day did the*

Romans usually begin building the camp?

1. *tripertitō: in three detachments.*

2. *expeditiōnem: the troops were in light marching order (expediti).*

3, 4. *iam extrēmī: the rear guard of the Romans was still in sight of the camp.*

5. *nūntiarent: for mode cf. IV, 11, 17; III, 11, 11.*

7. *subsisterent, hold firm. For mode cf. I, 40, 5 (putarent).*

8. *itaque: i. e., in consequence of the inability of the seamen to control their vessels.*

11. His rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitā- It is hastily
repaired and
beached at the
camp.
tumque revocārī atque itinere dēsistere iubet, ipse
ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterisque
cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL nāvibus
reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Ita 5
que ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arces-
sī iubet; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūrimās possit, iis legiōni-
bus, quae sint āpud eum, nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat
multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit
omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castris unā mūnitiōne coniungī. 10
In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnis quidem
temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvi-
bus castrisque ēgregiō mūnitīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante,
praesidiō nāvibus reliquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, pro-
ficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique The Britons
unite under
Cassivella-
nus. 15
in eum locum cōpiaē Britannōrum convēnerant
summā imperiī bellique administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō per-

4. cōram, *adv.*, [cum + ōs, face],
face to face, in person. 3

6. faber, fabrī, (*gen. pl.* -brūm),
m., a workman in wood, iron,
brass, marble, etc., a smith, car-
penter, mechanic. In the Roman

army the fabrī or engineers were a
separate corps under the praefec-
tus fabrūm.

11. nocturnus, -a, -um [nox,
night], of or belonging to the
night, nocturnal, by night. *

2. revocārī: from the pursuit.

6. fabrōs: as the engineering
corps (see Int. 102) was distinct
from the legion, it is clear from
the expression *ex legiōnibus dēligit*
that Caesar called for soldiers who
understood carpentry to aid in the
work.

10. subdūcī: see on IV, 29, 5.
castris: see on 9, 1. This was a
castra nāvālia, designed to keep
open his communications by water
with his base of supplies at *Portus
Itius*. unā mūnitiōne: it has been
estimated that the eight hundred

vessels, if ranged in four lines,
would occupy a strip of beach a
mile long and three hundred and
fifty feet wide. To enclose the
space in addition to that required
for five legions, two thousand horse-
men, the ships' crews and camp fol-
lowers, must have required fortifi-
cations of great extent.

14. eōdem: i. e., the camping-
place on the Stour, near which the
British stronghold was: cf. 9, 11 *lo-
cum*, and 21 *castrōrum*.

17. summā . . . administrandī,
the chief command and direction of
the war.

missā Cassivellaunō; cūius finēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flū-
men dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter milia
30 passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitā-
tibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū
permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

*Britain: its
people, re-
sources, pro-
ductions, cli-
mate.*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur,
quos nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt,
maritima pars ab iis, quī praedae ac bellī inferen-
dī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē iis nōminibus
5 cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnē-
runt) et bellō illātō ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coe-
pērunt. Hominum est īfīnīta multītūdō crēberrimaque

18. Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., Cas-
wallon, the commander-in-chief of
the Britons against Caesar. *

19. Tamesis, -is, m., the Thames. 2

1. interior, -ius, comp. adj. (sup.
intimus) [*prep.* intrā, within],
inner, interior: *in pl. as subst.*,
those in the interior. 5

4. Belgium, -ī, n., the country of
the Belgians. 2

6. colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, till,
cultivate; inhabit, dwell; honor,
cherish; observe. 2

7. ī-fīnītus, -a, -um [finis, end,
limit], endless, unlimited, bound-
less, countless. 3

18. Cassivellaunō: the king of
the Cassi, a people living in a dis-
trict comprised in the present coun-
ties of Hertford, Bedford and Buck-
ingham.

21. LXXX: Caesar naturally
gives the distance by the route fol-
lowed from his landing place to the
ford where he crossed the Thames.
huic . . . intercesserant, formerly
incessant wars had occurred between
him and the other tribes.

In this and the next two chapters
Caesar gives such items of infor-
mation about Britain as he could
gather from his own observation
and the sources of knowledge open
to him. His main purpose was to
satisfy the lively curiosity felt by
the Roman public with reference

to this unknown land.

2. quos . . . dīcunt, whose birth
upon the island itself is handed down,
they say, by tradition. Britain was
very early settled by Celts from the
continent, who were preceded by an
Iberian race. Other barbarous peo-
ples in lieu of historical data have
adopted the same theory in regard
to their own origin.

4. ex Belgiō: the ground for
this statement was the existence in
Britain of tribes called Atrebatēs,
Belgae, etc.

5. quibus . . . pervēnerunt, from
which they have descended and mig-
rated hither. cīvitātibus: on the
repetition of the antecedent cf. IV,
7, 2; II, 18, 1.

7. hominum, of the population.

aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum¹⁰ album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperā-¹⁵ tiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

9. nummus, -ī, m., a piece of money, coin. 2
 aureus, -a, -um [aurum, gold], of gold, gold, golden. 1
 tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar. 1
 10. exāminō, l. [exāmen, tongue of a balance], a., weigh, balance. 1
 plumbum, -ī, n., lead: sc. album, tin. 1
 11. albus, -a, -um, white. 1
 mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [medius, in the middle+terra], midland, inland, interior. 1
 13. fāgus, -ī, f., a beech-tree beech (timber). 1
 abiēs, -etis, f., the silver fir, fir-tree. 1
 14. lepus, -oris, m., a hare. 1

- gallina, -ae [gallus, a cock], f., a hen. 1
 ānser, -eris [cf. Engl. gander], m., a goose. 1
 gustō, l. a., a taste, partake of, eat. 1
 fās, indecl. [inf. fāri, to speak], n., divine sanction or law, opp. to iūs, human law; right. 4
 15. voluptās, -tātis [volō wish], f., what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. 2
 temperātus, -a, -um [p. p. of temperō, temper], moderate, temperate, mild. 1
 16. remissus, -a, -um [p. p. of remittō, send back, relax], relaxed, not rigid, gentle, mild. 1

8. Gallicis: the houses of the Gauls, it is said, were large, with high steep roofs covered with thatch; in shape they were like the Indian wigwam, but were substantially built of timbers.

9. ūtuntur . . . aureō: this statement has been verified by the finding of British gold coins antedating Caesar's time. taleis ferreis, iron bars, used as coins.

10, 11. plumbum album: the Phoenicians obtained tin from the Scilly Islands, off Cornwall, as early as the 11th century B. C. mediterrāneis regiōnibus: i. e., Cornwall. Caesar's mistake was natural. he

thinking only of the southeastern coast, from which the western parts of the island would seem to be inland.

12. exigua cōpia and for this reason, perhaps, used as money. aere: copper is now found in quantity in Cornwall and Devon, though the mines were not vigorously worked until the last century. importātō, probably from Sweden.

13. fāgum atque abietem: another mistake on Caesar's part. They are both said to be indigenous in Britain.

15. animi . . . causa, for diversion, as pets.

Its form and size. 13. *Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spēctat. Hōc pertinet circiter milia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hībernia, dīmidio minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmisūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona: complūrēs praeterea minōrēs subiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulis nōnnūllī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus,*

1. *triquetrus, -a, -um* [tri- + (quatus =) quartus], with three corners, triangular. 1
2. *angulus, -i, m.*, corner, angle. 2
3. *Cantium, -i, n.*, a district in the southeast of England, now Kent. 3
4. *merīdiēs, -ēi* [for *medidiēs* = *medius + diēs*], *m.*, midday, noon; the south. *
6. *occidō, -ere, cidi, cāsus*, fall or go down; set; be slain.
- Hibernia, -ae, f.*, Ireland.
7. *dimidius, -a, -um* [*medius*], divided in the middle, halved,

- half: *in neut. as subst.*, a half. 2
8. *trānsmisus, -ūs* [*trāns-mittō*], *m.*, sending across, passing over, passage. 1
9. *Mona, -ae, f.*, (1) in ancient writers usually the island Anglesey; (2) in Caesar probably the Isle of Man. 1
11. *brūma, -ae for brevima = brevissima*, *f.*, the shortest day, *i. e.*, the winter solstice; the winter. 1
12. *percontātiō, -ōnis* [*percontor, inquire*], *f.*, inquiring, asking; question, inquiry. 2

3. *ferē omnēs*: possibly the Veneti brought their cargoes of tin across from Cornwall to the mouth of the Loire: see on IV, 20, 9, 10. *ex Galliā, Gallic.*

4. *inferior*: sc. *angulus*: *i. e.*, Land's End. *hōc*: sc. *latus*. *pertinet, extends* towards the southwest.

5. *alterum*: sc. *latus*. *vergit ad Hispāniam*: a mistake prevailing long after Caesar's time.

7, 8. *dimidio minor, a half smaller*. *dimidio*: for case cf. III,

12, 12; II, 20, 4. *sed ... atque, but the passage is of the same length as*. *spatiō*: for case cf. 3, 11; IV, 1, 20. *atque*: for use cf. IV, 13, 15; III, 28, 6; 9, 22; II, 6, 4.

9. *Mona*: the Isle of Man, as is evident from the description. *mediō cursū, half way across*. Anglesey, to which Tacitus applies the name of Mona, is near the English coast.

10. *īnsulae*: probably the Hebrides and Orkney Islands.

nisi certis ex aquā mēnsūris breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC milium. Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; 15 cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc milia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū vicies C milium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, ^{Customs of its inhabitants.} quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lactē et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō 5

13. mēnsūra, -ae [metior, measure], f., measuring, measure. 2

15. DCC, here for septingenti, -ae, -a [septem + centum], seven hundred. 2

19. vicies (viciēs), num. adv. [viginti, twenty], twenty times. 1

4. serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, a., sow, plant. 1

carō, carnis, f., flesh. 2

5. vestiō, 4. [vestis, clothes], clothe, dress, attire. 3

vitrum, -i, n., glass, wood, a plant used in dyeing blue. 1

13. certis ex aquā mēnsūris, by exact measurements by means of water, i. e., by the water-clock (clepsydra). This was constructed on the plan of the sand or hour glass in vogue in later times. The water dropped through a small hole in the bottom of the vessel containing it. breviorēs: especially noticeable in the summer. The longest day at Rome is 15 hours; at London 16½ hours; in the north of Scotland, 18½ hours.

14, 15. ut . . . opīniō, according to their opinion. DCC: the exact length is about ninety Roman miles less.

16. angulus = alter angulus:

line 2 above. Caesar does not mention the angle between the west and the "north" sides.

17. octingenta: the real length of this side is about 570 Roman miles.

1. his: the tribes of Britain.

3. interiōrēs: the inhabitants of the inland regions.

4. nōn serunt: in contrast with the people of Cantium, who cultivated the soil: cf. IV, 32, 15; 31, 5. lacte . . . vivunt: cf. what Caesar says of the Germans in IV, 1, 15, 16.

inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hōc horridiō-
rēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque
omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.
Uxōrēs habent dēni duodēni que inter sē commūnēs et māxi-
10 mē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed sī quī
sunt ex his nātī, eōrum habentur liberī, quō primum virgō
quaequae dēducta est.

*Skirmishes be-
tween the
Britons and
Romans.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedariūque acriter proe-
liō cum equitatū nostrō in itinere cōnfixērunt, ta-
men ut nostrī omnibus partibus superioriōrēs fuerint atque eōs
in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis
5 cupidius īsecūtī nōnnullōs ex suis amiserunt. At illi inter-
missō spatiō imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūni-

6. inficiō, -erē, fēcī, fectus [fa-
ciō], *a.*, put on; stain, dye, tinge;
taint, infect. 3

caeruleus, -a, -um [caelum, the
sky], dark-colored, dark blue,
sky-blue, azure. 1

color, -ōris, *m.*, hue, color, tint. 3

horridus, -a, -um [horreō, stand
on end, bristle], bristling, rough;
unsightly, hideous, frightful. 1

7. aspectus (ad-), -ūs [adspiciō,
look at], *m.*, look; appearance,
mien, aspect. 3

capillus, -i [Gr. head], the hair of
the head. 2

prō-mittō, -ere, misī, missus
[mittō, send], *a.*, send forward

or down; let hang down or grow
(capillum or barbam). 1

8. rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus, *a.*,
scrape, shave. 1

labrum, -i [cf. lambō, lick, lap], *n.*,
lip, *fig.* rim, edge. 3

9. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*
[decem], ten each, ten at a time,
by tens. 2

duodēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*
[duodecem], twelve each, twelve
at a time. 3

10. parēs, -entis [*p. of pariō*],
m. and f., a par rt, father,
mother. 3

11. virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, maid,
virgin. 1

7. aspectū: for case cf. 3, 1;
III, 8, 4; II, 6, 1. capillō... prō-
missō, they have flowing hair. ca-
pillō: for case cf. 13, 7; 3, 11.

9. habent... duodēni, (*par-
ties of*) ten or twelve have.

11. quō: used adverbially for

ad quōs, cf. II, 16, 10.

1. Equitēs: the narrative broken off at the end of the 11th chapter is here resumed. essedariū: see IV, 24, 2.

6*7. imprudentibus... occu-

tiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt, duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque hīs primīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō inter-10 missō locī spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostrīs per mediōs audācissimē perrupērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tri- būnus militum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissis cohorti- bus repelluntur. 15

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculis *Tactics of the Britons. Dis- advantage of the Romans.* omnium āc prō castrīs dīmīcārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque insequī cēdentēs possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum 5 periculō proeliō dīmīcāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōsultō

10. per-exiguus, -a, -um [exi- guus, scanty, little], very small, very little. 1

13. Laberius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Quintus Laberius

Durus, a military tribune. 1
Dūrus, -ī, m., a Roman cōgnōmen. 1
6. cōsultō [abl. N. of cōsultus, well considered], adv., deliberately, designedly, on purpose. 5

pātis, while our men were off their guard and engaged. mūnitiōne castrōrum: see Int. 130, 131.

8. statiōne, on guard. Where were they posted? See IV, 32, 5.

10. atque hīs primīs: and these the first (cohorts), i. e., the first cohort in each legion, which contained the picked men. The detailing of these cohorts emphasizes the greatness of the danger. perexiguō, with a very little (portion of) space intervening between them.

11. cōstitissent: for mode cf. IV, 12, 4; III, 7, 4; 7, 2. novō genere: showing that these cohorts did not belong to the 7th and

10th legions, which had had experience in the British mode of fighting on the former expedition.

12. per mediōs: through the space between the cohorts. The Roman formation in close ranks was not well adapted for meeting such attacks.

3. nostrōs: i. e., the infantry. gravitātem armōrum: see Int. 104, ff.

4. ab signīs discēdere: i. e., to break ranks and skirmish.

5. equitēs: corresponds to nostrōs above.

6. illī = Britannī.

plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedis dēsilirent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et
 10 oīnsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis proeliārentur stationēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

The Britons renew their attacks and are repulsed.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in colibus cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque om-
 5 nem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex

6. dis-pār, paris [pār, equal], unequal, unlike, dissimilar, ill-matched. 2
 11. numquam (nunq-), [nē-+ unquam, ever], not ever, never. 4
 13. dēfatigo (dēfet-), 1. [fatigō, weary], a., completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 5
 4. pābulor, 1. [pābulum, fodder],

a., get fodder, forage. 3

5. Trebōnius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Trebonius, a friend of Cicero and Caesar who procured the Gallic province for Caesar and was appointed legate by him. *

repente [acc. N. of repōns, sudden], adv., suddenly, unexpectedly. 5

7. nostrōs = equitēs.

8. essedis: see note IV, 32, 19. pedibus: cf. the description of the manœuvre in IV, 33, 5, ff. The chief advantage lay in the fact that the British fought on foot and chariot at once, while the Roman cavalry was not supported by the infantry.

9, 10. et . . . pār, was the same, both when they retreated and advanced.

11. rārī: as in 9, 15.

12, 13. aliōs aliī: for use cf. IV, 26, 3; II, 26, 4; I, 39, 12.

1. procul ā castrīs: apparently to lure the cavalry away from the main body.

2. lēnius: in contrast to the ācriter of 15, 1.

4. pābulandī: see Int. 116. trēs legiōnēs etc.: an unusually large foraging party. The novel tactics of the British inspired respect. How large a force of cavalry had Caesar? Cf. 8, 5 and 2.

5, 6. lēgātō: see Int. 94. repente . . . advolāverunt: this recalls the manœuvre of the previous

omnibus partibus ad pābulatōrēs advolāvērunt, sīcubi ab signīs legiōnibusque absisterent. Nostrī ācrit̄er in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfisī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa

Caesar crosses the Thames and faces the enemy.

6. pābulatōr, -ōris [pābulor, forage], m., forager. 1
ad-volō, 1. [volō, fly], n., fly to or against, rush on or at. 3
sīcubi, adv., if in any place, if any-

where, wheresoever.

7. ab-sistō, -ere, stitī [sistō, stand], n., stand from or aloof, withdraw; leave off, refrain, desist. 1

year (IV, 32, 15, ff). sīcubi etc., if in any place they (the foragers) withdrew etc.

7. nostrī: the legionaries.

8. sequendī, following the enemy, who were not beaten yet, but slowly retreating.

9. subsidiō cōnfisī: the cavalry did not repeat the mistake of the previous day in allowing themselves to be drawn away from the legions: cf. 16, 7. subsidiō (sc. legiōnum): for case see on III, 27, 5.

10. praecipitēs . . ēgērunt: the attack of the cavalry finally forced the enemy to flee.

12. ex, after.

1. cōnsiliō: viz., not to fight

pitched battles but to prolong the war and wear out the Romans.

2. finēs: north of the Thames, in Middlesex and Buckinghamshire. exercitum dūxit: for the purpose of forcing the British leader to fight.

3. ūnō omnīnō locō: somewhere up the river from London, possibly as far as Kingston. Today the Thames is fordable in a number of places between London and Shepparton. atque hōc (locō) aegrē, and even there with much difficulty.

4. animum advertit=animadvertit, and has the same construction.

autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixis mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā defixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cōgnitis ā captivīs per fugis̄que Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque 10eō impetū militēs ierunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinere nōn possent ripāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellanus resorts to guerilla warfare.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis dīmissis ampliōribus cōpiis milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdebat locisque 5 impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iis regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandique causā sē in agrōs eiēcerat, omnibus

6. acūtus, -a, -um [*p. p. of acuō, sharpen*], sharpened, pointed. 2
 sudis, -is, *f.*, pile, stake. 4
 prae-figō, -ere, fixi, fixus, [*figō, fix*], *a.*, fix or fasten before, set in front or on the end. 1
 7. tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, *a.*

cover, hide, conceal; defend, protect. *

10. exstō (extō), -āre, *n.*, stand out, extend above. 1.

2. contentiō, -ōnis [*contendō, stretch out*], *f.*, stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. *

6. praefixis: i. e., projecting from the northern bank in contrast to the stakes driven into the bed of the stream (*sub aquā defixae*).

8. praemissō equitātū: Caesar probably sent the cavalry up and down the river, to cross and attack the enemy's flank.

9. eā, *such*, so also the following eō.

10. cum... exstārent, *although the head only etc.* This shows the value and extent of the legionary training.

1. suprā: in 17, 13, 14.

2. omnī... contentiōnis, *hav-*

ing lost all hope of being able to continue the contest.

2-4. ampliōribus cōpiis, *the greater part of his troops.* Cassivellaunus soon saw that his infantry was useless against the legions. itinera... servābat, *kept watching our movements.* locisque, etc: "We may conclude from this passage and the following narrative that the British chariots had very high wheels, which would enable them to pass more easily over the inequalities of the ground, and that they were very narrow" (Goehler).

8. eiēcerat: for the mode cf. IV, 17, 11; III, 14, 17, 18.

viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum iis cōnfigēbat atque hōc¹⁰ metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab āgmīne legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārīi militēs efficere poterant.

15

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eā-
rum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adu-
lēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam
vēnerat, cūius pater in eā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerat inter-
fectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat,
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs
atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā
Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in civitātem mittat, quī praesit

*Submission of
the Trinobantes.*

9. sēmita, -ae, f., narrow way, lane, foot-path. 2
12. tantum [*neut. acc. of tantus*], *adv.*, so much, so far, to such a degree or extent. 5
13. incendium, -ī [*incendō*, set fire to], n., burning, conflagration, fire. *

1. Trinobantēs, -um, m., a tribe of southeast Britain capital Camulodunum, the modern Colchester. 3
2. Mandubracius, -ī, m., a prince of the Trinobantes who with his people went over to Caesar. 4

10, 11. hōc metū: the demonstrative is, by a not infrequent Latin construction, attracted to the case of its noun (*hōc metū* = *metū hūius rei*): translate from fear of this. relinquēbātur etc., the one course left was for Caesar to forbid etc.

12, 13. et hostibus nocērētur, and damage the enemy. hostibus: for case cf. 3, 16; IV, 27, 12; III, 14, 3; II, 16, 6. tantum etc.: the foot soldiers could ravage only a comparatively narrow strip on either side of the line of march.

1, 2. eārum regiōnum, of this

section of the country, that had united under the command of Cassivellaunus.

3, 4. ad eum . . . vēnerat: for the fact see IV, 21, 10.

5. ipse: Mandubracius.

6. pollicentur, etc: this result was brought about by Caesar through the instrumentality of Mandubracius, who was with him. Diplomacy won Caesar many a victory.

8, 9. quī praesit, imperium obtineat: the first term (*praesit*) refers to the submission of others (as Cassivellaunus); the second (*imperium obtineat*) to absolutely in-

imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrā-
 10 gintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs
 mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum
 frūmentumque mīsērunt.

*Other tribes
 submit. Cas-
 sar takes the
 stronghold of
 Cassivellaunus.*

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsis atque omnī mīlitum
 iniuriā prohibitīs Cenimāgnī, Segontiacī, Ancali-
 tēs, Bibrocī, Cassī legātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī
 dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum
 5 Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis
 māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum
 autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque
 fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā con-
 venīre cōnsuerunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus: locum
 10 reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum, tamen hunc
 duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper
 morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā
 ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris re-
 pertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

*After a third
 attempt, Cas-
 sivellaunus
 submits.*

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivel-
 launus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā

2, 3. Cenimāgnī, -ōrum; 1 Se-
 gontiacī, -ōrum, 1 Ancalitēs,
 -um; 1 Bibrocī, -ōrum; 1

Cassī, -ōrum; 1 *tribes of South-
 east Britain.* See map.

dependent authority. For the Subj.
 cf. 10, 5; IV, 11, 17; III, 11, 11; II,
 11, 9; I, 15, 5.

1. dēfēnsis: against Cassivel-
 launus.

4, 5. eō locō: i. e., where the
 envoys met Caesar; perhaps at the
 crossing of the Thames. oppidum
 Cassivellaunī: identified by some
 authorities with the town St. Albans.

6. oppidum etc., *the Britons*

call (this) a town whenever etc. The
oppidum was intended for a place
 of refuge in case of attack—not for
 a permanent abode, as were the *op-
 pida* of the Gauls. "They have
 groves instead of cities; for when
 they have enclosed a great circle of
 felled trees, they build huts for
 themselves and make folds for their
 herds, not indeed for any length of
 time" (Strabo).

2. suprā: in 14, 2.

dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctis omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia 5 dē imprōvisō adorian tur atque oppūgnent. Ii cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne 10 civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī prōpter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vēctigālis populō 15 Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōstituit; interdicit atque im-

4. Cingetorix, -igis; * Carvilius, -i; 1 Taximagulus, -i; 1 Segovax (onax), -actis: 1 *British princes ruling in Kent.*
 8. Lugotorix, -igis, m., a *British chieftain.* 1
 9. dētrīmentum, -i [dē-terō, rub or wear out], n., loss, damage, injury; defeat. *
 14. ex-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus

[trahō, drag], a., drag or draw out, waste or fritter away. 1

16. pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, a., weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (as money was weighed in payment.)

inter-dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus [dicō, say], a., say among other things; intervene by an order; prohibit, exclude, interdict. *

3. regiōnibus: "The territory of Cantium we may suppose was divided into four parts, and each had a little king" (Long).

4. Cingetorix: a different king from the Treveran: cf. 3 and 4.

5. castra nāvālia: see on 11, 10.

6. dē imprōvisō: as in II, 3, 1.

10, 11. dēfectiōne civitātum: see 21, 2, 3. Commium: see IV, 27, 4.

12. in continentī: i. e., in Gaul instead of Italy: see Int. 34.

13. repentinōs mōtūs: Labienus doubtless kept Caesar fully informed of the state of Gaul.

14. superesset: it was now about the last of August. atque id etc., and that this time (if further delay was made) could easily be etc.

15. quid . . . vēctigālis, how much tribute each year: an empty form, since no troops were left to enforce the collection and tribute.

16. interdicit atque imperat: when two verbs are synonymous (or nearly so) one may be rendered by an adv., he expressly forbids.

perat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōnnullae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre
 5 instituit. Āc sic accidit, uti ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae militēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; at ex iis, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositis militibus et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās
 10 cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā expectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius militēs collocāvit āc summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā
 15 cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

4. *dē-pereō, -ire, -iī, itūrus, n.,* go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone. 2

8. *inānis, -e,* empty, void; abandoned, worthless; vain. 2

11. *aliquamdiū* [*fem. acc. of aliquis (sc. partem) + diū,* a long

time], for a while, for some time, awhile. 2

12. *exclūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus* [*claudō, shut*], *a.,* shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent. 4

13. *angustē* [*angustus*], *adv.,* within a narrow space, closely. 1

2. *nāvēs refectās:* see 10, 6-9 and 11, 4 ff.

4. *commeātibus:* here in the original sense of *relays* or *trips*.

5, 6. *tot nāvigātiōnibus:* a concessive abl. abs., *in spite of so many voyages.*

7. *portāret:* for mode cf. *vēndant* IV, 2, 2; III, 4, 2; II, 5, 16; I, 6, 2.

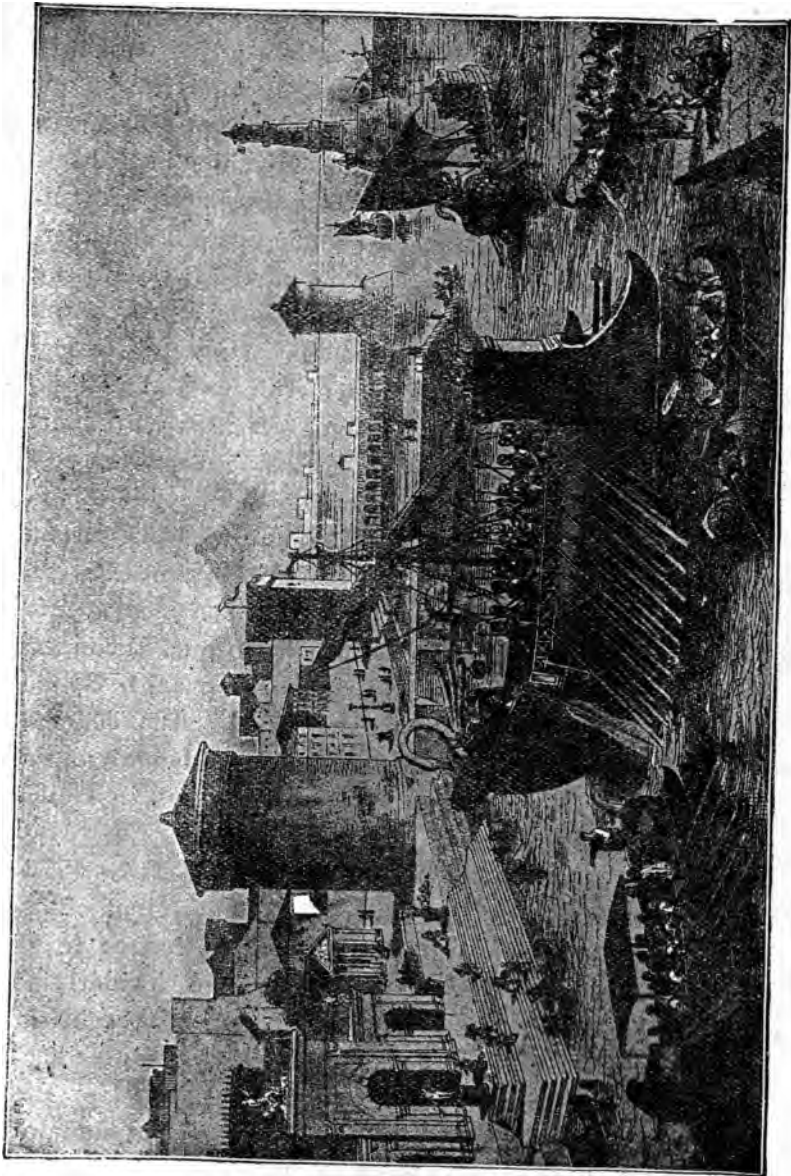
9. *faciendās:* for constr. cf. IV, 22, 21; III, 11, 11; I, 19, 4.

10. *numerō, to the number of.* *locum caperent, reached the land.*

12. *annī tempore:* it was now near the end of September. Caesar had been in Britain nearly three months.

13. *angustius, in rather close quarters.*

14, 15. *secundā vigiliā, primā lūce:* the voyage, therefore, occupied about nine hours,



NAVAL SCENE.

Caesar distributes his army among several tribes for the winter.

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae peractō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitatēs angustius prōvenerat, coactus est aliter ac superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocāre legiōnesque in plūrēs civitatēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esubiōs L. Rosciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacīs collocāvit; his M. Crassum quaestōrem et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praeficit. Unam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīperat, et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Amborigis et Catuvolcī erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titurium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē medērī posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rosciō in pācātissimam et quietissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnitaque hiberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

The Carnutes slay the friendly chief Tasgetius. Caesar's measures for their punishment.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius māiōrēs in suā civitate rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtute atque in sē benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimicī multis palam ex civitate auctoribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē civitas eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Car-

nūtēs proficiscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cōg-¹⁰
nōverat Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mit-
tere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātīs quaestōribusque], quibus
legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum
locumque [hibernis] esse mūnitum.

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ven-
tum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac defectiōnis
ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō, quī cum ad
finēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent
frumentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomari Trē-⁵
verī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis
lignātōribus magnā manū ad castrā oppugnātum vēnērunt.
Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent
atque unā ex parte Hispānis equitibus ēmissis equestrī proe-
liō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnā-¹⁰
tiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī
ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē
commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui
posse spērārent.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Ar-
pinēius equēs Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Tituriī, et
Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante
missū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōnsuē-
rat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē⁵
prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum eī cōnfiterī debēre,
quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduātucis,
finitimis suis, pendere cōnsuēssset, quodque eī et filius et
frātris filius ab Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduātucī obsi-
dum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuis-¹⁰
sent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, aut
iūdicīō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis, suaque

*Revolt of the
Eburones un-
der Ambiorix.
Defeated, in
an assault up-
on the camp
of Sabinus,
they demand
a conference.*

*In the confer-
ence Ambio-
rix craftily
advises the
Romans to
withdraw to a
place of safe-
ty.*

esse eiusmodi imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō, quam ipse in multitudinem. Cīvitātī porrō hanc
 15 fuisse bellī causam, quod repentinā Gallōrum coniūratiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitate suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum, ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium: omnibus hibernīs Caesaris oppūg-
 20 nandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterae legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertate cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietate satisfecerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officīi prō beneficiis
 25 Caesaris: monēre, orāre Titurium prō hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore bīduō. Ipsōrum essē cōnsilium, velintne prius, quam finitimī sentiant, educ-tōs ex hibernīs militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum
 30 dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūreiūrandō cōfirmāre, tūtum iter per finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiā referre. Hāc orātiōne hab-
 35 itā discēdit Ambiorix.

Roman officers discuss the proposal of Ambiorix. 28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audiērunt, ad
 lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimā-
 bant, māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem
 5 ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrō-versia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī militum

et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum
 neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discendum existi- 10
 mabant; quantavis copias Germanorum sustineri posse
 munitionibus hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod
 primum hostium impetum multis ultrò vulneribus il-
 latis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; in-
 terea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura sub- 15
 sidia; postrimo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore
 hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

29. Contra ea Titurius sero facturòs clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Ger- Sabinus fa-
vors the sug-
gestion.
 manibus convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis
 hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasio-
 nem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter 5
 Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos,
 neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad
 castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spec-
 tare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolore Ariovisti
 mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot 10
 contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam,
 superiore gloria rei militaris extincta. Postrimo quis hoc
 sibi persuaderet, sine certa spe Ambiorigem ad eius modi
 consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque par-
 tem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad 15
 proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Ger-
 manis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem.
 Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem
 habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe
 longinqua obsidione famēs esset timenda. 20

30. Hac in utramque partem disputatione hab- Cotta opposes.
 ita, cum a Cottā primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur,

‘Vincite’, inquit, ‘si ita vultis’, Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut māgna pars militum exaudiret; ‘neque is sum’, inquit, ‘quī
 5 gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear; hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent, quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hibernīs coniūctī com-
 mūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsū sustineant, nōn rōiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēteris aut ferrō aut famē intereant.’

*Sabinus pre-
 vails and the
 Romans pre-
 pare to leave
 camp.*

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertinā-
 ciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant: facilem
 esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum om-
 5 nēs sentiant āc probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salū-
 tem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad meāiam noctem perdū-
 citur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia
 Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs
 reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret,
 10 quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum
 relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec sine
 periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigiliīs periculum
 augeātur. Primā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus
 esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō
 15 [Ambiorige] cōnsilium datum, longissimō āgmine mākīmīs-
 que impedimentīs,

*The Eburones
 attack them
 after their de-
 parture.*

32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū
 vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collo-
 cātis insidiīs bipertitō in silvis oportūnō atque occultō locō ā
 milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum ex-
 5 spectābant, et cum sē māior pars āgminis in māgnam conval-
 lem dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē osten-
 dērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū
 atque iniquissimō nostris locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēnum Titurius, quī nihil ante prō- *Unfortunate*
vidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispō- *management*
nere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere *of the Roman*
vidērentur; quod plērumque iis accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō *leaders.*
negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāssset, 5
haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profec-
tiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat:
et in appellandīs cohortandīsque militibus imperātōris et in
pūgnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem
āgminis minus facile omnia per sē obire et, quid quōque locō 10
faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāre, ut
impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod
cōnsilium etsī in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est,
tamen incommodē accidit: nam et nostrīs militibus spem
minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn 15
sine summō timōre et dēspēratiōne id factum vidēbātur. Prae-
tereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō militēs ab sīg-
nīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab
impedimentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clamōre et
flētū omnia complērentur. 20

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam *Measures tak-*
dūcēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt, nē *en by the Ed-*
quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illis re- *urones.*
servārī, quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent: proinde omnia in
victōriā posita existimārent. Erant et virtūte et studiō pūg- 5
nandī parēs nostrī; tametsī ab dūce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur,
tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns
quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus
hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī
iubet, ut procul tēla cōnciant neu propius accēdant et, quam 10
in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcērunt, cēdant (levitāte armō-

rum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil iīs nocērī posse), rūsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs īnsequantur.

Their disastrous effect. The Romans bravely resist.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs diligentissimē obser-
vātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat at-
que impetum fēcerat, hostēs vėlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim
eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī.
5 Rūsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant ēgressī, revertī coepe-
rant, et ab iīs, quī cesserant, et ab iīs, quī proximī steterant,
circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec vir-
tūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque ab tantā multitudine cōniecta
tēla cōnferti vitāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnflic-
10 tāti, multis vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et māgnā parte
diēi cōsumptā, cum ā primā luce ad hōram octāvā pūgnā-
rētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indignum, committēbant. Tum
T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō primum pīlum dūxerat, virō
forti et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāici-
15 tur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum
circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur: L. Cotta lēgātus om-
nēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vul-
nerātūr.

Sabinus desires to seek the protection of Ambiorix. Cotta opposes.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius, cum pro-
cul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset,
interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit
rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respon-
5 dit: Si velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; sperāre ā multitudine im-
petrārī posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsī vērō
nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.
Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut ex-
cēdant et cum Ambiorige unā colloquantur: spērāre ab eō dē
10 suā ac militum salutē impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum
hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

37.* Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē 5
condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorige instituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte militum. Reliquī sē 10
in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitudine hostium premerētur aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pūgnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad unum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interfici- 15
unt. Pauci ex proeliō ēlapsī incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

While parleying Sabīnus is slain. The Roman army is almost completely destroyed.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitatū in Aduātucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitumī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem inter- mittit peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā 5
Aduātucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō iis, quās accēperint, iniuriis occāsionem dīmittant: interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interisse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negotiū, subitō oppressam le- 10
giōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interfici; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiutōrem. Facile hāc orātiōne Nervius persuādet.

Ambiorix invites the Aduātuci and Nervii to arms.

39. Itaque cōfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutrōnēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, 15
Other tribes unite: they attack Cleo- ro's camp.

quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam m̄ximās manūs possunt, cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advo-
 5 lant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titurii morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnulli militēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repenti-
 nō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circumventis m̄g-
 nā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduātucī atque hōrum omnium
 10 socii et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī ce-
 liter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant
 atque hanc adepti victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

*Cicero writes
 to Caesar.
 Stout resis-
 tance of the
 Romans.*

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōfestimā Cicerō-
 ne litterae m̄gnīs prōpositis praemiis, sī pertulis-
 sent: obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur.
 Noctū ex materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, tur-
 5 rēs admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritāte; quae dees-
 se operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō
 maiōribus coactis cōpiis castra oppūgnant, fossam complent.
 Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostris resistitur. Hōc idem
 reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis
 10 ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās
 quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppūgnātiōnem
 opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, m̄g-
 nus murālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabu-
 lantur, pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cice-
 15 rō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem
 sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ūltrō militum concur-
 sū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

*The Nervii try
 to allure Cice-
 ro from the
 camp. He re-
 fuses.*

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, qui
 aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae
 cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloqui sēsē velle dicunt.

Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs 5 Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, sī quicquam ab hīs praesidiī spērent, quī suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil 10 nisi hiberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs incolumibus per sē ex hibernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem: 15 sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtore ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervī vāllō pedum ix The Nervii invest Cicero's camp. et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbis cōgnōverant et, quōs dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur, sed 5 nullā ferramentōrum cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs cēspitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitudō cōgnōsci potuit: nam minus hōris tribus mīlium pedum xv in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt, reliquisque diēbus turres ad altitudinem vāllī, falcēs testudinēsque, quās idem captivī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt. 10

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē māximō coortō They are the Roman barracks. ventō ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitudine in omnem locum castrō- 5

rum distulērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre sicuti partā iam atque explorātā victōriā turrēs testūdīnesque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit, ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur
 10 tur māximāque tēlōrum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fortunās cōnflagrāre intellexerent, nōn modo dēmigrandi causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs acerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hic diēs nostris
 15 longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē māximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque primīs ūltimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum tertiae
 20 cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suosque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introire vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus cōnietis dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

The rival exploits of two centurions. 44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī primīs ordinibus appropinquārent, T. Puliō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, quīnam anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locis
 5 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Puliō, cum acerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' inquit, 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.' Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs quaque pars hostium cōfer-
 10 tissima est visa, irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem subsequitur. Tum mediocri spatiō relictō Puliō pilum in hostēs immittit

atque ūrum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt, in hostem tēla ūniversī cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. 15
 Trānsfigitur scūtum Puliōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāginam et gladium ēducere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et laborantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Puliōne omnis multitūdō convertit: 20
 illum verūtō arbitrantur occīsum. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in locum dēlātus īferiōrem concidit. Huīc rūsus circumventō fert subsidium Puliō, atque 25
 ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salutīque esset neque diiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte militum Cicero informs Caesar of his perill. cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crebriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrōrum 5
 militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat summamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertātis māgnisque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās 10
 effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar accēptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūn- Caesar directs his legates to relieve Cicero.
 decimā diēi statim nūntiū in Bellovacōs ad M.

Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō
 mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci
 5 celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alter-
 um ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebatum finēs
 legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit
 Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne
 ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod
 10 paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs cir-
 citer quadringentōs ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

*Crassus and
 Fabius re-
 spond.*

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē
 Crassī adventū certior factus eō diē mīlia passuum
 xx prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque
 eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitā-
 5 tum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō toleran-
 dae hiemis causā dēvēxerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperā-
 tum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne
 occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōg-
 nitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus
 10 nē sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium
 impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victō-
 riā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum pericu-
 lō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset, rem gestam in Ebu-
 rōnibus perscribit, docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpias
 15 Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ā suis castrīs cōnsēdisse.

*Caesar in-
 forms Cicerō
 of coming re-
 lief.*

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne
 trium legiōnum dēiectūs ad duās redierat, tamen
 ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit
 māgnīs itineribus in Nerviorum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cōg-
 5 nōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō
 rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs
 persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam dēferat. Hanc Grae-

cīs cōnscriptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistolā ad ammentum deligātā intrā 10 mūnitiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur, ut pristinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs biduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōn- 15 spicitur, dēmta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explorātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter milia Lx. The Gauls quit the siege and march against Caesar. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; 5 hunc admonet, iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litterīs, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter milia 10 passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat māgnī periculī rēs tantulis cōpiīs iniquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritate existimābat: cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō locō potest, 15 castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimētis, tamen angustiis viārum, quam māximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. In-

20 terim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissis explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallēs trānsirī possit.

*Caesar feigns
fear and re-
tires within
his works.*

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utriūque sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulatiōne hostēs in suum locum 5 ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in cas- 10 tra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulatiōne agī timōris iubet.

*By an unex-
pected sortie
Caesar routs
the Gauls.*

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōstituunt, nostris vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōniciunt praecōnibusque 5 circummissis prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem: ac sic nostrōs contempserunt, ut obstrūctis in speciem portis singulis ōrdinibus cēspitum, quod ea nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī 10 vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnūque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exiit.

*He proceeds
to the camp
of Cicero.*

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant neque etiam parvulō dē-

trimentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incol-
 umibus cōpiis eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institū-
 tās turrēs, testudinēs mūnitiōēsque hostium admiratur; le-
 giōne prōductā cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reli-
 quum mīlitem sine vulnere: ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus,
 quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint adminis-
 trātae: Cicerōnem prō eiūs meritō legiōnemque collaudat:
 centurionēs singillātīm tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quō-
 rum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cōgnōver-
 at. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit.



CONTTO.

Posterō diē contiōne hābitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs
 cōnsolātur et cōfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeri-
 tāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet,
 quod beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō
 incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsis lon-
 gior dolor relinquātur.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdi-
 bili celeritāte dē victoriā Caesaris fāma perfertur,
 ut, cum ab hibernis Cicerōnis mīlia passuum ab-

*Retreat of
 Indutimarus
 and his allies.
 Caesar decides
 to winter in
 Gaul.*

esset circiter LX, eoque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervē-
 5 nisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clamor
 orerētur, quō clamōre significātiō victōriæ grātulātiōque ab
 Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indu-
 tiomarus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcre-
 verat, noctū prōfugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs reducit.
 10 Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse
 cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hibernīs
 hiemāre cōstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant,
 tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrevit. Nam illō
 incommodō de Sabinī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae
 15 civitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs legātiōnēsque in om-
 nēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid reliquī cōsiliū caperent at-
 que unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant nocturnaue in
 locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius
 hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn
 20 aliquem dē cōsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet.
 In hīs ab L. Rosciō, quem legiōnī tertiadedecimae praefēce-
 rat, certior factus est, māgnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum civitā-
 tum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppugnandī suī causā
 convēnisse neque longius milia passuum octō ab hibernīs
 25 suis āfuisse, sed nūntiō allātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse,
 adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

*Caesar con-
 sers with the
 Gallic chiefs.
 Suspected in-
 subordinatlon
 of nearly all
 the tribes.*

54. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis
 ad se evocatis alias territandō, cum se scire, quae
 fierent, dēnūntiāret, alias cohortandō māgnam par-
 tem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs,
 5 quae est civitās in primīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auc-
 tōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstitu-
 erat, cuius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris
 cuiusque māiōrēs rēgnū obtinuerant, interficere publicō

cōsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac prōfūgisset, usque ad finēs insecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt et, missis ad ¹⁰ Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audiētēs nōn fuērunt. Tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs principēs īferendī bellī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtatiōnem attulit, ut praeter Aeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs ¹⁵ praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā erga populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nūlla ferē civitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum māximē, quod eī, quī virtūte bel- ²⁰ lī omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum sē eius opiniōnis dēperdidisse, ut ā populō Rōmānō imperia perferrent, gravisimē dolēbant.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomarus tōtius The Treveri under Indutiomarus form a hostile alliance. hiemis nūllum tempus intermiserunt, quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, civitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicerentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ⁵ ullī civitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit, ut Rhēnum trānsiret, cum sē bis expertōs dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tenctērorū trānsitū: nōn esse amplius fortunam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lapsus Indutiomarus nihil minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā finitimis equōs parāre, exulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māg- ¹⁰ nis praemiīs ad sē allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rēbus in Galliā auctoritātem comparāverat, ut undique ad eum legātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiām atque amicitiam publicē privātimque peterent.

Indutiomarus calls an armed council of the Gauls. He plans to attack Labienus.

56. Ubi intellexit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnūtēsque cōscientiā facinoris instigārī, alterā Nervios Aduātucōsque bellum Rōmānis parāre, neque sibi voluntariōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex finibus suis prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indicit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium belli: quō lēge commūni omnēs pūberēs armāti convenire cōsuērunt: quī ex iis novissimus convenit, in cōspectū multitudinis omnibus cruciātibus affectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorigem, alterius principem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprā dēmōstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque eius pūblicat. His rēbus cōfectis in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessitum sē ā Senonibus et Carnūtibz aliisque complūribz Galliae cīvitātibus: hūc itūrum per finēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum āc, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēni oppūgnātūrum. Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

Labienus, feigning fear, remains in the camp.

57. Labiēnus, cum et loci nātūrā et manū mūnitissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō āc legiōnis periculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occasiōnem rei bene gerendae dīmitteret, cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque eius pro-
5 pīnquīs ōrātiōne Indutiomarī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitimās cīvitātēs equitēsque undique ēvocat: his certam diem conveniendī dicit. Interim prope cotidiē cum omnī equitātū Indutiomarus sub castrīs eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās collo-
10 quendī aut territandī causā: equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōniciēbant. Labiēnus suos intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem, quibuscumque poterat rēbus, augēbat.

58. Cum māiore in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomarus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium finitimārum civitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā diligentīā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit, ut nullā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotidiānā Indutiomarus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cōsūmit: equitēs tēla cōniciunt et māgnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostris datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipāti discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit: praecipit atque interdicit, prōteritis hostibus atque in fugam cōnectīs (quod fore, sicut accidit, vidēbat) ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat: māgnā prōpōnit iis, quī occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortuna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntēs, quōs possunt, cōsectantur atque occidunt. Hāc rē cōgnita omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convēnerant, cōpia discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiorē Galliam.

He makes a sudden sortie. Indutiomarus is slain, his army routed, and order restored in Gaul.

5

10

15

20

BOOK VI.—CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE TREVERI AND EBURONES.

The enforced leisure of the winter was improved by Caesar in making preparations for the coming struggle with the insurgents. Two legions were levied in Cisalpine Gaul, and a third was borrowed from Pompeius, making ten legions now under Caesar's command. Before the arrival of spring he put his army in motion toward the territory of the Belgae. Surprising the Nervii with four legions, he ravaged their country with fire and sword. Returning to winter-quarters he called an assembly of the Gauls, to which all gathered except the Senones, Carnutes and Treveri. He overawed the first two of these tribes by a prompt advance against them, and accepting hostages from them, he turned in pursuit of Ambiorix, the destroyer of Sabinus and his legions. The rebel chief was in hiding among the Menapii, with whom Caesar had several scores to settle. Hastening thither, he built bridges, burnt villages, and carried off cattle and men. Ambiorix, however, escaped. Receiving the submission of the Menapii, he marched up the left bank of the Rhine to the support of Labienus, who was in pursuit of the Treveri. By a pretended flight they were drawn into an engagement in which they were defeated with great slaughter. In order to overawe the Germans, who had rendered aid to the Treveri on this occasion, Caesar built another bridge across the Rhine some distance above the place where he had made the first, and crossed in force. But the results were even less fruitful than on the former occasion. After a short stay among the Ubii, Caesar withdrew, broke down enough of the bridge to render it useless to the Germans, and marched through the Ardennes in search of Ambiorix, the capture of whom he thought of the highest importance to the success of his efforts for the subjugation of Gaul. The forces of the wily chief were defeated, but he still eluded all his pursuers. Caesar divided his army into three bodies to facilitate the pursuit, and left all the baggage in charge of Cicero at Aduatuca, the scene of the terrible slaughter of the troops of Sabinus. Cicero, in spite of Caesar's warnings, let his troops leave the camp on foraging expeditions. A body of German horsemen, who had crossed the Rhine on a predatory excursion, learned of the rich booty in Cicero's camp and of the carelessness of the Roman general. They according-

ly made a sudden attack, which was repelled with great difficulty, leaving the Romans in a panic. Seven days after his departure Caesar returned, and restored the confidence of his men. Baffled in capturing Ambiorix, he turned upon the Eburones themselves, and with the assistance of their neighbors completely extirpated them. He then returned to the Senones and Carnutes and instituted an investigation of their revolt, which resulted in the condemnation to death of their chief Acco. Making such a strategic disposition of his forces as gave them control of the area of the revolt, Caesar repaired to Italy, where matters of great moment awaited his attention.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar: A Sketch. pp. 249-252. (Harper's ed.).

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. vii. (Ancient Classic Series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 321-323.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. i. chap. x. pp. 398-405.

NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. chap. ix,



COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

*Caesar pro-
cures new
troops from
Italy.* 1. Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae
motum expectans per M. Silanum, C. Antistium
Reginum, T. Sextum legatos delictum habere instituit: simul
ab Cn. Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem
5 cum imperio reipublicae causam remaneret, quos ex Cisalpina
Gallia consul sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad
se proficisci iuberet, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tem-
pus ad opinionem Galliae existimans tantam videri Italiae fac-
ultatem, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non
10 modo id brevi tempore sarciri, sed etiam maioribus augeri
copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et reipublicae et amicitiae
tribuisset, celeriter confectum per suos delictum tribus ante
exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplica-
tione earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio amis-
15 erat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani discip-
lina atque opes possent.

*The Treveri
again form
an alliance
against him.* 2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius
propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi
finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non des-
sistunt. Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores
5 temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus iureiurando inter se
confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia cavent; Amborigem sibi
societate et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caes-
sar cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Aduaticos,
Menapios adiunctis Cisrhennanis omnibus Germanis esse in

armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnūtibus 10
finitimisque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs
Germānōs crēbris legātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē
bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā proximīs *Caesar deva-*
quattuor coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finēs *states the*
Nerviōrum contendit et, priusquam illi aut *country of*
venīre aut prōfugere possent, māgnō pecoris atque *the Nervii.*
hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā militibus *After a con-*
concessā vāstātisque agrīs in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs *ference at*
sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō rūsus in hīb- *Lutetia*
erna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut ī- *(Paris), he*
stituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnūtēs Trē- *marches*
verōsque vēnissent, initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hōc esse ar- *against the*
bitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutētiam *Senones.* 5
Parisiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfinēs erant hī Senonibus cīvitātem-
que patrum memoriā coniūxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse
existimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē
cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficiscitur māgnisque itineribus 15
eō pervenit.

4. Cōgnitō eius adventū Accō, quī princeps *These submit;*
eius cōnsiliī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem *also the Car-*
convenīre. Cōnantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse *nutes.*
Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessariō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōs-
que dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Aedu- 5
ōs, quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar
petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excūsātiōnemque accipit, quod
aestivum tempus īstantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrāt-
ur. Obsidibus imperātis centum hōs Aeduis custōdiendōs
trādit. Eōdem Carnūtēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt ūsī dēp- 10
recātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientelā: eadem ferunt

respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat civitātibus.

Caesar proceeds against the Menapii. 5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorigis īnsistit, Cavarīnum cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis aut ex hūius irācundiā aut ex eō, quod meruerat, odio civitātis mōtus existat. His rēbus cōstitutīs, quod prō explorātō habēbat Ambiorigem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propīnquī Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvisque mūnītī, quī unī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam miserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorigī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānis in amicitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illi dētrahenda auxilia existimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānis congregēdi cōgerētur. Hōc inītō cōnsiliō tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque legiōnēs ad eum proficīscī iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficīscitur. Illi nullā coactā manū locī praesidiō frēti in silvās palūdēsque cōfugiunt suaque eōdem cōferunt.

They sue for peace and give hostages. 6. Caesar partītis cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus adit tripertitō, aedificia vicōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potitur. Quibus rēbus coactī 5 Menapii lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōfirmat, sī aut Ambiorigem aut ēius lēgātōs finibus suis recēpissent. His cōfirmātis rēbus Commium Atrebatem cum equitātū custōdis locō in Menapiīs relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficīscitur. 10

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māg- The Treveri
plan to attack
Labiēnus.
His strategy.
nīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum
cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemāverat, adorīri
parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum
duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs cas- 5
trīs ā milibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum expectāre
cōstituunt. Labiēnus hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō spērāns temer-
itate eōrum fore aliquam dīmīcandī facultātem, praesidiō quīn-
que cohortium impedimentīs relicto, cum vīginti quinque coh-
ortibus māgnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficiscitur et millē 10
passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter La-
biēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpisque prae-
ruptīs. Hōc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque
hostēs trānsitūrōs existimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotī-
diē spēs. Loquitur [in cōnsiliō] palam, quoniam Germānī 15
appropīnquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortunās in
dubium nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē primā lūce castra
mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex māgnō
Gallōrum equitum numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favere
nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus noctū tribūnis militum primisque 20
ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsiliī, prōpōnit et, quō
facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et
tumultū, quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuetūdō, castra mōvēri
iubet. His rēbus fūgae similem profectiōnem effēcit. Haec
quoque per explorātōrēs ante lūcem id tantā propīnquitāte 25
castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

8. Vix āgmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs He lures them
to an unfa-
vorable pos-
ition and ut-
terly defeats
them.
prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē, nē spērā-
tam praedam ex manibus dīmītterent: longum esse
perterritīs Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium expectāre, neque
suam patī dīgnitātem, ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum 5

praesertim fugientem atque impeditam adoriri nōn audeant, flūmen trānsire et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen eliceret, eādē ūsus simulatiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbatur. **10** Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultō quōdam collocātis, 'Habētis,' inquit, 'militēs, quam petistis, facultātem: hostem impedītō atque iniquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nobis ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenumerō imperātōri praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram **15** cernere existimate.' Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet et paucis turmis praesidiō ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamōre sublātō pila in hostēs immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos modo fugere crēdebant, infestis signis ad se ire **20** viderunt, impetum ferre nōn potuerunt ac primō concursū in fugam cōiecti proximās silvās petierunt. Quos Labiēnus equitatū cōsectātus magnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captis paucis post diēbus civitatem recēpit. Nam Germāni, qui auxiliō veniebant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē domum **25** recēperunt. Cum his propinquī Indutiomari, qui defectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, comitāti eōs ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōstrāvimus, principātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Second passage of the Rhine. Caesar receives the submission of the Ubii and plans to go against the Suebi.

5

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit; quārum ūna erat, quod auxilia contrā se Trēveris miserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum haberet. His cōstitutis rēbus paulum suprā eum locum, quō ante exercitum trādūxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne magnō militum studiō paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēveris ad pontem praesidiō

relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant at-¹⁰ que in dēditiōnem vēnerant, purgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt, quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitate in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ōrant, ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit dari,¹⁵ pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirit.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs *The Suebi retire within the forest Bacenis.* certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōnibus, quae sub eōrum sint imperiō, dēnūntiāre, ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitīs rē-⁵ bus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat, ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī, mandat, ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant. Illi¹⁰ imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteaquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs, quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse: silvam esse ibi infinītā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur¹⁵ Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōsus pertinēre et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Cheruscōs ab Suēbīs Suēbōsque ab Cheruscīs iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre: ad eius initium silvae Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.

*Contrast of
Gallic and
German cus-
toms.*

*Existence of
two parties in
Gaul.*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniae-que mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpō-
nere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitatibus
5 atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiō-
num prīncipēs sunt, quī summam auctōritatem eōrum iūdicio
habere exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque sum-
ma omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius rei
10 causā antiquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā
potentiōrem auxiliī egēret: suōs enim quisque opprimī et cir-
cumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs
habeat auctōritatem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius
Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitatēs in partēs divisae sunt duās.

*The leading
tribes: the
Aedui, Sequa-
ni, Remi.*

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius fac-
tīōnis prīncipēs erant Aedui, alterius Sēquanī. Hī

6. factiō, -ōnis, [factiō], *f.*, mak-
ing, doing: combination. party,
faction. *

8. arbitrium, -ī [arbitr, judge],
n., decision or judgment of the

*arbiter; opinion, discretion, plea-
sure. 3*

11. egeō, egēre, egui, *a.*, need,
want, lack; be without or desti-
tute. 2

1. locum: as the military move-
ments of this campaign were com-
paratively unimportant, Caesar in-
troduces at this point an interest-
ing account of the life and manners
of the Gauls and Germans.

4. omnibus civitatibus: for
the number see Int. 68.

6. singulis domibus: some
members of a family being the sup-
porters of one chief, others of his
rival. factiōnēs: see Int. 69.

7. eōrum: the commons.

8. quōrum: the chiefs (*prīnci-
pēs*).

9. redeat, *is referred.* eius rei:
explained by the clause *nē . . .
egēret.*

11, 12. auxiliī: for the case
see A. 223; G. 405, N. 2; H. 410 V., 1;
B. 212. What case usually fol-
lows such verbs?

quisque: *i. e.*,
each chief. opprimī . . . patitur:
i. e., his position obliged him to
protect his dependents.

13, 14. in summā, *in general.*
tōtius Galliae: depends upon *ratiō*,
for case cf. IV, 16, 16. partēs
duās: *i. e.*, national parties headed
by the Druids and nobles respec-
tively: see Int. 78.

1, 2. vēnit: in 58 *b. c.* alteri-
us . . . Sēquanī: cf. I, 31, 10, *alteri-
us Arvernōs.* The Arverni preced-
ed the Sequani in the leadership of

cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut māgnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab iīs principum filiōs acciperent et publicē iūrāre cōgerent, nihil sē¹⁰ contrā Sēquanōs cōsiliū initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Diviciacus auxiliū petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus imperfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōe rērum, obsidibus¹⁵ Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs per Cae-

4. *clientēla*, -ae [cliēns, a client], *f.*, the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; dependents, vassals. 5
6. *iactūra*, -ae [iacciō, throw], *f.*, throwing away; loss, expense. 4

10. *iūrō*, 1. [iūs, right], *n.*, swear one's rights, take an oath, swear. 2
14. *Rōma*, -ae, *f.*, Rome. 3
imperfectus, -a, -um [faciō], not made or done, unaccomplished. 1

this faction.

3. *antīquitus*: before the time when the Romans began to support the Aedui against the Arverni: see Int. 79.

4. *māgnae*, numerous. *clientēlae*: among these were the Belovaci, Bituriges, Senones and Segusiavi.

6. *iactūrīs pollicitātiōibus*: cf. the assertion of Ariovistus in I, 44, 5, *māgnīs praemiīs*.

7. *nōbilitāte . . . interfectā*: cf. what Diviciacus says in I, 31, 18, 19.

8. *potentiā*: for case cf. V, 14, 7; III, 8, 4; II, 17, 14; I, 48, 12.

10, 11. *nihil . . . initūrōs*: cf.

the more definite statement in I, 31, 23-26.

12. *occupātam*: trans. by a relative clause, *which had been etc.*

14. *Rōmam profectus*: in 63 B. C. *imperfectā rē*, *without accomplishing his purpose*. The senate was busily engaged in investigating the conspiracy of Catiline, and did not give him a definite answer.

15. *commūtātiōe*, a change in the political relations of the parties, resulting from the defeat of Ariovistus; cf. I, 51-53.

16, 17. *novīs* (sc. *clientēlis*) . . . *comparātīs*: give an example from I, 28, 14 ff.

sarem comparātis, quod hī, quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant, meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitatēque amplificātā,
 20 Sequānī principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant: quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbatur, iī, quī propter veterēs inimicitias nullō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant, sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illi diligenter tuēbantur: ita et novam et repente
 25 collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two classes of nobility: the Knights and Druids.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē. nullō adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plerique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut
 5 māgnitudīne tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus

22. inimicitia, -ae [amicitia, friendship], F., enmity, hostility. 1
 23. dicō, 1. proclaim; consecrate, devote, assign, give over. 2
 25. status, -ūs, M., position, con-

dition, station. 3
 5. tribūtum, -ī [tribuō, assign], N., tribute. 2
 7. dominus, -ī, M., ruler, lord, master. 1

17. eōrum = Aeduōrum.

18. sē ūtī, that they enjoyed.

19. reliquīs rēbus, by all other means: in addition to the means mentioned above.

20. Rēmī: see on II, 3, 2 and 4.

21. adaequāre: sc. the object, Aeduōs. How is the verb intellegēbatur used here?

24, 25. repente collēctam: i. e., within the five years since Caesar's arrival. tum: in 58 B. C.

26. habērentur, were regarded.

3. plēbēs: see Int. 76.

4. aere aliēnō: in early times the lower classes were always more or less in debt to the higher orders. This fact has been explained as being due to the absorption of capital by the nobles, to whom the tillers had to apply for means to purchase the necessary implements for working the land.

5. iniūriā potentiōrum: cf. 11, 10, *contrā potentiōrem*.

6. quibus, for case (so dominīs, l. 7) cf. IV, 8, 2; III, 13, 14; II, 15, 10.

generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus dīvinis intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvata prō-<sup>Power of the
Druids.</sup> cūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur: ad eōs māgnus adulēscen-10 tium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt, et sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditate, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī qui aut prīvātus aut 15 populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdīctum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur 20

8. druidēs, -um, m., the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain. *
9. sacrificium, -ī [sacrificō, offer sacrifice], n., a sacrifice. 4
prō-cūrō, 1. [cūrō, care for], a., take care of, attend to; expiate or avert (evil) by sacrifice. 1
10. interpretor, 1. [interprēs, an interpreter], a., explain, expound, determine. 1
12. contrōversia, -ae [contrō, fr. cōtrā + versus, turned], f., dispute, quarrel, controversy. *
13. caedēs, -is [caedō, cut], f., cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder. *
14. hērēditās, -tātis [hēres, an heir], f., heirship, inheritance; an inheritance. 1
16. dēcrētum, -ī [dēcernō, de-

- cide], n., decision, decree, order. 3
stō, stāre, stetī, status, n., stand. 4
18. impius, -a, -um [pius, dutiful], undutiful, impious, wicked. 1
scelerātus, -a, -um [scelus, crime], stained with crime, reprobate, accursed. 2
dē-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], n., go away, withdraw, depart from. 5
19. sermō, -ōnis [serō, connect], m., connected words; conversation, discourse. 3
dē-fugiō, -ere, fugī [fugiō, flee], flee away from, shun, avoid. 1
contāgiō, -ōnis [cum + tangō, touch], f., touching, contact; noxious contact, contagion; contamination, pollution. 1

8. druidum: see Int. 72-75. The word is commonly derived from *drūs*, oak. The religious services of the Druids were held in oak-groves. intersunt, officiate at, the word denoting active participation.

11, 12. hī: the Druids. eōs: the common people.

13. sī . . . admissum, if any crime has been committed.

16. sacrificiis interdīcunt: a form of excommunication.

neque hōnōs ūllus commūnicātur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritatem. Hōc mortuō aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitate, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōnumquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Hi certō annī tempore in finibus Carnūtum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdicīisque parent. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur, et nunc, quī diligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

Their private laws and doctrines. 14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, militiae vacatiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitatem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propīnquisque mittuntur. Māgnū ibī

23. excellō, -ere, celsus, *a., n.*, be eminent or superior, surpass, excel. 1
 24. suffrāgium, -ī, *n.*, ballot, vote, suffrage; decision, judgment, election. 2
 27. cōsecrō, 1. [sacrō, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate. 2
 30. trāns-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, carry across, transfer. 3
 31. illō, *adv.* [ille, that], to that

place, thither, there. 2

2. militia, -ae [miles, soldier], *f.*, military service, warfare. 3
 vacatiō, -ōnis [vacō, be without], *f.*, freedom, exemption, immunity. 1
 3. immūnitās, -tātis [im-mūnis without duty], *f.*, freedom from public services or charges, immunity. 1

27. locō: this place was probably on the site of the town of Dreux.

28, 29. dēcrētīs, iūdicīīs: for case cf. V, 19, 13; IV, 27, 12; III, 14, 3; II, 16, 6 (*his*); I, 25, 20.

31. illō: the center of the Druid worship in Britain was on the island of Anglesey.

2. militiae vacatiōnem: the instance of the Druid Diviciacus proves that a military life was not outside of the range of choice of a Druid. tantīs, *these great*: lit., *so great* (as these).

4. praemiis: i. e., the privileges mentioned in the preceding sentence,

numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn-
nulli vicēnōs in disciplīna permanent. Neque fās esse exis-
timant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūb-
licis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litterīs ūtantur. Id
mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in¹⁰
vulgum disciplīnam efferrī velint, neque eōs, quī discunt,
litterīs cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque
accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō ac
memoriam remittant. Imprimis hōc volunt persuādere, nōn
interīre animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs,¹⁵
atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū mortis
neglētō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū,
dē mundī ac terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē

6. **versus** -ūs [vertō, turn], M., turning; a verse of poetry; a line of writing. 1

ē-discō, -ere, didicī [discō, learn], a., learn in detail or by heart; learn. 1

7. **vicēnī**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [viginti, twenty], twenty each, twenty. 1

13. **per-discō**, -ere, didicī [discō], a., learn thoroughly, get by

heart, know well. 1

15. **inter-eō**, ire, ii (ivī), itus [eō, go], n., go among a crowd and so be lost; be lost, perish; fall in battle, be slain. *

anima, -ae, f., breath, life, soul. 1

17. **sidus**, -eris, n., star, constellation, heavenly body. 1

18. **mundus**, -ī [mundus, well ordered], m., the universe world. 1

9. **ratiōnibus**: e. g., in public registers: see on I, 29, 2. **ūtantur**: for mood cf. IV, 12, 3; III, 7, 4; I, 26, 6. **id**: i. e., *neque . . . mandāre*, use written notes.

10-12. **in vulgum . . . velint**: the Roman patricians, too, guarded very jealously their exclusive privileges in connection with the state religion. **vulgum**: cf. the similar phrase in I, 46, 9, and explain the difference in form. **disciplīnam**: including the knowledge of the sacred chants and formulae, which

gave men access to the gods. **eōs . . . studēre**: depends upon *velint*. **litteris**: for case cf. *iudiciis* 13, 29. **minus studēre**, *pay less attention to*.

14. **hōc**: introduces the following infinitive clauses. **persuādere**, *convince (men) of this*.

15. **ab aliis . . . ad aliōs**: the doctrine of the transmigration of souls. It is not known whence the Druids derived it. The burial customs of the Gauls indicate that this was not the belief of the masses,

deōrum immortalīum vī āc potestāte disputant et iuventūti
 20trādunt.

*The knights.
 Their war-
 like habits.*

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est
 ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante
 Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī
 iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō
 5 versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque
 amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque
 habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

*Religion. Hu-
 man sacrif-
 ces.*

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdi-
 ta religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt
 affectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque
 versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immo-
 5 lātūrōs vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus

19. dis-putō, 1. [putō, think], a.,
 think over; debate about, dis-
 cuss. 1

3. solēō, -ēre, solitus sum, n.,
 be wont, be accustomed.

4. prōpulsō, 1. [freq. of prō-
 pellō, drive forth or away], a.,
 drive forth or off, drive back,
 repel. 2

6. ambactus, -ī, (a celtic word.)
 m., one led around; dependent,
 retainer, vassal. 1

3. morbus, -ī, m., sickness, dis-
 ease, malady. 2

4. victima, -ae [vitta, the fillet
 placed about the head of sacrificial
 victims], f., sacrifice, victim. 1
 immolō, 1. [mola, the meal
 sprinkled over victims], a., sprin-
 kle sacrificial meal; sacrifice, im-
 molate. 3

5. vōveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, a., n.,
 devote, vow. 1

ad-minister, -trī, m., assistant, at-
 tendant; priest. 1

1. alterum genus: cf. 13, 7, 8.
 equitum: the Gallic knights, form-
 ing with the Druids the nobility.

2, 3. quod . . . quotannis . . .
 solēbat: see Int. 70.

6. ambactōs, retainers: a class
 of hired servants, intermediate be-
 tween slaves and clients.

7. nōvērunt: for force of the
 tense see on I, 19, 11.

1. nātiō . . . dēdita, the Gallic
 race is entirely devoted.

3. graviōribus; i. e., such as

would not yield to the simple reme-
 dies of the Druids.

4. hominēs immolant: there
 seem to have been two kinds of hu-
 man sacrifice, first, the immolation
 of prisoners of war in honor of the
 Gallic gods corresponding to Mars
 and Mercury; second, the offering
 of the lives of criminals in honor
 of Saturn. These sacrifices—of
 which Caesar gives us no instance
 coming under his own observation
 —appear to have ceased entirely
 after the conquest,

ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen placārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus suc-¹⁰ cēnsis circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum ēius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

15

17. Deum mǎximē Mercurium colunt: hūius *The deities.*
sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem *Their attrib-*
utes.

7. nūmen, -inis, n., divine will or power, divinity, deity. 1
plācō, 1. a., reconcile; appease, pacify, placate. 1
9. simulācrum, -ī [simulō, make like], n., image, figure, statue. 2
10. vivus, -a, -um [vivō, live], alive, living. 5
succendō, -ere, cendī, cēnsus, [candeō, glow], a., set on fire from below, kindle. *
11. flamma, -ae, f., blaze, fire, flame. 2
12. fūrtum, -ī [fūr, a thief], n., theft, robbery. 1
latrōcinium, -ī [latrō, robber], n., robbery, brigandage, bandit war. 3
noxia, -ae [noceō, injure], f., injury, crime, offence. 1

13. grātus, -a, um, pleasing, agreeable. 2
14. in-nocēns, -entis [noceō], not injuring, harmless, innocent: in pl. as subst., the blameless or upright. 2
15. dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [scandō, climb], a., climb or go down, descend; have recourse to, resort. 5
1. Mercurius, -ī, m., Mercury, the messenger of the gods: the god of eloquence, of roads, of traders and thieves, the bestower of prosperity. 1
2. inventor, -ōris [in-veniō, come upon], m., inventor, discoverer, author. 1

9, 10. simulācra: colossal statues in the form of men. quōrum... complent, whose limbs, formed of interwoven osiers, they fill with living men. hominibus: for the case see A. 248 c 2; G. 405; H. 421, II; B. 218, 8.

12, 13. sint comprehēnsī: for the mood cf. V, 23, 7; IV, 2, 2; (vēndant); III, 4, 2; II, 35, 3; I, 6, 4.

1. Mercurium: the Gallic Teutates, the German Woden, the worship of whom was general throughout Europe.

2. simulācra: not statues, but symbolic representations. Statues of the gods did not appear in Gaul until the time of the Roman occupation.

artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad
 quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam ar-
 5 bitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et
 Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs,
 habent opiniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam
 operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium
 caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō
 10 dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque
 dēvoent: cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reli-
 quāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in civitātibus
 hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs cōsecrātis cōspicārī

3. **ars, artis, f.**, skill, art; artifice. 1

4. **quaestus, -ūs** [quaerō, seek to gain], **m.**, gaining, acquiring, acquisition, profit. 1

pecūnia, -ae, f., property, wealth; money. *

mercātūra, -ae [mercor, purchase], **f.**, trade, commerce. 1

5. **Apollō, -inis, m.**, Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latona, god of the sun; god of divination, healing, music, poetry etc. 1

Mārs, -tis, m., Mars, the god of war, of husbandry, of shepherds, of seers; *fig.*, battle, war. 2

Iuppiter (Iūpiter), Iovis [Iovis-

pater], **m.**, Jupiter (Jove,) the chief Roman deity, father of gods and men, god of the heavens and air. 1

6. **Minerva, -ae, f.**, Minerva, the goddess of wisdom, identical with the Greek Athene, the goddess of the arts and sciences. 1

8. **artificium, -ī** [artifex, artificer], **n.**, a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick. 2

9. **caelestis, -e** [caelum, heaven], heavenly, divine, celestial; *in pl.* as *subst.*, celestial beings or objects. 1

11. **animal, -ālis** [animus, breath of life], **n.**, a living creature, animal. 2

3, 4. **viārum . . . ducem**: i. e., the god points out the way (*viārum*) and brings the traveller to his destination (*itinerum*). **ad quaestūs pecūniae**, for acquiring wealth, by banking, loaning money. **pecūniae**: for case cf. IV, 28, 9; II, 24, 12; I, 14, 8. **mercātūrās**: gains from the sale of merchandise.

5. **Apollinem**: Apollo was probably identical with the Gallic god Belen, Mars with Esus or He-

sus, Jupiter with Taranis, god of thunder (Celtic *taran*=thunder). The name of the divinity corresponding to Minerva is not known.

6. **reliquae gentēs**: e. g., the Greeks and Romans.

11, 12. **dēvoent**: cf. *sē immolātūrōs vovent*, 18, 4. **animālia**: both man and beast. **reliquās rēs**: i. e., the portion consecrated to the gods.

licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglectā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravis-¹⁵ simumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dite patre prōgnātōs *Their reputed origin. Reckoning of time. Respect for fathers.* praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōnume- rō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur. ⁵ In reliquīs vitae institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt, ut mūnus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur filiumque puerilī aetate in publicō in cōspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt. ¹⁰

14. quispiam, quaequam, quid- (quod-) quam, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything, any. 2

1. Dis, Ditis, *m.*, Dis, the Greek Pluto, brother of Jupiter and Neptune, and god of the infernal regions, the realm of darkness and night. 1

4. nātālis, -e [nātus, born], pertaining to birth: diēs, birthday. 1

5. ob-servō, 1. [servō, give heed], a., heed, observe, mark, cele-

brate. 4

7. ad-olēscō, -ere, olēvi, ultus [incept. of ad-oleō, cause to grow], *n.*, grow up, reach maturity or man's estate. 1

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, service, duty, burden. 3

8. palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly. 3
puerilis, -e [puer, child], childish, boyish, youthful. 1

9. as (ad-)sistō, -ere, stitī [sistō, stand], *n.*, stand (by or near). 1

15. capta . . . occultāre: cf. the crime of Achan and its punishment (Josh. 7).

16. supplicium: the punishments of the Gauls were exceedingly severe, that by fire being the most common.

1. Dite . . . prōgnātōs, sprang from the god of night, i. e., apparently, aborigines. Cf. V, 12, 2, nātōs in insulā.

3, 4. nōn numerō . . . finiunt: so also the Greeks, Germans, and

Jews. The Welsh call a week "eight nights." Our "fortnight" and "se'en-night" show the same usage.

4. mēnsium: the months began with the first quarter of the moon.
5. subsequātur: i. e., the Gauls counted their days from sunset to sunset.

6. ab reliquīs: sc. populis: e. g. the Romans and the Greeks.

8. palam . . . adire, to approach them in public.

10. dūcunt: for trans. cf. I, 3, 7,

Dowries.

19. Viri, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimatiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur: uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxōrēs, sicuti in liberōs, vitāe necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae illūstriore locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propīnquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; om-

1. dōs, dōtis [dō, givē], F., a marriage gift or portion, dowry. 2

2. aestimatiō, -ōnis [aestimō, value, reckon], F., valuation. 1

3. con-iūctim [iungō, join], adv., jointly, unitedly, in common. 1

4. frūctus, -ūs, M., enjoyment; fruit, crops; profit. 4

7. paterfamiliāe, patrisfamiliāe [pater], M., head of a family, householder. 2

8. il (in-)lūstris, -e [lūstrō, purify, illumine], illumined, resplendent; distinguished, illustrious. 3

9. servilis, -e [servus, slave], of or like a slave, servile. 2

10. quaestiō, -ōnis [quaerō, inquire], F., an inquiry, investigation, examination. 5

11. ex-cruciō, 1. [cruciō, torture], a., torture greatly, torment, rack. 3

fūnus, -eris [Sancr., DHU-, burn], N., funeral rites, funeral, burial. 2

12. māgnificus, -a, -um [māgnus + faciō], splendid, grand, magnificent. 1

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sūmptus, expense], expensive, sumptuous, lavish. 1

1. viri etc., whatever property husbands have received from their wives as dowry.

2, 3. tantās... commūnicant: in like manner the Roman husband often gave a *dōnatiō propter nūptiās* to meet the *dōs* of his wife.

4. ratiō habētur, an account is kept.

5. eum: the survivor.

7. vitāe... potestātem: the Roman husband had legally the same power.

9, 10. in servilem modum: i. e., under torture, which was the Roman method of examining slaves. sī (*scelus*) compertum est, if their guilt is established.

11. fūnera: the burning of the dead was not the only method used by the Gauls. Livy tells us that the Cisalpine Gauls buried their dead, and tombs have been found in Transalpine Gaul, whose contents indicate that they were anterior to the time of Caesar.

niaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientēs, quos ab iis dilēctos esse cōstābat, iustis fūnebris cōfectis unā cremābantur.



GALLIC BURIAL MOUND

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur, habent lēgibus s̄anctum, s̄i quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimis rumōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque im-

Management of state affairs.

13. cor, cordis, n., the heart, esp. as the seat of the passions and affections: cordi esse, be dear. 1

15. diligō, -ere, lēxi, lēctus [dis- + legō, choose], a., single or choose out, esteem highly, love, be attached to. *

fūnebris, -e [fūnus, a funeral] of a

funeral: in neut. pl. as subst., funeral rites. 1

3. sancio, -ire, sanxi, sanctus [cf. sacer, sacred], a., make sacred or inviolable, ordain, ratify, sanction.

5. temerarius, -a, -um [temerē, by chance], imprudent, rash, indiscreet. 2

13. vivis cordi fuisse, were dear to them when alive. The graves which have been opened contained vases, jars, rings, armor, etc. cordi: a dative of purpose.

14. animalia: the bones of hunting dogs and horses have been found in Gallic tombs. supra hanc memoriam, before our time.

1. civitatēs: attraction of the antecedent. commodius: the Gauls were often controlled in their public measures by mere rumors; cf. IV, 5, 9, his rebus atque auditio-nibus.

3, 4. quis, quid, quō: signif. after si and nēve?

peritōs falsis rumōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū iudicāvērunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per concilium loquī

10 nōn concēditur.

*The different
customs of the
Germans.
Religion, Dis-
cipline of
youth.*

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine dif-
ferunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus di-
vīnis praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum
numerō eōs solōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opi-
5 bus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam, reliquōs nē fāmā
quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in
studiīs reī militāris cōnsistit: ā parvis labōrī ac dūritiae stū-
dent. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt, māximam in-
ter suōs ferunt laudem: hōc alī stātūrā, alī virēs nervōsque

6. falsus, -a, -am [*p. p. of fallō, deceive*], deceived; false, unfounded. 1

terreō, 2. a., frighten, alarm, terrify. 4

4. cernō, -ere, crēvī, certus, a., separate; discern, distinguish, perceive. *
apertē [apertus, open], adv., open-

ly, manifestly. 2

5. Vulcānus (Vol-), -ī, m., Vulcan, the god of fire and metals; *fig.*, fire. 1

7. dūritia, -ae [dūrus, hard], f., hardness, hardship. 1

8. impūbēs, -eris [pūbēs, adult], immature, young; unmarried, chaste. 1

8, 9. quaeque . . . prōdunt, whatever they decide is advantageous, they lay before the people. per concilium: i. e., in a formal meeting of the tribe.

2. neque druidēs habent: while the Germans had a priesthood, it did not enjoy the exclusive privileges or the political power of the Druids.

3. sacrificiīs student: from Tacitus we learn that they did sacrifice to their gods. It is probably

true, however, that they were not so religious by nature as the Gauls; cf. 16, 1, natiō dedita religiōnibus.

4. quōs etc.: i. e., a simple nature worship. opibus: such as heat, cold, and light.

5, 6. reliquōs . . . accēpērunt: but Tacitus, who is a better authority on the Germans than Caesar, names Mercury, Mars and Hercules as their principal deities. Mercury is identified with Woden or Odin.

7. cōnsistit, is spent.

cōfirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vicēsimum fēminae nō-¹⁰ titiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus: cuius rei nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur et pel- libus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars *Agriculture, Community of land.* eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiō- nibusque hominum, quī ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō ⁵ vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās; nē assiduā cōnsuetūdine captī,

10. vicēsimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [vīginti], the twen- tieth. 1

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, a female, *esp.* a woman. 2

nōtia, -ae [nōtus, known], *f.*, celebrity, fame; acquaintance with, knowledge. 2

12. occultātiō, -ōnis [occultō, conceal], *f.*, concealing, conceal- ment. 1

prōmiscuē, [prōmiscuus, in com- mon], *adv.*, promiscuously, indis- criminately, in common. 1

per-luō, luere, luī, lūtus [luō, wash], *a., n.*, wash, lave, bathe. 1

13. rēnō, -ōnis, *m.*, a deer-skin; fur cloak *made of reindeer skins.* 1

2. victus, -ūs [vivō, live]. *m.* living; means of living, food, victuals. 4

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese. 1

3. proprius, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, individual. 2

4. cōgnātiō, -ōnis [cō-gnātus, connected by birth], *f.*, blood relationship; kinsman; family, clan. 2

5. co-eō, ire, ii (ivī), itus [eō], *n.*, go or come together, assem- ble, meet, unite. 1

6. aliō, *adv.* [old dative of alius], to another place, elsewhere. 1

7. assiduus (ad-), -a, -um [se- deō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant. 3

12. occultātiō, *means of hiding.*

1, 2. agricultūrae nōn student: *i. e.*, in comparison with the Gauls they paid little attention to it. Tacitus says that the cultivation of the soil was left to women and old men. māiorque . . . cōnsistit: cf. IV, 1, 15. This is confirmed by Tacitus.

3, 4. finēs propriōs, *individual lands*; see on IV, 1, 14 *privāti agri. magistrātūs, principēs*: what is the distinction between these? in annōs etc., *assign each year to the families and kinsmen and those who have assembled with them as much land, in any locality, as they see fit.*

7. rei, *practice, custom. affe- runt*: *i. e.*, the Germans themselves.

studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē quā oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Social and military organization. 23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs, qui eī bellō praesint, ut vitāe necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiā, quae extrā finēs cuiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuuentūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant.

10. accūrātē (ad-) [accūrātus, carefully done], *adv.*, carefully, with care, elaborately. 1

12. dissēnsiō, -ōnis [dis-sentiō, think differently], *f.*, disagreement, dissension. 5

aequitās, -tātis [aequus, equal], *f.*, equality, uniformity; impar-

tiality, fairness, equity. 1

10. infāmiā, -ae [infāmis, of ill repute], *f.*, ill-repute, disgrace, degradation.

12. exerceō, 2. [arceō, ward or drive off], *a.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. *

8. agricultūrā: see on *pretiō* I, 18, 9.

12. animī aequitāte, in a contented frame of mind.

1. māxima laus etc., cf. IV, 3, 1.

3. proprium virtūtis, a mark of valor. expulsōs etc.: translate by coordinate clauses.

6. dēfendit, *repels*.

9. regiōnum, pāgōrum: some authorities make the first refer to the territory, the second to the inhabitants; others consider the *pāgus* a subdivision of the *regiō*.

10. minuunt, *settle*. latrōcinia ... infāmiā: this opinion was universal among primitive peoples.

Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint, prōfiteantur, cōnsurgunt iī, quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā mul-¹⁵ titūdine collaudāntur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quāque dē causā ad eōs vērunt, ab iniuriā prohibent, sanc-²⁰ tōs habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque com-²⁰ mūnicātur.

24. Āc fuit antea tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī *Decadence of the Gauls. Military superiority of the Germans.* virtūte superarent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Era-⁵ tosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam

dēsidia, -ae [sedeō, sit], f., -sitting still; inactivity, indolence. 1

14. prōfiteor, -ērī, fessus sum [fator, confess], a., n., confess publicly, avow or declare one's purpose. 4

cōn-surgo, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus [surgō, rise], n., arise together or in a body, rise up; of a session, break up. 2

16. dēsertor, -ōris [dē-serō, abandon], m., a deserter. 1

17. prōditor, -ōris [prō-dō, betray], m., betrayer, traitor. 1

18. dē-rogō, 1. [rōgō, ask], a., modify a law; detract from, take away, withdraw. 1

violō, 1. [vīs, violence], a., injure, outrage, violate. 2

4. colōnia, -ae [colōnus, a husbandman], f., a colony; abstract for concrete, colonists, planters. 1

fertilis, -e [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive. 2

5. Hercynius, -a, -um, Hercynian: silva, the Hercynian forest, the mountain country of Germany extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands. 2

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., a distinguished Greek astronomer, philosopher, geographer, and poet, born at Cyrene, B. C. 276; died at Alexandria, B. C. 196. 1

13. sē ducem fore: i. e., of some piratical expedition.

14. quī . . . prōfiteantur, let any who wish to follow volunteer; an indirect quotation of the challenge

of the leader.

16. ex hīs: those who have thus publicly pledged their support.

17, 18. omnium rērum fidēs, all confidence.

illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt: quae gēns ād hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstītiaē et bellicae laudis
 10 opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādē inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propīnquitās et trāns-marīnārum rērum nōtītia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātīm assuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliīs nē sē
 15 quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

Extent of the Hercynian forest. Its fauna.

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātītūdō novem diērum iter expeditō patet: nōn enim aliter finīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et

7. *Orcynia, -ae, adj., f., a Greek name for the Hercynian forest.* 1

Volcae, -ārum, m., a people of southern Gaul, including the Aremici and Tectosages. 3

Tectosagēs, -um, m., a branch of the Volcae in Gallia Narbonensis. 1

9. *bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], of or in war, military.* 1

10. *egestās, -tātis [egeō, need], f., need, want, poverty.* 1

patientia, -ae [patior, suffer], f.,

the quality of bearing or suffering, patience, endurance. 2

12. *trāns-marīnus, -a, -um [mare, sea], from across or beyond the sea, transmarine, foreign.* 1

15. *comparō, 1. [com-pār, equal to], a., set in pairs, place in comparison, compare.* 2

4. *Nemetēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Speier.* 2

8, 9. *ibi*: in modern Bavaria. *his sēdibus sēsē* continet: i. e., they had successfully resisted the Germans, a proof of their superiority. *laudis*, for *proress*.

10, 11. in . . . *Germānī*, in the same (condition of) *poverty, want, and endurance (of hardships)* as they formerly (were).

12. *trānsmarīnārum* etc.: see Int. 57.

13, 14. *largītur*, supplies. *assuēfactī superārī*: e. g., by the

Germans.

1. *suprā*: cf. 24, 5.

2. *lātītūdō*: the breadth from north to south. *novem diērum iter*: i. e., a distance of from 200 to 250 miles.

3. *nōn aliter*: i. e., than by the length of a "day's march." *mēnsūrās*: e. g., miles, paces.

4. *novērunt*: sc. *Germānī* - *oritur* etc., trace its limits on the map.

Rauricōrum finibus rēctāque flūminis Dānuvii regiōne per- 5
tinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōr-
sus diversis ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs
propter māgnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius
Germāniae, quī sē aut adisse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat,
cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, ac-10
cēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōstat, quae
reliquis in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae māximē differ-
ant ā cēteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figurā, cūius ā mediā frōnte *The reindeer.*
inter aurēs ūnum cornū existit excelsius magisque dērēctum
hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus: ab ēius summō sicut

5. rēctus, -a, -um [regō, direct],
direct, straight.

Dānuvius, -ii, m., the Danube. 1

6. Dāci, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of
the province, Dacia.

Anartēs, -ium, m., a German tribe
near the Hercynian forest. 1

hinc, adv., [for hince, fr. hīc,
here], from here, hence. 2

sinistrōrsus, adv., [sinister, left +
vertō], turned to the left, to the
left. 1

11. fera, -ae [ferus, wild], a wild

beast, wild animal.

1. bōs, bovis, m., f., ox, bull; cow:
in pl. cattle.

cervus, -i, m., stag, deer: in pl. by
meton., forked stakes, used to
break cavalry charges.

2. auris, -is [cf. audiō], f., an ear.
excelsus, -a, -um [excellō, be emi-
nent], eminent, elevated, high,
tall.

3. sic-ut (sic-uti) adv., so far as,
just as, as.

5. rēctā... regiōne, in a course
parallel with the river Danube.

6. sinistrōrsus: i. e., the north-
east. The river here takes an ab-
rupt turn to the south and leaves
the forest highlands.

8. hūius Germāniae: i. e.,
western Germany.

9, 10. initium: i. e., the east-
ern extremity. diērum iter LX:
about 600 miles. quō ex locō ori-
ātur: i. e., where the initium is.

13. haec, the following.

1. bōs cervī figurā: the Ro-
mans called any large animal that

they did not know bōs. Here Cae-
sar means the reindeer, which in
early times had a wide range in
Europe, extending as far as the
south of France. ā mediā frōnte,
from the middle of the forehead.

2. ūnum cornū existit: a mis-
take most satisfactorily accounted
for by the assumption that neither
Caesar nor his informants had ever
seen the reindeer.

3. hīs cornibus: for the case cf.
III, 5, 1; II, 7, 11; I, 22, 3. ab...
summō, from its top: for the use of
the adjective cf. II, 13, 2.

palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae
 5 marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

The elk. 27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est
 cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed māgnitūdine
 paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nō-
 5 dis articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt,
 neque, sī quō afflīctae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē aut sub-
 levāre possunt. His sunt arborēs prō cubilibus: ad eās sē
 applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt.
 Quārum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus,
 quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus
 10 subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs
 eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdine re-

4. palma, -ae, *f.*, the palm of the hand, the hand; the palm-tree; a broom of palm twigs.

diffundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsus [dis- + fundō, pour], *n.*, pour or spread out, branch widely.

5. mās, maris, masculine, male: *subst.*, a male.

1. alcēs, -is, *f.*, an elk; (?) moose-deer. 1

2. capra, -ae, *f.*, a she-goat. 1
 varietās, -tātis [varius, different], *f.*, difference, diversity, variety. 2

3. mutilus, -a, -um, maimed, mutilated, without. 1

crūs, crūris, *n.*, the leg below the knee, shank; the leg. 1

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot, joint. 1

4. articulus, -ī, [dim. of artus,

joint], *m.*, a little joint, knuckle, knot. 1

quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest, repose, quiet. 5

6. cubile, -is [cubō, lie down], *n.*, couch, bed, resting-place, lair. 1

7. ap(ad-)plicō, 1. [plicō, fold], *n.*, fold or bring near, attach, apply, bend toward, incline, lean. 1

re-clinō, 1. *n.*, bend or lean back, recline. 1

8. vēnātor, -ōris [vēnor, hunt], *m.*, hunter. 1

9. quō, *interrog. adv.*, whither, to what place or person or thing. 5

rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, a root. 5

10. accīdo, -ere, cīdi, cīsus [caedō, cut], *a.*, cut at or into, cut deep, hew, notch. 1

4, 5. eadem . . . cornuum: on the contrary the horns of the female are smaller than those of the male.

1. alcēs, *elk*. It is to-day found only in northern Europe, having moved north on account of the changes in the climate.

2. varietās pellium, *varied color*.

3. cornibus: for case cf. 12, 8. sine nōdis: the same notion was long prevalent at Rome regarding the elephant.

10. summa speciēs, *the general appearance*.

clināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appel- *Description of the urus.*
lantur. Hī sunt māgnitudine paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna vēlōcītās, neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōspēxērunt, parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveis captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus, quae sunt testimōniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquisita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

1. ūrus, -ī, m., wild ox, bison. 1
2. elephantus, -ī, m., an elephant; ivory. 1
3. taurus, -ī, m., bull; ox. 1
4. vēlōcītās, -tātis [vēlōx, swift], f., swiftness, rapidity. 1
5. parcō, -ere, pepercī, parcus [parcus, frugal], n., act or use carefully, spare, not injure. *
- studiōsē [studiōsus, eager], adv., eagerly, zealously, carefully. 1
- fovea, -ae [fodiō, dig], f., a whole dug in the earth, pitfall, snare. 1
6. dūrō, 1. [dūrus, hard], a., make hardy, harden. 1
8. testimōnium, -ī [testor, be a witness], n., witness, evidence, proof. 4

9. as (ad-)suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus [suēscō, accustomed], a., n., accustom, habituate; become accustomed or familiarized. 1
- mānsuēfaciō, -ere, fecī, factus [mānsuēscō, grow tame + faciō], a., tame; in pass., mānsuēfiō, be tamed. 1
12. argentum, -ī, n., silver; silver plate or coin; money. 2
- circumclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clusus [claudō, shut], a., shut in, enclose around, surround. 1
13. epulae, -ārum, f., feast, banquet. 1
- pōculum, -ī [cf. pōtō, drink], n., drinking-vessel, cup, bowl, goblet. 1

1. ūrī: the German auerochs or urochs (*mountain or wild ox*) which has long been extinct in Europe. Some identify it with the bison, though the description here given does not fit that animal.

2, 3. hī sunt speciēs etc., *these have the appearance* etc. speciēs:

for case cf. V, 14, 7; IV, 1, 20; III, 13, 8; II, 18, 4; I, 39, 5.

4. hominī, ferae: for case cf. 13, 28.

9, 10. nē ... exceptī, *not even if taken while young.*

12. ab ... argentō, *with a rim of silver.*



STORMING A CITY.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explorātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agricultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius; sed nē omninō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ūltimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum quattuor cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pōntis tuendī causā pōnit magnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praefecit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtius Galliae mākima atque ā rīpīs Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius quīngentis in longitūdinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque oportūnitāte temporis proficere posset, monet, ut ignēs in castris fierī prohibeat, nē qua eius adventūs procul significātiō fiat: sēsē cōnfestim subsequī dicit.

30. Basilus, ut imperātum est, facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opiniōnem cōfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopinantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dicēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus, tum in rē militārī potest fortuna. Nam sicut magnō accidit cāsū, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur, quam fāma ac nūntius afferrētur, sic māgnae fuit fortunae omni militārī instrūmentō, quod circum sē habēbat, ereptō,

Caesar returns into Gaul from the Suebi and goes against Ambiorix.

Ambiorix is surprised by Basilus and narrowly escapes.

rēdis equisque comprehēnsis ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vitandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propīnquitātēs, comitēs famili-
 15 arēsque eius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. His pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

*He disbands
his forces.*

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iūdicione nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dimicandum nōn exstimārit, an tempore exclūsus et repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crēderet, dubium est; sed certē
 5 dimissis per agrōs nūntiis sibi quemque cōsulare iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit: quī proximī Oceanō fuērunt, hī insulis sēsē occultāvērunt, quās aestūs efficere cōsuērunt: multī ex suis finibus ēgressi sē suaque omnia aliēnissimis crēdidērunt.

10 Catuvelcus, rēx dimidiae partis Eburōnum, quī unā cum Ambiorige cōsiliū inierat, aetate iam cōfectus cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus
*Suicide of his
colleague,
Catuvelcus.* precibus dētēstātus Ambiorigem, quī eius cōsiliū auctor fuisset, taxō, cuius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque
 15 cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

*Submission of
the Segni and
Condrusi.
Cicero is
placed in
charge of the
stores.*

32. Sēgnī Condrūsique ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōs-
 que, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt orātum, nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret neve omnium Germān-
 5 ōrum, quī essent citrā Rhēnum, unam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāsse, nulla Ambiorigī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar explorātā rē quaestione captivōrum, sī quī ad eōs
 Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur, im-

perāvit: sī ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violāturum negāvit. 10
 Tum cōpiīs in trēs partēs distribūtis impedīmenta omnium
 legiōnum Aduātucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hōc
 ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titurius atque
 Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum
 reliquīs rēbus locum probārat, tum quod superiōris annī
 mūnitiōnēs integræ manēbant, ut militum labōrem suble- 15
 vāret. Praesidiō impedimentis legiōnem quartamdecimam
 reliquit, ūnam ex his tribus, quās proximē cōscriptās ex
 Ītaliā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerō-
 nem praeficit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit.

33. Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnī- *Caesar divides*
 bus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eās partēs, quae *his troops and*
 Menapiōs attingunt, proficisci iubet; C. Trebonium *continues in*
 cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem, quae ad Aduā- *pursuit of*
 tucōs adiacet, dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus *Ambiorix.* 5
 ad flūmen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Ar-
 duennae partis ire cōstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus pro-
 fectum Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septi-
 mum sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat, quam ad diem eī legiōnī
 quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur, dēbērī frūmentum sciēbat. 10
 Labiēnum Treboniumque hortātur, sī reipublicae commodō
 facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūsus commūni-
 cātō cōsiliō explorātisque hostium ratiōnibus aliud initium
 belli capere possint.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, manus cer- *Strata of the*
 ta nulla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē *Romans.*
 armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnīs partis dispersa *Caesar invites*
 multitudō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris *allies with the*
 aut palūs impedīta spem praesidiī aut salutis aliquam offerē- *hope of plun-*
 bat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vicinitātibus erant nōta, māgnam- 5

que rēs diligentiam requirēbat nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus cōservandis; 10 quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius ēvocābat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus cōfertōs adire prohibēbant. Sī negōtium cōfici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs mānūs didūcēndique erant mili- 15 tēs: sī continere ad signa manipulōs vellet, ut institūta ratiō et cōsuetūdō exercitūs Rōmāni postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbaris, neque ex occultō insidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulis deerat audācia. Ut in eiusmodi difficultātibus, quantum diligentīā prōvidērī poterat, prōvidēbā- 20 tur, ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quam cum aliquō militum detrīmentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad finitimās civitātēs nūntiōs Caesar: omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnarius 25 miles periclitētur, simul ut magnā multitudīne circumfūsā prō tali facinore stirps ac nōmen civitātis tollātur. Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

The Sugambri, Germans, come to share the plunder of the Eburones and march against Cicero at Aduatua.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legiōnemque revertī cōstituerat. Hīc, quantum in bellō fortūna possit et 5 quantōs afferat cāsūs, cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla, quae parvam modo causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum, ad Germānōs pervenit fāma, diripi Eburōnēs atque ūltrō omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambri, 10 quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tenctērōs

atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trāseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque trīgintā milibus passuum infrā eum locum, ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum: prīmōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt: mūltōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimi barbarī, 15
 potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūs in bellō latrōciniisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar, ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs: ‘Quid vōs,’ inquit, ‘hanc miseram ac 20
 tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunātissimōs? Tribus hōris Aduātucam venīre potestis: hūc omnēs suās fortunās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit: praesidiū tantum est, ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredi extrā mūnitiōnēs audeat.’ Oblātā spē Germānī quam 25
 nactī erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Aduātucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce, cūius haec indicio cōgnōverant.

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praecep- Cicero, unwarily, sends five cohorts to forage.
 tīs Caesaris summā dīligentiā militēs in castrīs
 continisset ac nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiō-
 nem ēgredi passus esset, septimō diē diffidēns dē numerō diē-
 rum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum 5
 audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferēbātur, simul eō-
 rum permōtus vōcibus, quī illiūs patientiam paene obsessiō-
 nem appellābant, [siquidem ex castrīs ēgredi nōn liceret],
 nūllum eiusmodī cāsum expectāns, quō novem oppositis le-
 giōnibus māximōque equitatū dispersis ac paene dēlētīs hos 10
 tibus in milibus passuum tribus offendī posset, quīnque
 cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter
 et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant ex
 legiōnibus agrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum con-

25 valuerant, circiter CCC, sub vĕxillō ūnā mittuntur; māgna praetereā multītūdō cālōnum, māgna vis iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderant, factā potestāte sequitur.

*The Sugambri
surprise Cleo-
ero's camp.*

37. Hōc ipsō tempore et cāsū Germānī equitēs
interveniunt prōtinusque eōdem illō, quō vēnerant,
cursū ab decumanā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec
prius sunt visī obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs appro-
5 pinq̄arent, usque eō, ut quī sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs
recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopināntēs nostrī
rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in sta-
tione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquīs hostēs partibus,
sī quem aditum reperire possent. Aegrē portās nostrī tuen-
10 tur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit.
Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs
quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur, neque quam in partem
quisque conveniat, prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prō-
nūntiat, alius delētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barba-
15 rōs vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs
fingunt Cottaëque et Tituriī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occi-
derint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus
perterritīs cōfirmātur opiniō barbarīs, ut ex captivō audie-
rant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītuntur
20 sēque ipsī adhortantur, nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dī-
mittant.

*Valiant ex-
ploit of Sex-
tius Baculus.*

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius
Baculus, quī primum pilum apud Caesarem dūx-
erat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem
iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffisus suae atque omnium
5 salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit: videt imminere hostēs
atque in summō esse rem discrimine: capit arma ā proximīs
atque in portā cōsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs

eius cohortis, quae in statione erat; paulisper unam proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant. 10

39. Interim confecta frumentatione milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt: praecurrunt equites; quantum res sit in periculo cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitione est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt; quid ab his praecipiantur expectant. Nemmo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt: redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant, postea dispecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt. 5

40. Calones in proximum tumulum praecurrunt. Hinc celeriter deieci se in signa manipulosque coniciunt; eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt; alii, ut in iugum consistant atque eundem omnem ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo unam profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati duce C. Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsequuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in iugum constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam quam 15

The foragers return and are attacked by the Sugambri.

The foragers regain the camp with great loss.

prōdesse aliīs vim celeritātemque viderant imitārī potuērunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōnnūllī ex inferiōribus ōrdinibus reliquārum legionū virtūtis causā in superiōres erant ōrdinēs
 20 hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam rei militāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidērunt. Militum pars hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbaris circumventa periit.

The Germans withdraw. Caesar's arrival allays the fear of the Romans.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnatiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā, quam in silvis dēposuerant, trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam
 5 post discessum hostium terror, ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusenus missus cum equitātū ad castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic omnium animōs timor praeoccupāverat, ut paene aliēnātā mente dēlētīs omnibus cōpiīs equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent
 10 neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

Caesar's reflections on the inroad of the Sugambri.

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum, quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae, questus—nē minimum quidem cāsū locum relinqui debuisset—multum fortunam in repentinō hostium
 5 adventū potuisse iūdicāvit, multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portisque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum māximē admirandum vidēbātur, quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut Ambiorigis finēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum
 10 Ambiorigī beneficium obtulērunt.

Punishment of the Eburones. Vain attempts to seize Ambiorix.

43. Caesar rursus ad vēxandōs hostēs profectus māgnō coactō numerō ex finitimīs cīvitātibus in omnēs partēs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia

aedificia, quae quisque cōspēxerat, incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agēbatur; frūmenta nōn solum ā tantā multitudine iumentōrum atque hominum cōsumēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, si quī etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc saepe in eum locum ventum est tantō in omnīs partīs dīvisō equitātū, ut modo vīsum ab sē Amborigem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī nec plānē etiam abīsse ex cōspectū contenderent, ut spē cōsequendī illātā atque īfīnitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiā inītūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitātem dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebris aut saltibus sē ēriperet et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēsque peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor, quibus solīs vītā suā committere audēbat.

44. Tālī modō vāstātis regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Durocortōrum Rēmōrum redūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Gal-
Punishment of Acoo, chief of the Senones. Winter arrangements.
 liae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnūtum quaestīōnem habēre īnstituit; et dē Accōne, quī princeps ēius cōsiliī fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā mōre māiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōnnūllī iūdicium veritī prōfūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque ignī interdixisset, duās legiōnēs ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum finibus Agedincī in hibernīs collocāvit frūmentōque exercitū prōvisō, ut īnstituerat, in Ītaliā ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK. VII.—VERCINGETORIX: GENERAL UPRISING OF THE GAULS: ALESIA.

The Celts were again beaten, but still not utterly cast down. Caesar's action in leaving Gaul at this perilous juncture was due in part to political conditions necessitating his proximity to the political agitation at Rome, and in part to his knowledge of the Celtic character. What he had not counted upon was the spirit of unity which under the teaching of misfortune had taken root throughout the land; nor had he counted upon the appearance of a genius akin to his own to direct into well-planned channels of effort the determination of a gallant race to regain its freedom.

The special anxieties of Caesar in the direction of Rome were well known to the insurgents, and they conceived that the time had come for a general uprising. The massacre of a number of Romans at Cenabum (Orleans) gave the signal. Instantly the patriots in every quarter were in agitation. The revolt spread with remarkable rapidity. Through the influence of Vercingetorix, henceforth the master spirit in the Celtic councils, the Arverni, who had hitherto been staunch friends of Rome, joined the patriotic party and led almost all the south land with them. In the east everything depended upon the decision of the Aedui, who still hesitated. At this crisis Caesar, unheralded, crossed the Alps and Cevennes, secretly traversed the hostile territory and joined his army, thus destroying all the hopes that the patriots had cherished of driving the legions out of Gaul in his absence.

Vercingetorix had now to solve the problem of making head against the Romans. Feeling their superiority in the field, he devised a plan of campaign which consisted in the avoidance of a general engagement, the laying waste the country far and wide, the destruction of towns and magazines of supplies, and the constant harassing of the enemy's forces.

Ere the close of the winter the hostile movements of the Celtic patriots forced Caesar to break up camp and march against them. Accordingly, he moved south to Cenabum, the scene of the first outbreak, destroyed the town, and crossed the Loire into the country of the Bituriges. Vercingetorix sent his cavalry into the country with orders to burn everything within the reach of the Roman foraging parties. Twenty towns of the Bituriges were burned in a single day. The same fate was decreed to their capital, Avaricum, but yielding to the prayers

of the Bituriges, Vercingetorix consented to defend it. Only after great efforts was Caesar able to reduce the place. An awful carnage followed the successful assault of the Romans. Only eight hundred escaped to the camp of Vercingetorix out of the forty thousand who were engaged in the defense.

Undismayed by this disaster, Vercingetorix used it to stimulate the Gauls to still greater efforts. The Roman general had divided his army, sending Labienus with four legions north toward Agedincum and Lutetia, while he with six legions followed Vercingetorix. Labienus was checked in his attempt upon Lutetia by Camulogenus. Vercingetorix took a strong position under the walls of Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni and an impregnable fortress. Caesar could not afford to linger long before Gergovia, and after an unsuccessful assault, he accepted his first personal defeat at the hands of the Gauls, and withdrew. A rapid march brought him to Sens, where he was joined by Labienus, who had succeeded in surprising and routing the Gauls in his front.

As a result of the reverse at Gergovia the Aedui threw off the yoke of allegiance to Rome, and their capital, Bibracte, became the center of patriotic effort. Caesar having strengthened his cavalry by a force of German horsemen, and having procured supplies from the same source, slowly advanced toward the country of the Aedui. At the Vingeanne river the Gallic leader made the fatal mistake of departing from his plan of avoiding a battle. The usual result followed. The Gauls were badly defeated and retreated to Alesia. Caesar followed them and at once invested the fortress. Alesia fell, and with it sank the last hope of Gallic independence; for while the loss of the fortress might be retrieved, the loss of the brave and able leader could not. With a few exceptions the allied tribes quietly submitted. The conciliatory policy which Caesar now adopted soon healed the wounds of war, and the Gauls ever remained faithful to him and to his fortunes.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

- PLUTARCH: Caesar.
 FROUDE: Caesar, a sketch, pp. 270-290. (Harper's ed.).
 TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. viii. (Ancient Classic Series).
 MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 323-344.
 MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. ii, chap. xii.
 NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii, chap. x.

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

*Important
events at
Rome. The
Gauls plan a
revolt.*

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in
Italiā ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi
cōgnōscit dē Clodii caede, dē senātūque cōsultō
certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiāe coniūrārent, delēc-
5 tum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam
Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affin-
gunt rumōribus Galli, quod rēs pōscere vidēbātur, retinēri
urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantis dissēnsiōnibus ad ex-
ercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, quī iam ante
10 sē populī Rōmāni imperiō subiectōs dolērent, liberius atque
audācius dē bellō cōsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictis inter sē
prīncipēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remōtis locis que-
runtur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere
dēmōstrant: miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam: om-
15 nibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiis dēposcunt, quī bellī initi-
um faciant et suī capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vin-
dicent. Imprīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, prius-
quam eōrum clandestīna cōsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab
exercitū intercludātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs
20 audeant absente imperātōre ex hibernis ēgredi, neque imper-
ātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit. Postrēmō
in aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam
libertātemque, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

*The Carnutes
take the initi-
ative.*

2. His rēbus agitātis prōfidentur Carnūtēs sē
nūllum periculum commūnis salutis causā recūsā-

re principēsque ex omnibus bellum facturōs pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavere inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferatur, ut iureiurandō ac fidē sanciat̄ur, petunt, 5 collātis militāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissimā caerimōniā continētur, nē factō initiō belli ā reliquīs dēserantur. Tum collaudātis Carnūtibus, datō iureiurandō ab omnibus, quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō ab conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnūtēs Gutruātō et *They massacre the Romans at Cenabum.* Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentariae iūssū 5 Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clamōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle 10 gesta essent, ante primam cōfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtillī *Many tribes unite under Vercingetorix, King of the Arverni.* filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater principātum Galliae tōtius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā cīvitate erat interfectus, convocātis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cōg- 5 nitō eius cōsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ab Gobbannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortunam nōn exīstimābant, expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlectum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque 10 adit ex cīvitate, ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur, ut

commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant, māgnisque coāctis cōpiis adversariōs suōs ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitate. Rēx ab suis appellatur. Dimittit quōque
 15 versus lēgatiōnēs; obtestatur, ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadurcōs, Turonōs, Auler-
 cōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs, quī Ōceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium cōsensū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs civitatibus obsi-
 20 dēs imperat, certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōstituit; imprimis equitātū studet. Sum-
 mae diligentiae summam imperiī sevritātem addit; māgnitū-
 dine supplicii dubitantēs cōgit. Nam māiore commissō
 25 delictō igni atque omnibus tormentis necat, leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et māgnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs.

*The Bituriges
 join the
 league.*

5. Hīs supplicii celeriter coāctō exercitū Luc-
 terium Cadurcum, summae hominem audāciae,
 cum parte cōpiarum in Rutenōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs pro-
 ficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturigēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant
 5 in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt, subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hos-
 tium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē cōsiliō lēgātōrum,
 quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditā-
 tūsque subsidiō Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen
 Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Aeduīs dividit, paucōs
 10 diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī domum revertun-
 tur lēgātisque nostris renūntiant sē Biturigum perfidiam
 veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōsiliū fuisse cōgnōverint, ut, sī
 flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē cir-
 cumsiserent. Id eāne dē causā, quam lēgātis prōnūntiārunt,

an perfidiā adducti fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn 15
vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturigēs eōrum discessū
statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliā Caesarī nūntiātis, cum Caesar re-
turns to
Gaul. iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodi-
ōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Gal-
liam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultate
afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset. 5
Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itin-
ere proeliō dīmicitūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum
contenderet, nē iīs quidem, quī eō tempore quieti vidērentur,
suam salūtem rēctē committi vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadureus in Rutenōs He thwarts
the plans of
Lucterius
against Narbo. missus eam civitatem Arvernīs conciliat. Prō-
gressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrisque obsidēs accipit
et māgnā coactā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irrup-
tiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus 5
cōnsiliis antevertendum existimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficiscer-
rētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfirmit, praesidia in
Rutenīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolosātibus cir-
cumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōn-
stituit, partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque, 10
quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat, in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum
contingunt, convenire iubet.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātis repressō iam Lucteriō He surprises
the Arverni.
Vercingetorix
comes to their
assistance. et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculō-
sum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsī mōns
Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs discludit, dūrissimō tem-
pore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive 5
sex in altitudinem pedum atque ita viis patefactis summō
militum sudōre ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus op-

pressis inopinantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnītōs existimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus ter-rōrem inferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiū ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Arvernī circum-sistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortūnīs cōsulat, ne ab hos-
 15 tibus diripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

*Caesar pre-
pares for the
war. Vercin-
getorix pro-
ceeds to be-
siege the Bot-
an allies in
Gergovia.*

9. At Caesar bīduum in his locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēnti equitātūque cō-gendī ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adūlēscentem his
 5 cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnīs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: datūrum sē operam, nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. His cōstitutīs rēbus suis inopinantibus quam māximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervēnit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemiserat,
 10 neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō per finēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemā-bant, ut, si quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduis inirētur cōn-siliū, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit, quam
 15 dē eiūs adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix rūsus in Biturigēs exercitum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Hel-vētico proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduisque attribu-erat, oppūgnāre instituit.

*Caesar decides
to bring them
relief.*

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat, si reliquam partem

hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriis Aeduōrum expūgnātis cūcta Gallia dēficeret, quod nullum amicis in eō praesidium vidēret positum esse: sī mātūrius ex hibernis 5
 ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvēctiōnibus laborāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpeti, quam tantā contumēliā acceptā omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō commeātū prae-
 mittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque, ut 10
 in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō susti-
 neant. Duābus Agedincī legiōnibus atque impedimentis
 tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vel- Caesar storms
Vellaunodū-
num and Ce-
nabum.
 launodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem
 relinqueret, quō expeditiōne rē frūmentāriā ūteretur, op-
 pūgnāre instituit eoque bīduō circumvallāvit; tertio diē missis 5
 ex oppidō lēgātis dē deditiōne arma cōferrī, iūmenta prō-
 dūcī, de obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōficeret, C. Trebō-
 nium lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter faceret. Cē-
 nabum Carnūtum proficiscitur; quī tum primum allātō nūntiō
 dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum
 irī existimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō 10
 mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castris ante
 oppidum positīs diēi tempore exclūsus in posterum oppūgnā-
 tiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem ūsui sint militibus im-
 perat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris con-
 tingēbat, veritus, nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōn- 14
 ēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō antē mediam
 noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressi flūmen trānsire coepērunt.
 Quā rē per explorātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās ex-
 pedītās esse iusserat, portis incensis intrōmittit atque oppidō
 potitur perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsiderātis, quī cūcti 20

capere, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinī fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem tradūcit atque in Biturigum finēs pervenit.

- Vercingetoris leaves Ger-govia and marches to Noviodunum.* 12. Vercingetorix, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppugnātiōne dēstitit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppugnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent orātum, ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vitae cōsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret, quā plēraque erat cōsecūtus, arma cōferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam obsidum traditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs militibus intrōmissis, quī
5 arma iūmenta que conquīrerent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī āgmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simulatque oppidānī cōspēxerunt atque in spem auxiliī vēnerunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrū complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō cum ex sīgnifi-
15 cātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iis inīrī cōsiliī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suosque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

- A cavalry contest, favorable to Caesar who receives the submission of Noviodunum and departs for Avaricum.* 13. Caesar ex castris equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proelium equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suis Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs ab
5 Gāllī sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmissis sē ad āgmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōffigātis rūsus oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs, quōrum operā plēbem concitātā existimābant, ad Caesarem perdūxerunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus confectis Caesar ad oppidum
10 Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnitissimumque in finibus

Biturigum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō civitatem Biturigum sē in potestātem redactūrum cōfidēbat.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuīs incommodīs Vercingetorix urges the Gauls to cut off the Romans from supplies by destroying their own crops and cities. Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum, atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huic rei studendum, ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatū ipsī abundant et quod annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiīs petere: hōs omnēs cotidiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā commūnis salutis causā rei familiāris commoda 5 neglegenda; vicōs atque aedificia incendi oportēre hōc spatiō obvia quōqueversus, quō pābulandī causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod, quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur, eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn latūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō lon- 15 gius ab castrīs prōcessūrōs: neque interesse, ipsōsne interficiant impedimentīsne exuant, quibus āmissis bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā oppida incendi oportēre, quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā omnī sint periculō tūta, nē suīs sint ad detractandam militiam receptācula neu Rōmānīs prōposita 20 ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbere, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interfici; quae necesse accidere viciīs.

15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā Avaritium is spared at the request of its inhabitants. unō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquīs civitatibus: in omnibus partibus incendia cōspiciuntur: quae etsī māgnō cum dolore omnēs

- 5 ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlaciī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explorātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recipērātūrōs cōnfidēbant. Dēliberātūr dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendi placēret, an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturigēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem, quae
- 10 praesidiō et ornāmentō sit civitatī, suis manibus succendere cōgerentur: facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdatā unum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia dissuādente primō Vercingetorige, post concēdente et precibus
- 15 ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī delīguntur.

Vercingetorix, stationed near Avaricum, harasses the Roman foragers.

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castrīs delīgīt palūdis silvisque mūnītum ab Avaricō longē milia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explorātōrēs in singula diēi tempora, quae
- 5 ad Avaricum agerentur, cōgnōscēbat et, quid fieri vellet, imperābat. Omnis nostrās pābulatiōnēs frūmentatiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque, cum longius necessariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō afficiēbat, etsī, quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs
- 10 temporibus dīversisque itineribus irētur.

The Romans bravely endure the hardships of the siege.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar, quae intermissa ā flūmine et ā palūdis aditum, ut suprā diximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vīneās agere, turrēs duās cōstituere coepit;
- 5 nam circumvallāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frumentariā Bōiōs atque Aeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nullō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua et

infirma, celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpsērunt. Summā
 difficultate rei frumentariae affectō exercitū tenuitate Boiō-¹⁰
 rum, indiligentiā Aeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, usque
 eō ut complūrēs diēs frumentō milites caruerint et pecore ex
 longinquioribus vicis adactō extrēmam famem sustentarent,
 nulla tamen vōx est ab iis audita populī Rōmānī maiestate et
 superioribus victōriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in¹⁵
 opere singulās legiōnēs appellaret et, si acerbius inopiam
 ferrent, sē dimissurum oppugnatiōnem diceret, universi ab
 eō, nē id faceret, petēbant: sic sē complūrēs annōs illō im-
 perante meruisse, ut nullam ignōminiam acciperent, nusquam
 infectā rē discēderent: hōc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, si in-²⁰
 ceptam oppugnatiōnem reliquissent: praestāre omnīs perferre
 acerbitatēs, quam nōn civibus Rōmānīs, quī Cēnabi perfidiā
 Gallōrum interissent, parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōni-
 bus tribūnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem
 dēferrentur. A5

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, Vercingetorix
 movet neerer
 Avaricum.
 Caesar pro-
 ceeds against
 him.
 ex captivīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorigem cōn-
 sūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum
 atque ipsum cum equitatū expeditisque, quī inter equitēs
 proeliārī cōnsuēssent, insidiandī causā eō profectum, quō ⁵
 nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus
 rēbus cōgnitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium
 castra māne pervēnit. Illi celeriter per explorātōrēs adventū
 Caesaris cōgnitō carrōs impedimenta que sua in artiōrēs silvās
 abdidērunt, cōpiās omnīs in locō editō atque apertō instrūxē-¹⁰
 runt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferri,
 arma expediti iussit.

He withdraws because of the strong position of the Gauls.

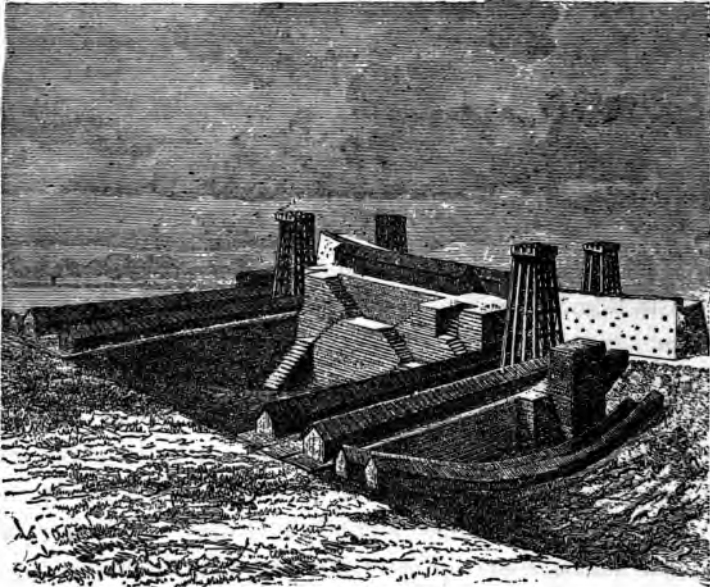
19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclīvis. Hunc ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cingēbat nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā. Hōc sē colle interruptis pontibus Gallī fidūciā locī continēbant generātimque distribūtī [in cīvitātēs] omnia vada [ac saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant sic animō parātī, ut, si eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs premerent ex locō superiōre, ut, quī propīnquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Marte ad dīmicandum exīstimāret, quī inīquitātem condiciōnis perspiceret, inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indīgnantēs militēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs perferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et signum proeliī exposcentēs ēdocet, quantō dētrimentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat, ut nūllum prō suā laude perīculum recūsent, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī dēbere, nisi eōrum vītā suā salūte habeat cārīorem. Sic militēs cōnsolātus eōdem diē reducit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinēbant oppidī, administrāre instituit.

Vercingetorix successfully defends himself against a charge of treason.

20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suōs redisset, prōditiōnis insimulātus, quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā oportunitāte et celeritāte vēnissent: nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābulī etiam ipsīs hor- tantibus: quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī

oportunitate, quā sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet: equitum
vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsiderārī dēbuisse et illīc
fuisse ūtilem, quō sint prōfectī. Summam imperiī sē cōn-
sultō nullī discēdentem trādīdisse, nē is multitudinis studiō
ad dīmīcandum impellerētur, cui rei propter animī mollitiem 15
studēre omnēs vīdēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn pos-
sent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortunāe, sī alicūius in-
diciō vocātī, huīc habendam grātiā, quod et paucitatem
eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtutem dēspicere
potuerint; quī dīmīcāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēpe- 20
runt. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nullum dēsī-
derāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque
omnibus Gallīs explorāta: quīn etiam ipsis remittere, sī sibi
magis honōrem tribuere, quam ab sē salutem accipere videan-
tur. ‘Haec ut intellegātis,’ inquit, ‘ā mē sincerē prōnūntiārī, 25
audite Rōmānōs militēs.’ Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulā-
tiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat et famē vinculisque excru-
ciāverat. Hī iam ante ēdoctī, quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent,
militēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dicunt; famē et inopiā adductōs
clam ex castrīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs 30
reperīre possent: similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec
iam vīrēs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse-
itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidī
prōfēcissent, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. ‘Haec,’ inquit, ‘ā
mē,’ Vercingetorix, ‘beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis in- 35
simulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum
victōrem famē cōsumptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex fugā
recipientem nē quā civitās suis finibus recipiat, ā mē prōvī-
sum est.’

The Gauls, reassured, send him reinforcements. 21. Conclāmat omnis multitudō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt, cūius orātiōnem approbant; summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse. Statuunt, ut decem milia hominum delēcta ex omnibus cōpiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solīs Biturigibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent, quod

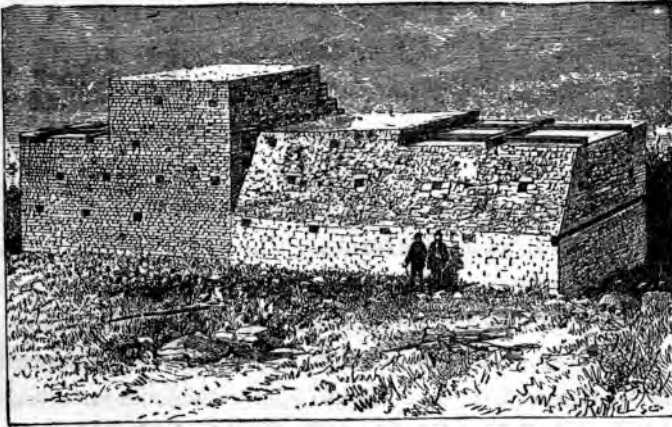


ROMAN WORKS OF APPROACH AT AVARICUM.

paene in eō, si id oppidum retinuisent, summam victōriæ cōnstāre intellegēbant.

Able defense of the Gauls in Avaricum. 22. Singulārī militum nostrōrum virtūti cōnsilia cūiusquemodī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ā quōque trāduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueis
5 falcēs avertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant, tōrmentis intrōr-

sus reducēbant, et aggerem cuniculīs subtrahēbant, eō scientius, quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtūm autem mūrūm ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnīs nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus 10 aut aggeri ignem īferēbant, aut milites occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur et nostrārum turrium altitudinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat, commissīs suārum turrium



GALLIC WALL.

mālis adaequābant et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et māximī ponderis saxīs morāban- 15 tur moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā *Description of a Gallic wall.* sunt. Trabēs dērēctae, perpetuae, in longitudinem paribus intervāllīs distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs in solō collocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem, quae diximus, intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs 5 efferciuntur. Hīs collocātīs et coāgmentātīs alius īsuper

ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissae spatii singulae singulis saxis interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps
 10 omne opus contēxitur, dum iūsta mūrī altitudō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rēctis lineis suos ordinēs servant, tum ad utilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet oportunitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete
 15 māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedēs quadrāgēnōs plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

The besieged Gauls fire the Roman works and make a sally.

24. His tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne militēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diēbus xxv aggerem longum pedēs cccxxx,
 5 altum pedēs lxxx extrūxērunt. Cum is mūrū hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hortārētur, nē quod omninō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmare aggerem, quem cunīculō hostēs succenderant, eōdem
 10 que tempore tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō duābus portis ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō frībat: aliī facēs atque aridam māteriem dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsque rēs, quibus ignis excitārī potest, fundēbant, ut quō primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō
 15 inīri posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris semper duae legiōnēs prō castris excubābant plūrēsque partītis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs reducērent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castris multitudō ad restinguendum concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locis cōsumptā iam reli- *They are re-*
 quā parte noctis pūgnārētur semperque hostibus *puised into*
 spēs victōriæ redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deūstōs pluteōs *the town.*
 turrium vidēbant nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum
 animadvertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēde- 5
 rent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestigiō temporis po-
 sitam arbitrārentur, accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs, quod dīgnum
 memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn existimāvimus. Quidam
 ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēvī āc picis trādītās
 glēbās in īgnem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat: scorpiōne ab la- 10
 tere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex prox-
 imīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō munere fungē-
 bātur; eādē ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterī successit
 tertius et tertio quartus, nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus
 vacuus relictus locus, quam restinctō aggere atque omnī ex 15
 parte summōtis hostibus finis est pūgnandī factus.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla suc- *The Gauls are*
 cesserat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō *prevented*
 prōfugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. *from evacuat-*
 Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē *ing by the en-*
 effectūrōs spērābant, proptereā quod neque longē ab oppidō 5
 castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs, quae perpetua inter-
 cēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc
 facere noctū apparābant, cum mātṛēsfamiliae repentē in pū-
 blicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum
 omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et commūnēs liberōs hosti- 10
 bus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam
 nātūrae et vīriūm īnfirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs in senten-
 tiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō
 timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et sīgnificāre dē
 fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab 15

equitatū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

*Caesar makes
an assault.*

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turrī dīrēctīs-
que operibus, quae facere īstituerat, māgnō ecortō imbre
nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem
arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās
5 vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit et
quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Legiōnibusque inter castra vineās-
que in occultō expeditīs cohortātus, ut aliquandō prō tantis
labōribus fructum vīctōriāe perciperent, iis, quī primī mū-
rum ascendissent, praemia prōposuit militibusque sīgnum
10 dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrum-
que celeriter complēvērunt.

*The town is
taken and
pillaged.*

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribus-
que deiectī in forō ac locīs patentiōribus cuneatim
cōstitērunt, hōc animō, ut, sī quā ex parte obviam venīrētur,
aciē instrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum
5 sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt,
veritī, nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ūltimās
oppidī partēs continentī impetū petīvērunt, parsque ibi, cum
angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā militibus, pars
iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit
10 quisquam, quī praedae studēret. Sic et Cēnabī caede et
labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōfectīs, nōn mulieribus
nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī
fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, quī primō clāmōre auditō
sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervē-
15 nērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit
veritus, nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā
vulgī seditiō orerētur, ut procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus
suīs principibusque civitātum disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad

suos cūrāret, quae cuique civitatī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat. 20

29. Posterō diē conciliō convōcātō cōsolātus *Vercingetorix tries to reanimate his forces.* cohortātusque est, nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent neu perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppugnātiōnis, cuius rei fuerint ipsī imperitī. Errāre, sī quī 5 in bellō omnīs secundōs rērum prōventūs exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cuius rei testēs ipsōs habēret; sed factum imprudentiā Biturigum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum, utī hōc incommodum acciperētur. Id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodis sātūrūm. Nam 10 quae ab reliquīs Gallīs civitatēs dissentirent, hās suā diligentīā adiūctūrūm atque ūnum cōsiliū tōtius Galliae effectūrūm, cuius cōsensuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iis commūnis salutis causā impetrārī, ut castra mūnī- 15 re instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs hostium impetūs sustinērent.

30. Fuit haec orātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et *His success.* māximē, quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō neque sē in occultum abdideret et cōspectum multitudinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidere et praesentire existimābātur, quod rē integrā primō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctoritātem minuunt, sic hūius ex contrariō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. 5 Simul in spem veniebant eius affirmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnī- 10 re instituērunt; et sic sunt animō cōfirmātī hominēs insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperārentur, sibi patiēda existimārent.

He gains new allies.

31. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animō labōrābat, ut reliquās cīvitātēs adiungeret, atque eās dōnīs pollicitatiōibusque alliciēbat. Huic rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut orātiōne subdolā aut
 5 amicitīā facillime capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrāt; simul ut dēminūtāe cōpiāe redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum militum cīvitātibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra addūcī velit, sagittariōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus numerus
 10 in Galliā, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id, quod Avaricī dēperierat, explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum māgnō equitum suōrum numerō et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxerat ad eum pervenit.

The Aedui ask Caesar to decide between two rival chieftains.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī
 commeātūs nactus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōnfectā cum ipsō annī
 5 tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficiscī cōstituisset, sive eum ex palūdibus silvīsque ēlicere sive obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Aedūōrum veniunt orātum, ut māximē necessariō tempore cīvitātī subveniat; summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singulī
 10 magistrātūs antiquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creatum esse dicat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, flōrentem et illūstrem adulēscēntem, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum
 15 hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiacus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs; dīvisum senātum, dīvi-

sum populum, suās cuiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod si diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore uti pars cum parte civitātis cōfligat. Id nē accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate. 20

33. Caesar, etsi a bellō atque hoste discēdere *He decides according to their laws.* dētrimentōsum esse existimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns, quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda oriri cōsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūcta populō Rōmānō civitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ornāssent, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi cōfideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praeventendum existimāvit, et, quod lēgibus Aeduōrum iis, qui summum magistrātum obtinērent, excēdere ex finibus nōn liceret, nē quid dē iure aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Aeduōs proficisci statuit senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis civitās eō convēnisset docērēturque, paucis clam convocātis aliō locō, aliō tempore atque oportuerit frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex unā familiā vivō utrōque nōn solum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit, Convictolitāvem, qui per sacerdotēs mōre civitātis intermissis magistrātibus esset creatus, potestātem obtinere iussit. 15

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō cohortātus Aeduōs, ut contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rēbus huic bellō servīrent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab sē, dēvictā Galliā, exspectārent equitātumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partēs dīvisit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās 5

Caesar sends Labienus to the north and marches upon Gergovia.

dedit, sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum
 10 flūmen Elaver dūxit: equitātūs partem illi attribuit, partem
 sibi reliquit. Quā rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix omnibus inter-
 ruptīs eius flūminis pontibus ab alterā flūminis parte iter
 facere coepit.

*He finds Ver-
cingetorix at
the passage
of the Elaver.* 35. Cum uterque utrīque esset exercitus in
 cōspectū ferēque ē regiōne castrīs castra pōneret,
 dispositis explōrātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās
 trādūcerent, erat in māgnīs Caesarī difficultātibus rēs, nē mā-
 5 iōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur, quod nōn ferē
 ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsīrī sōlet. Itaque, nē id
 accideret, silvestri locō castrīs positīs ē regiōne ūnius eōrum
 pontium, quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō
 diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās
 10 cum omnibus impedimentīs, ut cōnsuēverat, mīsit partītis
 quibusdam cohortibus, utī numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidē-
 rētur. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredi iūssīs, cum
 iam ex diēi tempore coniectūram caperet in castra perventum,
 isdem sublicīs, quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat, pon-
 15 tem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque
 trādūctis et locō castrīs idōneō delēctō reliquās cōpiās revo-
 cāvit. Vercingetorix rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem
 dīmicare cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

*Situation of
Gergovia.
Position of
the two
armies.* 36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntis castrīs Gergo-
 viam pervēnit equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō,
 perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō mon-
 te omnis aditūs difficilēs habēbat, de expūgnātiōne dēspērā-
 5 vit, de obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit, quam rem
 frūmentāriam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castrīs prope
 oppidum positīs mediocribus circum sē intervallis sēparātīm
 singulārum civitātum cōpiās collocāverat, atque omnibus eius

iugī collibus occupātis, quā dispici poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat principēsque eārum civitātum, quōs sibi ad cōsiliū capiendum dēlēgerat, primā lūce cotidiē ad sē convenire iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum, seu quid administrandum vidērētur, neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat, quīn equestrī proeliō interiectis sagittariis, quid in quōque esset animi ac virtūtis suōrum, periclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnitus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulatiōne liberā prohibētūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs, nōn nimis firmō tamen, tenēbātur. Silentio noctis Caesar ex castris ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō veniri posset, dēiectō praesidiō potitus locō duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā māiōribus castris ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam gerantur, Con- Plot to detach the Aeduans from Caesar's support. victolitāvis Aeduus, cui magistrātum adiudicātum ā Caesare dēmōstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus colloquitur; quōrum erat princeps Litaviccus atque eius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat hortāturque, ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Ūnam esse Aedūōrum civitātem, quae certissimam Galliae victōriam dētineat; eius auctoritāte reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōsistendī Rōmānis in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōnnūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sic tamen, ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūni libertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Aedui dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem, quam Rōmāni ad Aeduos veniant? Celeriter

15 adulēscētibꝯ et ōrātiōne magistrātꝯ et praemiō dēductis, cum sē vel principēs ēius cōsiliī fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod civitātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōfidēbant. Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur, 20 praeficerētur atque ea dūcenda cūrāret, frātrēsque ēius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat, cōstituunt.

*Its further-
ance through
Litaviccus.* 38. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum milia passuum circiter xxx ab Gergoviā abesset, convocātis subitō militibus lacrimāns: 'Quō proficiscimur,' inquit 'militēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit: 5 principēs civitātis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulātī prōditionis ab Rōmānis indictā causā interfecti sunt. Haec ab his cōgnōscite, quī ex ipsā caede fūgerunt: nam ego frātribus atque omnibus meis propīnquīs interfectis dolōre prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, prōnūntiāre'. Prōdūcuntur hī, quōs ille ēdocuerat, quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat, multitudine expōnunt: omnēs equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūti cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitudinem militum occultāsse atque ex mediā caede fūgisse. Conclāmant Aeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant, ut sibi cōnsulat. 15 'Quasi vērō,' inquit ille, 'cōsiliī sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus, quīn nefariō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persecuāmur eōrum mortem, quī indignissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus'. Ostendit civēs Rōmānōs, quī ēius praesidiī fiduciā unā erant: māgnū numerum frūmentī commeātꝯque diripit, ipsōs crudēlīter exercuciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs totā civitāte Aeduōrum di-

mittit, eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et prīncipum per-
 movet; hortātur, ut similī ratiōne, atque ipse fēcerit, suās 25
 iniūriās persequantur.

39. Eporedorix Aeduus, summō locō nātus Caesar is in-
 formed of the
 plot by Epore-
 dorix. adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et unā
 Viridomarus, parī aetate et grātiā, sed genere disparī quem
 Caesar ab Diviciacō sibi trāditum ex humili locō ad summam
 dignitatem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant 5
 nōminātim ab eō ēvocātī. His erat inter sē dē prīncipātū
 contentiō, et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō
 Convictolitāvī, alter pro Cotō summīs opibus pūgnāverant.
 Ex hīs Eporedorix cōgnitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte
 rem ad Caesarem dēfert; orat, nē patiātur civitatem prāvīs 10
 adulēscēntium cōnsiliis ab amicitia populī Rōmānī dēficere;
 quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum milia cum hosti-
 bus coniūxerint, quōrum salutem neque propīnquī negligere
 neque civitās levī mōmentō aestimāre posset.

40. Māgnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō The Aeduans
 under Lita-
 vicus yield.
 The leader
 escapes. Caesar, quod semper Aeduōrum civitātī praecipuē
 indulserat, nullā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs
 expeditās quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris ēducit,
 nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod 5
 rēs posita in celeritate vidēbātur: C. Fabium lēgātum cum
 legiōnibus duābus castris praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Lita-
 viccī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs
 fūgisse. Adhortātus milītēs, nē necessariō tempore itineris
 labōre permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus prōgressus milia 10
 passuum xxv āgmen Aeduōrum cōspicātus immissō equitā-
 tū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus,
 nē quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum,
 quōs illi interfectōs existimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōs-

15 que appellāre iubet. His cōgnitīs et Litavicci fraude perspectā Aeduī manūs tendere, dēditionem significāre et proiectis armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortunā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam perfūgit.

Attack on Fabius, encamped near Gergovia. Caesar hastens to his relief.

41. Caesar nūntiis ad civitatem Aeduōrum missis, quī suō beneficiō cōservātōs docērent, quōs iure bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōris [noctis] exercitū ad quietem datīs castra ad Gergoviam mōvit. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missi, 5 quantō rēs in periculō fuerit, expōnunt. Summīs cōpiis castra oppugnāta dēmōstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō labōre dēfatigārent, quibus propter māgnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō esset iisdem in 10 vāllō permanendum. Multitudīne sagittārum atque omnis generis tēlōrum multōs vulnerātos; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessū eōrum duābus relictīs portis obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsū apparāre. His rēbus 15 cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō militum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

Plots and outrages of the Aeduī.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aeduī primīs nūntiis ab Litaviccō acceptīs nullum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs irācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illi hominum 5 generi est innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona civium Rōmānōrum diripiunt, caedēs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitāvis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum 10 militum, iter ad legiōnem facientem fidē datā ex oppidē

Cabillonō edūcunt: idem facere cōgunt eōs, quī negōtiandi causā ibi cōstitierant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repūgnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectis māiōrem multitudinem ad arma concitant. 15

43. Interim nuntiō allātō, omnēs eōrum milites *Duplicity of the Aedui. Caesar plans to abandon the siege of Gergovia.* in potestate Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publicō factum cōsiliō dēmōstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonis direptis dēcernunt, Litaviccī frātrumque bona publicant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem suī purgandī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recipierandōrum suōrum causā; sed 5 contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō ex direptis bonis, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōsilia clam dē bellō inire incipiunt cīvitātēque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, 10 tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: nihil sē propter īncientiam levitātemque vulgī gravius dē cīvitāte iudicāre neque dē suā in Aeduōs benevolentīā dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōsilia inībat, quemadmodum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ā timōre dēfectiōnis similis fugae vidērētur. 15

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere visa est facultās *He finds a favorable position for an attack.* bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspicendi causā vēnisset, animum advertit collem, quī ab hostibus tenēbātur, nūdātum hominibus, quī superioribus diēbus vix praē multitudine cernī poterat. Mirātus 5 quaerit ex per fugis causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotidiē numerus cōfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explorātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, quā esset

aditus ad alteram partem oppidī: vehementer huic illōs locō
 10 timēre nec iam aliter sentire, unō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō,
 sī alterum amīsissent, quīn paene circumvallātī atque omnī
 exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur: ad hunc mūnien-
 dum hominēs ā Vercingetorige ēvocātōs.

*He maneuvers
to deceive the
Gauls.*

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs
 equitum turmās eōdem mediā nocte; imperat hīs ut
 paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs vagentur. Primā lūcemāg-
 num numerum impedimentōram ex castris mūlōrumque prōdū-
 5 cī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus
 equitum speciē ac simulātiōne collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs
 paucōs addit equitēs, quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur.
 Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec
 procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in
 10 castra, neque tantō spatiō, certī quid esset, explorārī poterat.
 Legiōnem unam eōdem iugō mittit et paulum prōgressam in-
 feriōre cōstituit locō silvisque occultat. Augētur Gallis
 suspiciō atque omnēs illō ad mūnitiōnem cōpiae trādūcun-
 tur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspicātus tēctīs insig-
 15 nibus suōrum occultātisque signīs militāribus rārōs militēs
 nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex māiōribus castris in
 minōra trādūcit lēgātisque, quōs singulis legiōnibus praefēc-
 erat, quid fierī velit, ostendit: imprīmīs monet, ut contineant
 militēs, nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgre-
 20 dianantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit: hōc
 unā celeritātē posse vitārī; occasiōnis esse rem, nōn proelii.
 Hīs rēbus expositis signum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascen-
 sū eōdem tempore Aeduōs mittit.

*The Romans
capture the
Gaulic camp
outside the
walls.*

46. Oppidī mūrus ā plāniciē atque initiō as-
 cēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nullus amfractus intercē-
 deret, MCC passūs aberat: quidquid hūc circuitūs

ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. A mediō ferē colle in longitudinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrū, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī atque inferiōre omnī spatio vacuō relicto superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrū oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Militēs datō signō celeriter ad mūnitiōnem perveniunt eamque trāsgressi trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās, ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernaculō oppressus, ut meridiē conquiēverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium militum ēriperet.

47. Cōsecūsus id, quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptū canī iussit, legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat, continuō signa cōstituit. At reliquarū legiōnum militēs nōn exauditō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercēdebat, tamēn ā tribūnīs militum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlāti spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeō arduum sibi esse existimāvērunt, quod nōn virtūte cōsequī possent, neque finem prius sequendi fēcērunt, quam mūrō oppidī portisque appropinquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clamōre qui longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterriti, cum hostem intrā portās esse existimārent sēsē ex oppidō eiecērunt. Matrēsfamiliae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinērent: nōnnullae dē mūrīs per manūs dēmissae sēsē militibus tradēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis VIII, quem inter suōs eō diē dixisse

Caesar restrains his soldiers who are eager to follow up their advance.

20 cōnstābat, excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs neque commīsū-
rum ut prius quisquam mūrū ascendere, trēs suōs nactus
manipulārēs atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrū ascendit; hōs
ipse rūsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrū extulit.

*The Gauls re-
ceive rein-
forcements.*

48. Interim iī, quī ad alteram partem oppidī,
ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā con-
venerant, primō exaudītō clamōre, inde etiam crebrīs nūntiīs
incitātī, oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus
5 māgnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque primus
venerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium nume-
rum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitudō convēnisset,
mātrēsfamiliae quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs ten-
debant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum os-
10 tentāre liberōsque in cōspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat
Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cur-
sū et spatiō pūgnae defatigātī nōn facile recentēs atque inte-
grōs sustinēbant.

*Caesar chang-
es position
and stations
reserves.*

49. Caesar cum iniquō locō pūgnārī hostium-
que augērī cōpiās vidēret, praemetuēns suis ad T.
Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīque-
rat, mīsīt, ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub
5 infimō colle ā dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret, ut, sī nos-
trōs locō depulsōs vīdisset, quō minus liberē hostēs insequē-
rentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prō-
gressus, ubi cōstiterat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

*Panic caused
by the arrival
of the Aed-
uans.*

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hos-
tēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōfiderent,
subitō sunt Aeduī visī ā latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab
dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distīnendae causā mīserat.
5 Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt,
āc tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod

insigne p̄cātōrum esse cōsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā militēs ab hostibus factum existimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque unā mūrū ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petronius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs manipulāribus suis, quī illum secūtī erant: ‘Quoniam,’ inquit, ‘mē unā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōsultite.’ Simul in mediōs hostēs irrupit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suis: ‘Frūstrā,’ inquit, ‘meae vitae subvenire cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis virēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.’ Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit ac suis salūtī fuit.

51. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissis dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs insequentēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōstiterat. Hanc rursus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castris minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi primum plānciem attigērunt, infestīs contrā hostēs signīs cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnitiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē militēs sunt paulō minus septingentī dēsiderātī.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā tēmeritātem cupiditātemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent, quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque signō recipiendī datō cōstitissent neque ā tribūnīs militum lēgātisque retinērī

*Exploit of
Petronius.*

*The Romans
retire with
loss.*

*Caesar re-
proaches his
soldiers for
rashness and
praises their
valor.*

potuissent. Exposuit, quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostībus explōrātā vīctōriā dīmīssisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī
 10 acciderat. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē vīctōriā atque exitū rērum sentire existimārent; nec
 15 minus sē ab mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitūdinem dēsiderāre.

The Gauls decline to fight. Caesar retreats among the Aedui.

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem cōfirmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod incommodum inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē
 5 profectiōne cōgitāns, quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs edūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestri proeliō atque eō secundō in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōfirmandōs factum
 10 existimāns in Aeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īsecūtīs hostibus tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver pervēnit; pontem reficit eōque exercitum trādūxit.

He seeks a renewal of their allegiance.

54. Ibi ā Viridomarō atque Eporedorige Aeduīs appellātus discit cum omnī equitātū Litavicum ad sollicitandōs Aeduōs profectum: opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōfirmandam civitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus
 5 perfidiam Aeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem civitātis existimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cōstituit, nē aut īferre iniūriam vidērētur

aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem. Discēdentibus his breviter sua in Aeduōs merita exposuit, quōs et quam humil-
 ēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agris, omnibus
 ēreptis cōpiis, impositō stipendiō, obsidibus summā cum con-
 tumēliā extortis, et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitū-
 dinem dēdūxisset, ut nōn solum in pristinum statum redīs-
 zent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem et grātiā anteces-
 sisse vidērentur. His datis mandātis eōs ab sē dīmisit.

55. Noviodunum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad *Noviodunum,*
 rīpās Ligeris oportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar *the store house*
 omnēs obsidēs Gālliae, frūmentum, pecūniā pū- *for the Rom-*
 blicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedimentōrum māgnam par- *ans, is de-*
 tem contulerat, hūc māgnū numerum equōrum hūius bellī *stroyed by the*
 causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēptum mīserat. Eō cum *Gauls.*
 Eporedorix Viridomarusque vēnissent et dē statū civitātis
 cōgnōvissent, Litavicum Bibracte ab Aeduīs receptum,
 quod est oppidum apud eōs māximae auctōritātis, Convictoli-
 tāvem magistratum māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum con-
 vēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorigem dē pāce et amicitīā con-
 ciliandā publicē missōs, nōn praetermittendum tantum
 commodum existimāvērunt. Itaque interfectis Noviodūni
 custōdibus quīque eō negotiandī causā convēnerant pecūni-
 am atque equōs inter sē partītī sunt; obsidēs civitātum Bi-
 bracte ad magistratū dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum,
 quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsui Rō-
 mānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus
 āvēxērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt.
 Ipsī ex finitimis regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia custōdi-
 āsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere equitātumque omnibus locīs
 iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frūmen-
 taria Rōmānōs excludere [aut adductōs inopiā ex prōvinciā

expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat,
 25 quod Liger ex nivibus crēvarat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse
 trānsīrī vidērētur.

Caesar crosses the Loire and goes to join Labienus 56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar mātūrandum
 sibi cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendis pontibus perī-
 clitandum, ut prius, quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae,
 dīmīcāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam
 5 converteret, ut nēmō nōn tum quidem necessāriō faciendum
 existimābat, cum infāmia atque indignitās reī et oppositus
 mōns Cevenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum māxi-
 mē quod abiūctō Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus, quās ūnā
 miserat, vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnīs diur-
 10 nīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōfectīs contrā omnium opīniō-
 nem ad Ligerem vēnit vadōque per equitēs inventō prō reī
 necessitāte oportūnō, ut brāchia modo atque umerī ad sus-
 tinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū,
 quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus prīmō aspectū
 15 perturbātīs incolumem exercitum trādūxit frūmentumque in
 agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter
 in Senonēs facere instituit.

Labienus marches on Lutetia (Paris). He is opposed by Camulogenus. 57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiē-
 nus eō supplēmētō, quod nūper ex Ītaliā vēnerat,
 relīctō Agedincī, ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō,
 cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutētiam proficiscitur. Id est op-
 5 pidum Parisiōrum, quod positum est in insulā flūminis* Sē-
 quanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex finī-
 timīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperiī trādi-
 tur Camulogēnō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus aetāte tamen
 propter singulārem scientiam reī militāris ad eum est honō-
 10 rem ēvēctus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palū-
 dem, quae influerat in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum

māgnoperē impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre īnstituit.

58. Labiēnus primō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilīus cōnferī animū advertit, silentiō ē castris tertiā vigiliā ēgressus eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō antedē Lutētiā diximus. Dēprēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque coniūctis atque eō militibus iniectis et rei novitāte perterritis oppidānis, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutētiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab iis, quī Metiosēdō fūgerant, Lutētiam incendiī pontēsque eius oppidī rescindi iubent; ipsī profecti ā palūde ad ripās Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutētiæ contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsidunt.

Labienus captures Metiosedum. The Gauls burn Lutetia and march against him.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbatur, iam dē Aeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtūrumōrēs afferēbantur, Galli que in colloquiis interclūsum itinere et Ligere Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coactum in prōvinciam contendisse cōfirmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cōgnitā, quī ante erant per sē infidēles, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rerū commūtatiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōsiliū, atque antea sēnserat, intellegēbat, neque iam, ut aliquid acquireret proeliōque hostēs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum redūceret, cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae civitās in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, īstābant, alteram Camulogēnus

Perplexity of Labienus.

parātō atque instrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā
 15 praesidiō atque impedimentis interclūsās māximum flūmen
 distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectis ab animi
 virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

*He divides his
 troops and
 withdraws.*

60. Sub vesperum cōsiliō convocātō cohortā-
 tus, ut ea, quae imperāset, diligenter industriēque
 administrārent, nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat, singulās
 equitibus Rōmānis attribuit et primā cōfectā vigiliā quat-
 5 tuor milia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique
 sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortēs, quās minimē firmās
 ad dīmicandum esse existimābat, castris praesidiō relinquit;
 quīnque eiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omni-
 bus impedimentis adversō flūmine māgnō tumultū proficisci
 10 imperat. Conquirit etiam lintrēs: hās māgnō sonitū rēmō-
 rum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulū
 silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit, quē
 nāvēs appellī iusserat.

*He crosses the
 Seine. The
 Gauls pursue.*

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explorātōrēs hosti-
 um, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositi, in-
 opinantēs, quod māgna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ab
 nostris opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque equitibus Rō-
 5 mānis administrantibus, quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter
 trāsmittitur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiā-
 tur in castris Rōmānōrum praeter cōsuetūdineīm tumultuārī
 et māgnū ire āgmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum
 in eādē parte exaudiri et paulō infrā militēs nāvibus trāns-
 10 portārī. Quibus rēbus auditis, quod existimābant tribus
 locis trānsire legiōnēs atque omnēs perturbātōs defectiōne
 Aeduōrum fugam parāre, suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs
 distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relicto et
 parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā, quae tantum prō-

grederētur, quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās 15
 contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

62. Prīmā luce et nostrī omnēs erant trāns- *Labiēnus de-*
 portatī et hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus *feats the*
Gauls and
joins Caesar.
 mīlītēs cohortātus, ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et secundissimō-
 rum proeliōrum retinērent memoriā atque ipsum Caesarem,
 cuius ductū saepenumerō hostēs superāssent, praesentem 5
 adesse exīstimārent, dat sīgnum proelii. Prīmō concursū ā
 dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstitērat, hostēs pelluntur
 atque in fugam cōniciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duode-
 cima legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ordinēs hostium trānsfixī pīlis
 concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat 10
 suspiciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulo-
 gēnus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. Incertō etiam
 nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tribūnis esset
 nūntiātum, quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum
 hostium legiōnem ostendērunt sīgnaque intulērunt. Nē eō 15
 quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventī
 omnēs interfectique sunt. Eandem fortūnam tulit Camulo-
 gēnus. At iī, quī in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēni erant
 relictī, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidiō suīs
 iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum victō- 20
 rum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sic cum suīs fugientibus
 permixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitatū
 sunt interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cōfectō Labiēnus revertitur
 Agedincum, ubi impedīmenta tōtius exercitūs relicta erant;
 inde diē tertiō cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervēnit. 25

63. Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cōgnitā bellum *More tribes*
 augētur. Lēgatiōnēs in omnēs partēs circum- *join the revolt.*
Dissapoint-
ment of the
Aedui.
 mittuntur: quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecū-
 niā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs nītuntur; nactī obsidēs

- ⁴ quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Aeduī, ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī communicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt, ut ipsis summa imperiī trādatur, et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur.
- 10 Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiis rēs permittitur: ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperātorem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuerunt: illi, quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānis premēbantur, quae fuit
- 15 causa, quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs principātū, queruntur fortunae commūtatiōnem et Caesaris indulgentiam in sē requirunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōsiliū ā reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invitī summae spei adulēscentēs,
- 20 Eporedorix et Viridomarus, Vercingetorigī parent.
- Plans of Vercingetoria.* 64. Ipse imperat reliquīs civitatibus obsidēs diemque huic rei cōstituit. Omnēs equitēs, quīdecim milia numerō, celeriter convenire iubet: peditātū, quem antea habuerat, sē fore contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptātūrum aut in aciē dīmicātūrum, sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentatiōnibus pābulatiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsi frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā rei familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertātemque sē cōsequi videant. His
- 10 cōstitutis rēbus Aeduīs Segusiāvisque, quī sunt finitimī prōvinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. His praeficit frātre Eporedorigis bellumque inferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutenōs Cadur-
- 15 cōsque ad finēs Volcārum Arecomiōrum dēpopulandōs mit-

tit. Nihilō minus clandestīnis nūntiis legātiōnibusque Allobrogās sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, civitātī autem imperium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia Preparations of Caesar. cohortium duārum et vīginti, quae ex ipsā coāctā prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum finitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī filiō, prīncipe civitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida ac mūrōs compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et diligentīā suōs finēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nullā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātēs, quās superiōribus annis pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērānt. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equis ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs militum reliquisque equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque, quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī, conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferrī posset, circiter milia passuum decem ab Rōmānis trīnīs castris Vercingetorix cōnsēdit convocātisque ad concilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat. Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis pācem atque otium parum profīci: māiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque

finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in āgmine impeditōs adorirentur. Sī peditēs suīs auxiliū ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrū cōnfidat, relictis impedimentis suae salutī cōnsulant, et ūsū rerū necessāriarū et dignitate spoliātum irī; nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā āgmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem debere dubitare. Id quō maiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castris habitūrum et terrōri hostibus futūrū. Conclāmant equitēs: sāctissimō iūreiūrāndō cōfirmārī oportere, nē tectō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per āgmen hostium perequitāset.

The Gauls are defeated with loss. 67. Probātā rē atque omnibus iūreiūrāndō adactis posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ā duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō āgmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātū tripartitō dīvisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit āgmen; impedimenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī laborāre aut grāuius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna inferri Caesar aciemque cōstituī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad insequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō depellunt: fugientēs usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumirentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitāvī proximis comitiis habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post defectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporedorix,

quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cō- *They retire to Alesia. Caesar pursues and lays siege.*
piās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinus-
que Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandūbiōrum, iter facere
coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subse-
quī iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem dēduc- 5
tis duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis secūtus, quantum diē
tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novis-
simō āgmīne interfectis alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit.
Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū,
quā māmimē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhor- 10
tātus ad labōrem militēs circumvallāre instituit.

1. fugō, 1. put to fight, chase:
rout. 1

Vercingetorīx, -igis, m., chief of
the Averni and commandēr of the
combined Gallic forces in 52 B. C.
at Alesia. *

3. Alesia, -ae, f., a town of the

Mandūbiī, now Alise Ste. Reine. *

Mandūbiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic
people between the Aeduī and
Lingones. 3

11. circum-vallō, 1. [vālum,
rampart], a., surround with a
rampart, beleaguer, invest. 4

2. ut . . . collocāverat: i. e.,
without returning to camp.

3, 4. Alesiam . . . coepit: the
distance is about forty miles.
quod: for gender cf. II, 1, 4; I,
38, 3.

8. alterō diē: i. e., on the sec-
ond day of the march, which began
the day after the battle. ad Ale-
siam: this is Alise Ste. Reine, as
has been proved by the excavations
made on the site by order of the
Emperor Napoleon III during the
years 1862-65. The ancient town
covered the whole of the oval pla-
teau of Mont Auxois, which is one
and a quarter miles long east and

west and one half a mile across in
the widest place. The base of the
hill is six miles in circumference.
The slopes rise very gradually to
a wall of rock on all sides except
the east where a low neck of land
connects the hill with the high
ground on that side.

9. perspectō urbis sitū: this
reconnaissance convinced Caesar
that it would be difficult to take
the place by assault. The Roman
army approached from the east.

11. circumvallāre: see Int.
156, 157. Caesar had eleven legions
— about 50,000 men — 5,000 Gallic
and German cavalry and 10,000
auxiliary troops.



London: George Bell & Sons.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō *Situation and defences of Alesia.* admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante id oppidum plāniciēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitūdinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam sex in altitūdinem pedum praedūxerant. Ēius mūnitiōnis, quae ab Rōmānis ¹⁰ instituēbātur, circuitus XI milia passuum tenēbat. Castra

4. sub-luō, -ere, lūtus [luō, wash], *a.*, wash underneath, wash. 1
7. fastigium, -ī [fastigō, make pointed], *n.*, the top of a gable; summit, elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope. 3
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus, *a.*, encircle, surround, encompass,

invest. *
9. māceria, -ae, *f.*, a wall of soft clay; enclosure, wall. 2
10. praedūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead before; make or construct before or in front. 2
11. XI, for undecim, *ind. num. adj.*, eleven.

2. admodum ēditō locō: about 550 feet above the surrounding plain. nisi obsidiōne: the site was not so elevated as that of Gerovia, but the defeat there had warned Caesar against taking any risks. Another defeat might undo the work of years.

3, 4. duo flūmina: the Lutosa (Ose) on the north and Osera (Oserain) on the south, both emptying into the Breune. ante id oppidum: on the west. plāniciēs: the plain of Laumes.

5, 6. longitūdinem: north and south. reliquīs . . . partibus: on the north, east and south. collēs: a series of hills separated from Mont Auxois by the valleys of the Ose and Oserain. mediocrī spatiō: about one mile. interiectō: between the collēs and Mont Auxois.

8. hunc omnem locum: the eastern slope of the elevation, the level top being occupied by the town.

9. fossam: extending from the Ose to the Oserain. The Gauls expected the Romans to follow them along the low ridge between the two streams, by which alone the position could be stormed.

10. ēius mūnitiōnis: the Roman lines of investment, consisting of the camps and redoubts. In order to hem in the Gauls until they were finished, Caesar must first have seized all the hills and distributed his forces temporarily.

11. castra: four on the heights (except Mont Rea) for infantry and four on the plain for cavalry, have been excavated.

oportūnīs locīs erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret: haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs
 15 tenēbantur.

The Gauls are severely beaten in a cavalry contest.

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plāniciē, quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem patēre suprā dēmōstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs
 5 Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōstituit. Praesidiō legiōnem additō nostrīs animus augētur: hostēs in fugam coniectīsē ipsī multitudine impediunt atque angustiōribus portis relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs: nōnnullī relictīs equīs
 10 fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōstituerat, prōmovērī iubet.

14. excubitor, -ōris [cubō, lie down], m., one who lies out or on guard; watchman, sentinel. 1

7. ad-dō, dere, didī, dītus [dō, give], a., give or impart to, annex, add. *

12. ibique, there, i. e., in the lines of investment.

1. fit equestre proelium: Ver-ingetorix tried to break the Roman lines and escape. opere: the building of redoubts and camps.

2. plāniciē: here, naturally, was the weakest portion of the line of investment. The Gauls advanced along the northern and southern slopes of Mont Auxois.

5. Germānōs: a body of about 1,000 horse which Caesar had drawn from the subject tribes in order to offset the numerically superior cavalry force of the enemy. They were much superior to his Gallic

horse and had already done good service. prō castrīs: those within supporting distance, on Mont Rea and Mont Flavigny.

6. praesidiō . . . additō: as a moral support; cf. V, 17, 9, cōnsi, etc.

8. portīs: in the māceriae on the west, extending down the slopes of Mont Auxois to the two streams see map.

10. fossam: not the one mentioned in 69, 9, but the one in front of the māceriae referred to in the previous note. māceriam trāscendere: because the gates were blocked.

11. prō vāllō = prō castrīs, line 5, above.

Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant, perturbantur Galli: venīri ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant: nōn-nūlli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis com-15 plūribus equīs captis Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ā *Vercingetorix dismisses his cavalry and orders a general levy of the Gauls.* Rōmānis perficiantur, cōnsilium capit, omnem ā sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus man-
dat, ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque, quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Suā in 5 illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque, ut suae salutis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī libērtāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōn-
strat. Ratiōne initā sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre frūmen-10 tum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. His datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum mittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē

6. ob-testor, 1. [testor, witness],
a., call to witness, protest, appeal
to, entreat, implore. 4
7. optimē, adv. [superl. of bene],
very well, highly. 2
8. in-diligēns, -entis [diligēns,

heedful], heedless, careless, negli-
gent. 1

13. silentium, -ī [sileō, be si-
lent], n., silence: in abl. as adv.
in silence. *

13. nōn minus: than the horse-
men who had just been routed.
quī . . . erant: the Gallic infantry
in the camp under the walls of Ale-
sia.

2, 3. omnem equitātum: about
15,000. dimittere: they were use-
less in the city and would only help
consume the limited supply of pro-
visions; and he depended upon

them to bring an army to his res-
cue.

9. milia . . . LXXX: it seems
probable that the number is exag-
gerated, there not being room on
the plateau for so large an army in
addition to the inhabitants of Ale-
sia.

12. quā: on the east. The cav-
alry fled up the valleys of the Ose
and Oserain.

referrī iubet: capitīs poenam iīs, quī nōn pāruerint, cōstitu-
 15 it: pecus, cuius māgna erat cōpia ā Mandūbiīs compulsa,
 viritīm distribuit: frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnsti-
 tuit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, in oppi-
 dum recēpit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et
 bellum parat administrāre.

*Caesar's
works of in-
vestment.*

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs ex perfugīs et cap-
 tīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis īnstiuit. Fos-
 sam pedum vīgintī dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae
 solum tantundem patēret, quantum summae fossae labra dis-
 5 tārent; reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs CCCC re-
 dūxit, id hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessariō
 spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum
 cingerētur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs hostium
 multitudō advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēsti-
 10 nātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās

16. viritīm [vir, man], *adv.*, man
 by man, singly, individually. 1
 parcē [parcus, sparing], *adv.*, spar-
 ingly, frugally, carefully. 1

4. tantundem, *adv.* [tantus, so
 great], just as great or far, just
 so far. 1

16. viritīm distribuit: in order
 that they might be eaten first, since
 there was nothing to feed them on.

2. haec genera: the descrip-
 tion in this and the next chapter
 applies especially to the works in
 the plain of Laumes, though in
 general it is true of the whole con-
 travallation. īnstiuit: in the
 plain west of Alesia, since the
 strongest fortifications were need-
 ed there.

3. pedum vīgintī: in width.
 This trench was eight or nine feet

deep. dūxit: from the Ose to the
 Oserain.

5. reliquās mūnitiōnēs: the
 main works of contravallation. pe-
 dēs CCCC: i. e., at each end of the
 trench. The fortifications were
 not parallel with it.

6, 7. id: i. e., both fossam . .
 dūxit and reliquās . . . redūxit. tan-
 tum spatium: the distance around
 Mont Auxois.

11. eādem altitūdine: i. e., the
 two trenches were of the same
 depth, which the excavation shows
 was 8 or 9 feet.

xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit, quārum interiōrem campestribus āc dēmīssīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem āc vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit.

View of the plain of Laumes looking towards Mont Rān from the site occupied by Caesar, c. 52 (Plan 7), with a restoration of the Roman lines and the walls of Alesia.



Huic lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentī-

12. *campester* (tris), -tris, -tre [*campus*, a plain], of a plain, flat, level: *loca*, level country. 4

dē-mittō, -ere, *mīsi*, *missus* [*mittō*], *a.*, send away or down, thrust down: *sē*, descend: *sē animō*, lose courage: *in p. p. as adj.*, low-lying, low. *

dērivō, 1. [*rivus*, stream], *a.*, draw off. 1

14. *lōrica*, -ae [*lōrum*, thong], *f.*, a leather cuirass, corselet; breast-work, parapet. 3

pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather, pinion; parapet, battlement of stakes between which spears could be thrown. 2

grandis, -e, of large size, full grown, great. 4

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, stand out, project. 3

interiōrem: the one nearer the town. The form of the trench is shown in the section of the works.

12. *campestribus* .. *locīs*: *i. e.*, this water-ditch did not extend all around Alesia. The dry ditch, however, formed a part of the whole contravallation. *ex flūmine*: the Oserain. The gravel washed into the ditch by the water was easily traced by the excavators nearly half its length.

13. *post eās*: Caesar describes the works from the point of view of Alesia. *aggerem*: an earthwork

parallel with the outer trench. *vāllum*: a line of palisades at the top of the slope of the *agger*. As the trench was over eight feet deep, the entire height of the face of the contravallation was over twenty feet.

14. *lōricam*: a breastwork of hurdles supported by the *vāllum*. *pinnās*: these were set upon the top of the *lōrica*: see elevation of rampart. *cervīs*: large limbs of trees sunk into the *agger* at the base of the parapet with their forked branches projecting horizontally.

15 bus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

His works of defence.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fieri necesse dēminūtis nostris cōpiis, quae longius ā castris prōgrediēbantur; ac nōnnumquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portis summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis rāmīs abscisīs atque hōrum dēlibrātis ac praeacūtis cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs 10 altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab infimō re-

15. *commissūra, -ae* [com-mittō, unite], *f.*, uniting; joint, seam, junction. 1

pluteus, -ī, m., shed, mantelet (of hurdles covered with hides to protect besiegers); defence, breast-work. 3

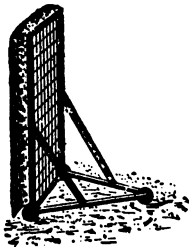
1. *māterior, -ārī a.*, procure wood. 1

8. *dē-librō, -āre, -ātus* [liber, bark], *a.*, strip off the bark or rind, peel. 1

9. *cacūmen, -inis, n.*, the top, tip, summit, point. 1

10. *stīpes, stīpitis* [cf. *stīpō*, compress], *m.*, log, stock, trunk of a tree. 2

15. *pluteōrum*: which, bound



Pluteus.

together, formed the *lōrica*.

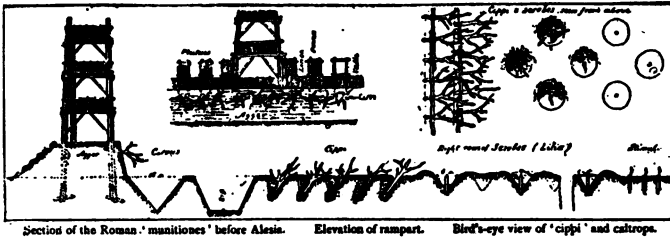
16. *tōtō opere*: not the whole length of the contravallation, but the portion running across the plain, about a mile and a half in length.

17. *distārent*: there were about 100 of these towers.

7. *numerō*: it is estimated that there would have been one man only for each three feet of the length of the fortifications with no reserves. *truncis*: trunks of trees with stout branches peeled and sharpened were set in trenches parallel with the contravallation.

10. *hūc*: i. e., in *fossās*.

vinctī, nē revelli possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī ērant
ōrdinēs coniūctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāve-
rant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appel-



lābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncuncem disposi-
tīs scrobēs trium in altitūdinem pedum fodiēbantur paulātim¹⁵
angustiōre ad infimum fastigiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis
crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur

11. re-vellō (vol-), -ere, vellī, vulsus [vellō, pluck], *a.*, pull, pluck or tear away. 2

12. implicō, 1, [plicō, fold], *a.*, enfold, entwine, unite closely. 1

13. vāllus, -ī, *m.*, a stake for a palisade; a palisade.

cippus, -ī, *m.*, pillar, post, boundary-stone; a palisade or stockade formed of trunks of trees driven into the ground. 1

14. oblīquus, -a, -um, sidelong, slanting, oblique. 1

quīncunx, -uncis [quīnque + un-
cia, twelfth], *m.*, five twelfths;
quīncunx, anything arranged in
oblīque lines or rows thus ∴ ∴ ∴ 1

15. scrobis, -is, *f.*, *m.*, ditch,
trench, pit. 3

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, *a.*, dig. 1

16. teres, -etis, *adj.* [terō, rub],
rubbed or rounded off, smooth. 1

femur, -inis (-oris), *n.*, the thigh. 1

17. prae-ūstus, -a, -um [p. p. of
praeurō used as *adj.*], burned in
front or at the end. 3

11, 12. quīnī . . . implicātī: there were five rows of these set so close together that their projecting branches interlaced and formed a sort of abatis.

13. vāllīs: these were the branches (rāmīs) of the rows of tree trunks. cippōs appellābant: sc. militēs: probably in jest. They were a novelty.

14. ante hōs: i. e., toward Alesia.

15, 16. scrobēs: in the plain of Laumes more than 50 of these were found, others on the heights, dug in the solid rock. paulātim . . . fastigiō: the pits were funnel-shaped.

17. praeūstī: so as to harden the wood.

ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandī et stabiliēndī causā singulī ab infimō solō pedēs 20 terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās viminibus ac virgultis integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī ordinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs infixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur 25 mediocribusque intermissīs spatiis omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Extent of the works of investment.

74. His rēbus perfectīs regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā XIII milia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās

19. *stabilio*, 4. [*stabilis*, firm], a., make firm or stable, stay, fix. 1
 20. *exculcō*, -āre [*calcō*, trample], a., trample out, stamp or tread down. 1
 21. *in-tegō*, -ere, *tēxi*, *tēctus* [*tegō*, cover], cover over, protect. 3
octōni, -ae, -a, num. distr. [*octō*, eight], eight at a time, eight (each.) 2
 22. *similitūdō*, -inis [*similis*, like], F., likeness, resemblance. 2
 23. *flōs*, *flōris*, m., blossom, flower. 1
lilium, -ī, n., lily; a name jocosely

given to the scrobes, dug out in form of a lily. 1

24. *hāmus*, -ī, m., hook. 1
in-fixō, -ere, *fixi*, *fixus* [*figō*, fix], a., fix or fasten in or on. 1
in-fodiō, -ere, *fodi*, *fossus* [*fodiō*, dig], a., dig in, drive in deep, plant, bury. 1
 25. *dis-serō*, -ere [*serō*, sow], a., sow here and there; plant or set at intervals. 1
 26. *stimulus*, -ī, m., goad; stake, concealed beneath the ground as a defence. 2
 2. XIII or XIV [=quatuordecim, an ind. num. adj.], fourteen.

19, 20. *singulī* . . . *exculcābantur*: i. e., the bottom of each pit was filled in with firmly trodden earth to the depth of a foot.

23. *lilium*: the funnel-shaped pit (*scrobis*) representing the calyx and the stake (*stipes*) the pistil. *ante haec*: i. e., still toward the town. *tāleae*: square wooden stakes with barbed hooks of iron set in their tops. These were buried close together so that only the hooks were above the surface.

Five of these were found in the excavations.

26. *stimulōs*: Caesar's language seems to imply that the soldiers gave names in jest to these novelties.

3, 4. *mūnitiōnēs*: the lines of circumvallation designed to repel the attack of the Gallic army of relief. In the plain of Laumes they are parallel to the lines of contravallation and the space between is 600

ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitudīne, sī ita accidat, mūnitiōnum prae-
sidia circumfundī possent; ac nē cum periculō ex castris
ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre
omnēs convēctum iubet.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī con-
ciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs eōs, quī arma
ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocan-
dōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitātī imperan-
dum, nē tantā multitudīne cōfusā nec moderārī nec discer-
nere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Impe-
rant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segūsiāvīs, Ambivarētīs,
Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, Brannoviīs, mīlia xxxv; parem nu-
merum Arvernīs adiūctīs Eleutetīs, Cadurcīs, Gabalīs, Vel-

A contingent imposed on each Gallic tribe for the relief of Alesia.

4. *exteri, -ae, -a, pl. only in use, outside, outer, external; foreign. sup., extrēmūs or extimūs. 3*
8. *con-vehō, vehere, vēxi, vēctus [vehō, carry], a., carry or bring together, collect, fetch in. 1*
2. *in-dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus [dicō, say], a., say publicly, proclaim, announce, appoint. **
3. *cēnsēō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, a., estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. **
5. *cōn-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus [fundō, pour], a., pour together, mingle; confuse, disorder; in p. p. as adj., confused, disordered, indiscriminate. 1*
dis-cernō, -ere, crēvī, cretus, [cernō, discern], a., separate; dis-

- tinguish, discern. 1*
7. *Ambivarētī, -ōrum, m., clients of the Aedui. 2*
8. *Brannovicēs, -um, m., a part of the Aulerci II, 34, 3. 1*
Brannovī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people, clients of the Aedui. 1
XXXV, for trigintā quinque, an ind. num. adj., thirty-five. 1
9. *Arvernī, -ōrum, m., a powerful people of Celtic Gaul, rivals of the Aedui. **
Eleutetī, -ōrum, m., clients of the Aedui. 1
Cadurcī, -ōrum, m., a people of Aquitania. 5
Gabalī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people, clients of the Arverni. 3
Vellavī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people, clients of the Arverni. 1

feet wide. Elsewhere it varies greatly. *diversās ab hīs*: i. e., facing in the opposite direction. These works were not continuous, being interrupted where the slopes were steep.

1, 2. *conciliō... indictō*: probably at Bibracte, the capital of the Aedui, about 50 miles S. W. of Alesia.

7, 19. Note on the map of Gaul the geographical position of these

10 **laviis**, quī sub imperiō Arvenōrum esse cōsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnūtibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiīs et Helvétiīs; Ambiānīs, Mediomātricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus quīna mīlia; Aulercīs Cenomānīs totidem; Atrebatibus iv; Veliocassīs totidem; Lemovīcibus et Aulercīs Eburowīcibus terna; Rauricīs et Bōiīs bīna; xxx ūniversīs civitātibus, quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Cōriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, 20 **Lexoviī, Venellī**. Ex hīs Bellovicī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ab Commiō prō ēius hospitīō duo mīlia ūnā mīsērunt.

11. **Rutēnī, -ōrum, m.**, a Celtic people, partly in the Province. *

12. **Parisiī, -ōrum, m.**, a Celtic people, chief city Lutetia, now Paris. 5

13. **Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m.**, a Celtic people on the right bank of the Garumna. 1

14. **Nitiobrogēs, -um, m.**, a people of Aquitania, chief city Aginnum. 4

Cenomānī, -ōrum, m., a branch of the Aulerci, cf. the Brannovices l.

8 above. 1

15. **Lemovīcēs, -um, m.**, a Celtic people, chief city now Limoges. 4

18. **Aremoricae, -ārum, f. adj.** [a Celtic word], maritime. 2

19. **Ambibariī, -ōrum, m.**, a people of North-western Gaul, in what is now Normandy. 1

23. **hospitium, -ī** [hospes, host or guest], n., the relation of host and guest, guest-friendship, hospitality. 5

tribes and on the map of France the corresponding modern names. Observe how few of the Gallic tribes, outside of the province were not engaged in this struggle for freedom. The principal people not included in this list were the Remi, Treveri and Lingones (cf. 63, 11-15) and the Helvii and Volcae (cf. 64, 13-15). The Aquitani

were not considered Gauls.

20-22. **Bellovacī . . . nōn complēvērunt**, the Bellovaci did not send their full contingent. **suō . . . arbitriō**, on their own account and in accord with their own ideas. **quod . . . dīcerent**: The Bellovaci fought Caesar bravely but ineffectually the following year.

76. Hūius operā Commiī, ut antea dēmōnstrā-
 vimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annis erat
 ūsus in Britannā Caesar; quibus ille prō meritis
 civitatem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddi-
 derat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tamen tanta ūniversae
 Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et pristinae belli
 laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae
 memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bel-
 lum incumberent. Coāctis equitum VIII milibus et peditum
 circiter CCL haec in Aeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, nu-
 merusque inībātur, praefecti cōstituēbantur. Commiō Atre-
 bati, Viridomarō et Eporedorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō
 Avernō, cōnsōbrinō Vercingetorigis, summa imperiī trāditur.
 His dēlēcti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bel-
 lum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad
 Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, qui
 aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārē-

The Gallic relief army, under Commius, sets out for Alesia.

4. immūnis, -e [mūnus, duty], free from duty or tribute, unburdened, untaxed. 1
 6. cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis [cōnsēnsiō, agree], f., agreement, unanimity. 1
 9. in-cumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitus [cubō, lie down], n., recline or lean upon, bend to; apply or devote one's self. 1
 10. re-cēnsēō, -ere, cēnsui, cēnsus [cēnsēō, take, estimate], a., count over, enumerate, review. 1

12. Viridomarus, -ī, m., an Aeduan chief. *
 Eporedorix, -igis, m., an Aeduan chief. *
 Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., a chief of the Arverni, cousin of Vercingetorix. 4
 13. cōn-sōbrinus, -ī [soror, sister], m., a mother's sister's son; first cousin. 1
 15. fidūcia, -ae [fidō, confide], f., confidence, trust, reliance. 3

1. antea: cf. IV, 21, 27, 35.
 4. civitatem eius: the Atrebates.
 5, 6. ipsi = Commiō. Morinōs: as a punishment for their obstinate resistance, they had been reduced to the position of a subject state.
 ūniversae Galliae: not absolutely true; see note 75, 7-19.

9. coāctis: see Int. 176.
 14. quōrum cōnsiliō: they formed a representative war council.
 17. aspectum . . . multitudinis: in the eyes of the savage numbers constitute strength,

tur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitatūs peditātūsq̄e cererentur.

Council of the Gauls in Alesia. Desperate measures proposed by Critognatus.

77. At ii, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, cōsumptō omnī frūmentō, insciī quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō convocātō dē exitū suarum fortūnarum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sententiīs, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda orātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crudelitātem. Hic summō in Arvernis ortus locō et māgnae habitus auctōritātis: 'Nihil', inquit, 10 dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad cōsiliū adhibendōs cēseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit, quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū pristinae residere virtūtis memoria vidētur. 15 Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc senten-

19. foris, *adv.*, out of doors, abroad, without. 1

5. cōsultō, 1. [*freq. of cōsulō*, deliberate], reflect, consider, take counsel. 2

7. Critōgnātus, -ī, m., a chief of the Arverni. 2

8. nefārius, -a, -um [*nefās*, impiety], impious, nefarious, execrable. 2

crudelitās, -tātis, [*crudēlis*, cruel], *r.*, cruelty, barbarity. 2

14. re-sideō, -ēre, sēdī [*sedeō*, sit], *n.*, sit or remain behind, remain, abide. 2

15. iste, -a, -ud (*gen. istius*), that (*near you*), that (*which you speak of*), that, this, the very. 1

mollitia, -ae [*mollis*, soft], *r.*, softness, tenderness, weakness, irresolution. 1

17. patienter [*patior*, suffer], *adv.*, with sufferance or submission, patiently. 1

18. ancipiti proeliō: i. e., a simultaneous attack on the Roman intrenchments by the besieged and

the army of relief: cf. I, 26, 1.

8. in Aeduīs: at Bibracte, the place of rendezvous,

tiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nullam praeterquam vitāe nostrae iacturam fieri vidērem: sed in cōsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nos-
 20 trum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquīs cōsanguineisque nostris animi fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō decertāre cōgentur? Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec
 25 stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animi imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vērērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ūlteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Sī illōrum
 30 nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō, his ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius rei timōre exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid

21. concitō, 1. [*freq. of concieō, stir up*], *a.*, stir up, rouse, instigate, incite. 5

24. vester, -tra, -trum [vōs], *poss. pron.*, you, yours, of you. 5
 ex-spoliō, 1. [spoliō, spoil], *a.*, spoil or plunder completely, rob, utterly deprive of. 1

26. stultitia, -ae [stultus, foolish], *f.*, folly. 1

temeritās, -tātis [temerē, by chance, rashly], *f.*, chance, accident; rashness, indiscretion. 5

imbēcillitās, -tātis [imbēcillis, weak], *f.*, weakness, feebleness, pusillanimity. 1

27. prō-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus [sternō, strew], *a.*, throw forward or to the ground, overthrow, ruin. 1

28. cōstantia, -ae [cōstāns, firm], *f.*, firmness, steadfastness, resolution. 2

29. ergō, *adv.*, in consequence, therefore, then. 2

31. prae-saeptō, -ire, -psī, ptus [saeptō, hedge in], *a.*, hedge or block up, barricade. 1

33. ex-terreō, 2. [terreō, frighten], *a.*, frighten outright, strike with terror, scare. 2

18. dignitās: i. e., the authority of the advocates of a sortie.

29. ūlteriōribus mūnitiōnibus: the outer line of Roman works; cf. 74, 1-3.

30. animi causā: cf. V, 12, 15.

31. omnī aditū praesaeptō: the blockade must have been very effective. his = Rōmānis.

33. diem noctemque: the Romans constructed their vast works in less than forty days.

ergō mei cōsiliī est? Facere, quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquā-
 35quam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in
 oppida compulsī ac similit̄ inopiā subactī eōrum corporibus,
 quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vītam tolerāvērunt
 neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius rei sī exemplum nōn
 habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdī
 40pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit?
 Dēpopulatā Galliā Cimbrī māgnāque illātā calamitāte finibus
 quidem nostris aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās
 petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbis reliquērunt.
 Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā
 45adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt,
 hōrum in agrīs civitātibusque cōsidere atque hīs aeternam
 iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim unquam aliā condiciōne
 bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longīnquis nātiōnibus
 geruntur, ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in
 50prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis securibus
 subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.'

36. subigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [agō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring under; overcome, subdue; incite, constrain. 1

40. pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome; noble, honorable. 2

42. aliquandō [aliquis, some one], at some time, at length, finally. 2

44. invidia, -ae [in-vidēō, look upon with ill-will], *f.*, envy, hatred, malice. 2

45. fāma, -ae, [*inf.* fārī, to speak], *f.*, common talk, reputation, fame; rumor, report. *

46. aeternus, -a, -um [*for* aeviturnus, *fr.* aevum, age], everlasting, endless. 1

47. in-iungō, -ere, -iūnxi, iūnctus [iungō, join], *a.*, join or fasten on to, attach; impose, enjoin. 1

50. securis, -is [secō, cut], *f.*, axe; the licitor's axe, a sign of authority. 1

34, 35. nēquāquam parī: i. e., to the present war. bellō... Teutonumque: see Int. 68.

42. aliās terrās: to Spain. See

Momm: vol. III, p. 224.

50. securibus, = *imperio* Rōmānō, the axe and fasces being the symbol of Roman power,

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt, ut ii, qui Non-combat-
ants vainly
endeavor to
leave Alesia. valetudine aut aetate inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam dēscendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēdi- 5
tīōnis aut pācis subeundam condiōnem. Mandūbīi, qui eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem recep-
tōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custodiīs 10
recipi prohibēbat.

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus Arrival of the
Gallie allies
under Com-
mius. summa imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ab nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānciem, quam 5
in longitudinem tria mīlia passuum patēre dēmōstrāvimus,

2. valētūdō, -inis [valeō, be | ill-health, infirmity. 2
strong], *v.*, state of health, health;

6. Mandūbīi: the citizens of



Securis et Gladii.

the town and the refugees from the surrounding country.

11. (eōs) recipi prohibēbat: according to Dio Cassius, this whole multitude perished from hunger between the Roman lines and the town. The Romans themselves suffered great privations.

1, 2. quibus . . . permissa erat: cf. 76, 11, 12.

3. colle exteriōre: the hill bounding the plain of Laumes on the southwest: see plan.

4. cōnsidunt: probably without fortifying the position; see Int. 186.

5. eam plānciem: the plain of Laumes.

complant pedestrēsq̄e cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesia dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs visis; fit grātūolātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsīdunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad eruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

The German cavalry win victory for the Romans. The Gauls retire within Alesia.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūcī et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Galli inter equitēs rārōs sagittariōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proe-

9. grātulātiō, -ōnis [grātulor, express joy], *r.*, expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 8
10. laetitia, -ae [laetus, glad], *r.*, gladness, joy, delight. 2
12. ex-pleō, plēre, plēvi, plētus [pleō, fill], *a.*, fill out or up; finish, complete. *

6. prōventus, -ūs [prō-veniō, come forward], *m.*, a coming forth; growth, produce; issue, result. 2.
9. suc-currō (sub-) -ere, curri, cursus [currō, run], *n.*, run under or to the help of; assist, succor. 2

7. ab eō locō: where the cavalry was drawn up. paulum abditās: i. e., within easy supporting distance.

8. erat: . . . dēspectus: see View of the plain of Laumes, p. 475.

11, 12. ante oppidum: on the west. proximam fossam: the one described in 72, 2. aggere: materials of all kinds.

1. exercitū: i. e., the infantry, in distinction from equitātum

(line 3). ad utramque partem: the two lines of defense, facing the town and relieving army respectively; see View of the plain of Laumes, p. 475.

4, 5. ex omnibus castris: referring to the infantry camps on the heights surrounding Alesia.

7. rārōs sagittariōs: an imitation of the German arrangement (Int. 198, 194).

10. complūrēs: *sc. equitum Rōmānōrum.*

liō excēdebant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī, quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad auxilium convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbatur¹⁵ neque rēctē ac turpiter factum celārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōfertīs turmis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque propulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs²⁰ sagittāriī circumventī interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra īnsecūti suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī, quī ab Alesīā prōcesserant, maesti, prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

25

United attack upon the Roman works by the Gauls within and without Alesia.

81. Unō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad

14. ululātus, -ūs [ululō, howl], m., howling, yell, shrieking. 2

16. rēctē [rēctus, straight], adv., straightly; rightly, well. 2

turpiter [turpis, base], adv., basely, shamefully, disgracefully. 3

17. ignōminia, -ae [in, neg. + nōmen], f., deprivation of one's good name: disgrace, dishonor. 3

24. maestus, -a, -um [maerō, be sad], sad, melancholy, dejected. 1

2. scālae, -ārum [cf. scandō], f., pl., staircase, ladder, scaling-ladder. 2

harpagō, -ōnis, m., a hook, grappling-hook, grapple. 1

11. superiōrēs esse: in numbers and tactical skill. Gallī: i. e., the spectators.

13. iī: the besieged. hī: the army of relief.

18. dubiā victōriā, without result.

19. Germānī: who had turned the tide in former cavalry fights; cf. 67, 10 and 70, 4.

21. sagittāriī: cf. line 7. They could not keep up with the horsemen as the German foot did.

1. Gallī: those belonging to the army of relief.

2. harpagōnum: grappling hooks fastened to long poles, with which to pull down the breastworks on the Roman ramparts.

campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublā-
 5 tō, quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō ad-
 ventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundis, sagittis,
 lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaue, quae ad op-
 pūgnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tem-
 pore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx
 10 atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suos
 cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundis
 librilibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandī-
 bus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēptō multa
 utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis tēla
 15 coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus
 hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostrōs

12. librīlis, -e [libra, a pound],
adj., of a pound weight: *fundae*,
slings which throw stones of a
pound weight. 1

glāns, glandis, *f.*, an acorn; nut;
 ball of lead or clay for shooting,
 bullet, slug. 2

13. prō-terreō, 2. [terreō, fright-

en], *a.*, frighten or drive away,
 affright. 2

tenebrae, -arum, *f.*, darkness. 1

15. Antōnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman
gentile name: Marcus Antonius
 (Mark Antony), one of Caesar's
 legates in Gaul, a triumvir with
 Lepidus and Octavius.

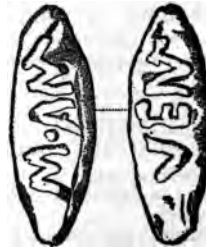
4. campestrēs mūnitiōnēs: those in the plain of Laumes.

8. quae . . . pertinent: see Int. 155.

9. tubā: i. e., with the Gallic musical instrument called the *carynx*, which was quite long, slightly curved and had a mouth-piece representing the head of an animal.

11, 12. fundis librilibus: stones weighing a pound to which cords or straps were tied for hurling them. sudibus: stakes with sharpened points hardened by fire, used as a rude sort of javelin. Large numbers of these and the

fundae librīlēs had been prepared and piled up on the ramparts. glandibus: see Int. 112.



Glandēs.

16. hae partēs: the defences in the plain.

premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ūterioribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ab mūnitiōne aberant Galli, *Their repulse and retreat.* plūs multitudine tēlorum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō āc turribus trāiectī pilis mūrālibus interibant. Multis undique vulnefibus acceptis nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī, nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem preparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandis morātī prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt, quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

4. trāns-fodiō, -ire, fōdī, fossus [fodiō, dig], *a., dig or thrust through, transfix.* 1

trā (trāns-) -iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], *a., hurl across or over, hurl through, transfix, pierce.* 4

6. ap-petō (ad-), -ere, petivī, petitus [petō, seek], *a., seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach.* 6

9. prō-ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus, bring forth or forward, produce, furnish. 3

1. longius, *at a considerable distance.*

2. plūs . . . prōficiēbant: their fire was heavier and more effective and the Roman loss was greater than afterwards when the Gauls reached the pit-falls and trenches.

5, 6. pilis mūrālibus: large javelins, hurled by engines. cum lūx appeteret: when had the attack begun? multis . . . perruptā: trans. the first abl. abs. by a concessive clause, the next as a principal clause.

7. ex superiōribus castrīs: the two on Mont Flavigny.

8. interiōrēs: the Gauls within the circle of the Roman siege works, i. e., the army of Vercingetorix.

10. priōrēs fossās: i. e., they succeeded in filling the first two of the three ditches, but were defeated without being able to get within striking distance of the ramparts. The foresight of Caesar in providing so many obstacles prevented a simultaneous attack on the fortifications themselves, which would probably have been successful.

*The relief
army tries to
force Caesar's
lines on the
north.*

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrimentō repulsi Gallī, quid agant, cōsulunt: locōrum peritōs adhibent: ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter
5 māgnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī: necessariō paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Caninius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per ex-
10 plōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX milia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum, quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituunt: adeundī tempus dēfiniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. His cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propīnquam Vercingetorigis, praefici-
15 unt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex

5. circum-plector, plectī, plexus sum [plectō, plait], fold one's self about, enfold, surround. 1
7. Antistius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Antistius Reginus, Caesar's lieutenant. 3
Rēginus, -ī, m., a Roman cognomen; see Antistius. 3
Caninius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Caninius Rebilus, a legate of Caesar.

Rebilus, -ī, m., a Roman cognomen; see Caninius. 2

11. pactum, -ī [paciscor, agree upon], n., agreement, arrangement, compact; manner, way. 1
occultē [occultus, concealed], adv., in concealment, secretly. 1

12. dē-finiō 4, [finiō, bound], a., set bounds to, mark off, limit; define, determine. 1

1. bis . . . repulsi: cf. 80 and 82.

2. peritōs: some of the Mandubii.

3. superiōrum castrōrum: i. e., the camps on the heights north of Alesia.

4. collis: Mont Rea, N. W. of Alesia.

5, 6. opere: the lines of circumvallation. iniquō locō: explained

by the words lēniter dēclivī. The camp, being on the slope of the hill, could be commanded by the Gauls on the summit.

8. duābus legiōnibus: on account of its exposed position, this camp had a strong force to guard it.

15, 16. cōfectō . . . itinere: a circuitous march of about a dozen miles.

nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere²⁰ coepērunt.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātis, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquaue, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur unō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur: quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc⁵ concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distīnētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmōr, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre: omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum¹⁰ mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quā-
que in parte gerātur, cōgnōscit; labōrantibus sub-

*Vercingetorix
joins in the
attack.
Strata of
the Romans.*

*Valorous
fighting of
both armies.*

1. **arx, arcis** [arceō, shut up; ward off], F., citadel, fortress, stronghold. 2
3. **mūsculus, -ī** [mūs, mouse],

M., a little mouse; a small shed or mantelet used in sieges, for the protection of the soldiers while working. 1

19. **equitātus**: from the main camp.

20. **reliquae . . . ostendere**: as on the occasion of the first battle: cf. 79, 7, *pedestrēs . . . cōstituērunt*.

3. **mūsculōs**, see Int. 161. **falcēs**: see note III, 14, 16.

4. **prōfert**: Vercingetorix probably directed his main attack against that part of the contravallation opposite the camp at the foot of Mont Rea, so as to co-operate with Vercassivellaunus.

5. **post tergum**: the Romans

formed two lines placed back to back, so that each line had the enemy behind it.

9. **suum periculum . . . cōnstāre**, their own peril or safety depended upon the safety of others behind them.

10. **quae absunt**: i. e., what is out of sight.

1. **idōneum locum**: on the slope of the hill of Flavigny where the two lines of works terminate: see View of the plain of Laumes p. 475. One of the two camps on this hill is

mittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, ūnum esse illud tempus, quō m̄ximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfregerint m̄nitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēsp̄rant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium expectant. M̄ximē ad superiōrēs m̄nitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunū missum dēmōstrāvimus. Iniquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium m̄gum habet mōmentum. Alii tēla coniciunt, alii 10 testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in m̄nitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Caesar rallies his troops.

86 His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit: imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnēt: id nisi necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur, nē 5 labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiōnum fruct-

8. dēclivitās, -tātis [dēclivis, sloping downwards], *r.*, slope, declivity. 1

9. mōmentum, -ī [for momentum *fr.* moveō, move], *n.*, means or cause of motion; a short time, moment; weight, influence, importance. 2

13. con-tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus

[tegō, cover], *a.*, cover up, hide, conceal; dissemble, shield. 1

5. suc-cumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitus [cubō, lie down], *n.*, fall or sink down; yield, succumb. 1

dīmiciātiō, -ōnis [dīmiciō, fight], *r.*, fighting, contest, encounter. 1

supposed to have been Caesar's headquarters, partly from the fact that it was defended by a triple fosse on the north.

6, 7. m̄ximē . . . labōrātur: great numbers of coins bearing the names of Gallic chiefs and peoples were found in the excavations at this point, and attest the truth of Caesar's statement.

8. iniquum loci: see note 83, 5, iniquō locō.

10. testūdine factā: see Int. 166. The Gauls had adopted Roman methods of attack.

11. agger: see note 79, 12. in m̄nitiōnem: the additional obstacles placed in front of the agger. ea: i. e., the scrobēs, kilia etc.

1. Labiēnum: probably stationed on the hill northeast of Alesia. id: i. e., ēruptiōne pūgnēt.

4. reliquōs: the soldiers defending the works in the plain, exposed to the general assault: cf. 83, 19, 20, text. adit: Caesar galloped down the line from his position on the northern slope of Mont Flavin: see note 85, 1.

um in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātis campestribus locis propter māgnitūdinem mūnitiōnum loca praerupta excēnsū temptant: hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum 10 ac lōricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit primō Brūtum adulēscentem cum ^{His conduct of the battle.} cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; post-rēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus eō, quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō 5 dēdūcit, equitum partem sēsequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ab tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs unā XL cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid 10

8. **excēnsus**, -ūs, m., (*only in abl. sing.*), a scaling, storming, storm. 1

10. **dē-turbō**, 1. [**turbō**, disturb], a., thrust or cast down; drive off, dislodge. 2

2. **Fabius**, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

post-rēmō, adv. [**post-rēmus**, last], at last, finally. 4

6, 7. **interiōrēs**: see note 82, 8. **dēspērātis campestribus locis**: cf. 84, 2, 3. They now transfer their efforts to the works on the slope of Mont Flavigny, which were less formidable than those in the plain, because of the nature of the surface (*loca praerupta*).

1. **mittit**: i. e., to this threatened point. **Brūtum**: III, 11, 11, 12.

4, 5. **eō contendit**: he rides across the plain to the intrench-

ments on the slope of Mont Rea castellō: these redoubts were situated between the two lines of works.

6, 7. **circumīre . . . adorīrī**: the cavalry leave a camp at Gresigny and pass around to the rear of the enemy on Mont Rea.

9. **XL**: it is difficult to believe that so large a force (one third of Caesar's whole army) could be gotten together so easily. Some authorities would read XI,



faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, *Utter defeat of the Gauls. They retire within Alesis and to their homes.*
 quō insīgnī in proeliis ūtī cōsuerat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs, quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locis superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvēxa cernēbantur. hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō ex- 5
 cipit rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmōr. Nostrī omissis pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post ter-
 gum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropīnant. Hos-
 tēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dūx et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occiditur: 10
 Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur: sīgna militāria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur: paucī ex tantō
 numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mū-
 nitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castris 15
 Gallōram fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiīs āc tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiāe dēlērī po-

11. ac(ad)-celerō, 1. [celer, quick], quicken, hurry, hasten, make haste. 1

4. dēvēxus, -a, -um [dēvehō,

carry away or down], sloping: *in pl. as subst. sc. loca*, slopes, hillsides. 1

10. Sedulius, -ī, m., a leader of the Lemovices. 1

10, 11. quid . . . existimet: viz., a sally.

1. vestītūs: see Int. 96.

4. locis superiōribus: the summit of Mont Rea. dēclīvia et dēvēxa: the level of the plain in front of Mont Rea.

5. hostēs . . . committunt: they hoped to break the Roman lines by a supreme effort before Caesar could arrive: see Int. 181.

7. gladiīs rem gerunt: i. e.,

they make the sally and come to close quarters. See Int. 149.

8. equitātus: cf. 87, 7. cohortēs aliae: those which were following Caesar. He had probably ridden ahead to take part in the sally.

12, 13. tantō numerō: cf. 83, 9

15. fit . . . fuga: probably they feared an immediate attack by the Romans upon their fortified position.

tuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum āgmen cōsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; 20 reliquī ex fugā in cīvitatēs discēdunt.

Capitulations of Vercingetorix and the Gauls. 89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortunāe cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu 5 morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādi, principēs prōducī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsēdit: eō ducēs prōducuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitatēs 10 recipere posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtō exercitūi capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Caesar quarters his troops. Honors at Rome. 90. His rēbus cōfectis in Aeduōs proficiscitur; cīvitatē recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captivōrum circiter xx mīlia Aeduīs Arvernisque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficiscī iubet: huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium

7. Semprōnium, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. 1

Rutilus, -ī, m., cognomen of Caesar's lieutenant, Marcus Semprōnium. 1

18. missus: in pursuit of the army of succor.

20. ex fugā discēdunt: see Int. 183.

4. sē offerre: the conduct of Vercingetorix in defeat shows that he was of the true heroic mould.

7. in mūnitiōne: Plutarch and Florus give vivid pictures of this scene.

8. Vercingetorix dēditur: according to Dio Cassius, he was led in Caesar's great triumph in 45 B. C.

and afterwards put to death by order of his conqueror.

9. Aeduīs, Arvernīs: why were these particular tribes spared?

10, 11. capita singula: i. e., each soldier received a Gallic prisoner as his slave. These captives would be sold to the buyers who supplied the slave market at Rome.

1. in Aeduōs: probably to Bibracte, which had been the gathering place of the allies: see note 76, 9.

7. huic . . . attribuit: i. e., Ru-

lĕgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rĕginum in Ambivarētōs, T. Sex-¹⁰ tium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutĕnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Maticōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim rēi frūmentāriæ causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. Hīs cōgnitis Rōmæ diērum vīginti supplicatiō redditur. 15

8. **Minucius, -ī, m.,** a Roman gentile name. 2

Basilus, -ī, m., cognomen of Caesar's lieutenant, Lucius Minucius. 3

12. **Cicerō, -ōnis,** [cicer, a vetch or small pea], m., a Roman cognomen: Quintus Tullius, brother

of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates. *

13. **Cabillōnum, -ī, n.,** an important town of the Aedui on the Arar. 2

Maticō, -ōnis, m., a city of the Aedui on the Arar. 1

tilus was placed under the orders of Labienus.

9, 10. nē . . . accipiant: cf. 63, 12 and 75, 20. Antistium Rĕginum: seq. Caesar gives the names

of 24 different persons who acted as his lĕgātī in the Gallic war.

15. supplicatiō: see on II, 35, 10.



INDEX

TO THE NOTES AND INTRODUCTION.

a., in the phrase *ante diem* in dates I, 6, 16.

ab, adverbial II, 7, 9; 30, 7; IV, 22, 16.

ABLATIVE: *Absolute* I, 2, 2; 3, 23; 5, 7; 5, 10; 6, 14; 6, 16; 8, 12; 9, 2; 9, 4; 14, 9; 16, 11; 19, 5; 22, 5; 25, 1; 25, 5; 40, 8; II, 2, 3; III, 12, 5; 17, 12 (*locō*); 21, 14. With *nisi* II, 20, 12. *Accompaniment* I, 10, 2; II, 16, 5; 29, 2. Omitting *cum* II, 19, 2. *Agent* I, 14, 6; 16, 17; 17, 10; II, 14, 5; III, 2, 5; 4, 10; IV, 23, 4. With gerundive IV, 13, 3. *Birth* or *Origin* IV, 12, 14. *Cause* I, 2, 12; 14, 6 (*eō*); 18, 20; II, 4, 14; III, 21, 11; IV, 34, 1 (*novitatē*). For *mōribus suis* etc., see under *Specification*. *Comparison* I, 15, 15; 22, 3; II, 3, 2; 7, 11; III, 5, 1; VI, 26, 3. *Degree of Difference* I, 14, 1; 14, 3; 16, 18; 32, 9 (*hōc*); II, 20, 4; III, 12, 12; V, 13, 7. With *ante* I, 18, 26; 31, 36; III, 20, 5; IV, 9, 5. As distance I, 43, 3; 43, 5; 48, 1; II, 7, 9; 30, 7. *Instrument* see *Means*. *Manner* (with *cum*) I, 12, 3. (Without *cum*) I, 22, 15; 25, 11; 32, 2; II, 6, 3; 11, 3. *Material* III, 13, 7. *Means* or *Instrument* I, 3, 20; 16, 6; 43, 5; 53, 7; II, 10, 7;

IV, 17, 2; 31, 1 (*rēbus*). *Measure*, see *Degree of Difference*. *Origin* see *Birth*. *Place* (preposition omitted) I, 6, 8; 40, 26; 48, 10; 49, 1; II, 6, 6; 30, 4; III, 17, 12; 24, 11. *Price* I, 18, 9; IV, 2, 5. *Quality* I, 6, 12; 7, 16; 18, 7; 28, 15; 39, 4; 39, 5; II, 6, 11; 15, 3; 18, 4; III, 4, 9; 13, 8; IV, 1, 20; V, 3, 11; 13, 7, 14, 7; IV, 28, 3. *Separation* I, 14; 8, 12; 8, 16; 23, 11; 46, 11; II, 6, 7; 14, 6; 21, 12; 31, 9; III, 4, 7, 6, 10; IV, 9, 4; 30, 7. *Specification* I, 1, 3; 1, 12; 48, 12; 49, 8; 53, 9; II, 6, 1; 8, 14; 15, 4; 17, 14; III, 8, 4; 17, 12 (*rēbus*); V, 3, 2; 14, 7; VI, 12, 8; 27, 3; (*mōribus suis* etc.) I; 4, 2; 44, 7; 50, 1; II, 13, 12; 19, 4; III, 23, 13; IV, 2, 10; V, 4, 10. *Time* (at) I, 4, 4; 12, 15 (*memoriā*); 15, 1; 16, 10; 50, 1; II, 4, 6; IV, 34, 2. (Within) IV, 18, 1. *Time* or *Cause* I, 18, 23; II, 1, 15. For *partitive genitive* II, 3, 2; 6, 12; IV, 36, 8. With *Special Words*: *assuēfactus* IV, 1, 18 (*officiō*); 3, 10 (*mōribus*). *frētus* III, 21, 2 (*victōriis*). *fruor* III, 25, 5. *innītor* II, 27, 3. *nītōr* I, 13, 17. *potior* I, 2, 6; 30, 8; II, 24, 18; 26, 10. *ūtōr* I, 5, 10; 16, 6; 20, 7; 44, 12; 44, 33;

45, 11; 46, 10; II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 11; 25, 18; 32, 12; IV, 11, 9; 38, 5. *vivō* IV, 1, 16; 10, 11.

ABSTRACT for CONCRETE I, 2, 3; 2, 4.

āc, after negative 'but' III, 19, 10; IV, 35, 7. 'Than' III, 28, 6. See also *atque*.

ACCUSATIVE: in *-as*, third dec., I, 26, 18; 52, 10; II, 34, 3. in *-im* I, 12, 7. *Adverbial* I, 20, 6; 31, 22; 35, 17; 53, 20; II, 4, 2; 4, 13; 8, 3; III, 9, 18; 20, 14; (For *quod* in *quod sī* etc. see *quod*). *Cognate* IV, 4, 13, and see *Adverbial* above. *Extent* (space) I, 2, 17; 21, 2; II, 13, 6. Expressed by Ablative, see *Ablative of Degree*. (Time) I, 3, 12; 26, 15; II, 16, 1; III, 12, 13; IV, 4, 4; 34, 9 (*diēs*). *Limit* (*domum*) I, 5, 7; 54, 2; II, 24, 17; 29, 3. *Name of town with ad* 'near' I, 39, 1. *Two Accusatives* ('asking') I, 16, 1; (compounds) I, 24, 1 (*ad-vertō*); I, 12, 6; II, 5, 13, 14 (*trā-dūcō*); (*volō*) I, 34, 7. With *propius* I, 46, 2; IV, 28, 9. *proximus* III, 7, 7.

ADJECTIVES: *Agreement* (with nouns of different gender) I, 27, 7; (after complementary infinitive) III, 11, 4. *With adverbial force* II, 22, 3; 22, 6; 23, 9; III, 13, 6. *Denoting a part*: *extrēmus* II, 8, 12; III, 12, 2; *medius* I, 24, 4; *plērique* II, 4, 3; *primus* I, 22, 1; *summus* I, 22, 1; III, 1, 5.

AEDUI I, 3, 15, and see MAP.

AGREEMENT: *Adjective*, with Nouns of different gender III, 3, 2. *Relative Pronoun* see RELATIVE. *Verb*, with predicate noun I, 29, 9. With

subjects considered as a whole I, 1, 5; II, 19, 2.

alius, with *āc* III, 9, 21; 28, 6. *Correlative* I, 39, 12; II, 22, 4; 24, 10; 26, 4; IV, 26, 3; V, 16, 12.

amplius, not influencing case IV, 12, 3.

ANTECEDENT, see RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

APPOSITION I, 3, 11; II, 7, 1.

ARRANGEMENT, interlocked I, 10, 14. *Partitive gen.* separated from governing word I, 34, 12.

ART OF WAR (All references are to articles of the Introduction): *Gallie* 176–187; *German* 188–197. *Roman* 82–175. *aciēs duplex* 147; *a. instrūcta* 140; *a. triplex* 145. *agger* 130, 131, 158. *āgmen* 140, 141; *a. extrēmum* 141; *a. novissimum* 141; *a. prīmum* 141; *a. quadrātum* 140. *āla* 101. *antenna* 171. *āplus-tre* 170. *aquila* 120. *aquilifer* 121. *ariēs* 155. *armillae* 114. *Armor* 104–112: *cuirass* 104; *greaves* 105; *helmet* 104, 105, 108; *shield* 106, 108. *Arms* 109–112: *bows* 99; *javelin* 110, 112; *lance* 112; *sling* 112; *sword* 109, 110, 112. *auxilia* 99. *Baggage* 118, 119. *ballistae* 167. *balteus* 109. *Battle* 145–153: *formation* 147; *ground* 148; *order* 145, 146; *pursuit* 152. *bucculae* 105. *būcina* 127. *caligae* 103. *Camp* 129–139: *plan* 133–138; *permanent* 139; *construction* 130–132; *shape* 129; *site* 129; *time of making* 137; *capite cēnsi* 82. *carri* 119. *carroballistae* 169. *cassis* 104. *castella* 139, 158. *castra* 129 f.; *c. hiberna* 139; *c. stativa* 139. *catapulta* 167. *Cavalry* 100–101. *centuriae* 87. *centuriōnēs* 89; *rank of* 92; *qualifi-*

- cations 98; pay 108; armor 104. *ciabaria* 118. *cingulum* 110. *circumvallatiō* 156. *classicum* 128. *claviculae* 132. *cohortēs* 87: size 88; ensigns 120; formation in battle 145, 146. Commander 96. Commissariat 117. *conquisilōrēs* 84. *contravallatiō* 157. *contubernālēs* 137. *contubernium* 137. *cornicinēs* 126. *cornū* 126. *corōnae* 114. Council of War 97. *crālēs* 155. *cristae* 91, 105. *decuriōnēs* 101. *dēlectus* 84. *dōna* 114. Engines of War 167-169. Ensigns 120-124; of battle 123; of the legion 120; of the maniple 122; sacredness 124; where kept 121. Equipment 103-128: dress 103; defensive armor 104-108; offensive weapons 109, 112; rations 116, 117; baggage 118, 119; ensigns 120, 124; signal instruments 125-128; siege train 156-166; artillery 167-169; navy 170-175. *equitātus*, *equitēs* 100, 101. *eruptiō* 165. *ēvocāti* 98. *exubiae* 138. *expeditus* 119. *explōrātōrēs* 141. *expūgnātiō* 155. *fabri* 102, 169. *falcēs mūrālēs* 164. *forum (castrōrum)* 135. *fossa* 130. *frumentum* 116. *funditōrēs* 99. *furca* 118. *gladius* 109. *glandēs* 112. *gradus* 143. *gubernātor* 172. *hasta* 112. *iaculum* 112. *impedimenta* 118. *imperātor* 96. *insignia* 106. *iter iustum* 143. *iumenta* 119. *iūniōrēs* 82. *lēgātus* 94: duties 95, 101; armor 104. Legion 86-97: strength 86; unit of 87; numbers 88; officers 89; council of war 97; auxiliaries 99; cavalry 100; non-combatants 102; baggage 118; standards 120. Levy 84. *lituus* 127. *lōrica* 104, 131. *mātus* 177. *manipulī* 87; officers 92; standard 122. March 140-144: order 140; divisions of army 141; time of 143; length of 143; scouts 141. *mēnsōrēs* 130. *mētātōrēs* 130. *mīles* 84-88: draft 84; physical standard 85; dress 103; arms 104-112; light armed 99; pay 113-115; rations 116; personal baggage 118, 119: *mīssiō* 115. *mōlae* 116. *mūnitiōnēs* 156. *mūsculī* 161. *nāvēs actuāriae* 175; *n. apertae* 172; *n. longae* 170. *n. onerāriae* 175; *n. praelōria* 174; *n. rōstratae* 170; *n. speculātōriae* 175. Navy 170-175: kinds of ships 170, 175; equipment 171, 172; armament 173-174; crews 172; marines 174; commander 174. *obsessiō* 156. *oppūgnātiō* 155, 158. *ovātiō* 114. *passus* 143. Pay 113-115. *phalarae* 114. Physical requirements for soldiers 85. *pilum* 109-111. *pluteus* 160, 161. *portae* 132. *praefectus classis* 174; *p. equitum* 101; *p. fabrūm* 102. *primipilus* 92, 121. *praelōrium* 121, 135, 136. *prōra* 170. *puppis* 170. *quaestor* 94, 95, 117, 136. *quaestōrium* 136. Rations 116, 117. Recruits 84. *rēmigēs* 172. Rewards 114. *rōstrum* 170. *sacellum* 121. *sacrāmentum* 85. *sagittārii* 99. *sagum* 103, 118. *sarcinae* 118, 119. *scālae* 155. *scorpiō* 169. *scūtum* 106. Service 82-85: who were liable 82; exemptions 83; levies 84; period of 85. Siege Operations 154-166: arrangement of troops 157; defenses for besiegers 158-162; means of attack 162-164; defenses of the town 164-166. *signa* 120, 122, 124. Signal Instruments 125-128. *signifer* 122. *speculātōrēs* 141. *suggestus* 135,

tessera 138. *tesserārii* 138. *testūdō arietāria* 163. *tormenta* 167. *torquēs* 114. *trōūnus* 89, 90. *trirēmīs* 171. *trīumphus* 114. *tunica* 103. *turma* 101, 138, 153. *turrīs mōbilis* 161; *t. tabi lāta* 161 *umbō* 106. *vāgina* 109. *vāllī* 131. *vāsa* 118. *vētum* 171. Veterans 98. *vēxillum* 120, 123, 170, 174. *viae castrōrum* 134. *vigilēs* 138. *vigiliae* 138. *vinea* 160. *vītis* 91.

assuēfactus, see ABLATIVE.

ASYNDETON I, 1, 16.

atque, giving prominence to what follows II, 8, 6; 20, 8. After a negative 'but,' see **ac**. With words of Likeness and Comparison I, 28, 17; II, 6, 4; III, 9, 22; 28, 6; IV, 13, 15; V, 13, 8.

CAMP, see ART OF WAR.

CAESAR (all references are to articles of the Introduction) 1-54: Birth and Family 1. Education and Political training 2-5; home life 2; academic training 3; inherited political sympathies 4; his own attitude 5. The Sullan Government 6-11: defeat of the popular party 6: Sulla's organization 6; Caesar's defiance 7; his voluntary banishment 7; death of Sulla and failure of Lepidus 8; Caesar and Dolabella 8; Caesar and the pirates 9. Caesar's return to Rome 10; Pompeius and Crassus 11. The Rising Politician 12-19: Caesar as Quaestor and Aedile 12; he is beaten by Cicero 13; he becomes Pontifex Maximus 14; the Conspiracy of Catiline 15; Caesar supports the constitution 16; his praetorship 17; the weakness of Pompeius 18; Caesar in

Spain 18, 19. Caesar's Consulship 20-24: he approaches Crassus and Pompeius 20; the "First Triumvirate" 21; his colleague Bibulus 22; the *lēgēs Jūliae* 23; the province voted him 23, 24. Caesar's personality 25, 26. His war in Gaul (see also the Special Introductions to the seven books) 27-30. His work in Gaul 30-33. His Quarrel with the Senate 34-38. The conquest of Rome 39-45. The writings of Caesar 46-50. Caesar's Military Methods 51-54.

causā, 'for the sake of' I, 18, 15; II, 15, 2.

CITIES see MAP.

coepī, passive with passive infinitive I, 47, 3; II, 6, 6; IV, 18, 1.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE, various meanings I, 14, 16; 20, 2; 48, 17; II, 25, 10; III, 14, 25; 28, 15.

cōfidō with ablative III, (9, 13;) 27, 5. With doubtful case I, 53, 4; III, 25, 3; IV, 17, 9.

CONTRACTION: Perfect tense (-*āvī*) I, 12, 11; 18, 12; (-*ēvī*) I, 14, 13; (-*ivī*) I, 12, 14.

COUNTRIES, see MAP.

cum, preposition, see ABLATIVE (*manner*).

cum, cumjunction, *causal* see SUBJUNCTIVE, *concessive* see SUBJUNCTIVE. *Temporal*, subjunctive in secondary tenses I, 4, 9. Indicative in pluperfect III, 14, 17, 18; IV, 17, 11; V, 19, 7. See also SUBJUNCTIVE.N

DATES, I, 6, 16,

DATIVE: *Agent* I, 11, 15; 31, 49; 32, 14; 33, 6; 37, 9; 38, 5; II, 20, 1; III, 10, 10; 13, 24; 17, 20; IV,

24, 7; (expressed by ablative) IV, 13, 3. *Indirect Object*: Intransitive Verbs I, 2, 4; 3, 10; 6, 11; 9, 3; 9, 8; 18, 19; 25, 20; 33, 15; 33, 19; 45, 6; II, 1, 11, 16, 6 (*his*); III, 10, 7; 13, 17; 14, 3; IV, 17, 28; 27, 12; V, 3, 16; 19, 13; VI, 13, 28; 28, 4. Transitive Verbs and accusative I, 33, 4. Compound Verbs (dative alone) I, 2, 5; 16, 13; 23, 5; II, 6, 12; 9, 11; 10, 18; 21, 9; 27, 5; III, 17, 3; IV, 6, 2; (dative and accusative) I, 12, 18; 35, 12; 36, 11; 44, 7; 44, 8; 52, 1; II, 14, 17; III, 6, 13. Compounds of *esse* I, 48, 9; IV, 30, 3. *Possessor* I, 7, 10; 11, 13; 34, 5; 34, 11; 34, 12; 47, 15; II, 6, 10; 15, 10; III, 13, 14; IV, 2, 1; 8, 2; VI, 13, 6. *Purpose* (one dative) I, 30, 9; 38, 6; III, 11, 4; (two datives) I, 18, 28; 25, 6; 33, 3; 40, 34; 44, 14; 52, 17; II, 7, 3; 9, 13; 19, 7; 20, 8; 25, 4; 29, 2; 30, 9, 10; IV, 20, 6; 37, 9. *Reference* I, 28, 2; 31, 5 (for genitive); 44, 24; IV, 36, 2. *Separation* I, 17, 9; 43, 23; II, 25, 14. *After Adjectives* I, 1, 10; 3, 16; 9, 6; 28, 14; 33, 12; 49, 4; II, 2, 6; 9, 7; 11, 5; 17, 2; III, 14, 7. *Special Verbs*: *imperō* (with acc.) I, 7, 4; (with purpose clause) I, 28, 2. *licet* I, 7, 12; 10, 1. *satisfaciō* I, 15, 18.

dē in expressions of time I, 12, 8.

DEMONSTRATIVES: for reflexive I, 1, 13; 5, 11. Attracted (*hōc metū*) V, 19, 10.

DEPONENTS: *Gerundive* passive III, 10, 10. *Perfect participle* passive I, 11, 10; II, 19, 14; IV, 17, 9.

diēs, gender I, 4, 4.

DIMINUTIVES II, 30, 2; see also

ENDINGS

DIVICIACUS I, 3, 15.

domus, acc. I, 5, 7; abl. I, 5, 9.

dum 'while' with present tense I, 27, 7; III, 17, 1; IV, 22, 1; 32,

1. 'Until,' see *SUBJUNCTIVE*.

DUMNOBIX I, 3, 14.

ENDINGS: *-as*. see *ACOUSATIVE*. *-im* I, 12, 7. *-acus, -icus* etc, III, 8, 4. *-itō* II, 15, 13. *-scō* II, 1, 10. *-sor, -tor* I, 9, 4. *-ulus* II, 30, 2; III, 12, 2; 21, 4; IV, 22, 9 (adj.).

eō, adv., for *ad id* III, 23, 4. in *eōs* I, 42, 18; 51, 11.

esse, compounds of, I, 48, 9; IV, 30, 3. Omitted in future infinitive I, 6, 11; 6, 13; 8, 11; 12, 9. Supply 'there' I, 6, 1; 43, 1.

et, after negative 'but' IV, 36, 9.

ex itinere II, 12, 5; III, 21, 7.

EXPLETIVE, lacking, see *ESSE*.

faciundī for *faciendī* I, 7, 15.

FINAL CLAUSES: adverbial I, 3, 5, and see *SUBJUNCTIVE*. Substantive I, 2, 5; 2, 13; 3, 16 and see *SUBJUNCTIVE*.

frētus with ablative III, 21, 2.

frūmentum, -ta, meaning I, 16, 4; III, 9, 23.

fruo, see *ABLATIVE*.

FREQUENTATIVES, see *ITERATIVES*.

GALLIA I, 1, 1. *ulterior* I, 7, 4.

GAUL Int. 51-81, see also the special introductions to the several books.

Gender of phrases and clauses II, 35, 11; III, 2, 17. *diēs* I, 4, 4.

GENITIVE: *-ē* for *ēi* in fifth dec. II, 23, 2. *With adjectives used as nouns* I, 10, 6. *Epecegetic* III, 10, 3. *Material* I, 24, 5. *Measure* see *Qual-*

ity. Objective (with adjectives) I, 2, 14; 14, 5; 18, 8; 21, 10; 44, 30; III, 21, 10; IV, 24, 13; V, 6, 3; (with nouns) I, 4, 4; 14, 8; 30, 4; II, 8, 2; 15, 1 (*Diviciaci*); 21, 4; 24, 12; IV, 28, 9; VI, 17, 4; (with verbs) I, 13, 12 (*reminiscor*); I, 14, 8 (*obliscor*). *Partitive* (with nouns and adjectives) I, 11, 14; 14, 2; II, 8, 8; 15, 10; 26, 15; III, 3, 7; (with pronouns) I, 31, 49; 34, 12; II, 17, 9; III, 16, 4; IV, 1, 22; 32, 9; (with Numerals) I, 1, 1; 2, 17; 30, 3; with Comparatives and Superlatives) I, 1, 6; 3, 20; 7, 9; (with adverbs) I, 19, 6; (replaced by ablative) see *ABLATIVE*. *Predicate* IV, 5, 4; 13, 6; 16, 16; VI, 11, 14. *Price* see *Value*. *Quality* II, 15, 13; 27, 12; 29, 9; 30, 9; 30, 11; IV, 2, 7 (predicate); V, 6, 4 (*animi*); as measure I, 5, 8; 38, 1; II, 5, 21; 18, 9; 29, 8; 30, 4. *Subjective* I, 30, 4; *Value* I, 20, 15; IV, 21, 17; V, 4, 10. With Special Words: *causa* I, 18, 15; *ego* VI, 11, 11; *interest* (*refert*) II, 5, 5, 6; *poenitere* IV, 5, 10; *postridie* I, 23, 1; *potior* I, 3, 24.

GEOGRAPHY OF GAUL see *MAP*.

GERUND: *Definition* I, 2, 14; with *ad* I, 7, 19; *genitive* I, 2, 14; II, 6, 9; (*sui colligendi*) III, 6, 3; IV, 13, 14; 34, 13.

GERUNDIVE: *General rule* I, 1, 9; 3, 6; 5, 8. *Second periphrastic*, see *Periphrastic*. *Ambiguous form* I, 38, 3; 38, 8; 44, 9; 54, 8. *Denoting Purpose* (with *ad*) I, 1, 9; 3, 6; 5, 8; 38, 3; 38, 8; 44, 9; 54, 8; II, 1, 13; III, 13, 6; (with verbs) I, 13, 2; 19, 4; III, 11, 11; IV, 22, 21; V, 23, 9.

HENDIADYS I, 31, 45; IV, 18, 10; 35, 8.

hic . . . ille 'the latter . . . the former,' IV, 1, 11.

hora I, 26, 5.

Illustrations (references are to pages): *Aduatuca*, works at, 240. *agger*, section of, 216. *Aisne*, battle on 209. *Alesia*, works at, 426, 475, 479. *aquila* 135, 235. *aquilifer* 235. *Archer* 203. *arcus* 203. *aries* 246. *Axe* 485. *Baggage*, light, 131. *ballista* 208. *Battles*: with *Ariovistus* 169; on the *Axona* (*Aisne*) 209; on the *Rhone* 95; on the *Sabis* 231; *siege of Aduatuca* 240; *siege of Alesia* 426, 475, 479; of *Avaricum* 442; *battle against the Veneti* 264. *Bow* 203. *Bowman* 203. *Bridge over the Rhine* 316, 317. *Burial mound* 409. *Caesar*, facing title. *Camp*, plan, 36. *cassis* 229. *castra* 36. *catapulta* 207. *Centurion* 221. *clipeus* 133. *contio* 385. *Ditch*, for defence, 214. *Eagles* 135, 235. *Eagle bearer* 235. *expugnatio* 56. *falcēs mūrālēs* 276. *Flags*, see *vexillum* and *signa*. *Fortifications*, plans and sketches: at *Aduatuca* 240; at *Alesia* 426, 475, 479; at *Avaricum* 442; on the *Rhone* 95. *fossa* 214. *fundae* 204. *funditor* 210. *galea* 229. *Gallic burial mound* 409. *Gallic soldier* 196. *Gallic wall* 443. *General* (on foot) 99; (on horseback) 4. *gladii* 132, in scabbard 64. *glandēs* 488. *Helmet* 229. *imperator* (on foot) 99; (on horseback) 4. *Javelins* 132. *legatus* 99. *legionarius* 238. *Victor* 221. *Light armed soldier* 210. *Musical Instruments* 226. *nāvēs* 272, 369, (diagram of rigging) 265. *pila* 132. *Plans of*

'ONLY' supplied I, 33, 19.

opus, with nominative I, 34, 6;
with abl. of participle I, 42, 20.

ORATIO OBLIQUA: *General Principles* p. 91 foot-note. *Principal verb* (Declaratory sentence) I, 7, 10; (Imperative sentence) *positive* I, 7, 20; 35, 10; III, 8, 19; IV, 11, 10; 16, 2; *negative* I, 13, 15; 13, 18; 35, 9; (Interrogative sentence) *infinitive* I, 14, 11; *subjunctive* I, 40, 11; 43, 23; 44, 24; 44, 25; IV, 16, 16. *Subordinate verb* (Subjunctive) I, 7, 12; 7, 20; 8, 11; 13, 10; II, 14, 5; III, 11, 6 (*cōnentur*); (Indicative) *of fact* I, 40, 15; *of inserted statement* III, 2, 4; 11, 5. *Virtual* I, 16, 2; 27, 2, and see SUBJUNCTIVE.

PARTICIPLES: *translated by 'as' 'when' etc.* II, 19, 12; 23, 5. *For a coordinate clause* I, 5, 13; II, 5, 11; 17, 4; III, 6, 5. *For a conditional clause* I, 4, 3. *For a relative clause* I, 25, 20; 26, 9; II, 11, 13. *In predicate with adjectival force* I, 1, 1; 5, 3; III, 28, 1. *After habeō in predicate* I, 15, 4; 18, 10; 44, 40; II, 4, 10.

PERIPHRAISIS, *futurum esse* (*fore*) *ut* I, 20, 12.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: *First* I, 3, 19; 5, 6. *Second* I, 7, 15; 23, 5.

POSSESSIVE: force of *suus* I, 1, 13. *potior*, see ABLATIVE and GENITIVE *ad fin.*

PRAETERITIVE VERBS: *cōgnōverat* I, 19, 11; *nōvērunt* VI, 15, 7.

praeterquam 'except' I, 5, 6.

PRAETOR I, 21, 6.

PRESENT HISTORICAL: *definition* I, 3, 10; 17, 13; *rule for sequence*

I, 3, 13; III, 5, 10; *either sequence* I, 8, 8. *After dum 'while'* I, 27, 2; 46, 1.

priusquam I, 19, 12.

PROHIBITIONS I, 13, 15.

quam with superlative I, 3, 3; 7, 3; 33, 19; III, 9, 25; 19, 3; IV, 3, 1; 11, 14.

quam ob rem: *relative* I, 34, 1; *interrogative* I, 50, 1.

QUESTIONS: *Indirect* I, 12, 3, and see SUBJUNCTIVE. In indirect discourse, see ORATIO OBLIQUA. *utrum . . . necne* I, 50, 13. *-ne . . . an . . . an* IV, 14, 6, 7.

quā with words of doubt I, 3, 20; 4, 11, and see SUBJUNCTIVE.

quis, distinction between substantive and adjective forms I, 46, 5. *Indefinite* I, 7, 20; 18, 22; 20, 2; 30, 15; 31, 48; 34, 5; 42, 12; II, 32, 6.

quisque with superlative I, 31, 44; 45, 8.

quō, *for ut eō*, see SUBJUNCTIVE. *For ad quem (locum)* II, 16, 10; *ad quōs* V, 14, 11; *in quae (mūnimenta)* II, 17, 20. Without antecedent II, 21, 7; IV, 38, 4 (*first quō*).

quod: *In Causal clauses* (*ō. o.*) I, 40, 5; V, 10, 7; (*virtual ō. o.*) I, 16, 15; 23, 8; 37, 3; 47, 15; II, 1, 6; 1, 8; 11, 16; 11, 17; IV, 16, 19; 22, 5; 27, 12; V, 6, 11. (With verb of saying in subjunctive) V, 6, 12. *In Substantive clauses* (*apposition*) I, 14, 9, 10; 19, 3-5; (*adverb. acc.*) I, 14, 11; 17, 12; 18, 26; 36, 14; 44, 28; (*quod si*) I, 20, 9; 40, 10; 40, 46; 44, 37.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS I, 1, 18; 6,

13. Replaced by demonstrative I, 5, 11.

regnum, not hereditary with the Gauls I, 3, 13; IV, 12, 14.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS: *Agreement with predicate noun* I, 38, 3; II, 1, 4; VII, 68, 3. *As Connective* I, 1, 11; 14, 4; 27, 2; II, 5, 15; 13, 5; 29, 5; IV, 10, 7. *In expressions of time* III, 23, 4; IV, 18, 1. *Its Antecedent* (omitted) I, 1, 2; 17, 2; 21, 4; II, 27, 2; III, 6, 1; IV, 11, 16; 25, 10; (repeated) I, 6, 1; 16, 10; 29, 3. II, 18, 1; IV, 7, 2; V, 11, 5; (in relative clause) I, 12, 17; 22, 15; 40, 29; II, 19, 12; 19, 16; IV, 31, 6, (in apposition with noun in main clause) III, 9, 9; 21, 10; IV, 1, 17; 24, 3; 38, 5; (implied in adjective) I, 40, 16; (clause replaced by *id*) IV, 29, 10.

reliquus, denoting a part, see ADJECTIVES. *As a participle* I, 12, 7; IV, 34, 8.

reminiscor with genitive I, 13, 12.

REPRESENTATIO I, 7, 13; II, 14, 11.

RIVERS, see MAP.

sī, 'whether' I, 8, 14; II, 9, 2. Preceded by *nisi* I, 31, 48. In conditional sentences see SUBJUNCTIVE.

SUB with acc. and abl. I, 24, 12; in expressions of time II, 33, 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE: *Attraction (Integral part)* I, 8, 7; 18, 27; II, 2, 7; IV, 23, 14. *Characteristic* I, 3, 3; 6, 2; 6, 4; II, 5, 16; 16, 9; 28, 9; 35, 3; III, 4, 2; 22, 9; 28, 4; 28, 5; IV, 2, 2 (*vendant*); V, 23, 7; IV, 16, 12; (*ūnus*) I, 31, 27. *Indirect*

Discourse, see ORATIO OBLIQUA. *Indirect questions* I, 12, 3; 15, 5; 17, 13; 20, 21; 21, 8; 32, 6; 34, 12; 40, 4; 43, 16; 43, 17; 45, 2; II, 4, 13; 5, 6; 8, 4; 20, 10; III, 9, 8; 14, 10; 18, 5 (*velit*); 21, 5; IV, 5, 6; 5, 8; 14, 3; 20, 13; 20, 14. *Integral Part*, see *Attraction*. *Purpose: Adverbial (positive, ut)* I, 3, 5; 5, 8; 22, 11; II, 9, 4; IV, 2, 2 (*habent*); (*negative, nē*) I, 4, 8; 9, 12; 17, 6; II, 5, 7; IV, 25, 17; (*quī* etc) I, 7, 10; 15, 5; 21, 4; 34, 2; 50, 6; II, 11, 9; 17, 2; III, 11, 11; IV, 11, 17; V, 10, 5; 20, 8; (*quō*) I, 8, 7; 14, 14; II, 17, 17; 25, 18; 27, 7. (*praeserrent*); III, 13, 4; 16, 9; V, 3, 20. *Substantive (subject)* I, 22, 9 (*nē*); II, 10, 19 (*ut*); (*object*) I, 2, 5; 3, 13; 7, 13; 30, 13; 31, 4; 39, 14; 42, 12 (*nē*); 45, 4; II, 12, 15; 14, 11; 16, 7; 26, 3; 28, 13; III, 1, 9; 18, 5; (*apposition*) I, 30, 8; 48, 6; II, 2, 7; 9, 11; 9, 12; 31, 9; IV, 19, 15. (*verbs of fearing*) I; 19, 12 (*nē*); 39, 24 (*ut*); II, 1, 6, (*nē*). *Result: Adverbial (ut)* I, 6, 5; 6, 13; 13, 17; 25, 10; II, 5, 18; 19, 22; IV, 33, 8; (*ut nōn*) I, 12, 4; II, 18, 17; (*quīn*) I, 47, 8; III, 24, 15; (*quō minus*) I, 31, 26; IV, 22, 17. *Substantive (Subject) ut* I, 2, 12; 46, 8; II, 4, 9; 10, 19; *quīn* I, 3, 20; II, 2, 10; III, 23, 20; (*object*) *ut* I, 9, 11 (*dent*); 13, 20; II, 11, 5; IV, 31, 10; *quīn* I, 17, 10; 31, 54; IV, 7, 6; (*Apposition*) *ut* I, 4, 4; 5, 3; 35, 50; 43, 22; III, 2, 8; *quīn* I, 4, 12. *Special Conjunctions: cum* (*temporal*) I, 4, 9; 12, 6; 23, 2; II, 1, 1; 2, 5; 4, 1; 19, 10; (*causal*) I, 9, 3; 26, 18; 41, 14; II, 6, 9; 11, 4; 17, 4; 28, 5; III, 1, 16; 10, 7; 14,

20; (concessive) I, 14, 17; 26, 6; 43, 13; III, 7, 2; 7, 4; IV, 12, 4; V, 15, 11; VI, 14, 9. *dum* I, 7, 18; 11, 6; IV, 13, 5; 23, 10. *priusquam* I, 19, 13; II, 12, 2; III, 10, 10; IV, 4, 18; 12, 11; 14, 3; 21, 2. *quō* (causal) IV, 2, 3. *quoad* IV, 11, 18. *With the relative=cum is* (causal) II, 15, 14; IV, 21, 22; V, 4, 12; accompanied by *ut* IV, 23, 14; (concessive) V, 4, 14.

SUPINE, in *-ū* I, 3, 18; IV, 30, 7; in *-um* I, 11, 5; 18, 18 (metaphorical); 30, 3; 37, 3; IV, 32, 2.

SYNONOMOUS VERBS, translation, V, 22, 16.

TENSES: *Historical present* see

PRESENT HISTORICAL. Sequence II, 4, 2. *Imperfect of repeated act* II, 1, 3; III, 15, 3. *Pluperfect of repeated act* IV, 26, 6. *In ō. o.* II, 9, 10; II, 9, 12; IV, 20, 7.

TOWNS see **MAP**.

ut (*uti*) adverb I, 4, 11; 16, 3; 22, 3; II, 7, 10; 22, 1; (subjunctive by attraction) IV, 23, 13; 23, 14. **Conjunction**; See in general **SUBJUNCTIVE**. Omitted I, 20, 14; III, 5, 11; 11, 3; IV, 16, 13; 21, 18; 23, 16. **Concessive** III, 9, 17.

ūtor, see **ABLATIVE**.

vigilia I, 12, 8; 21, 5; 21, 8.

vīvō, see **ABLATIVE**.

volō, two accusatives I, 34, 7.

VOCABULARY.

This vocabulary contains all words found in the text given in this book. To all words occurring in the annotated portions of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the place of first occurrence, where the Page-Vocabulary will give a full treatment of the word. If a word occurs first in chapters 30-50 of book 1, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the annotated portions of the text.

A

ACCLIVIS

A.

A., abbreviation for praenomen **Aulus**. I, 6, 16.

a. = ante (before), I, 6, 16.

ā (before consonants), **ab** (before a vowel or a consonant), **abs** (with *tē* and *-que* (prep. with *abl.*, from, away from, at, by, on, on the side of. I, 1, 4.

ab-dō, *dere*, *didī*, *ditus* [*dō*, give] *a.*, give or put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, 12, 12.

abdūcō, *-ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus* [*dūcō*, lead], *a.*, lead away, draw, or carry off, withdraw. I, 11, 7.

ab-eō, *-ire*, *-ivi*(ii), *-itus*, *n.*, go away, depart; issue.

abiciō, *-ere*, *-iēcī*, *iectus* [*iaciō*, hurl], *a.*, throw away or down, cast aside, abandon. IV, 15, 2.

abiēs, *-ietis*, *r.*, silver-fir; fir tree. V, 12, 18.

ab-iungō, *-ere* *iūnxī*, *iūctus*, *a.*, disjoin, remove.

abscidō, *-ere*, *cidī*, *cisus* [*caedō*, cut], *a.*, cut or lop off, tear off or away. III, 14, 19.

absēns, *-entis* [*pr. p.* of *absum*], absent, at a distance. I, 32, 12; III, 17, 19.

ab-similis, *-e*, unlike. III, 14, 16.

ab-sistō, *-ere*, *stītī*, withdraw; leave off. V, 17, 7.

abstineō, 2. [*teneō*, hold], *a.*, and *n.*, hold off, keep aloof from, refrain. I, 22, 12.

abs-trahō, *-ere*, *trāxī*, *tractus*, to drag away, carry away by force. III, 2, 14.

ab-sum, *esse*, *āfui*, *āfutūrus*, *n.*, be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. I, 1, 8.

ab-undō, 1, overflow; abound.

āc, I, 3, 23, *see* **atque**.

accēdō, *-ere*, *-essi*, *-essum*, [*ad* + *cēdō*], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; *accēdēbat*, it was added. I, 19, 2.

ac-celerō, 1, hasten. VII, 87, 11.

acceptus, *-a*, *-um*, popular with, beloved by (*with dative*). I, 3, 16.

ac-cidō, *-ere*, *cidī* [*cadō*, fall], *n.*, fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur: *accidit*, it happens. I, 14, 4.

ac-cidō, *-ere*, *cidī*, *-cisus*, cut into. VI, 27, 10.

ac-cipiō, *-ere*, *cēpī*, *ceptus* [*ad* + *capiō*], *a.*, take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take; *in p. p.* as *adj.*, acceptable, beloved, popular. I, 3, 16.

acclivis (*ad-*), *-e* [*clivus*, a slope], sloping upwards, rising, ascending. II, 29, 7.

acclivitas (adc-), -tātis, *f.*, ascent. II, 18, 4.

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, a chief of the Aedui.

ac(ad) -commodātus, -a, -um, fit, adapted to, appropriate. III, 13, 5.

accomodō (adc-), 1. [commodō, adjust], *a.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. II, 21, 11.

accūrātō, *adv.*, carefully. VI, 22, 10.

ac-currō, -ere, cucurri (curri) cursus [ad+currō, run], *n.*, run or hasten to, run up or rush to. I, 22, 5.

accūsō, 1. [ad+causa] *a.*, *n.*, bring a case or charge against: blame, censure, accuse. I, 16, 15.

acerbē, *adv.*, harshly, bitterly.

acerbitās, -tātis, *f.*, harshness, rigor.

acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, biting, severe.

ācerrimē, *superl.* of ācriter.

acervus, -ī [acer, sharp, pointed], *m.*, a heap, mass. II, 32, 10.

aciēs, -ēi (old gen. aciē), [cf. ācer, sharp], *f.*, sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van; media, the centre; novissima, the rear. I, 22, 8.

ac-quirō, -ere, quisivi, quisitus, seek or get in addition, win, acquire.

ācriter [ācer, sharp], *adv.*, sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. I, 26, 1.

āctuārius, -a, -um, swift sailing. V, 1, 11.

āctus, see agō.

acūtus, -a, -um [*p. p.* of acuō, sharpen], sharpened, pointed. V, 18, 6.

ad, *prep.* with *acc.*, to, towards, against; among, near, at, about (with numerals); at, till (of time). I, 1, 8.

adāctus, see adigō.

ad-aequō, 1. [aequō, level or equal], *a.*, *n.*, make level with or equal to,

equalize, equal, keep up with. I, 48, 19; II, 32, 10.

ad-amō, 1, love strongly; covet. I, 31, 15.

ad-dō, dēre, didi, ditus [dō, give], *a.*, give or impart to, annex, add. VII, 70, 6.

ad-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or draw to. I, 3, 1.

ademptus, see adimō.

ad-eō, *adv.*, to such an extent, so much, so very.

ad-eō, ire, ii, itus [eō, go], *a.*, *n.*, go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, 7, 8.

adeptus, see adipiscor.

ad-equitō, 1, ride to or up. I, 46, 3.

ad-haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesus, cling or stick to, adhere.

ad-hibeō, 2. [habeō, have], *a.*, have or bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use. I, 20, 17.

ad-hortor, 1, encourage, incite.

ad-hūc, *adv.*, hitherto. III, 22, 7.

ad-iaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie near or close to, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, the leader of the Sotiates. III, 22, 2.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ad-icciō], *a.*, throw to: tēlum adici (reach); aggerem (throw up).—*Fig.*, add: adiecta plāniciēs (with the addition of). III, 1, 15.

adigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctus [agō], *a.*, drive or bring by force; thrust, plunge (of weapons); bind (by an oath). II, 21, 7.

adimō, -ere, -ōmi, -ēptus [emō, take], *a.*, take away to one's disadvantage, remove. V, 6, 18.

adipiscor, -i, -eptus sum, attain to, gain.

aditus, -ūs, [ad+eō, go], *m.*, going to, approach, means of approach, access. I, 43, 13; II, 16, 9.

ad-iudicō, 1, adjudge, assign, ascribe.

ad-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, join to, attach; apply to: *p. p.* as *adj.*, adjoining; suitable to, III, 2, 17,

ad-iūtor, -ōris, m., helper, abettor, coadjutor.
ad-iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus [iuvō, aid], *a.*, aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, 17, 12.
Admagetobriga, -ae, f., a Gallic town (location unknown). I, 31, 43.
ad-mātūrō, 1, ripen, hasten.
ad-minister, -tri, m., attendant, priest. VI, 16, 5.
administrō, 1, a., to serve, attend, wait upon, manage, guide. II, 20, 15.
ad-mirror, 1. [mīror, wonder], *a.*, wonder at, be surprised, admire. I, 14, 13.
ad-mittō, -ere, misī, missus [mittō, send], *a.*, send to; let in, admit; let go or loose; permit; incur. I, 22, 5.
ad-modum, adv., [modus, measure], up to the measure or degree; very much, very; *with num.*, fully; *with neg.*, at all. III, 13, 4.
ad-moneō, 2, warn; remind.
adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus, grow up. VI, 18, 7.
ad-orior, oriri, ortus sum [orior, arise], *a.*, rise against, assail, attack; begin, attempt. I, 13, 13.
ad-sciscō, -ere, scivi, scitus [sciscō, *incept.* of sciō, approve], *a.*, take upon acquaintance, approve; admit or receive (*as alies*). I, 5, 13.
ad-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be near or present, be at hand; aid, assist. I, 16, 9.
Aduātuca, -ae, f., a stronghold of the Eburones, now Tongres.
Aduātucī, -ōrum, m., a people of Belgic Gaul, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. II, 4, 27.
adolēscēns, -entis [adolēscō, grow up], *m. f.*, youth; young man or woman, from seventeen to forty years of age. I, 47, 11; III, 7, 7.
adolēscēntia, -ae, f., youth. I, 20, 6.
adolēscēntulus, -ī, m., stripling. III, 21, 4.
adventus, -ūs, [veniō, come], m.,

coming to, arrival, approach. I, 7, 7.
ad-versarius, -ī, m., antagonist, foe.
ad-versus, -a, -um [versus *p. p.* of vertō, turn], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverso, unfavorable. I, 18, 26.
ad-versus, prep. w. acc., opposite to, against. IV, 14, 6.
ad-vertō, -ere, verti versus [vertō, turn], *a.*, turn to, turn toward or against; *animum*, observe, notice. I, 24, 1.
ad-vocō, 1, call to, summon.
ad-volō, 1. [volō, fly], *n.*, fly to or against, rush on or at. V, 17, 6.
aedificium, -ī, [aedificō, build], n., building, edifice, structure. I, 5, 5.
aedificō, 1. [aedēs, building+faciō], *a.*, build, construct; erect, establish. III, 9, 3.
Aeduius, -a, -um, of the Aedui, Aeduan; *as subst.*, an Aeduan; *in pl.*, the Aedui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the upper waters of the Saone and Loire. I, 3, 15.
aeger, -gra, -grum, ill, sick; wounded; afflicted, dejected.
aegerrimē, I, 13, 5. Superl. of aegrē.
aegrē, adv., (aeger), hardly, with difficulty, scarcely; *comp.* aegrius, *sup.* aegerrimē. II, 6, 3.
Aemilius, -ī, m., I, 23, 7.
aequaliter, adv., equally. II, 18, 2.
aequinoctium, -ī, [aequus, equal +nox, night], n., the equinox. IV, 36, 4.
aequitās, -tātis [aequus, equal], *f.*, equality, uniformity; impartiality, fairness, justice, equity. I, 40, 8; VI, 22, 12.
aequō, 1. [aequus, equal], *a.*, make even or equal, equalize. I, 25, 2.
aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just. I, 43, 2; III, 17, 20.
aerarius, -a, -um, of copper, copper. III, 21, 11,

aereus, -a, -um, of bronze. V, 12, 9.
aes, **aeris**, n., copper, bronze; *anything made of copper or bronze*, coin, money: **aes aliënum**, another's money, debt. IV, 31, 6.
aestās, -tātis, f., summer. I, 54, 5; II, 2, 3.
aestimatiō, -ōnis, f., valuation. VI, 19, 2.
aestimō, (-umō), 1. (**aes**, copper, money), a., value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20, 4.
aestivus, -a, -um, of summer, summer.
aestuārium, -ī [**aestus**, an undulating], n., low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28, 3.
aestus, -ūs, m., heat, boiling, surging; tide. **minuente aestū**, at ebb tide. III, 12, 3.
aetās, **aetātis** [*contr. of aevitās*, fr. **aevum**, age], f., period of life, age. II, 18, 8.
aeternus, -a, -um, everlasting. VII, 77, 46.
afferō (ad-), **ferre**, **attuli**, **allātus**, a., bring, take or carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. I, 43, 22; II, 1, 3.
af (ad-) **-ficiō**, -ere, **fēci**, **fectus** [**faciō**], a., do to, treat, affect; **māgnō dolōre afficere**, to annoy greatly. I, 2, 14.
af (ad-) **-figō**, -ere, **fixi**, **fixus**, fasten to. III, 14, 15.
af (ad-) **-fingō**, -ere, **finxi**, **fictus**, form, devise; ascribe; fabricate.
affinitās, -tātis, [finis, adjacent] f., alliance by marriage, relationship. I, 18, 19.
af (ad-) **-firmatiō**, -ōnis, f., declaration, assertion.
affixus, *see affigō*.
afflictō (ad-), 1. [*freq. of affigō*, strike against, damage], a., damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, 12, 5.
afflictus, *see affigō*.
affigō (adf-), -ere, **fixi**, **fictus**, strike, overthrow; damage, injure. IV, 31, 6.

Āfricus, -ī, m., S. W. wind. V, 8, 7.
Agedincum, -ī, n., *chief town of the Senones, now Sens*.
ager, **agri**, m., field; territory, district; land, ground. I, 2, 9.
agger, **aggeris**, m., embankment, mound; rampart. II, 12, 11.
ag (ad) **-gredior**, **gredi**, **gressus sum** [**ad** + **gradior**, step, advance], a., n., advance to or against, approach; assault, attack. I, 12, 10.
aggregō, (ad-), 1. [**ad** + **grex**, flock], a., unite in flock; gather, assemble; attach one's self to, join, attach. IV, 26, 4.
agitō, 1, impel, incite; harass; devise, debate.
āgmen, -inis [**agō**, set in motion], n., a moving body; a marching column; army; in **āgmine**, on the march; **primum āgmen**, the van. I, 15, 6.
agō, -ere, **ēgi**, **actus**, a., n., set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (**conventum**); give, render (**grātiās**); plead, (**causam** or **rem**); **quod agitur**, the matter in hand; **rēs agitur**, something is at stake. I, 18, 3.
agricultūra, -ae [**ager**+**colō**, cultivated], f., cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, 17, 11.
alacer, -cris, -cre, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, 19, 16.
alacritās, -tātis, f., liveliness, ardor. I, 41, 2; IV, 24, 13.
ālārius, -a, -um, on the wings; *pl. as subst., auxiliaries*. I, 51, 3.
albus, -a, -um, white; colorless. V, 12, 11.
alcēs, -is, f., elk. VI, 27, 1.
Alesia, -ae, f., a town of the Mandubii, now Alise Ste. Reine. VII, 68, 3.
aliās, *adv.* [**alius**, another], at another place, elsewhere, at another time. **aliās . . . aliās**, at one time . . . at another. II, 29, 15.

aliēnō, 1, make another's or foreign; estrange; separate, cut off.
aliēnus, -a, -um, [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another; strange, alien, unfamiliar; inopportune, unfavorable. I, 15, 6.
aliō, *adv.*, to another place, person, or thing. VI, 22, 6.
aliquam -diū, *adv.*, for some time. I, 40, 19; V, 23, 11.
aliquandō [aliquis, some one], at some time, at length, finally. VII, 77, 42.
aliquantō, *adv.*, somewhat. III, 13, 2.
aliquantus, -a, -um, [alius + quantus, how much], some; considerable; in *neut.* as *subst.* with *part. gen.*, a good deal, not a little; in *abl.* as *adv.* in some degree, considerably. V, 10, 3.
aliquis, -quae, -quid, [alius, other + quis] and **aliqui**, -qua, -quod [alius + qui] *indef. pron.*, some one, something; anyone, anything, any. I, 14, 4.
aliquot [alius + quot], *indecl. num. adj.*, some, a few, several. III, 1, 19.
aliter, *adv.*, otherwise. II, 19, 2.
alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* alius, another, other; *alius* . . . *alius*, one . . . another; in *pl.* some . . . others. I, 1, 2.
allātus, *see* afferō.
al (ad-) **liciō**, -ere, **lēxī**, **lectus**, attract, or allure to, entice.
Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, a powerful Gallic people between the Rhone and Isere. I, 6, 7.
alō, -ore, -tū, -itus, *a.*, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, 18, 3.
Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, *pl.*, the Alps mountains, separating Italy from Switzerland, France and Austria. I, 10, 11.
alter, -ora, -erum (*gen.* alterius, *dat.* alteri), the other (*of two*); second; the one; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; alteri . . .

alteri, the one party . . . the other. I, 2, 9.
alternus, -a, -um, one after another, in turn.
altitūdō, -inis, [altus, high, perpendicular], *f.*, height; depth. I, 8, 5.
altus, -a, -um, [*p. p.* of alō, nourish, promote], high, lofty; deep; *neut.* as *subst.*, the deep, the sea. I, 2, 8.
alūta, -ae, *f.*, dressed leather. III, 13, 9.
ambactus, -i, *m.*, vassal. VI, 15, 6.
Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Aedui, between the Saone and Rhone. I, 11, 8.
Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgian tribe, chief town Samarobriua, now Amiens. II, 4, 26.
Ambibariī, -ōrum, *m.*, a small tribe in Celtic Gaul. VII, 75, 19.
Ambiliati, -ōrum, *m.*, III, 9, 27.
Ambiorix, -igis, *m.*, king of the Eburones.
Ambivarctī, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Aedui. VII, 75, 7.
Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m.*, IV, 9, 6.
ambō, -ae, -ō, both.
amentia, -ae [mēns, mind], *f.*, bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. I, 40, 10; V, 7, 4.
amentum, -i, *n.*, strap or thong, fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.
amfractus, -ūs, *m.*, circuitous route.
amicitia, -ae, [amicus, friend], *f.*, friendship. I, 3, 6.
amicus, -a, -um, [amō], *adj.*, friendly, well disposed; praesidium (devoted); as *noun*, *m.*, a friend, an ally.
amicus, -i, *m.*, friend, ally. I, 3, 18.
ā-mittō, -ere, **misī**, **missus**, send away; let go; lose, dismiss. I, 28, 7.
amor, -ōris, *m.*, love. I, 20, 8.
amplē, *adv.*, largely; *comp.* **amplius**, more, farther. I, 43, 11.
amplificō, 1. [amplus, full all around + faciō], *a.*, extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, 14, 12.

amplitūdō, -inis [amplus, large on both sides], *r.*, wide extent, size; importance, consequence. IV, 3, 11.
amplius, comp. adv., more, farther. I, 15, 15.
amplus, -a, -um, of large extent, spacious, large. III, 8, 1.
an, conj., used as second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. I, 40, 46; IV, 14, 7.
Anartēs, -ium, m., *A German tribe near the Hercynian forest.* VI, 25, 6.
Ancalitēs, -ium, m., V, 21, 2.
anceps, ancipitis [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double; doubtful, wavering. I, 26, 1.
ancora, -ae, f., anchor. III, 13, 8.
Andēs, -ium, m., *a Gallic people in modern Anjou about modern Angers.* II, 35, 7.
angulus, -ī, m., corner. V, 13, 2.
angustē, adv., narrowly; in close quarters. IV, 23, 8.
angustiae, -ārum [angustus, narrow], *r.*, *pl.*, narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, 9, 2.
angustus, -a, -um, [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow. I, 2, 16.
anima, -ae, f., breath, life, soul. VI, 14, 15.
animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, (animus+ad+vertō), to turn the mind to; to notice; in: to punish. I, 19, 6.
animal, -ālis [animus, breath of life], *n.*, a living creature, animal. VI, 17, 11.
animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings, character; resolution, courage. I, 1, 9.
annōtinus, -a, -um, of last year. V, 8, 18.
annus, -ī, m., year. I, 3, 7.
annuus, -a, -um, yearly. I, 16, 14.
ānser, -eris, m., goose. V, 12, 14.
ante, (1) adv., before, above, pre-

viously (2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance. I, 3, 14.
antē, adv., formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* I, 17, 2.
ante-cēdō, -ere, cessī [cēdō, go], *a., n.*, go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8, 5.
ante-cursor, -ōris, m., forerunner: *pl.* vanguard.
ante-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear or carry before; prefer.
antenna, -ae, f., sail-yard, yard-arm, sail. III, 14, 17.
ante-pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, place before; prefer. IV, 22, 10.
ante-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn or go before; precede; anticipate; prefer.
antiquitus, adv., [antīquus, ancient], from early or ancient times, long ago, anciently. II, 4, 4.
antīquus, -a, -um, (ante, before), former, old, ancient. I, 18, 21.
Antistius, -ī, m., *a Roman gentile name: Caius Antistius Reginus, Caesar's lieutenant.* VII, 83, 7.
Antōnius, -ī, m., VII, 81, 15.
Ap., abbrev. for Appius.
aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertus [ab+pariō, bring forth], *a.*, bring forth from; expose; *in p. p. as adj.*, exposed, unprotected. I, 25, 16.
apertē [apertus, open], *adv.*, openly, manifestly. VI, 21, 4.
apertus, -a, -um, exposed. I, 25, 16, see aperiō.
Apollō, -inis, m., Apollo. VI, 17, 5.
ap (ad)-parō, 1, prepare; provide.
ap (ad)-pellō, 1. (pellō, drive), *a., n.*, drive or go to to accost; accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1, 3.
appellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus, drive or force to; bring to or in, land. III, 12, 9.
appetō (ad)-, -ere, -īvi (-īi), petītus [petō, seek], *a.*, seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach. I, 40, 6; VII, 82, 6.

Appius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. V, 1, 1.
ap (ad-) -plicō, 1, apply; lean. VI, 27, 7.
ap (ad-) -portō, 1, carry to; V, 1, 13.
ap-probō, 1, favor, approve.
ap (ad-) propinquō 1. [propinquus, near], *n.*, come near or close to, approach. II, 10, 18.
appulsus, see appellō.
Apr. or **April.** abbrev. for Aprilis -e [aperiō, open], *adj.*, of April, April. I, 6, 16.
aptus, -a, -um, [*p. p.* of *obsol.* apō, fasten, fit], fitted, suited, adapted: illis aptiōra, more favorable to their side. III, 13, 17.
apud, *prep.* with *acc.*, at, among, near, with; (with persons) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2, 1.
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, 17, 20.
aquatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, getting water. IV, 11, 13.
aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle: a standard, (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). IV, 25, 11.
Aquilēia, -ae, *f.* a city of Cisalpine Gaul, still retaining its ancient name. I, 10, 10.
aquilifer, -erī, *m.*, standard-bearer, first centurion of the first cohort.
Aquitānia, -ae, *f.*, Aquitania; Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and Pyrenees. I, 1, 21.
Aquitānus, -a, -um, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; in *pl.* as *subst.*, the Aquitani or Aquitanians, inhabiting south-western Gaul. I, 1, 2.
Arar, -aris (*acc.* -im), *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul rising in the Vosges and emptying into the Rhone, the modern Saone. I, 12, 1.
arbiter, -trī, *m.*, umpire, judge. V, 1, 24.
arbitrium, -ī [arbiter, judge], *n.*, decision or judgment (of the arbiter); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, 36, 4; VI, 11, 8.
arbitror, 1. [arbiter, witness; judge], *a.*, and *n.*, witness, testi-

fy; judge, decide; think, believe. I, 2, 16.
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, 17, 17.
arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, summon. I, 31, 13; II, 20, 5.
ārdeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, burn, blaze; be inflamed.
Arduenna, -ae, *f.*, the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul. V, 3, 10.
arduus, -a, -um, high, steep, difficult. II, 33, 9.
Aremoricae, -ārum, *f.*, *adj.*, [a Celtic word], maritime. VII, 75, 18.
argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silver plate or coin; money. VI, 28, 12.
argilla, -ae, *f.*, white clay, marl.
āridus, -a, -um [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut.* as *subst.*, dry land. IV, 24, 9.
ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. II, 32, 3.
Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, king of the German tribe, Suebi. I, 31, 32; IV, 16, 23.
Aristius, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Aristius, a military tribune.
arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.* objects fitted to the body; armor, arms, equipments; by *meton.*, battle, war. I, 4, 9.
armāmenta, -ōrum [arma], *n.*, implements, gear; esp. tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 14, 20.
armātūra, -ae [armō], *f.*, armor, equipment; armed soldiers always with adjective *levis*. II, 10, 12.
armō, 1. [arma], arm, equip; in *p. p.* as *adj.*, armed; as *subst.* armed men. I, 40, 20; II, 4, 15.
Arpinēsius, -ī, *m.*, Caius Arpineius, Caesar's lieutenant.
arripiō, -ere, ripuī, reptus, *a.*, take or seize hurriedly.
arroganter, *adv.*, presumptuously. I, 40, 33.
ar (ad-)rogantia, -ae [arrogāns, arrogant], *f.*, arrogance, haughti-

- ness, presumption, insolence. I, 33, 21.
- ars, artis, f.**, skill art; artifice. VI, 17, 3.
- artē, adv.**, closely. IV, 17, 21.
- articulus, -i, m.**, joint. VI, 27, 4.
- artificium, -i** [artifex, artificer], n., a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick. VI, 17, 8.
- artus, -a, -um**, close, narrow, confined.
- Arverni, -orum, m.**, a people of Celtic Gaul, chief town Gergovia, now Auvergne. I, 31, 11; VII, 75, 10.
- arx, arcis** [arceō, shut up, ward off], f., citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38, 14; VII, 84, 1.
- ascendō, -ere, -dī, cēnsus** [ad + scandō, climb], a., n., climb up to, ascend, mount, climb. I, 21, 7.
- ascēnsus, -ūs** [ascendō, climb up], m., climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 21, 4.
- aspectus (ad-), -ūs** [adspiciō, look at], m., look; appearance, mien, aspect. V, 14, 7.
- asper, -era, -erum**, rough, harsh.
- assiduus (ad-), -a, -um** [sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant. VI, 22, 7.
- as(ad)-sistō, -ere, stiti**, stand by. VI, 18, 9.
- as(ad)-suēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus**, accustom. IV, 1, 19.
- as(ad)-suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus**, accustom. VI, 28, 9.
- at, conj.**, but, at least. I, 43, 26; II, 23, 12.
- atque, (āc only before cons.)** [ad + que], adds something important while et associates objects of equal importance, and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison, with, as; after words of difference, than, from. I, 1, 7.
- Atrebas, -bātis, m.**, an Atrebatian; **Atrebatēs, -um (-i, -ōrum)**, the Atrebatēs, a Belgic tribe. The name survives in Artois and Arras. II, 4, 25.
- Atrius, -i, m.**, V, 9, 7.
- at(ad)-texō, -ere, texuī, textus**, weave to, join closely.
- at(ad)tingō, -ere, tigi, tactus** [tangō, touch], a., touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, 1, 17.
- attribuō (ad-), -ere, -uī, -ūtus** [tribuō, assign], a., assign, allot. III, 1, 18.
- auctor, -ōris** [augeō, increase], m., one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, originator, author. III, 17, 7.
- auctōritās, -tātis** [auctor, producer], f., a producing influence, character, authority, reputation. I, 3, 1.
- auctus, -a, -um, partic. adj.** (augeō), increased, abundant. I, 43, 21.
- audācia, -ae** [audāx, bold], f., boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, 18, 7.
- audācter (audāciter)** [audāx, bold], adv., boldly, fearlessly, daringly. I, 15, 9.
- audēō, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep.** a., dare, risk, venture. I, 18, 10.
- audiō, 4. a.**, hear, hear of; in pr. p. as adj., obedient. I, 39, 27; II, 12, 6.
- auditō, -ōnis** [audiō, hear], f., hearing; hearsay, report. IV, 5, 9.
- augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, a., n.**, increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, 18, 11.
- Auleri, -ōrum, m.**, a Gallic people divided into four branches; (1) Auleri Ebuovices, in modern dept. de l'Eure, in Normandy; (2) Auleri Cenomani; (3) Auleri Brannovices, in modern dept. le Brennois; (4) Auleri Diablintes, in modern dept. de la Sarthe. II, 34, 3.
- Aulus, -i, m.**, a Roman praenomen. I, 6, 15.
- aureus, -a, -um**, of gold. V, 12, 9.
- aurīga, -ae, m.**, charioteer. IV, 33, 5.
- auris, -is, f.**, ear. VI, 26, 2.

Aurunculeius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name. *E. g.*, **L. Aurunculeius Cotta**, one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 11, 10.

Ausci, -ōrum, m., III, 27, 4.

ausus, see **audeō**.

aut, conj., used where the difference is important, or exclusive, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or. I, 1, 13.

autem, conj., but (a weak adversative), however, now, on the other hand; moreover. I, 2, 15.

autumnus, -i, m., autumn.

auxiliāris, -e, auxiliary. III, 25, 3.

auxilior, 1 [auxilium, aid], a., give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, 29, 7.

auxilium, -i [augeō, increase, promote], n., help, assistance, aid; in pl. auxiliary troops, reinforcements. I, 11, 5.

Avāricēnsis, -e, of Avaricum.

Avāricum, -i, n., the stronghold of the *Bituriges*, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae [avārus, greedy], f., greed, covetousness. I, 40, 40.

ā-versus, -a, -um, see **āvertō**.

āv-vertō, -ere, **verti**, **versus** [vertō, turn], a., turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse, estrange; in p. p. as adj., turned away, retreating. I, 16, 7.

avis, -is, f., bird. IV, 10, 11.

avus, -i, m., grandfather, ancestor. I, 12, 20.

Axona, -ae, m., a river of Gallia Belgica (now the Aisne) a tributary of the *Isara* (Oise). II, 5, 13.

B.

Bacēnis, -is, sc. *silva*, the forest Bacenis, between the *Cherusci* and *Suebi*.

Baculus, -i, m., a cognomen. See **Sextius**. VII, 90, 10.

Baliāris, -e, Balearic. II, 7, 3.

balteus, -i, m., girdle, belt.

Balventius, -i, m., a Roman nomen. *E. g.*, **Titus Balventius**, one of Caesar's centurions.

barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, barbarous; as subst. savages. I, 31, 15; II, 35, 2.

Basilus, -i, m., cognomen of Caesar's lieutenant. **Lucius Minucius**. VII, 90, 8.

Batāvi, -ōrum, m., IV, 10, 3.

Belgae, -ārum, m., the Belgae or Belgians, a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul. I, 1, 2.

Belgium, -i, n., the country of the Belgae. V, 12, 4.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, [bellum, war], full of war, warlike. I, 10, 5.

bellicus, -a, -um, military. VI, 24, 9.

bellō, 1. [bellum, war], n., make or carry on war, wage war. I, 2, 14.

Bellovacī -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe between the *Sequana*, *Samara*, and *Isara*. The modern city *Beauvais* derives its name from it. Their town *Bratuspantium* (II, 13) is the ruin *Bratuspante* near the modern *Breteuil*. II, 4, 13.

bellum, -i, n., war. I, 1, 11.

bene [benus = bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully: comp. **melius**; sup. **optimē**. III, 18, 10.

beneficium, -i [bene, well + faciō], n., well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, 9, 9.

benevolentia, -ae, f., good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, n., the chief town of the *Aedui*. I, 23, 3.

Bibrax, -ctis, f., a town of the *Remi*, supposed to be the modern *Bievre*. II, 6, 2.

Bibroci, -ōrum, m., V, 21, 3.

biduum, -i [bis, twice + diēs], n., space or period of two days, two days. I, 23, 1.

biennium, -i, two years. I, 3, 7.

Bigerrionēs, -um, m., III, 27, 3.

bini, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, 15, 2.

bi-pedālis, -e, of two feet. IV, 17, 16.

bipertitō, *adv.* [**bis**+**partior**, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I, 25, 19.
bis, *num. adv.* [for **duis**, fr. **duo**, two], on two occasions, twice. III, 12, 4.
Bitūriges, -um, *m.*, a tribe of Central Gaul in two branches, the *Vibisci* around Bordeaux, and the *Cubi* around Bourges. I, 18, 15.
Bođuōgnātus, -ī, *m.*, II, 23, 15.
Bōiī, -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful Celtic tribe of Central Gaul in modern Bourbonnais. Part migrated to northern Italy and another part to Germany. I, 5, 11.
bonitās, -tātis, *f.*, goodness. I, 28, 12.
bonus, -a, -um, *comp. melior*, *sup. optimus*, good, beneficial, profitable, well disposed, (with *animō*) friendly; as *subst.* **bonum**, -ī, profit, advantage; **bona**, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; **bonī**, -ōrum, the good, good men, or citizens. I, 6, 12.
bōs, **bovis**, *m., f.*, ox; cow. VI, 26, 1.
brachium, (**bracch-**) -ī, *n.*, the arm from the hand to the elbow, forearm. I, 25, 10.
Brannovicēs, -ium, *m.*, VII, 75, 8.
Brannovīī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe, dependents of the *Aedui*. VII, 75, 8.
Bratuspantium, -ī, *n.*, II, 13, 5.
brevis, -e, short, brief, transitory. I, 40, 36; III, 4, 1.
brevitās, -tātis, *f.*, shortness, brevity. II, 20, 7.
breviter, *adv.*, briefly.
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*). II, 4, 20.
Britannicus, -a, -um, of Britain, British. V, 4, 4.
Britannus, -a, -um, of Britain, British, *Britannic*: in *pl.* as *subst.*, the people of Briton, the Britons. IV, 21, 10.
brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice. V, 13, 11.
Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *E. g.*, Decimus Junius

Brutus Albinus, one of Caesar's legati in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompeius. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed in Gaul by order of Antonius. III, 11, 11.

C.

C, sign for 100. I, 2, 17.
C., *abbrev. for praenomen Gaius*.
Cabillōnum, -ī, *n.*, an important town of the *Aedui* on the Arar. VII, 90, 13.
Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Caius Valerius Caburus, a Celt honored with Roman citizenship by C. Valerius Flaccus, father of (C. Valerius) Procellus and Domnotaurus. I, 47, 11.
cacūmen, -inis, *n.*, top; point. VII, 73, 9.
cadāver, -eris [cadō, fall], *n.*, a fallen or dead body, carcass, corpse. II, 27, 10.
cadō, -ere, **cecidi**, **caesus**, *n.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, 15, 7.
Cadurcī, -ōrum, *m.*, an Aquitanian tribe. VII, 75, 9.
caedēs, -is [caedō, cut], *f.*, cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder. VI, 13, 13.
caedō, -ere, **cecidi**, **caesus**, cut, kill, slay. III, 29, 1.
caelestis, -e, heavenly. VI, 17, 9.
caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, a sacred rite; sacredness.
Caeroesi, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II, 4, 28.
caeruleus, -a, -um, azure. V, 14, 6.
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, (1), Caius Julius Caesar, conqueror of Gaul, and author of the *Commentaries*, (2) Lucius Julius Caesar, a kinsman and lieutenant of the former. I, 7, 1.
caesus, *see caedō*.
Caius, -ī, *m.* *See Gaius*.
calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, defeat. I, 12, 17.
Caleti, -ōrum (-es, -um), *m.*, a Belgic

- tribe near the mouth of the Seine.* II, 4, 27.
callidus, -a -um, shrewd. III, 18, 2.
calō, -ōnis [cāla, a log of wood], m., a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. II, 24, 5.
campester (tris), -tris, -tre [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level: loca, level country. VII, 72, 12.
campus, -i, m., plain; open space or country. III, 26, 14.
Camulogēnus, -i, m., a chief of the *Auleri*.
Caninius, -i, m., VII, 83, 7.
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing; sound; recite; predict.
Cantabri, -ōrum, m., III, 26, 15.
Cantium, -i, n., a district in the southeast of England, now Kent. V, 13, 3.
capillus, -i, m., the hair. V, 14, 7.
capio, -ere, cēpi, captus, a., take, capture, seize; take up; obtain. I, 1, 16.
capra, -ae, f., wild she-goat, roe, VI, 27, 2.
captivus, -i, [capiō, take], m., captive, prisoner. I, 22, 3.
captus, -ūs, m., seizing; capacity. IV, 3, 6.
captus, see **capio**.
caput, **capitis**, n., the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual; a head or leader; a section or chapter; mouth (*of a river*): **capitis poena**, capital punishment. I, 29, 6.
careō, 2, be without, be free from; miss, want.
carina, -ae, f., hull. III, 13, 2.
Carnūtēs, -um, m., a Gallic people between the Seine and Loire, about modern Chartres. II, 35, 7.
carō, **carnis**, f., flesh. V, 14, 4.
carpō, -ere, **carpsi**, **carptus**, pluck; rend; censure. III, 17, 16.
carrus, -i, m., n., cart. I, 3, 3.
cārus, -a, -um, dear, costly; valued; beloved.
Carvilius, -i, m., V, 22, 4.
casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut, hovel.
- cāseus**, -i, m., cheese. VI, 22, 2.
Cassi, -ōrum, m., V, 21, 3.
Cassiānus, -a, -um, of Cassius. I, 13, 7.
cassis, -idis, f., helmet.
Cassius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name: Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B. C., slain by the *Tigurini* in battle. I, 7, 13.
Cassivellaunus, -i, m., Caswallon, the commander -in-chief of the Britons against Caesar. V, 11, 18.
castellum, -i, [castrum, fort], n., fortress, redoubt, outwork. I, 8, 7.
Casticus, -i, m., I, 3, 10.
castrum, i, n., fort, stronghold: in pl., **castra**, **castrōrum**, fortified camp, camp. I, 12, 8.
cāsus, -ūs, [cadō, fall], m., what befalls; accident, chance, misfortune: **cāsū**, by chance. I, 12, 16.
Catamantaloedēs, -is, m., I, 3, 10.
catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter. I, 47, 20; III, 13, 9.
Catuvoicus, -i, m., a chief of the *Eburones*.
Caturigēs, -um, m., I, 10, 13.
causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; in *abl.* after a *gen.*, for the sake of; **causam dicere**, to plead a case. I, 1, 11.
cautē, *adv.*, cautiously; safely.
cautēs, -is, f., reef. III, 13, 22.
cautus, see **caveo**.
Cavarillus, -i, m., an *Aeduan* noble.
Cavarinus, -i, m., a chief of the *Senones*.
caveō, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautus**, n., be cautious or on one's guard; take heed or precautions. I, 14, 5.
cēdō, -ere, **cessi**, **cessus**, go; go away; give way, yield; grant, concede. II, 19, 12.
celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick; precipitate. IV, 23, 15.
celeritās, -tātis, [celer, swift], f., swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48, 18; II, 12, 13.
celeriter, [celer, quick], *adv.*, quickly, rapidly, speedily. I, 18, 3.

cēlō, 1, *a.*, keep covered or ²hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32, 11.

Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, I, 1, 3.

Celtillus, -ī, *m.*, an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

Cenabēnsēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of Cenabum.

Cenabum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Carnutes, now Orleans.

Cenimāgnī, -ōrum, *m.*, V, 21, 2.

Cenomānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe in *n. e.* Gaul.

cēnsēō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *a.*, estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. I, 35, 16; VII, 75, 3.

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. I, 29, 10.

centum (c), *indecl. num.*, a hundred. I, 2, 17.

centuriō, -ōnis [centum, a hundred], *m.*, centurion; the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39, 20; II, 17, 1.

cernō, -ere, crēvi, certus, *a.*, separate; discern, distinguish, perceive. VI, 21, 4.

certāmen, -inis, [certō, strive], *n.*, strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14, 22.

certō, *adv.*, [compare certus], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25, 13.

certō, 1, contend, strive, struggle.

certus, -a, -um, [for crētus, *p. p.* of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed: certiorē facere, to inform. I, 7, 8.

cervus, -ī, *m.*, deer. VI, 26, 1.

cēspes (caes-), -itis, [caedō, cut], *m.*, a cut sod, turf. III, 25, 5.

cēterus, -a, -um, (*in pl. only in Caesar*), the rest of, the remainder; *as subst.*, the rest, remaining, others.

Centrōnēs, -um, *m.*, (1), a Belgic tribe in Western Flanders. (2), a tribe of the Province in Savoy about modern Centron. I, 10, 12.

Cevenna, -ae, *f.*, the Cevennes mts. in the south of Gaul.

Cherusci, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe between the Weser and Elbe.

cibārius, -a, -um, pertaining to food; *n. pl. as subst.*, provisions. I, 5, 8.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. IV, 1, 17.

Cicerō, -ōnis, [cicer, a vetch or small pea], *m.*, a Roman cognomen: Quintus Tullius, brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates. VII, 90, 12.

Cimberius, -ī, *m.*, I, 37, 7.

Cimbri, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic people from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland). Having invaded Italy they were defeated by C. Marius near Verona, 101 B. C. I, 33, 17; II, 4, 7.

Cingetorix, -īgis, *m.*, a Treveran chieftain, a rival of Indutiomarus. V, 3, 5.

cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus, *a.*, encircle, surround, invest, encompass. I, 38, 10; VII, 69, 7.

cippus, -ī, *m.*, pillar, stockade. VII, 73, 13.

circinus, -ī, *m.*, a pair of compasses. I, 38, 9.

circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [circus, circle], about, near. I, 15, 13.

circuitus, -ūs [circumeō, go around], *m.*, going around; a winding path, circuit: in circuitū, all around. I, 21, 4.

circum [circus, a circle], *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, about; among. I, 10, 10.

circum-cidō, -ere, cidi, cīsus, cut out or off, isolate.

circumcīsus, *see circumcīdō*.

circum-clūdō, -ere, clūsi, clūsus, surround. VI, 28, 12.

circum-dō, dare, dedi, datus [dō, give], *a.*, give or put around, encompass, surround. I, 38, 13; IV, 32, 19.

circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead or draw around. I, 38, 9; III, 26, 5.

circum (circu-) -eō, īre, ivi (ii), itus [eō, go], *a.*, go or march around, traverse, visit. III, 25, 8.

circum-fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsus, surround; overwhelm.
 circumficiō, -ere, fēci, ictus [iaciō], *a.*, hurl, set or place around. II, 6, 5.
 circum-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send around.
 circum-muniō, *a.*, wall around; fortify. II, 30, 4.
 circum-plector, plecti, plexus sum, enfold. VII, 83, 5.
 circum-sistō, -ere, stiti [sistō, stand], *a.*, stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48, 17; III, 15, 2.
 circum-spiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus, look (around) for, examine.
 circum-vallō, 1. [vālum, rampart], *a.*, surround with a rampart, be-leaguer, invest. VII, 68, 11.
 circum-vehor, vehi, vōctus sum, ride or sail around.
 circum-veniō, -ire, vēni, ventus [veniō, come], *a.*, come around, surround, encompass; invest, circum-vent. I, 25, 16.
 cis, *prep.* with *acc.*, on this side, II, 3, 9.
 Cisalpinus, -a, -um, Cisalpine, *lying on the south side of the Alps.*
 Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, on this (the western) side of the Rhine.
 citātus, *see* citō
 citerior, -ius, *adj. comp.*, [cis, on this side], nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior=(Cisalpinā), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. I, 10, 15.
 citō, 1, incite. IV, 10, 7.
 citō, *adv. comp.*, citius, *sup.* citissimē, quickly, speedily. IV, 33, 12.
 citrā, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, this side, within. I, 12, 7.
 citrō, *adv.*, hither. I, 42, 10.
 civis, -is, *m., f.*, citizen.
 civitās, -tātis [civis, citizen], *f.*, citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city, nation, commonwealth. I, 2, 4.
 clam [cēlō, conceal], *adv.*, secretly, unawares. III, 18, 8.
 clamitō, 1, exclaim. V, 7, 20.

clāmor, -ōris [clāmō, cry out], *m.*, outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, 11, 17.
 clandestīnus, -a, -um, hidden, secret.
 clārus, -a, -um, clear, loud.
 classis, -is, *f.*, class, division; army, called out for duty; *esp.* fleet, including the marines. III, 11, 12.
 Claudius, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. *E. g.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher, *cos.* 54 B. C. V, 1, 1.
 claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus, *a.*, shut, close; shut in, enclose. I, 25, 15.
 clavus, -i, *m.*, spike. III, 13, 8.
 clēmētia, -ae [clēmōns, gentle], *f.*, gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14, 11.
 cliēns (cluēns), -entis [clueō, hear one's self called], *m., f.*, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4, 6.
 clientēla, -ae [cliēns, a client], *f.*, the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; dependents, vassals. VI, 12, 4.
 clivus, -i, *m.*, declivity; slope; ascent.
 Clōdīus, -i, *m.*, the plebian form of Claudius. *E. g.*, P. Clodius Pulcher, murdered by Milo.
 Cn., *abbrev. for* Gnaeus.
 coacervō, 1. [acervō, heap up], *a.*, heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27, 10.
 coactus, -ūs, *m.*, compulsion.
 co-āgmentō, 1, join, connect.
 Cocosātēs, -um, *m.*, III, 27, 5.
 coēmō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptus [cum + emō], *a.*, buy, buy up, purchase. I, 3, 4.
 co-eō, -ire, ivi (li), assemble. VI, 22, 5.
 coepi, coepisse, *defect.* [cum + apō (apiō), take hold], *a.*, have taken hold; began, commenced, undertook. *P. p.*, coeptus, -a, -um, begun, commenced. I, 15, 11.
 coeptus, *see* coepi.

coērcēō, 2. [arceō, shut up], *a.*, shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 17, 11.

cōgitō, 1. [cum+agitō, put in quick motion; consider], *a., n.*, consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. I, 33, 7; III, 24, 10.

cōgnātiō, -ōnis [cō-gnātus, connected by birth], *r.*, blood relationship; kinsman; family, clan. VI, 22, 4.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus [cum+(g)nōscō, know], *n.*, know thoroughly; learn, ascertain; study, investigate. I, 19, 1.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus [cum+agō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring together, collect, draw together, compress; force, compel, constrain. I, 4, 3.

cohors, -tis, *r.*, cohort. I, 40, 48; II, 5, 20.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, *r.*, cheering. II, 25, 1.

cohortor, 1. [cum+hortor, encourage], *a.*, encourage greatly, animate, rally. I, 25, 3.

collātus, see cōnferō.

collaudō (con-), 1. [laudō, praise], praise highly or in set terms, eulogize. V, 2, 7.

colligō, 1. [cum+ligō, bind], *a.*, bind or fasten together, unite, hamper. I, 25, 8.

colligō, (con-), -ere, lēgī, lēctus [legō, gather], *a.*, gather together, collect, assemble; recover one's senses or courage, rally. III, 6, 3.

collis, -is, *m.*, hill. I, 22, 8.

collocō, 1. [locō, place], *a.*, place together, place, set, station; arrange; nūptum collocāre, to give in marriage. I, 18, 16.

colloquium, -ī [colloquor, talk together], *n.*, talking together, conversation; conference, parley; communication, interview. I, 34, 3.

colloquor, -ī, locūtus sum [cum+loquor, speak], *n.*, speak with, converse, confer. I, 19, 16.

colō, -ere, colui, cultus, cultivate; inhabit, dwell; honor, cherish. IV, 1, 15.

colōnia, -ae, *r.*, settlement. VI, 24, 4.

color, -ōris, *m.*, hue, tint, color.

com-būrō, -ere, būssi, būstus, burn up. I, 5, 6.

comes, -itis, *m., r.*, companion.

comitium, -ī, *n.*, place of assembly or meeting; *pl.*, an election.

comitor, 1, accompany, follow.

commēātus, -ūs [commēō, go and return, make a trip], *m.*, communication, trip; supplies, provisions, (*military*) stores. I, 34, 9; II, 5, 16.

commemorō, 1. [memor, mindful], *a.*, call to mind, remind, state, mention. I, 14, 3.

com-mendō, 1, entrust; surrender. IV, 27, 17.

commēō, 1. [meō, go], *n.*, go, resort; *with ad.*, resort to, visit. I, 1, 8.

com-minus, *adv.*, [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52, 8.

com-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, [mittō, send], *a.*, send or bring together, unite, join; commit, cause, do; proelium committere, join or begin battle. I, 18, 18.

Commisus, -ī, *m.*, IV, 21, 14; V, 22, 11.

commodē [commodus, convenient], conveniently, readily, easily; nōn satis commodē, not very easily. I, 25, 9.

commodum, -ī [commodus, convenient], *n.*, convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35, 17; III, 22, 5.

commodus, -a, -um [modus, measure], in full measure; complete; suitable, favorable. I, 42, 16.

commone-faciō, -ere, feci, factus, remind forcibly. I, 19, 16.

commoror, 1. [moror, tarry], *a.*, tarry, wait, stop. V, 7, 6.

- com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus** [moveō, move], *a.*, move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate. I, 13, 4.
- commūniō, 1.** [commūnis, common], *a.*, make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13, 10.
- com-mūniō, 4.** [mūniō, fortify], *a.*, fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8, 7.
- commūnis, -e** [mūniō, serve], serving together; hence, common, general, universal, ordinary. I, 30, 14; II, 4, 12.
- com-mūtātiō, -ōnis** [mūtō, change], *n.*, a changing, change. I, 14, 14.
- com-mūtō, 1.** [mūtō, change], *a.*, change or alter completely, change; exchange. I, 23, 11.
- com-parō, 1** [parō, prepare], *a.*, prepare, get ready; supply, furnish, muster, equip. I, 3, 3.
- comparō, 1.** [com-par, equal to], *a.*, set in pairs, place in comparison, compare. I, 31, 41; VI, 24, 15.
- compellō, -ere, puli, pulsus** [com+pellō], to drive together, assemble, collect; to force, compel, constrain. II, 23, 4.
- compendium, -i, n.**, gain, profit.
- com-periō -ire, peri, pērtus, a.**, find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22, 4.
- com-plector, -i, plexus sum** [plectō, braid], *a.*, embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20, 2.
- com-pleō, -ēre, plēvī, plētus** [pleō, fill], *a.*, fill up or completely, complete. I, 24, 7.
- complūrēs, -a, [plūs, more]**, several, many; a great many. I, 8, 12.
- com-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus**, place together, unite.
- com-portō, 1.** [portō, carry], *a.*, carry together, collect. I, 16, 9.
- com-prehendō (prēndō), ere, -dī, -ēnsus** [preheneō, grasp], *a.*, grasp or lay hold of on both sides, seize, catch, take; comprehend, comprise. III, 14, 17.
- com-probō, 1,** approve, sanction; establish.
- compulsus, see compellō.**
- cōnātum, -i, n.**, trial, attempt. I, 3, 18.
- cōnātus, -ūs, m.**, attempt. I, 8, 16.
- con-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus** [cēdō, go], *a., n.*, go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield. I, 7, 15.
- con-certō, 1,** contend or dispute zealously, debate.
- con-cessus, -ūs, m.**, concession, permission.
- con-cidō, -ere, cidi, cīsus, out** down, slay, kill. I, 12, 11.
- concidō, -ere, cidi** [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall down or together, collapse, fall. III, 14, 19.
- conciliō, 1.** [concilium, assembly], *a.*, assemble or bring together; gain or win over; reconcile, conciliate. I, 3, 21.
- concilium, -i** [calō, call], *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. I, 18, 3.
- con-cipiō, -ere, cēpi, ceptus, receive, conceive.**
- concisus, see concidō.**
- concitō, 1.** [freq. of concieō, stir up], *a.*, stir up, rouse, instigate, incite. V, 26, 6.
- con-clāmō, 1.** [clāmō, cry out], *a., n.*, shout or cry out together, call aloud, cry or shout out. I, 47, 19; III, 18, 10.
- con-clūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus, [claudō, close], a.**, shut up, imprison, close, confine: **conclūsus mare**, an inland sea.
- con-crepō, -āre, crepui, crepitus, rattle, creak, clash.**
- con-currō, -ere, curri, cursus** [currō, run], *a., n.*, run or rush together; encounter, engage in conflict; concur, happen together. I, 48, 16; II, 20, 3.
- con-cursō, 1,** run about, traverse; skirmish.
- con-cursus, -ūs** [cursus, running], *m.*, a running together, rush, onset; collision, encounter; attack. I, 8, 16.
- con-demnō, 1,** convict, sentence.

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 23, 17.
 con-dōnō, 1. [dōnō, give], *a., n.*, give freely; give up; pardon, forgive. I, 20, 17.
 Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Treveri, east of the Meuse about modern Condroz. II, 4, 28.
 con-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, 4, 7.
 cōnfectus, see cōnficiō.
 cōnferciō, -ire, fersi, fertum, crowd together.
 cōn-ferō, ferre, contulī, collātus [ferō, bring], *a.*, bring or get together, collect, gather; ascribe to, charge; sē, retreat, take refuge: signa, join battle. I, 16, 9.
 cōnferthus, -a, -um [*p. p.* of cōnferciō, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. I, 24, 11.
 cōnfestim [festinus, in haste], hastily, at once, immediately. IV, 32, 11.
 cōn-ficiō, -ere, fecī, factus [faciō], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish; finish up, exhaust; furnish, prepare. I, 3, 6.
 cōn-fidō, -ere, fisis sum [fidō, trust], *n.*, trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; *in p. p.* as *adj.*, trusting in, relying upon. I, 23, 11.
 cōn-figō, -ere, fixī, fixus, fasten. III, 13, 8.
 cōn-finis, -e, adjoining, contiguous.
 cōnfinium, -ī, *n.*, confine, boundary.
 cōn-fiō, cōn-ferī, cōnfectus sum, to be accomplished.
 cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assurance. III, 18, 13.
 cōn-firmō, 1. [firmus, strong], *a.*, establish, strengthen, encourage; declare, assert. I, 3, 6.
 cōn-fisus, -a, -um, relying upon. V, 17, 9.
 cōn-fiteor, -ērī, fessus sum, acknowledge, confess.
 cōnfixus, see cōnfigō.

cōn-flagrō, 1, *n.*, burn, be on fire.
 cōn-flictō, 1, come in conflict, collide.
 cōn-fligō, -ere, fixī, flictus, *a., n.*, strike or clash together, dash against, contend, fight. II, 5, 7.
 cōn-fluēns, fluentis, *f.*, a flowing together. IV, 15, 4.
 cōn-fluō, -ere, flūxī, flow together.
 cōn-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, flee, take refuge.
 cōn-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, mingle; confuse. VII, 75, 5.
 congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum [grador, step], *a., n.*, step or come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. I, 36, 8. II, 23, 11.
 con-iciō, icere, iēcī, ictus, [iaciō], *a.*, hurl or throw together; cast; let fall; put together logically, conjecture. I, 26, 9.
 con-iectūra, -ae, *f.*, inference, conjecture.
 con-iūctim, *adv.*, jointly. VI, 19, 3.
 con-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, -iūctus [iungō, join], *a.*, join with or together, connect, unite. I, 37, 11; II, 3, 10.
 con-iūnx, iugis, *m., f.*, consort; spouse; husband; wife.
 con-iūrātiō, -ōnis, [iūrō, take an oath], *f.*, swearing together, plot, conspiracy; secret league. I, 2, 3.
 con-iūrō, [iūrō, swear], 1. *n.*, swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1, 6.
 cōnor, 1. *a.*, attempt, endeavor, try. I, 3, 16.
 con-quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētus, rest, repose; be idle.
 con-quirō, -ere, quisivī, quisītus [quaerō, search], *a.*, seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27, 8.
 conquisītus, see con-quirō.
 cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; as *subst.*, kinsman, relative. I, 11, 9.
 cōn-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23, 3.

- cōn-scientia**, -ae, *f.*, consciousness, knowledge, sense.
- cōn-sciscō**, -ere, -scivī, -scitus, [sciscō, resolve], *a.*, resolve upon, appoint, determine, decree. I, 4, 12.
- cōn-scius**, -a, -um, [sciō, know], *sharing in knowledge*; conscious; aware of. I, 14, 5.
- cōn-scribō**, -ere, scripsī, scriptus [scribō, write], *a.*, write together in a list, register; levy, enroll, enlist. I, 10, 9.
- cōnsecrō**, 1. [sacrō, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate. VI, 13, 27.
- cōn-sector**, 1, [sector, *freq.* of sequor, follow], *a.*, follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, 15, 10.
- cōnsecūtus**, *see* cōn-sequor.
- cōnsēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement. VII, 76, 6.
- cōnsēnsus**, -ūs, [cōnsentiō, think together, agree], *m.*, united opinion, agreement, coalition, consent. I, 30, 14; II, 28, 6.
- cōnsentiō**, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus [sentiō, feel], *a.*, *n.*, think together, agree, combine; conspire. II, 3, 6.
- cōn-sequor**, sequī, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], *a.*, follow up, go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, succeed. I, 13, 2.
- cōn-servō**, 1, [servō, save], save; spare, protect, maintain. II, 12, 15
- Cōnsidius**, -i, *m.*, Publius Considius, *one of Caesar's officers*. I, 21, 10.
- cōn-sidō**, -ere, sēdi, sessus [sidō, sit down], *n.*, sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, 21, 2.
- cōnsilium**, -i, [*cf.* cōnsul], *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, design, measure; plan; judgment, prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, a council. I, 5, 10.
- cōn-similis**, -e, very like, similar. II, 11, 5.
- cōn-sistō**, -ere, stiti, [con-sistō], *n.*, take a stand or position, keep one's position, stand, form, (*of soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; consist in, depend or rest on. I, 13, 16.
- cōnsōbrinus**, -ī, *m.*, first cousin. VII, 76, 13.
- cōn-sōlor**, 1, [sōlor, comfort], *a.*, cheer, comfort. I, 20, 14.
- cōnspectus**, -ūs [cōnspiciō, descry], *m.*, perception, observation; sight, view, presence. I, 11, 6.
- cōn-spiciō**, -ere, spēxi, spectus, [speciō, look], *a.*, look at attentively, observe, descry, perceive. I, 47, 18; II, 21, 14.
- cōnspicor**, 1. [spec- in obsol. speciō, look], *a. and n.*, look closely, observe, descry, perceive. I, 25, 17.
- cōn-spirō**, 1, combine. III, 10, 10.
- cōnstanter** [cōnstō, stand together, be consistent or steadfast], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2, 8.
- cōnstantia**, -ae, [cōnstāns, firm], *f.*, firmness, steadfastness. I, 40, 18; VII, 77, 28.
- cōn-sternō**, 1, cōnfound, perplex, dismay.
- cōn-sternō**, -ere, strāvī, strātus, strew over. IV, 17, 22.
- cōn-stīpō**, 1, press or crowd closely.
- cōn-stituō**, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [statuō, set up], *a.*, set up, station; put together; establish, settle, determine. I, 3, 2.
- cōn-stō**, -āre, stiti, stātus, stand firm; agree; be settled. III, 6, 6.
- cōnstrātus**, *see* cōn-sternō.
- cōn-suēscō**, -ere, suēvi, suētus [suēscō, become used], *n.*, become accustomed, be wont: *pf. used as pres. and plupf. as impf.; in p. p. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14, 13.
- cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, [cōnsuēscō], *f.*, habit, custom, practice. I, 31, 41; II, 17, 5.
- cōnsuētus**, *see* cōnsuēscō.
- cōnsul**, -ulis, [*cf.* cōn-sedeō, cōnsiliūm], *m.*, a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people*. I, 2, 2.

cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.*, consulship. I, 35, 4.
cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -ltus, *a., n.*, go to for advice, take counsel, consult; *with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, promote the welfare of. V, 3, 16.
cōsulō, 1, [*freq.* of **cōsulō**, deliberate], reflect, consider, take counsel. VII, 77, 5.
cōsultō [*abl. N.* of **cōsultus**, well considered], *adv.*, deliberately, designedly, on purpose. V, 16, 6.
cōsultum, -ī [**cōsulō**, deliberate], *n.*, result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. I, 43, 16.
cōn-sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus [sūmō, take], *a.*, take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11, 15.
cōn-surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus [surgō, rise], *n.*, arise together or in a body, rise up; of a session, break up. VI, 23, 14.
cōn-tabulō, 1, floor over; build in stories.
cōn-tāgiō, -ōnis, *f.*, contact; pollution. VI, 13, 19.
cōn-tāminō, 1, mingle; corrupt; pollute.
cōn-tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover up. VII, 85, 12.
cōn-temnō, -ere, tempsi, temptus, despise, disdain.
cōntemptiō, -ōnis [contemnō, despise], *f.*, disdain, contempt. III, 17, 15.
cōntemptus, -ūs, *m.*, scorn. II, 30, 10.
cōn-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [tendō, stretch], *n.*, push forward, hasten; strive, contend, fight. I, 1, 13.
contentiō, -ōnis [contendō, stretch out, struggle], *f.*, stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. I, 44, 32; V, 19, 2.
cōn-tentus, -a, -um, satisfied, pleased.

cōn-texō, -ere, texuī, textus, weave together. IV, 17, 22.
continēns, -entis [*pres. p.* of **continēō**, hold together], holding together; continuous, extensive; contiguous, neighboring; self-controlled, continent; *as subst.*, mainland, continent. III, 23, 9.
continenter [continēns], *adv.*, continuously, without interruption, continually. I, 1, 11.
continentia, -ae, *f.*, restraint, moderation.
contineō, -ere, -uī, tentus [teneō], *a.*, hold together; hold in check, restrain; enclose, contain, bound. I, 1, 16.
contingō, -ere, tigi, tactus [tangō, touch], *a.*, and *n.*, touch, reach; extend to, attain to; concern; befall, happen to. I, 38, 13.
continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, succession. III, 29, 9.
continuō, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith.
continuus, -a, -um, [continēō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 43, 7.
contiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly.
contrā, *adv.*, (I, 18, 10) and *prep. with acc.*, on the other hand; opposite. I, 40, 29; II, 1, 4.
cōn-trahō, -ere trāxī, tractus [trahō, draw], *a.*, draw or bring together, assemble; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34, 10.
contrārius, -a, -um, [contra], lying over against, opposite, facing. II, 18, 5.
contrōversia, -ae [contrō, *fr.* contrā+versus, turned], *f.*, dispute, quarrel, controversy. VI, 13, 12.
contumēlia, -ae [*cf.* contumāx, unruly], *f.*, affront, indignity, injury, violence. I, 14, 8.
cōn-valēscō, -ere, valui, gain health or strength, recover.
convallis, -is, *f.*, defile. III, 20, 17.

- con-vehō, -ēre, vēxī, vēctus**, collect. VII, 74, 8.
- con-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus** [veniō, come], *a., n.*, come together, assemble, convene, meet; come to, arrive; agree, to be agreed upon, be convenient or suitable. I, 6, 15.
- conventus, -ūs** [veniō, come], *m.*, coming together, meeting, assembly. I, 18, 5.
- con-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus**, [vertō, turn], *a., n.*, turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change: *itinere conversō*, altering his course; *signa convertere*, to change front. I, 23, 12.
- Convictolitāvis, -is, m.**, *an Aeduan chief*.
- con-vincō, -ere, vicī, victus**, overpower; convict. I, 40, 41.
- con-vocō, 1.** [vocō, call], *a.*, call together, summon, assemble. I, 16, 11.
- co-orior, orīri, ortus sum** [cum + orior, rise], *n.*, arise, spring up, rise with force, break forth. III, 7, 6.
- cōpia, -ae** [cum + ops, power], *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance; *in pl.*, resources, forces, troops. I, 2, 5.
- cōpiōsus, -a, -um**, wealthy. I, 23, 4.
- cōpula, -ae, f.**, grapnel. III, 13, 20.
- cor, cordis, n.**, heart. VI, 19, 13.
- cōram, adv.** [cum + ōs, face], face to face, in person. I, 32, 12; V, 11, 4.
- Coriosolitēs, -um, m.**, *a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern Corseult. A people of N. W. Gaul.* II, 34, 3.
- corium, -ī, n.**, skin, hide, leather.
- Cornelius, -ī, m.**, *a Roman nomen. E. g., L. Cornelius Sulla, the famous Dictator.* I, 21, 11.
- cornū, -ūs, n.**, horn; wing (*of an army*). I, 52, 3; II, 23, 13.
- corōna, -ae, f.**, wreath, garland, chaplet; tiara, coronet, crown; circle, crowd. III, 16, 11.
- corpus, -oris, n.**, body; person. I, 25, 10.
- cor-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus**, destroy, ruin, waste.
- cortex, -icis, m., f.**, bark. II, 33, 7.
- Cōrus, -ī, m.**, the northwest wind. V, 7, 6.
- cotidianus, -a, -um, adj.**, every day, daily; usual, customary. I, 1, 12.
- cotidiē** [quot, how many, every + diēs], daily, every day. I, 16, 1.
- Cotta, -ae, m.**, *a Roman cognomen; see Aurunculēus*.
- Cotus, -ī, m.**, *an Aeduan noble*.
- Cn., abbrev. for Gnaeus**.
- crassitūdō, -inis, f.**, thickness. III, 13, 8.
- Crassus, -ī, m.**, I, 21, 11.
- crātis, -is, f.**, hurdle. IV, 17, 22.
- crēber, -bra, -brum** [crēō, crēscō], thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent; *comp. crēbrior; supērl., crēberrimus*. II, 1, 2.
- crēbrō, adv.**, repeatedly, often.
- crēdō, dere, didī, ditus** [*Sanscrit* krat, trust + dō], *a.*, give trust or confidence, trust, entrust, believe, suppose. II, 33, 6.
- cremō, 1**, burn to ashes. I, 4, 4.
- crēō, 1. a.**, create, produce, elect, appoint. I, 16, 14.
- crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus** [*incept. of crēō, create*], *n.*, begin to create: grow or increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*); become famous or prominent. I, 20, 6.
- Crētēs, -um, m.**, II, 7, 2.
- crimen, -inis, n.**, accusation; crime, offence.
- Critōgnātus, -ī, m.**, *a chief of the Arverni*. VII, 77, 7.
- cruciātus, -ūs** [cruciō, crucify], *m.*, crucifying, torture, torment. I, 31, 7; II, 31, 13.
- crūdēlitas, -tātis** [crūdēlis, cruel], *f.*, cruelty, harshness. I, 32, 12. VII, 78, 8.
- crūdēliter** [crūdēlis, cruel], *adv.*, cruelly. I, 31, 44.

crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg. VI, 27, 3.
 cubile, -is, *n.*, couch. VI, 27, 6.
 culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, 2, 16.
 culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27, 9.
 cultus, -ūs [colō] *m.*, cultivation; training, culture, dress; civilization. I, 1, 7.
 cum, *conj.*, with *indic.*, simply defining the time when, when, while, whenever; with *subj.*, showing the situation in which the event occurred, when; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to cause the event, since, because; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to prevention, though, although. I, 1, 13.
 cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, 1, 10.
 cunctatiō, -ōnis [cunctor, delay], *f.*, delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18, 13.
 cunctor, 1. *n.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23, 19.
 cūctus, -a, -um [*contr. for con-iunctus, joined together*], all together, all. II, 29, 3.
 cuneātim, *adv.*, in wedge shape.
 cuneus, -i, *m.*, wedge.
 cuniculus, -i, *m.*, coney; burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21, 9.
 cupidē, [cupidus, desirous], *adv.*, desirously, eagerly. I, 15, 5.
 cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidus], *f.*, eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2, 3.
 cupidus, -a -um [cupiō, desire], desirous, eager, zealous, fond. I, 2, 14.
 cupiō, -ere, cupivī (iī), cupītus, *a. n.*, long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18, 19.
 cūr (quōr=quārē), *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why, for what reason. I, 40, 6; IV, 16, 15.
 cūra, -ae [*cf. caveō, take care*], *f.*, care, anxiety, attention. I, 33, 3.
 cūrō, 1, [cūra, care], *a.*, care for, take care, provide, arrange, cause to be done. I, 13, 3.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, run, hasten.
 currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; team. IV, 33, 6.
 cursus, -ūs [currō, run], *m.*, running, speed; course, career; passage. I, 48, 19; II, 23, 2.
 custōdia, -ae, *f.*, custody, guard (*state of being guarded*).—*Plur.* guards, keepers. II, 29, 13.
 custōdiō, 4, protect, defend.
 custōs, -ōdis, *m. f.*, guardian, watchman. I, 20, 21.

D.

D, sign for 500. III, 22, 3.
 D., *abbrev. for praenomen Decimus.* III, 11, 11.
 d.=diem. I, 6, 16.
 Dāci, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants of the province Dacia. VI, 25, 6.
 damnō, 1. [damnum, damage], 2, declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, 4, 3.
 dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; of, out of; concerning, for, with respect to; on account of, about, in regard to. I, 1, 11.
 dēbeō, 2. [*contr. for dē-habeō*], *a. n.*, have from (*one's possessions*) and hence, owe, be bound or under obligations; be due, ought. I, 11, 8.
 dē-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], *n.*, go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake. I, 31, 35; VI, 13, 18.
 decem, (x), *indecl. num.*, ten. I, 4, 5.
 dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decree.* II, 35, 11.
 dē-certō, 1. [certō, contend], *n.*, fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. I, 42, 11; II, 10, 15.
 dēcessus, -ūs, *m.*, departure. III, 13, 3.
 Decetia, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Aedui, now Decize.
 dēcidō, -ere, cidī, [cadō, fall], fall from or down, fall off. I, 48, 16.

- decimus, -a, -um**, [decem, ten], tenth. I, 40, 47; II, 21, 3.
- Decimus, -ī, m.**, a *praenomen*. III, 11, 11.
- dē-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, entrap**; deceive. I, 14, 6.
- dē-clārō, 1**, declare. I, 50, 13.
- dē-clivis, -e** [clivus, a slope], sloping downwards, declining; *as subst.*, slope. II, 18, 3
- dē-clivitās, -tātis, f.**, slope. VII, 85, 8.
- dēcrētum, -ī** [dēcernō, decide], *n.*, decision, decree, order. VI, 13, 16.
- dēcrētus**, *see* dēcernō.
- decumānus, -a, -um**, [decimus, tenth], of or pertaining to the tenth; *decuman*: **decumāna porta**, the rear gate. II, 24, 5.
- decuriō, -ōnis, m.**, decuria. I, 23, 7.
- dē-currō, -ere, curri** (cucurri), **cursum** [currō, run], *n.*, run from or away, hurry off; run down. II, 19, 21.
- dēdecus, -oris, n.**, dishonor. IV, 25, 17.
- dediticius, -a, -um**, [dēdō, surrender], surrendered, subject; *as subst.*, one surrendered (*formally*), prisoner. I, 27, 11.
- dēditō, -ōnis** [dēdō, give up], *f.*, giving up; surrender, capitulation. I, 27, 2.
- dēditus**, *see* dēdō.
- dē-dō, -ere, didī, dītus**, [dō, give], *a.*, give up or over, yield, surrender; **sē dēdere**, submit, surrender. II, 15, 7.
- dē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead down or away, withdraw, conduct, induce, influence; launch (*nāvēs*). I, 44, 36; II, 2, 3.
- dēfatigātiō, -ōnis, f.**, weariness. III, 19, 8.
- dē-fatigō, 1**. (defet-), [fatigō, weary], *a.*, completely weary, tire out, exhaust. I, 40, 25; V, 16, 13.
- dēfectiō, -ōnis**, [dēficiō, fail], *f.*, falling away, desertion, revolt. III, 10, 4.
- dē-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus, a.**, keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect; support, maintain. I, 11, 4.
- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis**, [dēfendō], *f.*, a defending, defence. II, 7, 4.
- dēfēnsor, -ōris** [dēfendō] *m.*, one who wards off or averts; defender, protector. II, 6, 7.
- dē-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, a.**, bring from or down, convey; confer, bestow. II, 4, 23.
- dēfessus, -a, -um**, [*p. p.* of dēfetiscor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. I, 25, 11.
- dēficiō, -ere, fecī, fectus** [faciō], *a., n.*, fail, fall away, desert. II, 10, 11.
- dē-figō, -ere, fixī, fīxus**, [figō, fix], *a.*, fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, 17, 11.
- dē-finiō, 4**, mark off. VII, 83, 12.
- dēfixus**, *see* dēfigō.
- dē-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus**, flow apart. IV, 10, 8.
- dē-fōrmis, -e** [fōrma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly; debasing, disgraceful. IV, 2, 6.
- dē-fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugītus**, flee from. VI, 13, 19.
- dē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus** [iaciō, hurl], *a.*, hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, 8, 12.
- dēiectus, -ūs, m.**, declivity. II, 8, 10.
- dēinceps, adv.** [deinde, thence+ capiō], next in succession, one after the other, in turn, successively. III, 29, 1.
- dē-inde** (dein), *adv.* [dē+inde, thence], from thence; thereupon, then; next. I, 25, 1.
- dēlātus**, *see* dēferō.
- dē-lectō, 1**, delight. IV, 2, 4.
- dēlectus, -ūs, m.**, selection, choice.
- dēleō, -ēre, lēvī, lētus** [linō, rub over], *a.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, 27, 6.
- dē-liberō, 1**. [libra, balance], *a.*,

weigh well, consider carefully, deliberate. I, 7, 19.

dē-librō, 1, peel. VII, 73, 8.

dēlictum, -i, n., fault, offence.

dē-ligō, -i, [ligō, bind], a., bind or tie down, fasten, moor. I, 53, 6; IV, 29, 6.

dē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus [legō, choose], pick or choose out, select, cull; levy, gather. I, 3, 9.

dē-litāscō, -ere, lituī, lurk. IV, 32, 16.

dēmentia, -ae, m., madness. IV, 13, 6.

dē-metō, -ere, messuī, messus, reap. IV, 32, 15.

dē-migrō, 1. [migrō, move, migrate], n., move from or away, emigrate, remove. IV, 4, 8.

dē-minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus [minuō, lessen], a., lessen, diminish, impair. I, 18, 21.

dēmissus, *see* dēmittō.

dē-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [mittō, send], a., send away or down, cast or thrust down: sē, descend; sē animō, lose courage; in p. p. as *adj.*, low; dejected, downcast. I, 32, 5; VII, 72, 12.

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsi, dēemptus, take away, remove.

dē-mōnstrō, 1. [mōnstrō, show], a., point out, declare precisely, show, prove, explain. I, 11, 13.

dē-moror, 1, delay. III, 6, 16.

dēmum, *adv.* [acc. of dēmus, (*superl.* of dē), downmost], at length, at last, finally. I, 17, 1.

dē-negō, 1, deny; refuse. I, 42, 7.

dēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, 43, 7; V, 14, 8.

dēnique, *adv.* [deinde, then+que], and then, thereupon, finally, at last. I, 22, 12.

dēnsus, -a, -um, closely set or packed, thick, dense. II, 22, 5.

dē-nūntiō, 1. [nūntiō, announce], a., announce, (*officially, by a herald. etc.*), declare; give or send notice. warn, threaten. I, 36, 15.

dē-pellō, -ere, puli, pulsus [pellō, drive], a., drive from or away, ward off. III, 25, 3.

dē-perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus [perdō, destroy], a., destroy utterly, ruin; lose entirely, forfeit, lose. I, 43, 21; III, 28, 16.

dē-pereō, -ire, -iī, itūrus, n., go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone. V, 23, 4.

dē-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], a., place down or aside, put away or off; place, station, deposit; give up; entrust. I, 14, 11.

dēpopulor, 1. *dep.* a., lay waste, ravage; sweep away, destroy. I, 11, 10.

dē-portō, 1, carry away. III, 10, 10.

dē-poscō, -ere, poposci, demand; call for.

dēpositus, *see* dē-pōnō.

dē-precātor [dēprecor, avert by entreaty], m., mediator, intercessor. I, 9, 4.

dē-precor, 1. [precor, pray], pray against, pray for deliverance, beseech, entreat, plead for. II, 31, 7.

dē-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, take away, seize upon.

dē-pūgnō, 1, fight decisively; contend.

dēpulsus, *see* dē-pellō.

dē-rēctē, *adv.*, straight. IV, 17, 12.

dē-rēctus, -a, -um, straight. IV, 17, 21.

dē-rivō, 1, divert. VII, 72, 12.

dē-rogō, 1, take away. VI, 23, 18.

dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [scandō, climb], a., climb or go down; descend; have recourse to, resort. VI, 16, 14.

dē-secō, -āre, secuī, sectus, cut away or off.

dē-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [serō, join], a., disjoin, disunite, abandon, desert; p. p. as *adj.*, deserted, solitary. I, 45, 4; II, 25, 10.

dēsertor, -ōris, m., deserter. VI, 23, 16.

dēsertus, *see* dēsērō.

- fēlicitās, -tātis**, [fēlix, happy], *f.*, happiness, good success or fortune. I, 40, 41.
- fēliciter, adv.**, happily. IV, 25, 12.
- femina, -ae, f.**, female, woman. VI, 21, 10.
- femur, -inis, n.**, the thigh. VII, 73, 17.
- fera, -ae, f.**, wild animal. VI, 25, 11.
- ferāx, -ācis, fertile.** II, 4, 17.
- ferē, adv.**, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, 1, 12.
- ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, a., n.**, carry, bring; endure, suffer, withstand; receive, report: ferunt, they say. I, 13, 14.
- ferrāmentum, -ī, n.**, an iron tool or implement.
- ferrāria, -ae, f.**, an iron mine.
- ferreus, -a, -um**, of iron, iron. III, 13, 8.
- ferrum, -ī, n.**, iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, axe, sword, spear-point, chain, etc. I, 25, 8.
- fertilis, -e** [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive. VI, 24, 4.
- fertilitās, -tātis, f.**, productiveness. II, 4, 4.
- ferus, -a, -um**, wild; *as subst.*, wild beast. I, 31, 15; II, 4, 24.
- fervefaciō, -ere, feci, factus**, heat, melt.
- fervēns, -entis**, [ferveō, be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.
- fibula, -ae, f.**, fastening. IV, 17, 18.
- fictus, see fingō.**
- fidēlis, -e** [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, 21, 16.
- fidēs, -ei** [fidō, confide], *f.*, good faith, confidence; pledge, promise; assurance. I, 3, 22.
- fidūcia, -ae** [fidō, confide], *f.*, confidence, trust, reliance. VII, 76, 15.
- figūra, -ae** [fingō, form], *f.*, form, shape, figure. IV, 25, 6.
- filia, -ae, f.**, daughter. I, 3, 17.
- filius, -ī, m.**, son. I, 3, 11.
- fingō, -ere, finxi, factus**, [*cf.* **figūra, form**], *a.*, form, shape, devise, invent. I, 39, 15; IV, 5, 12.
- finiō, 4.** [finis limit], *a.*, limit, bound; determine, appoint; end, finish. IV, 16, 14.
- finis, -is** [*cf.* findō, divide], *m.*, boundary, limit, border; *in pl.*, boundaries, territory, country. I, 1, 18.
- finitimus, -a, -um** [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *in pl. as subst.*, neighbors. I, 2, 18.
- fiō, fieri, factus sum** (*pass. of faciō*), be made or done; come to pass, result, happen. I, 2, 12.
- firmiter, adv.**, strongly. IV, 26, 2.
- firmitūdō, -inis** [firmus, strong], *f.*, strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13, 18.
- firmō, 1**, strengthen, fortify; establish.
- firmus, -a, -um**, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3, 23.
- fistūca, -ae, f.**, pile-driver. IV, 17, 11.
- Flaccus, -ī, m.** I, 47, 12.
- flāgitō, 1**, demand. I, 16, 2.
- flamma, -ae, f.**, fire, blaze. VI, 16, 11.
- flectō, -ere, flexi, flexus, a., n.**, bend, curve, turn, turn around, direct in turning. IV, 33, 11.
- fleō, -ēre, flēvi, flētus, a., n.**, weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20, 18.
- flētus, -ūs, m.**, weeping; tears. I, 33, 2.
- flō, 1**, blow. V, 7, 8.
- flōrens, -entis** [flōreō, flower], flowering, blooming; flourishing, prosperous. I, 30, 7; IV, 3, 6.
- flōs, flōris, m.**, blossom, flower.
- fluctus, -ūs** [fluō, flow], *m.*, flowing, billow, flood, wave. III, 13, 5.
- flūmen, -inis fluō, flow**, *n.*, a flowing; river, stream. I, 1, 5.
- fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxus, flow, run.** I, 6, 8.
- fodiō, -ere, fōdi, fossus, dig.** VII, 73, 15.

- apart, separate, divide. III, 23, 16.
- diēs**, -ēi, *m., f.*, day: in *diēs*, from day to day. I, 4, 4.
- dif-ferō**, ferre, *distuli*, *dilatūs*, [dis-, apart], *a. and n.*, bear apart, disperse, spread; defer, distract; be different, differ. I, 1, 4.
- difficilis**, -e, [dis-+facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 6, 3.
- difficultās**, -tātis [difficilis, difficult], *f.*, difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20, 7.
- difficulter**, *adv.*, with difficulty.
- dif-fidō**, -ere, *fisus sum*, distrust; despair.
- dif-fundō**, -ere, *fūdī*, *fūsus*, pour or spread out. VI, 26, 4.
- digitus**, -i, *m.*, finger; *as measure of length*, an inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot; *digitus pollex*, the thumb. III, 13, 8.
- dignitās**, -tātis [dignus, worthy] worthiness, merit, rank. I, 43, 21; III, 16, 4.
- dignus**, -a, -um, worthy, deserving, fitting.
- dīiudicō**, *i.*, distinguish; decide.
- dilēctus**, -a, -um, beloved, dear.
- diligenter** [diligēns], *adv.*, carefully; with exactness, pains or care. II, 5, 4.
- diligentia**, -ae [diligēns, heedful], *f.*, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40, 12; III, 20, 8.
- diligō**, -ere, *lēxī*, *lēctus* [dis+legō, choose], *a.*, single or choose out, esteem highly, love, be attached to. VI, 19, 15.
- dī-mētiōr**, -iri, *mēnsus sum*, measure out or off. II, 19, 14.
- dīmīcātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, fight. VII, 86, 5.
- dī-micō**, *i.* [micō, brandish], *n.*, brandish (*one's weapons*) in different directions; hence fight, struggle, contend. II, 21, 10.
- dimidium**, -i, *n.*, see *dimidius*.
- imīdius**, -a, -um [medius], divided in the middle, halved
- half; *in neut. as subst.*, a half. V, 13, 7.
- dī-mittō**, -ere, *mīsī*, *missus* [dis-, apart], *a.*, send apart or away, break up, dismiss; release, abandon, renounce. I, 18, 4.
- dī-rigō**, -ere, *rēxī*, *rēctus*, distribute; lay out.
- dirimō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, interrupt. I, 46, 12.
- diripiō**, -ere, *ripuī*, *reptus* [rapīō, seize], *a.*, rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, 17, 11.
- Dis**, *Ditis*, *m.*, Dis; Pluto. VI, 18, 1.
- dis-cēdō**, -ere, *cessī*, *cessus* [cēdō, go], *n.*, go apart or away, depart, leave, retire, forsake. I, 14, 23
- disceptātor**, -ōris, *m.*, judge, umpire.
- dis-ceptō**, *i.* decide, arbitrate.
- dis-cernō**, -ere, *crēvī*, *crētus*, discern. VII, 75, 5.
- discessus**, -ūs, [discēdō, go asunder], *m.*, a going asunder, departure, withdrawal; defection. II, 14, 1.
- disciplina**, -ae, [contr. of *discipulina*, fr. *discipulus*, learner], *f.*, learning, instruction, drill, discipline. I, 40, 17; IV, 1, 19.
- dis-clūdō**, -ere, *clūsi*, *clūsus* [claudō, shut, close], *a.*, shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV, 17, 18.
- discō**, -ere, *didicī*, *a., n.*, learn, be taught. I, 13, 16.
- discrimen**, -inis, *n.*, interval; distinction; decision; crisis.
- dis-cutiō**, -ere, *cussi*, *cussus*, strike asunder, shatter, destroy.
- disiciō**, -ere, *iēcī*, *iectus*, [iaciō, hurl], *a.*, hurl apart or aside; scatter, rout, disperse. I, 25, 5.
- dis-pār**, *paris* [pār, equal], unequal, unlike, dissimilar, ill-matched, V, 16, 8.
- dis-parō**, *i.*, separate.
- dispergō**, -ere, *spersī*, *spersus*, [spargō, scatter], spread, scatter; *in p. p. as adj.*, dispersed, scattered. I, 40, 28; III, 28, 12

dis-pōnō, -ere, **posuī**, **positus** [pōnō, place], *a.*, place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8, 6.
disputatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, argument, discussion.
dis-putō, 1, discuss, debate about. VI, 14, 19.
dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [dis-sentiō, think differently], *f.*, disagreement, dissension. VI, 22, 12.
dis-sentiō, -ire, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, differ, disagree.
dis-serō, -ere, sow or set at intervals. VII, 73, 25.
dis-simulō, 1, disguise. IV, 6, 10.
dis-sipō, 1. [obsol. supō=iaciō], *a.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24, 16.
dis-suādeō, -ere, **suāsī**, **suāsus**, advise against.
distineō, -ere, **tinuī**, **tentus** [teneō, hold], *a.*, hold or keep apart; sunder, divide, isolate. II, 5, 6.
distō, -stāre [dis-apart], *n.*, stand apart; be apart, removed, or separated. IV, 17, 17.
dis-trahō, -ere, **trāxī**, **trāctus**, pull asunder, divide.
dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribuō, assign], *a.*, assign apart, divide, distribute. III, 10, 11.
dītissimus, *superl.* of **dives**.
diū, *adv.* [diēs], by day, *cf.* noctū; for a long time, long; **quam diū**, as long as; *comp.* **diūtius**, longer, too long, any longer; *superl.* **diūtissimē**. I, 14, 12.
diurnus, -a, -um [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. I, 38, 15.
diūtinus, -a, -um, of long duration, long.
diūturnitās, -tātis [diūturnus, prolonged], *f.*, long duration. I, 40, 25; III, 4, 8.
diūturnus, -a, -um, long. I, 14, 16.
diversus, -a, -um [*p. p.* of **divertō**, turn in different directions], facing different ways, opposite, contrary; diverse, different. II, 22, 18.

dives, **dīvitis**, wealthy, rich. I, 2, 2.
Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, an *Helvetian chieftain*. I, 13, 7.
dī-vidō, -ere, **visi**, **visus** [dis-apart], *a.*, divide, sunder, separate; *in p. p.* as *adj.*, divided. I, 1, 1.
dīvinus, -a, -um [dīvus, divine] of the gods, celestial, divine. II, 31, 4.
Diviciacus, -ī, (1), a *chief of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorix and friendly to the Romans*. (2), a *chief of the Suessiones*. I, 3, 15.
dō, dare, **dedi**, **datus**, *a.*, give, bestow, confer; furnish, present; yield, give up: *in fugam dare*, put to flight. I, 3, 17.
doceō, -ere, -uī, **doctus**, *a.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43, 12; II, 5, 5.
documentum, -ī, *n.*, example; proof, evidence.
doleō, 2, *n.*, feel or suffer (*bodily*) pain, suffer; feel (*mental*) pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. I, 14, 14.
dolor, -ōris [doleō, grieve], *m.*, grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*); vexation, annoyance. I, 2, 14.
dolus, -ī, *m.*, craft, tricks, treachery. I, 13, 17.
domesticus, -a, -um [domus], of or belonging to the home, home, domestic. II, 10, 16.
domicilium, -ī, *n.*, a fixed abode or residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30, 10; II, 29, 17.
dominor, 1, be master; rule. II, 31, 14.
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master. VI, 13, 7.
Domitius, -ī, *m.*, a *Roman nomen*. *E. g. L. Domitius Ahenobarbus*, *cos. 54, B. C. V, 1, 1*.
domus, -ūs (-ī *in loc.*) *dat.* **domui** (domō), *abl.* domō, *f.*, house; home; native country or home, I, 5, 7.
dōnō, 1. [dōnum, gift], *a.*, give, bestow, endow with. I, 47, 12.
Donnotaurus, -ī, *see Valerius*.

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, present, gift.
dorsum, -ī, *n.*, back; ridge.
dōs, dōtis [dō, give], *f.*, a marriage gift or portion, dowry. VI, 19, 1.
druidēs, -um, *m.*, the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain. VI, 13, 8.
Dūbia, -is, *m.*, the Doubs. I, 38, 9.
dubitātiō, -ōnis [dubitō, doubt], *f.*, doubt, uncertainty. I, 14, 2.
dubitō, 1, *a, n.*, have two opinions, waver in judgment, be uncertain, doubt. I, 17, 8.
dubius, -a, -um [duo], uncertain, doubtful. I, 3, 19.
ducentī, -ae, -a(cc), *card. num.*, two hundred. I, 2, 17.
dūcō, -ere, **dūxī**, ductus, *a.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3, 7.
ductus, -ūs, *m.*, conducting, leading; command.
dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until; provided that, if only. I, 7, 18.
Dumnorix, -igis, *m.*, an Aeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus. I, 13, 14.
duo, duae, duo, *num. adj.*, two. I, 6, 1.
duo-decim (xii), *indecl. num.*, twelve. I, 5, 4.
duo-decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, twelfth. II, 23, 13.
duodēni, -a, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [duodecim], twelve each, twelve at a time. V, 14, 8.
duo-dē-vigintī, *card. num.*, eighteen. II, 5, 21.
duplex, plicis [plicō, bend, fold], two-fold, double. II, 29, 8.
duplicō, 1. [duō+plicō, fold], *a.*, double; increase. IV, 36, 3.
dūritia, -ae, *f.*, hardship. VI, 21, 7.
dūrō, 1, harden. VI, 28, 6.
Dūrocortorum, -ī, *n.*, the capital of the Remi, now Rheims.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, rough, diffi-

cult; severe, inclement, unfavorable. I, 48, 16.

Dūrus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen, see Laberius.

dux, ducis [dūcō, lead], *m.*, *f.* leader, guide, commander. I, 21, 6.

E.

ē (only before consonants) **ex** (before vowels and consonants), *prep. with abl.* out, out of, from: **ex itinere**, on the march; **ūnā ex parte**, on one side. I, 2, 8.

eā, *adv.*, on that side or way, there.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.*, clients of the Treveri, living between the Meuse and Rhine. II, 4, 28.

Eburovicēs, -um, *m.*, II, 34, 3.

ē-discō, -ere, didici, learn thoroughly, get by heart. VI, 14, 6.

ēditus, -a, -um, elevated, lofty. II, 8, 7.

ē-dō, dere, didi, ditus, give out; inflict. I, 31, 45.

ē-doceō, 2. [doceō, teach], *a.*, teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, 18, 5.

ē-dūcō, -ere, **dūxī**, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead out or forth, draw forth. I, 10, 10.

ef-farciō, -ire, fertus, stuff, fill out.

ef-feminō, 1. [femina, woman], *a.*, make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. I, 1, 9.

efferrō, efferre, extuli, **ēlātus**, *a.*, bring or carry out, carry or take away; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, 5, 9.

efficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus [ex+faciō], *a.*, make or do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. I, 38, 14; II, 5, 18.

ef-fodiō, -ere, **fōdi**, fossus, dig out; mine.

ef-fugiō, -ere, **fūgī** [fugiō, flee], *a. n.*, flee from or away, avoid, shun, escape. IV, 35, 3.

egēns, -entis, *partic. adj.* [egeō], in want, needy, destitute.

egeō, egēre, eguī, *a.* need, want, lack; be without or destitute.

VI, 11, 11.

egestas, -tātis, *r.*, poverty. VI, 24, 10.

ego, mei, etc. *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* nōs, we, us, etc. I, 40, 17; II, 9, 13.

ego-met, *emphatic for ego*, I myself, I for my part.

egredior, -gredi, -gressus [*gradior*, step], *a., n.*, step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. I, 27, 13.

ēgregiē [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, 29, 4.

ēgregius, -a, -um [ē+grex, herd], *out of the common herd*; superior, eminent, remarkable. I, 19, 10.

ēgressus, -ūs, *m.*, going forth. V, 8, 11.

ē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, cast or drive out, expel. IV, 7, 9.

ēiusmodī, of such a sort or kind, such.

ē-lābor, -ī, lapsus sum, slip away, glide off, escape.

ē-lātus, *see efferō*.

Elaver, -eris, *m.*, a river of Aquitania, the Allier.

ē-lēctus, *see eligō*.

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, *f.*, elephant; ivory. VI, 28, 2.

Eleuteti, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe tributary to the Arverni. VII, 75, 9.

ē-liciō, -ere, -uī, -itus, draw or entice out, lure forth.

ē-ligō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus [*legō*, choose], *a.*, choose or pick out, select; *in pf. partic.*, picked (men, etc.) II, 4, 16.

Elusātēs, -um, *m.*, III, 27, 4.

ē-migrō, *l.*, remove. I, 31, 50.

ē-mineō, -ēre, -uī, project. VII, 72, 14.

ēminus, *adv.* aloof, at a distance.

ē-mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus [*mittō*, send], *a.*, let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge. I, 26, 10.

emō, -ere, emī, emptus, buy, procure, purchase. I, 16, 15.

ē-nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born from; spring up. II, 17, 18.

enim, *conj. corroborative and explanatory* [e-(i) fr. is+nam, for], in fact, really; for, but, now; *sed enim*, but in fact, however. I, 14, 13.

ē-nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus) sum, struggle out; strive, struggle.

ē-numerō, *l.*, reckon up; recount.

ē-nūntiō, *l. a.*, report, declare, disclose. I, 4, 1.

eō, ire, ivi(ii), itūrus, *n.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6, 13.

eō, *adv.*, in or to that place, there; thither; therefore. I, 25, 12.

eōdem, *adv.* [idem *sc. locō*], to the same place, to the same point, result, end, etc. I, 4, 7.

ephippiātus, -a, -um, caparisoned. IV, 2, 12.

ephippium, -ī, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, caparison; housing, trappings. IV, 2, 11.

epistola, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

Eporedorix, -igis, *m.*, VII, 76, 12.

epulae, -ārum, *f.*, viands; banquet. VI, 28, 13.

eques, -itis, *m.*, a horseman, a rider. —*Plur.* cavalry. Then (*as orig. serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). Also, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). I, 15, 8.

equester, -tris, -tre [*eques*, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian; of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18, 26.

equitātus, -ūs, [equitō, ride], *m.*, a riding; cavalry, horsemen. I, 15, 2.

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. I, 22, 5.

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, VI, 24, 5.

ē-rēctus, *see erigō*.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards, in respect of.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore. VII, 77, 29.

ērigō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus [*regō*, direct], *a.*, lift or raise (up); *p. p.*

as *adj.*, standing upright, high. III, 13, 4.

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiō, seize], *a.*, wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4, 8.

errō, I, wander; err.

ē-rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptus, break forth. III, 5, 13.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [rumpō, break out], *r.*, a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, 33, 11.

essedārius, -ī [essedā, a war chariot], *m.*, a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24, 2.

essedum, -ī, *n.* (a Celtic word), a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. IV, 32, 19.

Esubiī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people near the Veneti, near modern Essey. II, 34, 3.

et, and, and further, also, too, even; *et . . . et*, both . . . and. I, 1, 5.

etiam [et+iam], *conj.*, and also, even also. I, 1, 17.

et-si, *conj.*, even if, although. I, 46, 6; III, 24, 4.

ē-vādō, -ere, vāsī, vāsus, escape. III, 19, 13.

ē-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus, pluck out. I, 25, 8.

ē-veniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, result. IV, 25, 12.

ēventus, -ūs [veniō, come], *m.*, out-come, issue, result, consequence. II, 22, 9.

ēvocātus, *see* ēvocō.

ēvocō, I, [vocō, call], *a.*, call forth or out, summon. III, 20, 12.

ēvolō, I, fly or rush forth. III, 28, 13.

ex, *see* ē.

ex-āctus, *see* exigō.

ex-agitō, I. [*freq.* of agō, set in motion], *a.*, drive out or away, stir up, rouse, disturb, harass, persecute. II, 29, 15.

ex-āminō, I, weigh. V, 12, 10.

exanimō, I. [animus, breath], *a.*, deprive of breath or life, render breathless, exhaust; *in p. p.* as

adj., breathless, exhausted. II, 23, 3.

ex-ārdēscō, -ere, ārsī, ārsus, kindle; be inflamed or enraged. V, 4, 15.

ex-audiō, I, hear (*from a distance*), discern. II, 11, 17.

ex-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], *n.*, go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25, 11.

ex-cellō, -ere, -uī, celsus, surpass. VI, 13, 23.

excelsus, -a, -um, eminent; high. VI, 26, 2.

ex-ceptō, I, take out or up; catch.

ex-cidō, -ere, cidī, cisus, hew away.

ex-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, take out, off, or up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*), succeed; intercept. I, 52, 9; III, 5, 12.

excitō, I. [citō, rouse], *a.*, call or rouse forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). III, 10, 8.

exclūdō, -ere, clūsi, clūsus [claudō, shut], *a.*, shut out, out off; hinder, prevent. V, 23, 12.

ex-cōgitō, I, think out, contrive, devise, invent.

ex-cruciō, I. [cruciō, torture], *a.*, torture greatly, torment, rack. VI, 19, 11.

excubitor, -ōris, *m.*, watchman. VII, 69, 14.

ex-cubō, -āre, -uī, -itus, lie or camp out; keep guard.

ex-culcō, I, trample. VII, 73, 20.

excursiō, -ōnis [excurrō, run forth], *r.*, a running out or forth, sally, sortie. II, 30, 2.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, *r.*, excusing; declining.

ex-cūsō, I, justify; apologize. IV, 22, 3.

exemplum, -ī, [eximō, take out], *n.*, selection; pattern, model; precedent, example; warning, punishment. I, 8, 10.

ex-eō, ire, ivī (ii), itus [eō, go], *n.*, go from or out, depart from, leave. I, 2, 5.

- exerceō**, 2. [**arceō**, ward or drive off], *a.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. I, 48, 12; VI, 23, 12.
- exercitātiō**, -ōnis [**exercitō**, *freq. of* **exerceō**, exercise], *f.*, exercising, training; practice, experience. I, 39, 5; III, 19, 9.
- exercitātus**, -a, -um *p. p.* of **exercitō**, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36, 18; II, 20, 9.
- exercitus**, -ūs [**exerceō**, train], *m.*, a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. I, 3, 21.
- ex-hauriō**, -ire, **hausi**, **haustus**, draw out, empty, exhaust.
- ex-igō**, -ere, **ēgi**, **āctus**, finish, pass; determine. III, 28, 1.
- exiguē**, *adv.*, meagerly, scarcely.
- exiguitās**, -tātis [**exiguus**, scant], *f.*, scantiness, meagerness, want. II, 21, 9.
- exiguus**, -a, -um [**exigō**, drive or weigh out], weighed out exactly; scanty, short, small, meagre, limited. IV, 20, 1.
- eximius**, -a, -um, eminent, II, 8, 2.
- existimātiō**, -ōnis [**existimō**, estimate], *f.*, judging, opinion. I, 20, 9.
- ex-istimō** 1. [**aestimō**, compute], *a.*, estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6, 13.
- exitus**, -ūs [**eō**, go], *m.*, going out, exit; issue, result, end. III, 8, 14.
- ex-pediō**, 4, extricate, free.
- expeditiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, campaign, enterprise, expedition. V, 10, 21.
- expeditus**, -a, -um, [*p. p.* of **expediō**, disengage], unimpeded, free unobstructed, light armed: *as subst.*, a light armed soldier. I, 6, 6.
- ex-pellō**, -ere, **puli**, **pulsus** [**pellō**, drive], *a.*, drive out or forth, expel. II, 4, 5.
- experior**, -periri, -pertus sum, prove, try, test, experience. I, 31, 52; II, 16, 7.
- ex-piō**, 1, atone for, expiate; avenge.
- ex-pleō**, **plēre**, **plēvi**, **plētus** [**pleō**, fill], *a.*, fill out or up; finish, complete. VII, 79, 12.
- explōrātor**, -ōris, *m.*, explorer, scout, spy. I, 12, 5.
- explōrātus**, *see* **ex-plōrō**.
- ex-plōrō**, 1. [**plōrō**, weep, flow], *a.*, cause to flow out, search or find out, investigate; spy out, reconnoitre. II, 4, 10.
- ex-pōnō**, -ere, **posui**, **positus** [**pōnō**, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; set forth, explain. IV, 23, 6.
- ex-portō**, 1, carry away. IV, 18, 9.
- ex-poscō**, -ere, **poposci**, entreat, demand.
- exprimō**, -ere, -pressi, -pressus [**premō**, press], *a.*, press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, 32, 8.
- expūgnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, taking by assault, storming.
- ex-pūgnō**, 1. [**pūgnō**, fight], *a.*, take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, 11, 8.
- exquirō**, -ere, **quisivi**, **quisitus** [**quærō**, search], *a.*, seek or search out, inquire, investigate. I, 41, 11; III, 3, 6.
- ex-sequor**, -i, **secutus sum**, follow out, exercise. I, 4, 9.
- ex-serō**, -ere, -uī, -tus, thrust or put out; uncover.
- ex-sistō**, -ere, **stiti** [**sistō**, cause to stand], *n.*, stand or come forth, appear, arise, ensue. III, 15, 8.
- ex-spectō**, 1. [**spectō**, look at], *a.*, look out, wait; look out for, await, expect; anticipate, apprehend. I, 11, 14.
- ex-spoliō**, 1, rob. VII, 77, 24.
- ex-stinguō**, -ere, -nxi, -nctus, put out, quench; destroy.
- ex-stō**, -āre, **stiti**, stand out; be prominent; exist. V, 18, 10.
- ex-struō**, -ere, **strūxi**, **strūctus** [**struō**, build], *a.*, build or pile up, rear, construct, build. II, 30, 5.

exterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, outer, exterior. VII, 74, 4.
exter (**exterus**), **extera**, **exterum**, outer; foreign: *sup. extremus*.
ex-terreō, 2. [**terreō**, frighten], *a.*, frighten outright, strike with terror, scare. VII, 77, 33.
ex-timēscō, -ere, **timui**, dread. III, 13, 24.
ex-torqueō, -ēre, **torsī**, **tortus**, wrest or force from, extort.
extrā [contr. fr. **exterā**, sc. **parte**], *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, 10, 18.
ex-trahō, -ere, **trāxi**, **trāctus**, draw out; prolong; waste away. V, 22, 14.
extrēmus, -a, -um, [*superl. of exter*, outer], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme. I, 1, 19.
ex-trūdō, -ere, **trūsi**, **trūsus**, thrust or shut out. III, 12, 7.
exul, -ulus, *m.*, and *f.*, wanderer, exile.
exuō, uere, **uī**, **ūtus**, draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. III, 6, 10.
ex-ūrō, -ere, -ūssi, -ūstus, burn up. I, 5, 11.
exūtus, see **exuō**.

F.

faber, -brī, *m.*, workman; mechanic. V, 11, 6.
Fabius, -ī, *m.*, a *nomen*. *E. g.*, (1) C. Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. VII, 87, 2. (2) L. Fabius, a centurion of the VIII legion. (3) Q. Fabius Maximus, victor over the Gauls 121 B. C. I, 45, 6.
facile [**facilis**, easy], *adv.*, easily, readily. *Comparative, facilius, superl., facillimē*. I, 2, 6.
facinus, -oris [**faciō**, do], *n.*, deed, misdeed, outrage, crime; I, 40, 40; III, 9, 8.
faciō, -ere, **feci**, **factus**, *a.*, and *n.*, make, do, accomplish, effect, form; *pass. fiō, fieri, factus*. I, 2, 4.

factiō, -ōnis [**faciō**, make], *f.*, making, doing; combination, party, faction. I, 31, 10; VI, 11, 6.
factum, -ī, [*p. p. of faciō, half noun, half participle, to be trans. according to the context*], *n.*, act, action, exploit, thing done, deed. III, 14, 25.
factus see **fiō**.
facultās, -tātis [*old adj.*, **facul= facilis**, easy], *f.*, ability, power, privilege, opportunity; resources, means. I, 7, 16.
fāgus, -ī, *f.*, beech tree or timber. V, 12, 13.
fallō, -ere, **fefelli**, **falsus**, deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, 10, 9.
falsus, -a, -um, deceived; false. VI, 20, 6.
falx, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook, falchior. III, 13, 15.
fāma, -ae, [*inf. fārī*, to speak], *f.*, common talk, reputation, fame; rumor, report. VII, 77, 45.
fāmēs, -is, *f.*, hunger; want. I, 28, 8.
familia, -ae [**famulus**, house-servant], *f.*, the slaves of a household; vassals, dependents, retinue; household, establishment. I, 4, 5.
familiāris, -ē [**familia**, household], pertaining to the household, personal, private; as *subst.*, intimate friend; **rēs**, personal property, estate. I, 18, 11.
familiāritās, -tātis, *f.*, intimacy. V, 3, 14.
fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right. I, 50, 15; V, 12, 14.
fastigātō, *adv.*, sloping. IV, 17, 12.
fastigātus, -a, -um, sloping. II, 8, 10.
fastigium, -ī [**fastigō**, make pointed], *n.*, the top of a gable; summit, elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope. VII, 69, 7.
fātum, -ī, *n.*, fate lot. I, 39, 17.
faveō, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautus**, favor. I, 18, 18.
fax, **facis**, *f.*, firebrand, torch.

- fēlicitās, -tātis**, [fēlix, happy], *f.*, happiness, good success or fortune. I, 40, 41.
- fēliciter**, *adv.*, happily. IV, 25, 12.
- femina, -ae, f.**, female, woman. VI, 21, 10.
- femur, -inis, n.**, the thigh. VII, 73, 17.
- fera, -ae, f.**, wild animal. VI, 25, 11.
- ferāx, -ācis**, fertile. II, 4, 17.
- ferō, adv.**, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, 1, 12.
- ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, a., n.**, carry, bring; endure, suffer, withstand; receive, report: *ferunt*, they say. I, 13, 14.
- ferramentum, -ī, n.**, an iron tool or implement.
- ferrāria, -ae, f.**, an iron mine.
- ferreus, -a, -um**, of iron, iron. III, 13, 8.
- ferrum, -ī, n.**, iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, axe, sword, spear-point, chain, etc. I, 25, 8.
- fertilis, -e** [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive. VI, 24, 4.
- fertilitās, -tātis, f.**, productiveness. II, 4, 4.
- ferus, -a, -um**, wild; *as subst.*, wild beast. I, 31, 15; II, 4, 24.
- fervefiō, -ere, feci, factus**, heat, melt.
- fervēns, -entis**, [ferveō, be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.
- fibula, -ae, f.**, fastening. IV, 17, 18.
- fictus**, *see* fingō.
- fidēlis, -e** [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, 21, 16.
- fidēs, -eī** [fidō, confide], *f.*, good faith, confidence; pledge, promise; assurance. I, 3, 22.
- fidūcia, -ae** [fidō, confide], *f.*, confidence, trust, reliance. VII, 76, 15.
- figūra, -ae** [fingō, form], *f.*, form, shape, figure. IV, 25, 6.
- filia, -ae, f.**, daughter. I, 3, 17.
- filius, -ī, m.**, son. I, 3, 11.
- fingō, -ere, finxi, factus**, [cf. figūra, form], *a.*, form, shape, devise, invent. I, 30, 15; IV, 5, 12.
- finiō, 4.** [finis limit], *a.*, limit, bound; determine, appoint; end, finish. IV, 16, 14.
- finis, -is** [cf. findō, divide], *m.*, boundary, limit, border; *in pl.*, boundaries, territory, country. I, 1, 13.
- finitimus, -a, -um** [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *in pl. as subst.*, neighbors. I, 2, 13.
- fiō, fieri, factus sum** (*pass. of faciō*), be made or done; come to pass, result, happen. I, 2, 12.
- firmiter, adv.**, strongly. IV, 26, 2.
- firmitūdō, -inis** [firmus, strong], *f.*, strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13, 18.
- firmō, 1**, strengthen, fortify; establish.
- firmus, -a, -um**, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3, 23.
- fistūca, -ae, f.**, pile-driver. IV, 17, 11.
- Flaccus, -ī, m.** I, 47, 12.
- flāgitō, 1**, demand. I, 16, 2.
- flamma, -ae, f.**, fire, blaze. VI, 16, 11.
- flectō, -ere, flexi, flexus, a., n.**, bend, curve, turn, turn around, direct in turning. IV, 33, 11.
- fleō, -ere, flevi, fletus, a., n.**, weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20, 13.
- fletus, -ūs, m.**, weeping; tears. I, 33, 2.
- flō, 1**, blow. V, 7, 8.
- flōrens, -entis** [flōrēō, flower], flowering, blooming; flourishing, prosperous. I, 30, 7; IV, 3, 6.
- flōs, flōris, m.**, blossom, flower.
- fluctus, -ūs** [fluō, flow], *m.*, flowing, billow, flood, wave. III, 13, 5.
- flūmen, -inis fluō, flow, n.**, a flowing; river, stream. I, 1, 5.
- fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxus, flow, run.** I, 6, 8.
- fodiō, -ere, fodi, fossus, dig.** VII, 73, 15.

foedus, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.
 forem = *essem*.
 fore = *futurus esse*.
 foris, *adv.*, abroad. VII, 76, 19.
 forma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. III, 14, 16.
 fors, fortis [ferō], *f.*, chance: forte, *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. II, 21, 2.
 fortis, -e, strong, valiant, brave. I, 1, 6.
 fortiter [fortis, brave], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11, 16.
 fortitudō, -inis, *f.*, courage. I, 2, 16.
 fortuitō, *adv.*, by chance.
 fortuna, -ae [fors, chance], *f.*, luck, chance; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11, 15.
 fortunātus, -a, -um, prospered, fortunate.
 forum, -i, *n.*, a public place; court market.
 fossa, -ae [*p. p. fem. of fodiō*, dig], *f.*, trench, ditch. I, 8, 6.
 fovea, -ae, *f.*, pitfall. VI, 28, 5.
 frangō, -ere, frēgi, fractus, *a.*, break, crush, subdue, discourage. I, 31, 21; IV, 29, 8.
 frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, 3, 15.
 frāternus, -a, -um [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20, 9.
 fraus, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.
 frēmītus, -ūs [fremō, murmur], *m.*, murmuring, a confused noise, din. II, 24, 10.
 frēquēns, -entis, constant, regular; repeated, common, frequent; numerous, crowded, in great numbers. IV, 11, 14.
 frētus, -a, -um, relying upon. III, 21, 2.
 frigidus, -a, -um, cold. IV, 1, 21.
 frīgus, -oris [frīgeō, be cold or chilly], *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, frigora, -um, cold seasons. I, 16, 3.
 frōns, -tis, *f.*, brow; front. II, 8, 10.

fructuōsūs, -ā, -um, productive. I, 30, 10.
 fructus, -ūs, *m.*, enjoyment; fruit, crops; profit. IV, 19, 4.
 frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; rēs, supply of grain, provisions: (loca) productive. I, 10, 7.
 frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, getting grain or fodder, foraging.
 frūmentor, *l.*, get grain. IV, 12, 4.
 frūmentum, -i, *n.*, grain; *in pl.*, crops. I, 3, 5.
 frūor, -i, fructus sum, enjoy. III, 22, 5.
 frūstrā, *adv.*, [fraus, deceit], in deception or error; without effect, in vain. III, 4, 6.
 fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight. I, 11, 12.
 fugiō, -ere, fugi, *n.*, flee, fly, run away; escape. I, 53, 2; II, 11, 13.
 fugitīvus, -a, -um, [fugiō, flee], fleeing, *as subst.* a runaway slave. I, 23, 7.
 fugō, *l.*, put to flight, chase; rout. VII, 68, 1.
 fūmō, *l.*, smoke, fume.
 fūmus, -i, *m.*, smoke. II, 7, 10.
 funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. IV, 25, 5.
 funditor, -ōris, *m.*, slinger. II, 7, 3.
 fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *a.*, pour, discharge, scatter; overthrow, rout. III, 6, 10.
 fungor, -i, fūctus sum, perform, execute, discharge.
 fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. III, 13, 9.
 fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral. VI, 19, 11.
 furor, -ōris [furō, rage], *m.*, rage frenzy, madness. I, 40, 10; II, 3, 11.
 fūrtum, -i, *n.*, theft. VI, 16, 12.
 fūsilis, -e, liquid, molten.
 futūrus, *see sum*.

G.

Gabali, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe. VII, 15, 9.

Gabinus, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. Aulus Gabinus, consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B. C. I, 6, 16.

gaesum, -ī, n., a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). III, 4, 4.

Gāius, -ī, m., a praenomen. I, 40, 14; III, 5, 7.

Galba, -ae, m., (1) a king of the Suessiones. (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul, said to have been one of his assassins. II, 13, 2.

galea, -ae, f., helmet. II, 21, 11.

Gallia, -ae [Gallius, -a, -um, Gallic], f., Gaul, the country of the Galli, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany. I, 1, 1.

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallia], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22, 6.

gallina, -ae, f., hen. V, 12, 14.

Gallus, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic; in pl. as subst., the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. I, 1, 3.

Garumna, -ae, m., the Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. I, 1, 5.

Garumnī, -ōrum, m., III, 27, 4.

Gates, -um, m., III, 27, 4.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice. IV, 13, 17.

gāvīsus see gaudeō.

Geidumnī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe, dependents of the Nervii.

Genāva -ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. I, 6, 10.

gener, -eri, m., son-in-law.

generātīm [genus, race or tribe], adv., by tribes, nation by nation. I, 51, 8.

gēns, gentis [genō, old form of gignō, beget], f., race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28, 2,

genus, -eris [gen- in gignō, beget], n., descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. I, 48, 2; III, 14, 6.

Gergovia, -ae, f., the chief town of the Arverni.

Germāni, -ōrum, m., pl., men of the hills, hill-folk. II, 4, 29.

Germānia, -ae, f., Germany, including the country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea. IV, 4, 4.

Germānicus, -a, -um [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German, IV, 16, 1.

Germānus, -ī, [Celtic Gairmean, one who shouts the war cry, or wehr-mann, war-man, warrior], m., a German; in pl. the Germans; Germānus, -a, -um, German. I, 1, 10.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, a., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, perform, wage, conduct. I, 11.

gladius, -ī, m., sword. I, 25, 5.

glāns, glandis, f., acorn; bullet. VII, 81, 12.

glōba (glae), -ae, f., clod of earth, sod.

glōria, -ae, f., glory, renown, honor, fame. I, 2, 15.

glōrior, 1. [glōria, glory], n., glory, glory in, boast of. I, 14, 12.

Gnaeus (Cn.), -ī, m. IV, 1, 1.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., an Avernian chief.

Graecus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian. I, 29, 2.

Grāioceli, -ōrum, m., I, 10, 13.

grandis, -e, great, large, bulky. I, 43, 2; VII, 72, 14.

grātia, -ae [gratus, pleasing], f., favor, good will, gratitude; esteem, influence, popularity; grātias agere, thank. I, 9, 5.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [grātulor, express joy], f., expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, 53, 20; VII, 78, 9,

grātulor, 1, congratulate; thank. I, 30, 8.

gratus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable, welcome. I, 44, 89; VI, 16, 18.

gravis, -e, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe; serious, important, advanced (*of age*). I, 20, 2.

gravitās, -tātis [gravis, heavy], *f.*, heaviness, weight; power, dignity. IV, 3, 11.

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, with greater weight, with force.—Fig., severely, seriously: **graviter ferre**: take to heart, be annoyed; **premere**, press hard.

gravor, 1, be unwilling. I, 35, 6.

Grudii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii.

gubernātor, -ōris [gubernō, steer or pilot], *m.*, steersman, pilot. III, 9, 4.

gustō, 1, taste. V, 12, 14.

H.

habeō, 2, *a. and n.*, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. I, 2, 16.

haesitō, 1, stick or cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -i *m.*, hook. VII, 73, 24.

harpagō, ōnis, *m.*, grapple. VII, 81, 2.

Harūdēs, -um, *m.*, a German tribe from Julland, which joined the army of Ariovistus. I, 31, 36.

haud, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, of the Helvetii, Helvetian; *as subst.*, *m.*, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii. I, 1, 11.

Helvii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Rhone and Cevennes.

Hercynia, -ae, *f.*, the Hercynian forest. VI, 24, 5.

herēditās, -tātis, *f.*, inheritance, VI, 13, 14.

hiberna, -ōrum, *n.*, see **hibernus**.

hibernāculum, -i, [hibernō, pass the winter], *n.*, a wintering-place;

in pl., huts or tents for wintering, winter quarters. II, 35, 9.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland.

hibernus, -a, -um, of or belonging to winter, cold, winter; *in n. pl.*, *as subst.*, **hiberna**, -ōrum, (*sc. castra*), winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10, 10.

hic, **haec**, **hōc**, *gen. hūius*, *dem. pron.*, used for what is near in space, time, or thought, this, this man (woman or thing); *in pl.*, these, they, etc.; *used of what precedes with more emphasis than is.*

hic . . . ille, the one . . . the other; the latter (*as nearer*) . . . the former (*as more remote*). I, 1 8.

hic, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*), there in that place. IV, 19, 11.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [hiems, winter], *n.*, pass the winter, winter. I, 10, 10.

hiems, (hiemps), **hiemis**, [Sanskrit, himas snow], *f.*, winter time, winter. III, 7, 4.

hinc, *adv.*, hence. VI, 25, 6.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain, the country of the Hispani, including the whole peninsula. I, 1, 22.

Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish.

homō, -inis, [*cf.* humus, earth], *m.*, human being, man; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. I, 2, 14.

honestus, -a, -um, [honor, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53, 17.

honōrificus, -a, -um, conferring honor. I, 43, 17.

honōs, (honor), -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), varying according to the season.* I, 26, 5.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, dread. I, 32, 13.

horribilis, -e, dreadful, horrible.

horridus, -a -um, bristling; hideous. V, 14, 6.

hortor, 1, exhort, encourage, urge strongly, cheer. I, 19, 19.

hospes, -itis *m.*, *f.*, host, entertain-

er; guest, friend. I, 53, 18; V, 6, 9.
hospitium, -ī [hospes, host or guest], *n.*, the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31, 21; VII, 75, 23.
hostis, -is, *m.*, *f.*, stranger, foreigner; (*public*) enemy, foe; *pl.*, the enemy. I, 11, 11.
hūc, *adv.* [old form for hōc fr. hīc], to this place, hither, here. I, 36, 14; III, 19, 2.
hūius-mōdī, of this sort, kind or nature. III, 3, 11.
hūmānitās, -tātis, [hūmānus, human], *m.*, humanity, courteousness, refinement. I, 1, 7.
hūmānus, -a, -um [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, refined, cultivated. IV, 3, 7.
humerus, (umerus), -ī, *m.*, the shoulder.
humilis, -e [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject. IV, 3, 13.
humilitās, -tātis, *f.*, lowness; humility. V, 1, 12.

I.

I, sign for one.
iacēō, -ēre iacui, lie; be slain. II, 27, 9.
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *a.*, make or cause to go; throw, cast fling; throw up, construct. II, 6, 6.
iactō, 1. [freq. of iaciō, hurl], *a.*, throw or hurl repeatedly, toss; (*of words*) talk about, mention, discuss. I, 18, 3.
iactūra, -ae, *f.*, loss. VI, 12, 6.
iaculum, -ī, *n.*, javelin.
iam, *adv.*, now (*denoting immediate occurrence in ref. to the past, present or future, while nunc emphasizes the present*), already, by this time, at length. I, 5, 3.
ibī (ibi), *adv.*, there. I, 10, 9.
Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi. II, 3, 2.
ictus, -ūs, [icō, strike], *m.*, stroke, blow, thrust. I, 25, 7.
īd., *abbrev. for* Idūs,

idcircō, *adv.*, therefore. V, 3, 18.
idem, eadem, idem [is+dem], *dem. adj. pron.*, the same; this very, also. I, 3, 16.
identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly. II, 19, 10.
idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, adapted. II, 8, 6.
Idūs, -uum, *f.*, *pl.*, the Ides, the time of the full moon; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and 13th of other months. I, 7, 20.
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. I, 4, 4.
ignōbilis, -e, unknown, ignoble.
ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace. VII, 80, 17.
ignōrō, 1. [ignārus, not knowing] *a.*, not know, be ignorant of, be unacquainted with; fail to observe, overlook: *pass.*, be unobserved, unrecognized. I, 27, 12.
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in+(g)nōscō, know], *v.*, forgive, pardon. I, 45, 6; IV, 27, 10.
ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, unfamiliar; base. IV, 24, 6.
illātus, *see* inferō.
ille, illa, illud, *gen. illius, dat. illi, dem. adj. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc. of hīc*), that: *as subst.* he, she, it; that man, that woman, etc.; hīc . . . ille, this . . . that, the latter . . . the former. I, 3, 18.
illic [ille, that+ce], in that place, there. I 18, 16.
il(in)-ligō, 1, attach. IV, 17, 21.
illō, *adv.*, there. VI, 13, 31.
il(in)-lūstris, -e, illumined; distinguished. VI, 19, 8.
Illyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. II, 35, 6.
imbēcillitās, -tātis, *f.*, weakness. VII, 77, 26.
imber, imbris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain (*esp. sudden, heavy, or violent*). III, 29, 10.
imitor, 1. imitate, copy after.
immānis, -e [old Lat. manus=bonus, good], out of proportion, huge. IV, 1, 20,

im-mineō, -ēre, —, —, project hang over; touch on.

im (in-) mittō, -ere, misi, missus, a., send or let into, let in or down, insert, introduce. IV, 17, 11.

im-molō, 1, sacrifice. VI, 16, 4.

immortalis, -e [in+~~mortalis~~, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, 12, 16.

immūnis, -e, unburdened. VII, 76, 4.

immūnitās, -tātis, f., immunity. VI, 14, 3.

im-pār, paris, uneven, unequal.

im-parātus, -a, -um, not ready or prepared.

impedimentum, -ī [impediō, hinder], n., hindrance, obstacle: *pl.* baggage or luggage (of an army), baggage-train including the draught animals). I, 24, 10.

im-pediō, 4. [in+~~pēs~~, foot], a., entangle the feet; hamper, obstruct, embarrass, hinder: *in p. p. as adj.*, encumbered with baggage, burdened, hampered, hindered. I, 12, 10.

im-peditus, -a, -um, encumbered, hampered. I, 12, 10.

impellō (in-), -ere, puli, pulsus [pellō, drive], a., drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40, 10; II, 14, 4.

im-pendeō (in-), -ēre [pendeō, hang], n., hang or be suspended over, overhang, impend, threaten. I, 6, 5.

im-pēnsus, -a, -um, expensive; great. IV, 2, 4.

imperātor, -ōris [imperō, command], m., commander-in-chief, general. I, 40, 15; II, 25, 19.

imperātum, -ī, n., order, command, II, 3, 7.

im-perfectus, -a, -um, unaccomplished. VI, 12, 14.

im-peritus, -a, -um [peritus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40, 30; IV, 22, 4.

imperium, -ī [imperō, command], n., command, order; authority,

sway; supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2, 6.

imperō, 1. [in+~~parō~~, procure], a., n., make requisition upon, demand from, enjoin or levy upon, command. I, 7, 5.

impetrō, 1. [patrō, accomplish], a., obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request); **impetrāre ā (ab)**, gain permission from, persuade; **si nōn impetrāret**, if he failed to obtain his request. I, 9, 5.

impetus, -ūs [petō, attack], m., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22, 11.

im-pius, -a, -um, wicked. VI, 13, 18.

im-plicō, 1, entwine. VII, 73, 12. **implōrō, 1.** [plōrō, call out], a., beseech, entreat, implore. I, 31, 25; V, 7, 19.

impōnō, -ere, posui, positus [pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount; embark. I, 42, 19.

im-portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry or bring in, import. I, 1, 9.

im (in-) primis, adv. [abl. *pl.* of primus], among the first; in the first place, particularly. I, 33, 7; III, 10, 5.

im-probus, -a, -um, wicked. I, 17, 5.

im-prōvisō, adv., I, 13, 13.

im-prōvisus, -a, -um [prō+videō, see], not seen before, unforeseen, unexpected: *abl.* **imprōvisō, adv.**, unexpectedly, suddenly. I, 13, 13.

im (in-), -prūdēns, -entis [prūdēns, foreseeing], not foreseeing, off one's guard, imprudent, unwary. III, 29, 2.

imprudentia, -ae, f., want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, 27, 9.

im-pūbēs, -eris, immature; chaste. VI, 21, 8.

impugnō, 1. [in+pugnō, fight], *a.*, fight against, attack, assail. I, 44, 20; III, 26, 12.
impulsus, see **impellō**.
impulsus, ūs, *m.*, instigation, impulse. V, 25, 8.
impūne, *adv.*, without punishment. I, 14, 12.
impūnitās, -tātis, *f.*, impunity. I, 14, 16.
imus, *superl. of inferus*. III, 19, 1.
in, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, (*a*) with *acc. (of motion)*, into, to, among, in, towards, against; (*of time*) up to, till, for; on, about; *with abl.*, (*of space*) in, upon, among, over, at, within; (*of time*) in, during, at, in the course of; on, upon, in the case of. I, 1, 1.
inānis, -e, empty. V, 23, 8.
in-cautē, *adv.*, unwarily.
in-cautus, -a, -um, heedless, unwary.
incendium, -ī, *n.*, conflagration. V, 19, 13.
in-cendō, -ere, cendī, cēnsus [candēō, shine], *a.*, set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite, rouse. I, 5, 5.
in-certus, -a, -um [certus, determined], uncertain, indefinite, vague, untrustworthy. IV, 5, 11.
in-cidō, -ere, cidi, [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, befall. I, 53, 15; II, 14, 13.
in-cidō, -ere, cidi, cīsus, cut into. II, 17, 17.
incipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, undertake, begin, commence. II, 2, 5.
in-citō, 1. [cieō, rouse], *a.*, rouse, instigate, incite. I, 4, 8.
in-cōgnitus, -a, -um [cōgnōscō, learn, know], not ascertained, unknown. IV, 20, 9.
in-colō, -ere, colui, —, [colō, cultivate], *a. and n.*, inhabit, live, dwell in. I, 1, 2.
in-columis, -e, unhurt, uninjured. I, 53, 23; III, 6, 16.
in-commodē, *adv.*, inconveniently, unseasonably.

in-commodum, -ī [commodum, convenience], *n.*, inconvenience, loss, trouble, disaster, defeat. I, 13, 12.
in-crēdibilis, -e [crēdibilis, worthy of belief], unworthy of belief, unlikely, extraordinary. I, 12, 2.
increpitō, -āre, [freq. of increpō, chide], *a.*, call or cry out to, chide, taunt, banter, blame. II, 15, 13.
in-cumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitus, recline upon; bend to. VII, 76, 9.
in-cursiō, -ōnis, *f.*, onset. V, 1, 16.
in-cursus, -ūs, *m.*, inroad, attack.
incūsō, 1. [causa, cause or case], *a.*, bring a case or charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. I, 40, 3; II, 15, 13.
inde, *adv.* [im loc. fr. is, +de], from that place, from there, thence. I, 10, 17.
indicium, -ī [indicō, disclose], *n.*, disclosure, information. I, 4, 1.
in-dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus [dicō, say], *a.*, say publicly, proclaim, announce, appoint. I, 30, 12; VII, 75, 2.
in-dicō, 1, point out, announce.
in-dictus, -a, -um, unsaid.
in-dignē, *adv.*, unworthily, dishonorably.
indignitās, -tātis [indignus, unworthy], *f.*, unworthiness, outrage, disgrace. II, 14, 6.
indignor, 1. deem unworthy, resent.
in-dignus, -a, -um, unworthy, shameful.
in-diligēns, -entis, heedless. VII, 71, 8.
in-diligenter, *adv.*, carelessly. II, 33, 5.
indiligentia, -ae, *f.*, heedlessness.
in-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate. I, 2, 3.
indulgentia, -ae, *f.*, forbearance; affection.
indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultus, [in+dulcis, pleasant], be pleas-

ant or indulgent to, treat with favor or kindness, favor; yield or be addicted to. I, 40, 49.

in-duō, -ere, dui, dūtus, *a.*, put on: *sē induere*, fall into or upon, become entangled in. II, 21, 11.

industriō, *adv.*, diligently.

indūtiae, -ārum, *f.*, truce. IV, 12, 6.

Indutiomarus, -ī, *m.*, V, 3, 4.

in-eō, ire, ivi (ii), itus, *a., n.*, go into, enter upon, begu; adopt, undertake, form (cōnsilium), estimate (numerus). II, 2, 3.

inermis, -e, [arma, arms], without arms, or weapons, unarmed, II, 27, 4.

inermus, -a, -um, unarmed. I, 40, 19.

in-ers, ertis, inactive; cowardly. IV, 2, 11.

infāmia, -ae, *f.*, ill repute. VI, 23, 10.

in-fans, -antis, not speaking: *as subst.* infant.

in-fectus, -a, -um, not done, unaccomplished.

inferior, -ius, *comp.* of inferus. I, 1, 19.

in-ferō, ferre, intuli, illātus [ferō, bear], *a.*, bear, bring, or make upon, inflict; *signa inferre*, to advance the standards, to attack. I, 2, 13.

inferus, -a, -um, low, below, underneath: *comp.* inferior, lower, inferior: *sup.* infimus, or imus, lowest, last, at the foot or bottom. I, 1, 19.

infestus, -a, -um, disturbed; dangerous.

infiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus, stain. V, 14, 5.

in-fidelis, -e, untrustworthy, faithless.

in-figō, -ere, fixi, fixus, fasten in. VII, 73, 24.

infimus, II, 18, 5, *superl.* of inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um, endless. V, 12, 7.

infirmitas, -tātis, [in-firmus, not strong], *f.*, weakness, fickleness, inconstancy. IV, 5, 1.

in-firmus, -a, -um [firmus,

strong], not strong, weak, feeble; fait, discouraged. III, 24, 9.

in-flectō, -ere, flexi, flexus [flectō, bend], *a., n.*, bend in, bend, curve, infect. I, 25, 8.

in-fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxus [fluō, flow], *n.*, flow in or into, empty into. I, 8, 3.

in-fodiō, -ere, fōdi, fossus, dig or drive in. VII, 73, 24.

infrā, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.* [for *infera* (*sc. parte*) from inferus, below], below, beneath; inferior, under; after. IV, 36, 9.

in-gēns, -entis [in, *neg.* + gēns, race, kind, lit. *not of the kind i. e. out of proportion*], enormous, huge, vast, great. I, 39, 4; IV, 10, 9.

in-grātus, -a, -um, disagreeable.

ingredior, gredi, gressus sum, [gradior, step, go], *a., n.*, go or walk into, march or advance upon, enter. II, 4, 7.

in-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], *a.*, throw or cast into or upon, put or place on; put into, inspire, infuse, inject. I, 45, 14. IV, 17, 22.

inimicitia, -ae, *f.*, enmity. VI, 12, 22.

in-imicus, -a, -um [amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile: *as subst.*, an enemy (*personal*). I, 7, 16.

iniquitās, -tātis, *f.*, inequality, unfairness; unfavorable position. II, 23, 9.

iniquus, -a, -um [aequus, even, just], uneven, unjust, unfair, unfavorable. I, 44, 12; II, 10, 10.

initium, -i [in-eō, go into], *n.*, beginning, commencement, origin. I, 1, 15.

in-iungō, -ere, iūnxi, iunctus, join to; impose. VII, 77, 47.

in-iūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong, injustice; outrage. I, 7, 17.

in-iūssū, *abl.* from iniūssus, -ūs, [iubeō, order], without command or order. I, 19, 4.

in-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum [nāscor, be born], *n.*, be born in,

be begotten or engendered in, spring up, arise. *P. p. as adj.*, inborn, ingrained. I, 41, 3.

in-nitor, -i, nixus (nisus) sum, lean upon. II, 27, 3.

in-nocēns, -entis, harmless; upright. VI, 16, 14.

innocentia, -ae, *f.*, integrity. I, 40, 41.

inopia, -ae [inops, needy], *f.*, need, want, poverty, destitution. I, 27, 1.

in-opināns, -antis [opinor, suppose], not supposing, unawares. I, 12, 10.

inquam, -is, -it; *perf.*, inquit, *def. verb.*, say. IV, 25, 12.

in-sciēns, -entis [sciō, know], unaware, ignorant. I, 19, 5.

inscientia, -ae, *f.*, ignorance. III, 10, 15.

in-scius, -a, -um [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, unconscious, unawares. IV, 4, 14.

in-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], *a., n.*, follow up or after, pursue; press close, harass. I, 15, 6.

in-serō, -ere, serui, sertus, thrust in. III, 14, 15.

insidiae, -arum [sedeō, sit], *f., pl.*, a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade: per insidiās or ex insidiis, by artifice or stratagem. I, 13, 17.

insidior, i, lie in ambush.

insignis, -e [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *in neut. as subst.*, mark, sign, signal, decoration. I, 12, 17.

in-siliō, -ire, silui, leap in or on. I, 52, 11.

in-simulō, i, charge, blame, accuse.

in-sinuō, i, wind into; penetrate. IV, 33, 4.

in-sistō, -ere, stitī, [sistō, place, stand], *a., n.*, stand upon; stand firm; press on, pursue. II, 27, 9.

insolenter [in-solēns, unwonted], *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly. I, 14, 11.

in-spectō, i, look at, view.

in-stabilis, -e, unsteady. IV, 23, 15.

instar, *n., indecl.*, likeness. II, 17, 19.

instigō, i, goad on, stimulate.

in-stituō, -ere, stitui, stitūtus [statuō, set up], *a., n.*, set up or in order, establish; set in array, draw up, form, devise; instruct, educate; begin, adopt; set on foot, determine, decide. I, 14, 21.

institūtum, -i [instituo, set up, establish], *n.*, a fixed course, principle or arrangement; habit, institution, custom. I, 1, 4.

in-stō, stāre, stitī, statūrus [stō, stand], *n.*, stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; impend, threaten. I, 18, 10.

instrūmentum, -i, *n.*, implement, tool; apparatus.

in-struō, -ere, strūxi, strūctus [struō, build], *a.*, build upon, build, construct; form, draw up, array. I, 22, 8.

insuēfactus, -a, -um, accustomed. IV, 24, 11.

insuētus, -a, -um, unaccustomed. V, 6, 11.

insula, -ae, *f.*, island. III, 9, 21.

in-super, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, 17, 16.

integer, tegra, tegrum [tangō, touch], untouched, intact, whole, fresh, unimpaired. III, 4, 5.

in-tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, cover over; protect. VII, 73, 21.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, lēctus [inter+legō, choose, select], *a.*, select or distinguish between; understand, know, ascertain, perceive. I, 10, 4.

in-tendō, -ere, tendi, tentus, [tendō, stretch], *n.*, stretch out or to, extend; direct the eyes, ears, or mind, be intent or absorbed, strive. III, 22, 1.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, amid, among; *in reciprocal relation*, with by, from. I, 1, 4.

inter-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], *n.*, go or come between, lie between, intervene, pass; occur or be between, happen. I, 7, 18.

intercipiō, -ere, cēpi, cēptus

- [*capiō*, take], *a.*, take or catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt, intercept, cut off. II, 27, 11.
- interclūdō*, -ere, *clūsī*, *clūsus* [*claudō*, shut], *a.*, shut or cut off, obstruct, hinder. I, 23, 11.
- inter-dicō*, -ere, *dīxī*, *dictus* [*dicō*, say], *a.*, say among other things; intervene by an order; prohibit, exclude, interdict. I, 46, 11; V, 22, 16.
- inter-diū*, *adv.*, during the day, by day. I, 8, 14.
- inter-dum*, [*dum*, while], *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, 14, 15.
- inter-eā*, *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile, in the interim. I, 8, 1.
- inter-eō*, *ire*, *ivī* (ii), *itūrus*, perish. VI, 14, 15.
- interficiō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *fectus* [*faciō*, make], *a.*, make from among; make away with, kill, destroy. I, 12, 15.
- interficiō*, -ere, *iēcī*, *iectus* [*iaciō*], *a.*, throw or hurl between; put, set or place between; interpose, interject. II, 7, 19.
- interim*, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime: *interim . . . interim*, sometimes . . . sometimes. I, 16, 1.
- interior*, -ius, interior. V, 12, 1.
- interitus*, -ūs, *m.*, destruction.
- inter-mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missus* [*mittō*, send], *a.*, *n.*, send between, interrupt, discontinue, leave off. I, 26, 15.
- interneciō*, -ōnis [*necō*, destroy], *r.*, extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, 13, 19.
- inter-pellō*, 1, interrupt. I, 44, 28.
- inter-pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positus* [*pōnō*, place], place between, insert, interpose. I, 42, 15; IV, 9, 8.
- interpres*, -etis, *m.*, *r.*, interpreter; mediator. I, 19, 13.
- interpretor*, 1, explain. VI, 13, 10.
- inter-rogō*, 1, ask, inquire.
- inter-rumpō*, -ere, *rūpī*, *ruptus*, break off or through; destroy.
- inter-scindō*, -ere, *scidi*, *scissus* [*scindō*, cut, destroy], *a.*, cut through, tear or break down, cut off (*between two points*). II, 9, 12.
- inter-sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*, *n.*, be or lie between, intervene; be apart; be present, take part in; . *impers. interest*, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference, an interval. I, 15, 15.
- inter-vallum*, -i [*vallum*, intrenchment], *n.*, the space between two palisades or the 200 feet between the rampart and tents; interval (*of space or time*). I, 22, 16.
- inter-veniō*, -ire, *vēnī*, *ventus*, come between, intervene.
- inter-ventus*, -ūs, *m.*, interposition. III, 15, 11.
- in-texō*, -ere, *texuī*, *textus*, weave in or together. II, 33, 7.
- intoleranter*, *adv.*, intolerable, excessively.
- intrā*, *prep. with acc.* [*for intrā*, *sc. parte*], within, into. I, 32, 14; II, 4, 7.
- in-tritus*, -a, -um, unwearied. III, 26, 4.
- intrō*, 1, *a.*, go or walk into, enter, penetrate. II, 17, 20.
- intrō-dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductus* [*intrō*, within], lead or bring in, march in, introduce. II, 5, 9.
- intro-eō*, *ire*, *ivī*(ii), *itus*, enter.
- introitus*, -ūs, *m.*, entrance. V, 9, 14.
- intrō-mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missus*, send or let in. II, 33, 19.
- intrōrsus*(um), *adv.*, within. II, 18, 6.
- intrō-rumpō*, -ere, *rūpī*, *ruptus*, break in.
- in-tueor*, 2, look upon; protect. I, 32, 5.
- intus*, *adv.*, within.
- in-ūsītātus*, -a, -um [*ūtōr*], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, 31, 2.
- in-ūtilis*, -e [*ūtilis*, useful], use-

less, worthless, unserviceable. II, 16, 9.

in-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], *a.*, come upon, meet, find out, discover. I, 53, 5; II, 16, 2.

inventor, -ōris, m., author. VI, 17, 2.

inveterāscō, -ere, -rāvī, -rātūrus, grow old. II, 1, 10.

invicem, adv., in turn. IV, 1, 11.

in-victus, -a, -um, indomitable. I, 36, 17.

in-vidēō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, envy. II, 31, 10.

invidia, -ae, f., hatred. VII, 77, 44.

in-violātus, -a, -um, [violō, injure], uninjured, unharmed, inviolate. III, 9, 10.

invītō, 1, a., invite, summon, urge. I, 35, 6; IV, 6, 5.

invītus, -a, -um, against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invītō**, against his will. I, 8, 7.

Iovis, see Iupiter.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., ipsīus, self (*as opp. to some one else*); himself, herself, etc.; he, she, it, etc. (*emphatic*); *as adj.*, very, (his, her, their) own. I, 1, 2.

irācundia, -ae, f., irritability, anger.

irācundus, -a, -um, irritable. I, 31, 47.

ir-rideō, -ēre, risī, risus, jeer. II, 30, 6.

irridiculē, adv., without humor. I, 42, 20.

ir (in-) -rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [rumpō, break], *a.*, break in or into, storm. IV, 14, 9.

ir (in-) -ruptiō, -ōnis, f., attack. VII, 70, 6.

is, ea, id, gen. eius, weak. dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that; he, she, it, they, etc.; **is ut**, such as; *with comparatives eō (abl.)*, the, all the; **eō magis**, all the more; **eō (abl. as adv.)**, on this account, therefore; **eā sc. viā** in that way (*only* V, 51, 9); I, 1, 8.

iste, -a, -ud, that, this, the very.

ita, adv., so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ita . . . ut**, even as, just as; **ut . . . ita**, in proportion to, although . . . yet. I, 11, 5.

Italia, -ae, [for Vitalia, the land of oxen], *f.*, Italy, sometimes (*in Caesar*) including Cisalpine Gaul. I, 10, 8.

ita-que [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9, 10.

item, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3, 14.

iter, itineris [for itiner, fr. p. p. of eō, go], *n.*, a going, way, route; journey, march. I, 3, 5.

iterum, adv., again, anew, a second time; for the second time; twice. I, 31, 18.

Itius, -i, m., V, 2, 9.

iuba, -ae, f., mane. I, 48, 19.

iubeō, -ēre, iūssi, iūssus, a., order, bid, command, enjoin. I, 5, 9.

iūdicium, -i [iūdex, judge], *n.*, judicial proceedings, trial; judicial opinion or decision, judgment; court. I, 4, 5.

iūdicō, 1, [iūdex, a judge], a., pass judgment, judge, decide, determine. I, 12, 4.

iugum, -i [iungō, join], *n.*, yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7, 15.

iūmentum, -i [for iugimentum fr. iugum, yoke], *n.*, yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. I, 3, 3.

iūctūra, -ae, f., joining. IV, 17, 17.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, a., join or unite together, join, yoke, attach, connect. I, 8, 12.

iūnior, see iuvenis.

Iūnius, -i, m., a Roman nomen. *E. g.*, (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, commander of Caesar's fleet. III, 11, 12. (2) Q. Junius, a Spaniard.

Iūpiter, Iovis, Jupiter or Jove. VI, 17, 5.

Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura, a mountain range from the Rhine to the Rhone. I, 2, 10.

iūrō, 1, [iūs, right], *n.*, affirm one's

- rights, make oath, swear. I, 31, 28; VI, 12, 10.
- iūs. iūris, n., right (*in nature and character*), justice, rights; legal rights law; authority. I, 4, 9.
- iūs iurandum, iūris iurandi [iūs, right+iūrō, swear], n., *swearing to one's rights*, an oath. I, 3, 22.
- iūssū [abl. of iūssus], by command, by order.
- iūstitia, -ae [iūstus, just], f., justice, rectitude, uprightness. I, 19, 10.
- iūstus, -a, -um [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, righteous, reasonable, valid, just. I, 43, 13; IV, 16, 3.
- iuvenis, -e, young.
- iuventūs, ūtis, f., the time or period of youth, *from seventeen to forty-five years*; the youth, the young men. III, 16, 3.
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, aid, assist, to help. I, 26, 19.
- iūxtā, adv., next, near. II, 26, 1.

K.

Kalendae, -ārum (Kal), f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I, 8, 16.

L.

L, sign for 50.

- Laberius, -ī, m., a Roman nomen. E. g., Q. Laberius Durus, a tribune. V, 15, 13.
- Labienus, -ī, m., a Roman family name; Titus Attius Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda. 45, B. C. I, 10, 8.
- lābor, -ī, lapsus sum, slip; go wrong. V, 3, 21.
- labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, 44, 44; III, 5, 13.
- labōrō, 1. [labor, toil], n., toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be

- hard pressed. I, 31, 6; IV, 26, 11.
- labrum, -ī, n., lip; edge. V, 14, 8.
- lāc, lactis, n., milk. IV, 1, 15.
- lacēssō, -ere, -īvi, -ītus [laciō, entice, move], a., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15, 10.
- lacrima, -ae, f., tear. I, 20, 1.
- lacrimō, 1, weep.
- lacus, -ūs, m., lake. I, 2, 10.
- laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, hurt, damage.
- laetatiō, -ōnis, f., rejoicing.
- laetitia, -ae, f., joy. VII, 78, 10.
- laetus, -a, -um, joyful. III, 18, 18.
- languidē, adv., faintly.
- languidus, -a, -um, faint, sluggish.
- languor, -ōris, m., faintness, lassitude.
- lapis, -idis, m., stone. I, 46, 3; II, 6, 6.
- laqueus, -ī, m., noose, snare.
- largior, 4. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. I, 18, 12.
- largiter, adv., freely. I, 18, 15.
- largitiō, -ōnis, f., bribery. I, 9, 5.
- lassitudō, -inis, [lassus, weary], f., weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23, 3.
- lātō [lātus, wide], adv. widely, extensively. I, 2, 12.
- latebra, -ae, f., hiding place.
- lateō, -ēre, -uī, n., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. II, 19, 16.
- lātitudō, -inis [lātus, wide], f., width, extent, breadth. I, 2, 17.
- Latovici, -ōrum, m., a German tribe north of the Tulingi. I, 5, 9.
- latrō, -ōnis, m., freebooter, bandit, robber. III, 17, 9.
- latrōcinium, -ī, n., brigandage. VI, 16, 12.
- lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide, extensive. I, 2, 8.
- lātus, see ferō.
- latus, -eris [cf. lātus, wide], n., side; wing or flank of an army. I, 25, 16.
- laudō, 1, praise. V, 8, 12.
- laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation, renown, popularity. I, 40, 14; IV, 3, 1.

- lavō, -āre (-ere), lāvi, lautus(lōtus), wash; bathe. IV, 1, 24.
- laxō, 1, loosen. II, 25, 17.
- lĕgatiō, -ōnis [lĕgō, despatch], *f.*, embassy, legation; commission; the office of an ambassador. I, 3, 9.
- lĕgātus, -ī, [lĕgō, despatch, delegate], *m.*, one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, 7, 8.
- legiō, -ōnis [lĕgō, choose], *f.*, a chosen number, a levy; a legion. I, 7, 6.
- legiōnārius, -a, -um [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. I, 42, 18; II, 27, 6.
- Lemannus, -ī (with or without lacus), *m.*, Lake Lemman, Lake Geneva. I, 2, 11.
- Lemovicēs, -um, *m.*, VII, 75, 15.
- lĕnis, -e, gentle, mild, smooth. IV, 28, 4.
- lĕnitās, -tātis, *f.*, smoothness. I, 12, 13.
- lĕniter [lĕnis], *adv.*, softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 3, 10.
- Lĕpontii, -ōrum, *m.*, IV, 10, 5.
- lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare. V, 12, 14.
- Leuci, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 40, 35.
- Levāci, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Marne and Moselle.
- levis, -e, light (in weight), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II, 10, 2.
- levitās, -tātis, *f.*, restlessness. II, 1, 11.
- levō, 1, lighten, ease, relieve.
- lĕx, lĕgis, *f.*, law, statute, enactment. I, 1, 4.
- Lexovii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe southwest of the Seine; capital, Noviomagus, now Lisieux. III, 9, 26.
- libenter [libĕns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44, 17; III, 18, 15.
- liber, -era, -erum, unrestrained, free; undisputed. I, 44, 42; V, 7, 20.
- liberalitās, -tātis [liber, free], *f.*, freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. I, 18, 7.
- liberaliter [liberalis], graciously, generously, kindly. II, 5, 1.
- liberē [liber, free], *adv.*, freely, without restraint; generously. I, 18, 5.
- liberi, -ōrum [liber, free]. *m.*, the free members of the household (as opp. to slaves); children. I, 11, 7.
- liberō, 1. [liber, free], *a.*, make or set free, release, deliver. IV, 19, 15.
- libertās, -tātis [liber, free], *f.*, freedom, liberty, independence. I, 17, 10.
- librilis, -e, of a pound weight. VII, 81, 12.
- licentia, -ae, *f.*, license; presumption; lawlessness.
- liceor, 2. [liceō, offer for sale], *a.*, *n.*, bid for, bid (at an auction). I, 18, 10.
- licet, -ĕre, licuit (licitum est), *impers.*, it is lawful, I have permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut liceat, to ask permission. I, 7, 13.
- Liger, -eris, *m.*, the Loire. III, 9, 3.
- lignatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, procuring wood.
- lignātor, -ōris, *m.*, wood-forager.
- lilium, -ī, *n.*, lily. VII, 73, 23.
- līnea, -ae, *f.*, linen thread; line.
- Lingonēs, -um, *m.*, A Gallic tribe in the Vosges near the sources of the Maas and Marne; capital, Andematunnum, the modern Langres. I, 26, 15.
- lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; dialect. language. I, 1, 3.
- lingula, -ae, *f.*, a little tongue. III, 12, 2.
- linter, lintris, *f.*, *m.*, skiff, river or ferry boat. I, 12, 4.
- linum, -ī, *n.*, flax; canvass. III, 13, 10.
- Liscus, -ī, *m.*, a chief magistrate of the Aedui. I, 16, 12.
- Litāviccus, -ī, *m.*, an Aeduan noble.
- lis, litis, *f.*, strife; lawsuit; damages. V, 1, 26.

littera (litera), -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in *pl.*, letter, epistle, missive. I, 26, 18.

litus, -oris, *n.*, sea shore, beach, shore. IV, 23, 9.

locus, -i, *m.*, and plural *loci*, -orum, *n.*, place, position, locality. I, 2, 7.

longē [longus], *adv.*, far, far away, absent, distant. I, 1, 7.

longinquus, -a, -um [longus, long], far off, distant, remote. I, 47, 14; IV, 27, 14.

longitūdō, -inis [longus], *f.*, length, extent; long duration. I, 2, 17.

longurius, -i [longus], *m.*, a long pole. III, 14, 16.

longus, -a, -um, long. V, 8, 14.

loquor, -i, locūtus *sum*, *n.*, speak, talk, converse. I, 20, 21.

lōrica, -ae, *f.*, corselet; parapet. VII, 72, 14.

Lūcānius, -i, *m.*, a Roman nomen; e. g., Q. Lucanius, a centurion.

Lūcius, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. I, 22, 11.

Luclerius, -i, *m.*, a chief of the Cadurci.

Lugotorix, -igis, *m.*, V, 22, 8.

lūna, -ae [for lūc-na fr. lūcō, give light], *f.*, the moon. I, 50, 15; IV, 29, 1.

Lutētia, -ae, *f.*, the capital of the Parisii now Paris.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light. I, 22, 1.

lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, extravagance, profusion. II, 15, 10.

M.

M., abbrev. for praenomen **Marcus**.

M., as numeral=1000.

māceria, -ae, *f.*, enclosure, wall. VII, 69, 9.

māchinātiō, -ōnis [māchinor, contrive], *f.*, a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30, 7.

maestus, -a, -um, dejected. VII, 80, 24.

magis, *comp. adv.* [māgnus],

more, rather, in a higher degree. I, 13, 17.

magistrātus, -ūs [magister, master], *m.*, public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate; body of officers, government. I, 4, 10.

māgnitūdō, -inis, [māgnus, great], *f.*, greatness, great size, extent, stature (*corporum*). I, 39, 4; II, 12, 12.

māgnō opere=māgnopere [māgnus, +opus, work], *adv.*, with great labor; especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, 13, 15.

māgnus, -a, -um (*comp.*, māior, *superl.*, māximus), great (in size, quantity, or degree), large; abundant, much; important, extensive; māgnī (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; māgnis itineribus, by forced marches. I, 2, 14.

māiestās, -tātis, *f.*, greatness, honor.

māior, māius [comp. of māgnus], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older: in *pl.* as *subst.* (with or without nātū), ancestors. I, 13, 16.

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. III, 15, 7.

male [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely: I (*comp. peius* (1); *sup. pessimē*). I, 40, 39.

maleficium, -i [malum, evil+faciō], *n.*, doing evil, mischief, harm, injury. I, 7, 11.

Mallius, -i, *m.*, a Roman nomen. E. g., L. Mallius, governor of further Spain, 78 B. C. III, 20, 7.

mālō, mälle, mālui [magis+volō, wish], *a.*, *n.*, wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8, 16.

mālus, -i, *m.*, mast, pole, beam. III, 14, 17.

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious.

mandātum, -i [mandō, enjoin command], *n.*, charge, injunction order, command. I, 35, 2; II 5, 10.

mandō, I. [manus+đō, give,], *a.*, give into one's hands: entrust,

- commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12, 11.
- Mandubii**, -ōrum, *m.*, VII, 68, 3.
- Mandubracius**, -i, *m.*, V, 20, 2.
- māne**, *indecl.*, *n.*, morning: *as adv.*, in the morning. IV, 13, 12.
- maneo**, -ere, **mānsi**, **mānsus**, *n.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36, 12; IV, 1, 11.
- manipulāris**, -e, of a manipule; *as subst.*, common soldier.
- manipulus**, -i, [**manus**+**pleō**, fill], *m.*, a handful (*of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), manipule. II, 25, 17.
- mānsuēfaciō**, -ere, **fēcī**, **factus**, tame. VI, 28, 9.
- mānsuētūdō**, -inis, [**mānsuētus**, tame], *f.*, tameness; gentleness, compassion. II, 14, 11.
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; in **manibus**, near at hand; *as the instrument of war*, force, courage; an armed troop, band, company. I, 25, 10.
- Marcomanī**, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 51, 9.
- Marcus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.
- mare**, -is, *n.*, sea; **mare Oceanum**, the ocean. III, 7, 7.
- maritimus**, (-**umus**) -a, -um, *adj.*, of the sea, sea, maritime, naval, on the sea: **aestus** (in the sea); **ora** (the sea shore). II, 34, 4.
- Marius**, -i, *m.*, I, 40, 14.
- Mārs**, -tis, *m.*, Mars. VI, 17, 5.
- mās**, **maris**, masculine; *as subst.*, a male. VI, 26, 5.
- matara**, -ae, *f.*, Celtic javelin. I, 26, 10.
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother. I, 18, 15.
- māterfamiliae**, a **matron**. I, 50, 12.
- māteria**, -ae, **māteriēs**, -em (*only in nom. and acc. sing.*) [**māter**], *f.*, matter, materials of which anything is composed, timber, dressed for building. IV, 17, 21.
- māterior**, 1. procure wood. VII, 73, 1.
- Mātiacō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a city of the Aedui, now Macon. VII, 90, 18.
- mātrimōnium**, -i, [**māter**], *n.*, marriage, wedlock, matrimony: in **mātrimōnium dare**, to give in marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, to marry. I, 3, 17.
- Matrona**, -ae, *m.*, the Marne. I, 1, 5.
- mātūrē** [*old abl. of mātūrus*], *adv.*, early, speedily. I, 33, 20; IV, 6, 2.
- mātūrēscō**, -ere, **mātūrui**, become ripe.
- mātūrō**, 1. [**mātūrus**, ripe], *a., n.*, ripen, bring to maturity; quicken, hasten, accelerate. I, 7, 2.
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, ripe; of proper age, mature; timely, early. I, 16, 4.
- māximē**, *adv.*, in the highest degree, especially.
- māximus**, -a, -um, [*sup. of māgnus*], greatest, largest. I, 3, 3.
- medeor**, -ēri, remedy, cure.
- mediocris**, -cre [**medius**, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20, 8.
- mediocriter**, *adv.*, moderately. I, 39, 8.
- Mediōmātricēs**, -um, (-i, -ōrum), *m.*, VI, 10, 7; VII, 75, 13.
- mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, midland, inland. V, 12, 11.
- medius**, -a, -um, in the middle or midst, in the middle of, intervening. I, 24, 4.
- Meldī**, -ōrum, *m.*, V, 5, 3.
- melior**, *comparative of bonus*.
- membrum**, -i, *n.*, member of the body, limb. IV, 24, 10.
- memini**, -isse, *def. a., n.*, remember, recollect. III, 6, 13.
- memoria**, -ae, [**memor**, mindful], *f.*, recollection, memory. I, 7, 13.
- Menapii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Sheldt. II, 4, 26.
- mendācium**, -i, *n.*, falsehood, fiction.
- mēns**, -entis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought,

- purpose, determination. I, 39, 9; III, 19, 18.
- mēnsis, -is, m.**, month. I, 5, 8.
- mēnsūra, -ae, f.**, measure. V, 13, 13.
- mentīō, -ōnis, f.**, naming, mention.
- mercātor, -ōris, [mercor, trade], m.**, merchant, trader. I, 1, 8.
- mercātūra, -ae, f.**, trade. VI, 17, 4.
- mercēs, -ēdis, f.**, pay. I, 31, 13.
- Mercurius, -i, m.**, Mercury. VI, 17, 1.
- mereō, and mereor, 2. a.**, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn. I, 11, 6.
- meridiānus, -a, -um, of mid-day or noon.** V, 8, 15.
- meridiēs, -ōi, [for medidiēs, from medius, middle + diēs], m.**, the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, 50, 5; V, 13, 4.
- meritō, adv.**, justly, deservedly.
- meritum, -i, [mereor, deserve], n.**, desert, service, merit, favor. I, 14, 4.
- Messala, -ae, m.**, a Roman family name, Marcus Valerius Messala, consul 61, B. C. I, 2, 2.
- metior, -iri, mēnsus sum, n.**, deal or measure out, distribute. I, 16, 10.
- Metiosēdum, -i, n.**, a town of the Senones, now Melun.
- Mētius, -i, m.**, Marcus Metius, an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus. I, 47, 15.
- metō, -ere, messui, messus, mow.** IV, 32, 17.
- metus, -ūs [metuō, fear], m.**, fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension. IV, 4, 16.
- meus, -a, -um, adj. pron. [cf. oblique cases of ego], of me, my, mine, my own.** IV, 25, 13.
- miles, -itis, m.**, soldier; private (opp. to imperātor), infantry (opp. to equites): **militēs imperāre**, levy soldiers upon. I, 7, 5.
- mīlia, see mille.**
- militāris, -e [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial: rēs militāris, the science of warfare.** I, 21, 10.
- militia, -ae, f.**, military service. VI, 14, 2.
- mille, num. adj. (indecl. in sing.), a thousand; pl., milia (millia) -um, n.**, thousands (a subst., usually followed by part. gen.): **milia passuum**, thousands of paces, miles. I, 2, 17.
- Minerva, -ae, f.**, Minerva. VI, 17, 6.
- minimē [minimum,] superl. adv.**, least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, 1, 8.
- minimum, -a, -um, superl. of parvus.**
- minor, comp. of parvus.**
- Minucius, -i, m.**, a Roman nomen. E. g., L. Minucius Basilus, commander of cavalry. VII, 90, 8.
- minuō, -ere, -ui, minutus [minus, less], a, n.**, lessen, impair, diminish, violate (maiestātem) settle, (controversiās). I, 20, 7.
- minus, adv., less.** I, 2, 12.
- mīror, 1. a, n.**, wonder or marvel at, admire, be astonished. I, 32, 6.
- mīrus, -ā, -um [mīror, wonder at], strange, astonishing.** I, 34, 10.
- miser, -era, -erum [maereō, be sad], wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate, sad.** I, 32, 9; II, 23, 10.
- miserīcordia, -ae [misereō, pity + cor, the heart], f.**, pity, sympathy, mercy, compassion. II, 28, 10.
- miseror, 1. [miser, wretched], a.**, bewail, lament over, deplore. I, 39, 18.
- missus, -ūs, m.**, sending, despatching.
- mīssimē, superl. adv.**, very mildly or gently.
- mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, a.**, send, send off, let go, despatch; hurl, discharge. I, 7, 8.
- mōbilis, -e, changeable.** IV, 5, 3.
- mōbilitās, -tātis [mōbilis, movable], f.**, movableness, activity,

- speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1, 11.
- mōbiliter**, *adv.*, easily. III, 10, 8.
- moderor**, 1. [**modus**, limit], *a.*, limit, mitigate, temper control, guide, regulate. IV, 33, 11.
- modestia**, -ae, *f.*, moderation, self-control; propriety.
- modo**, *adv.* [**modus**, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but: of time, just now, recently; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only, . . . but also. I, 16, 4.
- modus**, -ī, *m.*, measure, quantity, manner, method, style. I, 41, 1; II, 31, 3.
- moenia**, -ium, *n.*, *pl.*, [**mūnio**], defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses, a walled town. II, 6, 6.
- mōles**, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. III, 10, 8.
- molestē**, *adv.*, with annoyance. II, 1, 10.
- mōlimentum**, -ī, *n.*, effort; difficulty. I, 34, 10.
- molitus**, -a, -um, *see* molō.
- mollīō**, 4, soften, ease; weaken.
- mollis**, -e, soft, tender, yielding, inconstant. III, 19, 17.
- mollitia**, -ae, *f.*, weakness. VII, 77, 15.
- mollitiēs**, ēī, *f.*, timidity, weakness. VII, 20, 15.
- molō**, -ere, -uī, -itus, grind. I, 5, 8.
- mōmentum**, -ī, *n.*, moment; importance. VII, 85, 9.
- Mona**, -ae, *f.*, the Isle of Man. V, 13, 9.
- moneō**, 2. *a.*, warn, advise, admonish, teach. I, 20, 19.
- mōns**, montis, *m.*, mountain; mountain range. I, 1, 22.
- mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay. II, 15, 7.
- morbis**, -ī, *m.*, disease. VI, 16, 3.
- Morini**, -ōrum, *m.* II, 4, 26.
- morior**, -mori, mortuus sum, die. I, 4, 10.
- Moritasgus**, -ī, *m.*, a Chief of the Senones.
- moror**, 1. [**mora**, a delay], *n.*, delay, tarry, linger. I, 26, 17.
- mors**, -tis, *f.*, death. I, 4, 11.
- mōs**, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, way: *pl.*, customs, morals, character. I, 4, 2.
- Mosa**, -ae, *m.*, the Meuse or Maas a River of Belgic Gaul. IV, 9, 6.
- mōtus**, -ūs, [**moveō**, move], *m.*, movement, motion; political movement, uprising. IV, 23, 15.
- moveō**, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *a.*, set in motion, move; excite, influence; occasion, remove, break up. I, 15, 1.
- mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman, wife. I, 29, 5.
- mūliō**, -ōnis, *m.*, muliteer.
- multitūdō**, -inis, [**multus**], *f.*, a great number, multitude. I, 2, 15.
- multō**, 1. fine, mulct.
- multō**, *adv.*, by far, much.
- multum**, *adv.*, [*acc. of multus*, much], much, very, greatly, especially. III, 9, 13.
- multus**, -a, -um, *comp. plus*, *sup. plurimus*, much; *pl.* many. I, 3, 12.
- mūlus**, -ī, *m.*, a mule.
- Munātius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen. L. Munatius Plancus, Caesar's lieutenant.
- mundus**, -ī, *m.*, universe; world. VI, 14, 18.
- mūnimentum**, -ī, *n.*, fortification. II, 17, 19.
- mūniō**, 4. [*cf.* moenia, walls], *a.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend protect. I, 24, 9.
- mūnitiō**, -ōnis, [**mūniō**, fortify], *f.*, fortifying, fortifications, works intrenchments. I, 8, 15.
- mūnitus**, *see* mūniō.
- mūnus**, -eris, *n.*, duty, burden; present. I, 43, 11; VI, 18, 7.
- mūrālis**, -e, [**mūrus**, wall, pertaining to a wall, mural. III, 14, 16.
- mūrus**, -ī [*cf.* moenia], *m.*, a wall, esp. a wall for defence. I, 8, 5.
- mūsculus**, -ī, *m.*, mantelet, VII 84, 3.
- mutilus**, -a, -um, maimed; without. VI, 23, 3.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, *see nanciscor.*
nam, *conj.*, for, now: *introducing an explanation.* I, 12, 13.
Nammeius, -i, m., a noble Helvetian, sent as ambassador to Caesar. I, 7, 9.
Namnetēs, -um, m., III, 9, 26.
namque [nam, for + -que], *conj.*, for, indeed, for; *more emphatic than nam.* I, 38, 6; III 13, 1.
nanciscor, -ī, nactus (nactus) sum, a., get, obtain; meet with, find. I, 53, 7; IV, 23, 1.
Nantuātes, -um, m., a Gallic people on the Loire, about Nantes. III, 1, 3.
Narbō, -ōnis, m., a town of the Roman province, now Narbonne. III, 20, 10.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, n., be born or produced; rise, spring up, proceed. II, 18, 4.
Nasua, -ae, m. I, 37, 8.
nātālis, -e, natal. VI, 18, 4.
nātiō, -ōnis, [nāscor, be born], f., race, tribe, people, nation: *usually applied to a distant and barbarous people.* I, 53, 9; II, 35, 3.
nātīvus, -a, -um, native, natural.
nātūra, -ae, [nātus, birth], f., nature, constitution, character. I, 2, 7.
nātus, -ūs [nāscor, be born], m., birth: *māiorēs nātū*, greater by birth; elders, ancestors. II, 13, 7.
nauta (*contr. of nāvita*), -ae [nāvis], m., sailor, seaman, mariner. III, 9, 4.
nauticus, -a, -um, nautical. III, 8, 4.
nāvālis, -e, naval. III, 19, 14.
nāvicula, -ae [*dim. of nāvis*, vessel], f., skiff, small vessel. I, 53, 6.
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [nāvigō, sail], f., sailing, voyage, navigation. III, 9, 14.
nāvigium, -ī [nāvigō, sail], m., a

sailing vessel, boat, craft; sailing, navigation. III, 14, 18.
nāvigō, 1. [nāvis + agō, put in motion], n., set sail, sail; proceed. III, 8, 4.
nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat; **nāvis longa**, galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria**, a transport. I, 8, 12.
nāvō, 1, do zealously. II, 25, 20.
nē, (a), *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, for fear that; not to; *after words of danger or fear*, that; (b), *adv.*, not; *with words of command*, do not, let not, not to; **nē . . . quidem** (*enclosing the expression emphasized*), not even. I, 4, 7.
-ne, *enclitic.* I, 50, 14.
nec, *see neque.*
necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. cf., necessārius*], unavoidably, under compulsion. I, 51, 7; III, 14, 19.
necessārius, -a, -um, needful, requisite, necessary; **necessāria**, -ōrum, necessities (of life), supplies; **necessārius**, -ī, kinsman, friend, client, patron. I, 11, 9.
necesse, *indecl. adj.* [nē + cēdō, yield], unyielding; unavoidable, indispensable, necessary. IV, 5, 11.
necessitās, -tātis, [necesse, necessary], f., necessity, constraint, compulsion. II, 11, 17.
necessitūdō, -inis, f., intimacy. I, 43, 15.
nec-ne, *conj.*, or not. I, 50, 14.
necō, 1. [nec, death], a., put to death, kill, murder. I, 53, 23; III, 16, 11.
nēcubi, *adv.*, lest anywhere.
nefārius, -a, -um, impious. VII, 77, 8.
nefās, n., *indecl.*, an impious deed, sin.
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, lēctus, [nec + legō, pick up, choose], a., not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35, 19; III, 10, 5.
negō, 1. [nē + aiō, say], a., n., say no, deny, refuse, say . . . not. I, 8, 9.
negōtiōr, 1. carry on business, traffic.

- negōtium**, -ī, [nec+ōtium, leisure], *n.*, concern, business, undertaking, matter; **negōtium dare**, employ, assign a matter; **quid negōtīi**, what business. I, 34, 12; II, 2, 5.
- Nemetēs**, -um, *m.*, I, 51, 9; VI, 25, 4.
- nēmō**, *acc. neminem* [nē+homō, man], *m.*, no man; no one, nobody. I, 18, 11.
- nēquaquam** [nec,+abl. of *quisquam*], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23, 9.
- neque (nec)**, *conj. and adv.*, [nē+que], and not, not, nor; **neque (nec)** . . . neque, neither . . . nor. I, 4, 11.
- nē-quiquam (-quic(d)quam)**, *adv.*, in vain. II, 27, 12.
- nēquis, qua, quod (quid)**, *indef. pron.*, lest any one or anything, some one, etc. I, 20, 2.
- Nervicus**, -a, -um, of the Nervii. III, 5, 6.
- Nervii, -ōrum, m.**, a Belgic tribe, between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde in Namur and Hennegau. II, 4, 26.
- nervus**, -ī, *m.*, sinew, tendon, nerve; *in pl.*, energy, power. I, 20, 7.
- neu**, II, 21, 15. see **nēve**.
- neuter**, -tra, -trum (*gen. -trius, dat. -trī*) [ne+uter], neither: *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, 9, 6.
- nēve (neu)**, *conj.*, [nē+ve, or], and not, nor; **nēve (neu)** . . . nēve, neither . . . nor. I, 26, 19.
- nex, necis** [necō, slay], *f.*, violent death, slaughter, murder; death. I, 16, 14.
- nihil (nil)** [cf. *nihilum* fr. nē+hilum, a whit, anything], *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing; *acc. as adv.*, not at all, in no way. I, 11, 13.
- nihilō**, *adv.*, by no means; none. I, 5, 1.
- nimis**, *adv.*, too much, too.
- nimius**, -a, -um, beyond measure, too great, excessive.
- nisi**, *conj.*, nē-sī, if] not if; if not, if . . . not, except, unless. I, 22, 9.
- Nitibrogēs**, -um, *m.*, an Aquitani-an tribe. VII, 76, 14.
- nitor**, -ī, *nisus (nixus) sum*, *n.*, rest, or rely upon; climb, advance; strive, endeavor. I, 13, 17.
- nix, nivis**, *f.*, snow.
- nōbilis**, -ēs, [nōscō, know], well known, famous, noted. I, 2, 1.
- nōbilitās**, -tātis [nōbilis], *f.*, celebrity; noble birth, nobility; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2, 3.
- noceō**, -ēre, -ui, *n.*, injure, hurt. III, 13, 18.
- noctū**, *adv.*, by night. I, 8, 14.
- nocturnus**, -a, -um [nox, night], at night, nocturnal. I, 38, 15; V, 11, 11.
- nōdus**, -ī, *m.*, knot; joint. VI, 27, 3.
- nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi** (nē+volō, wish), *a.*, *n.*, not wish, be unwilling; *imper. nōli* (nōlite) with *infin.* do not. I, 16, 8.
- nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name; reputation, renown; account. I, 13, 19.
- nōminātim**, [nōminō, name], by name, expressly, in detail. I, 29, 3.
- nōminō**, 1. [nōmen, name], *a.*, call by name, name, mention, give a name to. II, 18, 3.
- nōn** [contr. fr. nē ūnum], not, no. I, 3, 19.
- nōnāgintā**, *card. num.*, ninety. I, 29, 9.
- nōn-dum**, *adv.*, not yet. I, 6, 12.
- nōnnihil**, *adv.*, somewhat. III, 17, 16.
- nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um [nūllus, none], some, several: *in pl. as subst.*, some, several. I, 6, 8.
- nōn-numquam (nunquam)**, [numquam, never], sometimes. I, 8, 14.
- nōnus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, ninth. II, 23, 1.
- Nōrēia**, -ae, *f.*, a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5, 12.
- Nōricus**, -a, -um, Norican, belonging to Noricum (a country between

the Danube and the Alps). I, 3, 12.
noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, a., learn, become acquainted or familiar with; *in pf.*, have learned (*and hence*) know. III, 9, 21.
noster, -tra, -trum [nōs], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as subst.*, our men, our troops. I, 1, 3.
nōtitia, -ae, f., fame; knowledge. VI, 21, 10.
nōtus, -a, -um, known; famous; notorious. IV, 24, 10.
novem, card. num., nine.
novitas, -tatis, f., newness; strangeness. IV, 34, 1.
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., (1) *the capital of the Suesiones, the modern Soissons*, (2) *a city of the Bituriges, now Nouan*; (3) *a city of the Aedui, now Nevers*. II, 12, 4.
novus, -a, -um, new, novel, fresh: **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; **novissimus, -a, -um, sup.**, latest, last: **āgmen (the rear)**. I, 9, 7.
nox, noctis, f., night.
noxia, -ae, f., VI, 16, 12.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, marry. I, 18, 18.
nūdō, 1, a., strip, (expose, lay bare, deprive of. II, 6, 7.
nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unclothed; unprotected. I, 25, 11.
nūllus, -a, -um, gen., nūllius [nē + ūllus], not any, none, no: *as subst.*, no one, none. I, 7, 12.
num, interrog. *implying a negative reply*. I, 14, 8.
nūmen, -inis, n., divinity. VI, 16, 7.
numerus, -ī, m., number, quantity; account, estimation. I, 3, 4.
Numidae, -arum, m., *the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers*. II, 7, 2.
nummus, -ī, m., coin. V, 12, 9.
numquam (nun-) adv., [nē + umquam, ever], never. I, 44, 23, V, 16, 11.
nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. I, 31, 16; II, 4, 21.
nūntiō, 1. [nūntius], a., announce,

send news, report, make known. I, 7, 1.
nūntius, -ī, m., messenger, courier; message, tidings; command, injunction. I, 26, 18.
nūper [for novum -per fr. novus, new], newly, recently, not long ago. I, 6, 8.
nusquam, nowhere, in no case. VII, 17, 19.
nūtus, -ūs [nuō, nod], m., nod, sign, command. I, 31, 46; IV, 23, 15.

O.

ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; *in comp.*, opposed to, to, against; **ob eam (hanc) causam**, for this reason; **quam ob rem**, wherefore. I, 4, 8.
ob-aerātus, -a, -um, in debt: *as subst.*, debtor. I, 4, 6.
ob-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, extend. II, 8, 12.
ob-eō, ire, iī(īvi), itus, go to, meet.
ob-iciō, icere, ieci, iectus [iaciō, throw], a., hurl or place in the way, set against or in front; expose; throw up, *in p. p. as adj.*, opposed, lying in the way. I, 26, 8.
obiectus, -a, -um, opposite. V, 13, 16.
obitus, -ūs, m., destruction. II, 29, 15.
oblātus, see offerō.
obliquē, adv., obliquely. IV, 17, 24.
obliquus, -a, -um, slanting. VII, 73, 14.
oblīvīscor, -ī, oblitus sum [op + liveō, become dark], a., *have the mind darkened*; forget. I, 14, 8.
ob-sacrō, 1. [sacer, sacred], a., implore (*on sacred grounds*), entreat, beseech. I, 20, 2.
obsequentia, -ae, f., complaisance, compliance.
ob-servō, 1. [servō, give heed], a., heed, observe, mark, regard celebrate. I, 45, 10; VI, 18, 5.
obses, -idis [ob + sedeō, sit, m, f.], hostage; pledge, security. I, 9, 11.

obessio, -ōnis, *r.*, blocking up, blockade, siege.
obsideō, -ēre, *sēdi*, *sessus* [*sedeō*, sit], *a.*, sit in the way of, obstruct, beset, besiege, blockade. III, 23, 17.
obsidiō, -ōnis, [*ob-sideō*, sit at, besiege], *r.*, siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 19, 14.
ob-signō, 1. sign. I, 39, 19.
ob-sistō, -ere, *stiti*, *stitus*, oppose, resist.
obstinatē, *adv.*, resolutely. V, 6, 12.
ob-stringō, -ere, *strinxī*, *strictus* [*stringō*, tie], *a.*, bind, hold (*under obligations*). I, 9, 9.
ob-struō, -ere, *struxī*, *structus*, build against, stop up, obstruct.
ob-temperō, 1. [*temperō*, rule], *n.*, be subject to rule, attend to, comply with, obey. IV, 21, 12.
obtestor, 1. [*testor*, witness], *a.*, call to witness, appeal to, invoke. IV, 25, 11.
obtineō, -ēre, -ui, *tentus* [*teneō*, hold], *a*, hold (*against the claim of another*), retain, obtain, possess; maintain, have control of. I, 1, 15.
ob-veniō, -īre, *vēni*, *ventus* [*veniō*, come], *n.*, come in the way, come to, meet; fall to one's lot. II, 23, 4.
ob-viam, *adv.*, in the way, to meet, in face of, towards.
occāsio, -ōnis [*ob+cadō*, fall], *r.*, occasion, opportunity. III, 18, 10.
occāsus, -ūs, [*oc-cidō*, fall down, set], *m.*, falling or going down, setting: *with solis*, sunset, the west. I, 1, 23.
oc-cidō, -ere, *cidī*, *cāsus*, fall or go down, set; he slain. V, 13, 6.
oc-cidō, -ere, *cidī*, *cisus* [*caedō*, cut, slay], *a.*, cut or strike down, destroy; cut off, kill, slay. I, 7, 14.
occultatiō, -ōnis, *r.*, concealment. VI, 21, 11.
occultē, *adv.*, secretly. VII, 83, 11.
occultō, 1. [*freq. of oculō*, hide],

a., hide, secrete; keep secret, conceal. I, 27, 12.
occultus, -a, -um [*occulō*, cover up], covered, concealed, secret: in *occultō* (*n. as subst.*), in a secluded or secret place. I, 32, 11; II, 18, 7.
occupatiō, -ōnis [*occupō*, seize, occupy], *r.*, seizing, occupying; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16, 20.
occupō, 1. [*ob+capiō*], *a.*, seize upon, take possession of; hold, possess. I, 3, 13.
oc-currō, -ere, *curri* (*cucurri*), *cursus* [*ob+currō*, run], *n.*, run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. I, 33, 20.
ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the great or outer sea, the ocean: *used once as adj.*, *mith mare*. I, 1, 17.
Ocelum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the *Graciaceli in Piedmont, now Oulx or Useau*. I, 10, 15.
octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, eighth. II, 23, 10.
octingenti, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, eight hundred. IV, 12, 3.
octō (VIII), *card. num.*, eight. I, 21, 8.
octōdecim (XVIII), *card. num.*, eighteen. I, 23, 5.
Octōdūrus, -ī, *m.*, III, 1, 14.
octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num.*, eighty. I, 2, 17.
octōni, -ae, -a, *distr. num.*, eight at a time, eight. VII, 73, 21.
oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. I, 12, 3.
ōdī, *ōdisse*, *def. (pf. with signif. of pres.)*, *a.*, hate, detest. I, 18, 19.
odium, -ī, *n.*, hatred.
of-fendō, -ere, *fendi*, *fēnsus* [*ob+fendō*, strike], *a.*, strike against, wound, harm: *animum offendere*, wound the feelings. I, 19, 12.
offensiō, -ōnis, *r.*, wounding; offence. I, 19, 19.
offerō, (*obf.*), *offerre*, *obtuli*, *oblātus*, *a.*, bring in one's way, present, offer, exhibit; proffer, bestow. II, 21, 2.

- primus, -a, -um, superl. adj.** (*comp. prior*), first; foremost, chief. I, 10, 19.
- princeps, -ipis [primus+capio], m.,** taking the first place; chief, most prominent, principal; as *subst.* chief or principal person, leader. I, 7, 9.
- principatus, -ūs [princeps, chief], m.,** chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3, 15.
- prior, prius, comp. adj. [superl. primus],** former, previous, prior, first: *in pl. as subst.*, those in advance. II, 11, 16.
- pristinus, -a, -um [for priustinus fr. prior],** former, primitive, original. I, 13, 12.
- prius, adv. [prior, former],** before, sooner, previously; **prius quam (priusquam),** before. I, 19, 12.
- priusquam, adv.** sooner than, before. I, 19, 12.
- privatim, adv. [privatus, private],** privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17, 4.
- privatus, -a, -um [p. p. of privō,** set apart], apart from *publicity*; private, personal, individual. I, 5, 5.
- prō, prep. with abl. [cf. prae],** before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in proportion to. I, 2, 15.
- probō, 1. [probus, good], a.,** consider good, approve; test, prove; show, demonstrate. I, 3, 18.
- prō-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], n.,** go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38, 1; II, 20, 4.
- Procellus, -i, m.,** a *cognomen*, see **Valerius**.
- prō-clinō, 1,** bend forward, incline, totter.
- prō-cōnsul, -is, m.,** a proconsul, one who at the close of his *consulship* in Rome became governor of a province: one invested with the powers of a *consul* or military governor. III, 20, 7.
- procul, adv.,** afar off, from afar, aloof. II, 30, 5.
- prōcumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitum [cubō, lie down], n.,** lean or fall forwards, sink or lie down, fall. II, 27, 2.
- prō-cūrō, 1,** care for; expiate. VI, 13, 9.
- prō-currō, -ere, curri, cursus [currō, run], n.,** run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52, 6.
- prōd-eō, -ire, -ii, itus [prō+eō, go],** go or come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48, 17.
- prōditio, -ōnis, f.,** betrayal, treason.
- prōditor, -ōris, m.,** traitor. VI, 23, 17.
- prōdō, -dere, -didī, ditus, a.,** give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down: **memoriam:** preserve, hand down (*to posterity*); **memoriā prōditum:** told in tradition, handed down. I, 13, 20.
- prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, [dūcō, lead], a.,** lead out or forth, bring forth, produce; draw up (*cōpiās*); prolong, protract. I, 48, 7; III, 17, 13.
- proelior, 1. [proelium, battle], n.,** join or engage in battle, fight. II, 23, 11.
- proelium, -i, n.,** battle, contest, engagement. I, 1, 13.
- profectio, -ōnis [proficiscor, set out], f.,** a setting out, start, departure. I, 3, 8.
- profectus** see **proficō.**
- profectus** see **proficiscor.**
- prō-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus,** bring forth, produce. VII, 82, 9.
- prōficiō, -ere, feci, factus, [faciō], a., n.,** make progress, advance; profit, effect, accomplish. III, 26, 12.
- proficiscor, -i, profectus sum, n.,** set out, start, depart; go, proceed. I, 3, 2.
- prō-fiteor, -eri, fessus sum, avow.** VI, 23, 14.
- prō-fligō, 1. [obsol. figō, strike], a.,** strike to the ground; overcome; put to flight. II, 23, 10.

ornamentum, -i [örnō, adorn], n., mark of honor, distinction. I, 44, 14.

örnō, 1, adorn, furnish, equip: *in p. p. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 14, 6.

ōrō, 1, [ōs, mouth], a., n., speak, plead, entreat. I, 20, 14.

ortus, -ūs, m., rising; beginning.

ōs, ōris, n., mouth; face, features, countenance.

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in modern Brittany. II, 34, 2.

os-tendō, -ere, tendi, tentus [ob-tendō, stretch], a., stretch towards or in the way; present, show, point out, declare. I, 8, 12.

ostentatiō, -ōnis, f., show, display; pretence.

ostentō, 1, show, exhibit.

ōtium, -ī, n., leisure; inactivity; peace.

ōvum, -ī, n., egg. IV, 10, 11.

P.

pābulatiō, -ōnis [pābulum, fodder], f., getting fodder, foraging. I, 15, 12.

pābulator, -ōris, m., forager. V, 17, 6.

pābulor, 1, forage. V, 17, 4.

pābulum, -ī [cf. pāscō, feed and pānis, bread], n., food, fodder, sustenance. I, 16, 5.

pācō, 1, [pāx, peace], a., make peaceful, subdue, pacify: *in p. p. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6, 8.

pactum, -ī, n., arrangement; manner. VII, 83, 11.

Padus, -ī, m., the Po, the principal river of Italy.

Paemāni, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe. II, 4, 28.

paene, adv., nearly, almost. I, 11, 6.

pāgus, -ī, [cf. pangō, fix], m., a place with fixed boundaries; village; district, province, canton. **Tigurinus pāgus**, one of the four Helvetic cantons, the country of

the *Tigurini*, perhaps in modern Zurich. I, 12, 12.

palam, adv., openly. VI, 18, 7.

palma, -ae, f., palm; palm-tree. VI, 26, 4.

palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40, 26; II, 9, 1.

palūster, -tris, -tre, marshy.

pandō, -ere, pandi, passus (pānsus) [cf. patedō, extend], a., n., spread or stretch out, extend: **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. I, 51, 12; II, 13, 11.

pār, paris, equal, alike, equal to, a match for: **est**, it is fit or proper; **pār atque**, the same as. I, 28, 17.

parcō, adv., sparingly. VII, 71, 16
parcō, -ere, perpercī, **parsus**, spare. VI, 28, 5.

parēns, -entis, m., f., parent. V, 14, 10.

parentō, 1, honor or avenge deceased parents or kindred.

pāreō, 2, [cf. pariō, bring forth], n., come forth, be clear; obey, submit, yield to, comply with, be subject to. I, 27, 6.

pariō, -ere, peperī, **partus**, bring forth; procure, obtain.

Parisii, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe about modern Paris. VII, 75, 12.

parō, 1, a., provide means, prepare, get ready, procure; *p. p. as adj.*, ready, prepared. I, 5, 3.

pars, **partis**, f., part, piece, portion, share; party, faction; direction, side; place, district. I, 1, 1.

partim, adv. [acc., of pars], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. II, 1, 8.

partior, 4, [pars, part], a., part, share, divide, distribute. III, 10, 10.

partus, see **pariō**.

parum, adv. [parvus, little], little, too little, not enough, not very. III, 18, 14.

parvulus, -a, -um [dim. of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight:

prō-terreō, 2, frighten off. ° VII, 81, 13.
prōtinus, *adv.* [tenus, *prep. fr. teneō*, hold], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, 9, 7.
prō-turbō, 1. [turbō, disturb], *a.*, drive in confusion, dislodge, repulse. II, 19, 20.
prō-vehō, -ere, vēxi, vēctus, set sail. V, 8, 7.
prō-veniō, -ire, venī, ventus, come forth, arise, be produced.
prōventus, -ūs, *m.*, result. VII, 80, 6.
prō-vidēō, -ēre, vidi, visus [videō, see], *a., n.*, see beforehand, foresee, care for, provide. II, 22, 7.
prōvincia, -ae [prō-vincō, extend by conquest], *f.*, charge or administration of a province; province. I, 1, 7.
prōvinciālis, -e, of a province.
prō-volō, 1, fly or rush forth. II, 19, 19.
proximē, *adv.*, last, lately. I, 24, 6.
proximus -a, -um, [*superl. fr. prior*, nearer], nearest, next to, next; last. I, 1, 10.
prudentia, -ae, *f.*, foresight. II, 4, 22.
Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.*, III, 27, 3.
pūbēs, -eris, grown up, adult; *pl. as subst.*, adults.
pūblicē, [pūblicus, public], at state cost, on behalf of the state, officially. I, 16, 2.
pūblicō, 1, adjudge to public use; confiscate.
pūblicus, -a, -um, [*for populus*, people], of the state or people, common, public. I, 12, 19.
Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen. I, 21, 10.
pudeō, 2, *gen. impers.*, be ashamed, feel shame.
pudor, -ōris [pudet, it shames], *m.*, shame, modesty, sense of shame or honor. I, 39, 14.
puer, -eri, *m.*, boy, child; son: *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); ā puerō

(pueris), from childhood. I, 29 5.
puerilis, -e, childish. VI, 18, 8.
pūgna, -ae [pūgnō, fight], *f.*, a fight, battle; contest, dispute. I, 26, 6.
pūgnō, 1. [*cf. pugil*, a boxer], *n.*, fight, give battle, contend; oppose; strive. I, 26, 9.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful; noble. VII, 77, 40.
Pulio, -ōnis, *m.*, Publius Pulio, a centurion of Cicero's legion.
pulsus, see pellō.
pulsus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke. III, 13, 15.
pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32, 6.
puppis, -is, *f.*, stern or poop of a ship. III, 13, 4.
pūrgō, 1. [pūrus, clean+agō], *a.*, clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; *in p. p. as adj.*, freed from blame or suspicion, exonerated. I, 28, 3.
putō, 1, *a.*, cleanse; clear up, adjust; reckon, estimate, think. I, 7, 15.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, Pyrenean, Pyrenees. I, 1, 21.

Q.

quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of qui*], by which way or road, in which direction or place, where. I, 6, 4.
quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num.* forty each. IV, 17, 14.
quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num.* forty. I, 2, 17.
quadrīngenti, -ae, -a, *card. num.* four hundred. I, 5, 4.
quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *a.*, seek or look for, inquire, ask, examine, investigate. I, 18, 4.
quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry. VI, 19, 10.
quaestor, -ōris [quaerō, seek], *m.*, a quaestor, one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army; quartermaster. I, 52, 2; IV, 13, 10.
quaestus, -ūs, *m.*, gain. VI, 17, 3.
quālis, -e [quis], *interrog.*, of what

percontatiō, -ōnis, f., inquiry. I, 39, 3; V, 13, 12.
per-currō, -ere, curri, cursus, run along *or* over. IV, 33, 12.
per-cutiō, -ere, cussi, cussus, strike *or* thrust through, slay.
per-discō, -ere, didici, learn thoroughly. VI, 14, 13.
perdō, -ere, didi, ditus [dō, give], *a.*, give over, ruin; *in p. p. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. III, 17, 9.
per-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead through *or* along, conduct, convey; bring over, carry along, construct, extend. I, 8, 6.
perendinus, -a, -um, after to-morrow.
per-eō, ire, ii(ivi), itus [eō, go], *n.*, go through, pass away, be destroyed, perish. I, 53, 11; IV, 15, 7.
per-equitō, 1. [equitō, ride], *n.*, ride about, ride hither and thither, ride through *or* around. IV, 33, 2.
per-exiguus, -a, -um, very little. V, 15, 10.
per-facilis, -e, very easy. I, 2, 5.
per-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus [ferō, bear], *a.*, bear *or* carry through, convey; announce, report; submit to, endure. I, 17, 8.
per-ficiō, -ere, feci, factus [faciō], *a.*, make *or* do thoroughly *or* completely; achieve, accomplish, perfect. I, 3, 18.
perfidia, -ae [per-fidus, faithless], *f.*, treachery, falsehood, dishonesty, perfidy. IV, 3, 12.
per-fringō, -ere, frēgi, fractus [frangō, break], *a.*, break *or* burst through. I, 25, 5.
perfuga, -ae, m., refugee, deserter. I, 28, 5.
per-fugiō, -ere, fugi, [fugiō, flee], *n.*, flee for refuge, take refuge in; desert. I, 27, 7.
perfugium, -i, n., refuge. IV, 38, 5.
pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctus, go on. III, 18, 20.
periclitō, 1. [periculum, trial,

danger], *a.*, try, test, prove; endanger, risk. II, 8, 4.
periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33, 14.
periculum, -i, n., experiment, trial; risk, hazard, danger. I, 5, 7.
peritus, -a, -um, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, accustomed to. I, 21, 10.
perlātus, see per-ferō.
perlegō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus, 3, a., read through, read. V, 48, 16.
per-luō, -ere, lui, lūtus, bathe. VI, 21, 12.
per-māgnus, -a, -um, very great, vast.
per-maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus [maneō, remain], *n.*, stay through *or* to the end; hold out, endure. I, 32, 7; III, 8, 15.
per-misceō, -ēre, miscui, mixtus, mix thoroughly, mingle.
per-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [mittō, send], *a.*, let go *or* loose; give up *or* over, entrust, commit. I, 30, 15; II, 3, 5.
permixtus, see permisceō.
per-moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move thoroughly, rouse, incite, instigate. I, 3, 1.
per-mulceō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsus, soothe. IV, 6, 11.
perniciēs, -ēi, f., destruction. I, 20, 8.
per-pauci, -ae, -a [paucus, few], very few, but very few. I, 6, 5.
perpendicularum, -i, n., plummet. IV, 17, 12.
per-petior, -i, pessus sum, suffer, bear patiently.
perpetuō [perpetuus, continuous], *adv.*, continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31, 26; VII, 41, 9.
perpetuus, -a, -um [perpetuō, cause to continue], continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual, permanent; entire: in perpetuum, forever. I, 35, 13; III, 2, 16.
per-quirō, -ere, quisivi, quisitus, ask after, search for.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), any; any person or thing. I, 19, 12.

quisque, quaeque, quid(que) que (*adj.*, quodque), *gen. cuiusque, universal indef. pron.*, each one, each; every one, every, all. I, 5, 8.

quisquis, quaeque, quodquod or **quidquid**, or **quicquid**, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, each, all. I, 19, 12; II, 17, 15.

qui-vis, quaevis, quidvis (quod-) [*volō, wish*], *indef. pron.* who or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. II, 31, 12.

quō [*old dat. of quī, adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.* whither, to or into which, as far as; (3) *indef.* (after *sī, nō, etc.*) if any whither, if to any place. I, 48, 17; II, 8, 17.

quo-ad, *adv.*, as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, 11, 18.

quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter of quī*], as to which, in that, that, because. I, 1, 7.

quō-minus, *conj.*, so that not, that not. from. I, 31, 25; IV, 22, 17.

quoniam, *adv.* [*quom=cum+iam, now*], when now; since. I, 35, 3; V, 3, 16.

quoque, *adv.* following the word *emphasized*, also, too, even. I, 1, 12.

quōque-versum, *adv.*, in every direction. III, 23, 5.

quot, *adj., indecl.*, how many.

quotannis [*quot, how many, every+annis*], *adv.*, every year, yearly. I, 36, 13; IV, 1, 9.

quotiens [*quot, how many*], how many times, how often, as often as. I, 43, 17.

B.

rādix, -icis, *r.*, root; *in pl.* with *mōntis* or *collis*, foot, base. I, 38, 12; VI, 27, 9.

rādō, -ere, rāsi, rāsus, scrape; shave. V, 14, 8.

rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough, twig. II, 17, 18.

rapiditās, -tātis, f., swiftness. IV, 17, 5.

rapina, -ae, f., plunder. I, 15, 12.

rārus, -a, -um, loose, thin; scattered, far apart; few. III, 12, 15.

ratio, -ōnis [*reor, reckon*], *r.*, reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, course, means; motive, principle, reason. I, 28, 10.

ratis, -is, f., raft; bark, vessel. I, 8, 12.

Rauricī, -ōrum, m., a tribe on the upper Rhine. I, 5, 9.

rebelliō, -ōnis [*rebellō, renew war*], *r.*, renewal of war or hostilities. III, 10, 4.

Rebilus, -ī, m., VII, 83, 7.

re-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus, go back, retire.

recēns, -entis, adj., recent, fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14, 8.

re-cēnsēō, -ēre, cēnsui, cēnsus, review. VII, 76, 10.

receptāculum, -ī, n., retreat, refuge.

receptus, *see re-cipiō.*

receptus, -ūs [*recipiō, withdraw*], *m.*, a place of withdrawal, retreat, refuge, shelter. IV, 33, 8.

recessus, -ūs, m., going back, retreat.

re-cidō, -ere, cidi, recāsūrus, fall or spring back; return; relapse.

reciperō, 1, recover, regain. III, 8, 9.

re-cipiō, -ere, cēpi, ceptus [*capio, take*], *a.*, take or get back, recover: *sē*, withdraw, retire, retreat; *ad sē*, take to one's self, accept, receive. I, 5, 13.

re-citō, 1, read out, rehearse.

re-clinō, 1, bend back. VI, 27, 7.

rēctē, adv., rightly. VII, 80, 16.

rēctus, -a, -um, straight. VI, 25, 5.

recuperō, 1, regain. VII, 76, 7.

recūsō, 1. [*re+causa, cause*], *a., n.*, make cause against or objection to; refuse, reject, repudiate, ob-

plēnus, -a, -um [pleō in compleō, fill], full, complete. III, 2, 8.
plērique, -aeque, -aque, adj. pl., very many, the most of. II, 4, 3.
plērumque, adv. [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, commonly, frequently. I, 40, 22; II, 30, 9.
Plenumoxī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe. dependents of the Nervii.
plumbum, -i, n., lead. V, 12, 10.
plūrimum [*sup.* of multum], most, very much, exceedingly, especially. I, 3, 20.
plūrimus and plūs, see multus, I, 3, 12.
pluteus, -i, m., shed; breastwork. VII, 72, 15.
pōculum, -i, n., cup. VI, 28, 14.
poena, -ae [pūniō, punish], *f.*, punishment, penalty. I, 4, 3.
poeniteō, -ēre, 2, repent. *Always impers.*, it repents, (one) is sorry. IV, 5, 10.
pollex, -icis, m., the thumb. III, 13, 8.
polliceor, 2. [prō+liceor, bid, offer], *a., n.*, hold forth, offer, promise. I, 14, 17.
pollicitatiō, -ōnis [polliceor, promise], *f.*, promise, offer. III, 18, 4.
Pompēius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name, esp. Cn. Pompeius Magnus, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B. C. IV, 1, 2.
pondus, -eris, n., weight. II, 29, 9.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [for posnō *fr.* por (prō)+sinō, let]. *a.*, place, put, set aside; appoint, station, regard; pitch (castra): *pass.*, be situated, dependent. I, 16, 4.
pōns, pontis, m., bridge. I, 7, 6.
populatiō, -ōnis, f., ravaging. I, 15, 12.
populor, 1. a., devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11, 3.
populus, -i, m., the people, the mass, the crowd; a people or nation. I, 3, 12.

por-rigō, -ere, rēxi rēctus, extend. II, 19, 12.
porrō, adv. farther on; furthermore, then.
porta, -ae [portō, carry], *f.*, the place left for an entrance, over which the plow was carried marking the limits of a city, hence gate. II, 24, 6.
portō, 1. a., carry, transport, bring. I, 5, 6.
portorium, -i, n., toll, tariff. I, 18, 9.
portus, -ūs [portō, carry; *cf.* porta], *m.*, harbor, haven. port. III, 8, 6.
poscō, -ere, poposci [*cf.* precor, ask], *a.*, ask, demand, request (*stronger than petō, less strong than flagitō*). I, 27, 7.
positus, see pōnō.
possessiō, -ōnis, [possidō, take possession of], f., taking possession of, seizing; possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, 11, 12.
possideō, -ēre, sēdi, -sessus [potis, able+sedeō, sit], *a., sit as master; hold possession of, occupy, hold, possess.* I, 34, 8; II, 4, 18.
possidō, -ere, sēdi, sessus, take possession of, seize. IV, 7, 11.
possum, posse, potui [potis, able, +sum], *n.*, be able, can; to have power or influence; **plūrimum posse, to be very powerful.** I, 2, 13.
post, adv. and prep. with acc., after; behind, back, beneath, afterwards. I, 5, 1.
postea, adv. [post, after], after this, afterwards. I, 21, 11.
posteaquam (postea quam), adv. [postea, afterwards], after. I, 31, 14; IV, 19, 5.
posterus, -a, -um [post, after], after, following, next; *in m. pl. as subst.*, posterity; *sup.* **postremus or postumus.** I, 15, 1.
post-pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, postpone; neglect. V, 7, 14.

re-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move back or away, remove, withdraw. I, 19, 14.

re-mūneror, 1, reward. I, 44, 43.

rēmus, -i, m., oar. III, 13, 15.

Rēmus, -a, -um, belonging to, or one of the Remi, *as subst. pl.*, the Remi, *a Belgic people.*

rēnō, -ōnis, m., deer-skin. VI, 21, 13.

re-novō, 1. [novus, new], *a.*, renew. III, 2, 7.

re-nūntiō, 1. [nūntius], *a.*, bring back word, bring news, report; proclaim, declare. I, 10, 1.

repellō, -ere, repulī (reppulī), repulsus [re-+pellō, beat, drive], *a.*, beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I, 8, 16.

repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 52, 6; V, 17, 5.

repentinō, adv., unexpectedly, without warning. II, 33, 10.

repentinus, -a, -um [repēns, sudden], sudden, unlooked for, unexpected, hasty. I, 13, 4.

reperiō, -ire, reperī, repertus [periō, procure], *a.*, procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain. I, 18, 6.

re-petō, -ere, petivī (petī), petītus [pētō, seek], *a.*, seek or ask again, exact, demand back; inflect (poenās). I, 30, 5.

re-pleō, -ēre, plēvī, plētus, replenish, supply, fill up.

re-portō, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry or bring back, convey. IV, 29, 12.

re-poscō, -ere, demand back, claim, exact.

re-praesentō, 1, exhibit; do at once. I, 40, 43.

re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, [prehendō, seize], *a.*, hold back or fast, seize hold of; criticise, blame, censure. I, 20, 18.

re-primō, -ere, pressi, pressus [premō, press], *a.*, press or keep back, curb, check, restrain. III, 14, 3.

repudiō, 1, reject. I, 40, 10.

re-pūgnō, 1. [pūgnō, fight], *n.*, fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19, 8.

repulsus, see repellō.

re-quirō, -ere, -sivī, -sītus, require, demand; miss, look in vain for.

rēs, rei, f., thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence, circumstance: **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frumentāria**, supplies; **rēs militāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs pública**, the state, the public interests. I, 2, 12.

re-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus [scindō, cleave], *a.*, cut away or down, break up, destroy. I, 7, 7.

re-sciscō, -ere, scivī, scītus, learn. I, 28, 1.

re-scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, write again; re-enlist. I, 42, 23.

re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], *a.*, keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53, 22; III, 3, 14.

re-sideō, -ēre, sedī, remain. VII, 77, 14.

re-sidō, -ere, sedī, grow calm.

resistō, -ere, stitī, stitum, to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain. I, 25, 20.

respicō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [ob-sol., speciō, look], *a.*, look back or about; have respect to, regard. II, 24, 7.

re-spondeō, -ēre, spondī, spōnsus [spondeō, promise], *a.*, make return; reply, answer. I, 7, 19.

respōnsum, -ī [respondeō, answer], *n.*, reply, answer; advice. I, 14, 23.

rēs pública, rei publicae [rēs, matter+publicus], public affairs; state, commonwealth. I, 33, 12; II, 5, 5.

re-spuō, -ere, spuī, spurn. I, 42, 5.

re-stinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus, extinguish, quench.

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō,

in advance; dispatch. I, 15, 4.
præmium, -ī [præ-emō, buy or get before others], *n.*, advantage, distinction, prize, reward. I, 43, 14; III, 18, 4.
præ-occupō, I, seize upon beforehand, preoccupy.
præ-optō, I, prefer. I, 25, 10.
præ-parō, I. [parō, prepare], *a.*, prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14, 15.
præ-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], place or put before or over, put in command of. I, 54, 7.
præ-rumpō, -ere, ruptus [rumpō, break], *a.*, break off, tear away. III, 14, 18.
præ-sæpiō(sēp-), -ire, psi-, -tus, hedge or block up. VII, 77, 31.
præ-scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, *a.*, *n.*, write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. I, 36, 5; II, 20, 10.
præscriptum, -ī, *n.*, command. I, 36, 4.
præsēns, -entis, *pres. part. of* præsūm.
præsentiā, -ae, *f.*, presence, the present moment: in præsentiā, for the moment, at the moment. I, 15, 12.
præ-sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel beforehand, presage.
præ-sæpiō, -ire, -psi-, -ptus, [sæpiō, hedge in], *a.*, hedge or block up, barricade. VII, 77, 31.
præsertim [præ+serō, join], *placed foremost*: particularly, especially. I, 16, 17.
præsidium, -ī [præsēs, guard], *n.*, guard, garrison; safeguard, defence; redoubt, stronghold. I, 8, 6.
præstō, *adv.*, at hand, ready.
præ-stō, stāre stitī, stātūrus (stitus) [stō, stand], *a.*, *n.*, stand or place before, show, supply, furnish; be superior or pre-eminent, excel, surpass. *Impers. præstat*, it is better. I, 2, 6.
præ-sum, esse, fui, futūrus [præ,

before], *n.*, be before or over, be in command of, rule over. I, 16, 13.
præter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, along by, beyond, contrary to; except, besides. I, 11, 13.
prætereā, *adv.* [præter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34, 7; III, 17, 9.
præter-eō, ire, ivi(ii), itus [præter, beyond+eō], *a.*, *n.*, go beyond or past, pass by; omit, neglect, reject: *in p. p. as adj.*, past: *as subst.*, the past. I, 20, 20.
præteritus, *see* prætereō.
præter-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send or let go by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13, 11.
præter-quam, *adv.*, besides, except. I, 5, 6.
prætor, -ōris, *m.*, president; general, judge. I, 21, 6.
prætorius, -a, -um, prætorian. I, 40, 48.
præ-ūrō, -ere, ussi, ūstus, burn in front or at the end. VII, 73, 17.
præ-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, precede; anticipate; prefer.
prāvus, -a, -um, perverse, wrong.
prēmō, -ere, pressi, pressus, *a.*, press, oppress, burden, annoy, press upon, press hard. I, 52, 14; II, 24, 15.
prēndō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, seize, grasp. I, 20, 14.
pretium -ī, *n.*, price. I, 18, 9.
prex, precis, (*in sing. only in abl.*) [precor, pray], *f.*, prayer, request, entreaty; a good wish; imprecation. I, 16, 18.
pridiē, *adv.* [pri- in prior+diēs], on the day before. I, 23, 9.
primipilus, -ī [primus+pilus, a century or maniple], *m.*, the first or chief centurion. II, 25, 8.
primō, [*abl. of primus*, first], *adv.*, at first, in the first place. I, 31, 13; II, 8, 1.
primum, *adv.* [primus, first], first, at first, in the first place: *cum primum*, as soon as. I, 25, 1.

- primus**, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*: (*comp. prior*), first; foremost, chief. I, 10, 19.
- princeps**, -ipis [*primus*+*capiō*], *m.*, *taking the first place*; chief, most prominent, principal; *as subst.* chief or principal person, leader. I, 7, 9.
- prīncipātus**, -ūs [*princeps*, chief], *m.*, chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3, 15.
- prior**, *prius*, *comp. adj.* [*superl. primus*], former, previous, prior, first: *in pl. as subst.*, those in advance. II, 11, 16.
- prīstinus**, -a, -um [*for priustinus fr. prior*], former, primitive, original. I, 13, 12.
- prius**, *adv.* [*prior*, former], before, sooner, previously; **prius quam** (*priusquam*), before. I, 19, 12.
- priusquam**, *adv.* sooner than, before. I, 19, 12.
- privātim**, *adv.* [*privātus*, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17, 4.
- privātus**, -a, -um [*p. p. of privō*, set apart], apart from *publicity*; private, personal, individual. I, 5, 5.
- prō**, *prep. with abl.* [*cf. prae*], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of; in consideration of, in proportion to. I, 2, 15.
- probō**, 1. [*probus*, good], *a.*, consider good, approve; test, prove; show, demonstrate. I, 3, 18.
- prō-cēdō**, -ere, *cessi*, *cessus* [*cēdō*, go], *n.*, go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38, 1; II, 20, 4.
- Procellus**, -ī, *m.*, a *cognomen*, see **Valerius**.
- prō-clinō**, 1, bend forward, incline, totter.
- prō-cōnsul**, -is, *m.*, a *proconsul*, one who at the close of his *consulship* in Rome became *governor* of a province: one invested with the powers of a *consul* or *military governor*. III, 20, 7.
- procul**, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, aloof. II, 30, 5.
- prōcumbō**, -ere, *cubui*, *cubitum* [*cubō*, lie down], *n.*, lean or fall forwards, sink or lie down, fall. II, 27, 2.
- prō-cūrō**, 1, care for; expiate. VI, 13, 9.
- prō-currō**, -ere, *curri*, *cursum* [*currō*, run], *n.*, run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52, 6.
- prōd-eō**, -ire, -ii, *itus* [*prō*+*eō*, go], go or come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48, 17.
- prōditio**, -ōnis, *f.*, betrayal, treason.
- prōditor**, -ōris, *m.*, traitor. VI, 23, 17.
- prōdō**, -dere; -didi, *ditus*, *a.*, give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down: **memoriam**: preserve, hand down (*to posterity*); **memoriā prōditum**: told in tradition, handed down. I, 13, 20.
- prō-dūcō**, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductus*, [*dūcō*, lead], *a.*, lead out or forth, bring forth, produce; draw up (*cōpiās*); prolong, protract. I, 48, 7; III, 17, 13.
- proelior**, 1. [*proelium*, battle], *n.*, join or engage in battle, fight. II, 23, 11.
- proelium**, -ī, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement. I, 1, 13.
- profectio**, -ōnis [*proficiscor*, set out], *f.*, a setting out, start, departure. I, 3, 8.
- prōfectus** see **proficiō**.
- profectus** see **proficiscor**.
- prō-ferō**, *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātus*, bring forth, produce. VII, 82, 9.
- prōficiō**, -ere, *feci*, *fectus*, [*faciō*], *a.*, *n.*, make progress, advance; profit, effect, accomplish. III, 26, 12.
- proficiscor**, -ī, **profectus sum**, *n.*, set out, start, depart; go, proceed. I, 3, 2.
- prō-fiteor**, -ēri, **fessus sum**, *avow*. VI, 23, 14.
- prō-fligō**, 1. [*obsol. fligō*, strike], *a.*, strike to the ground; overcome; put to flight. II, 23, 10.

prō-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow forth. IV, 10, 1.
prōfugiō, -ere, fūgī, [fugiō, flee], *n.*, flee from or before, run away, escape. I, 31, 29; II, 14, 9.
prō-gnātus, -a, -um [nāscor, be born], born, descended, sprung. II, 29, 11.
prōgredior, gredī, gressus sum [gradior, step], *n.*, step or go forward, come or march out, advance, proceed, go. I, 50, 3; II, 10, 10.
pro-hibeō, 2. [habeō], *a.*, have, hold, or keep from or forth; restrain; keep, prevent. I, 1, 14.
prō-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, throw], *a.*, throw forward or away, project; cast; reject, abandon. I, 27, 3.
pro-inde, *adv.*, hence, accordingly, therefore.
prōlātus, *see* prōferō.
prō-mineō, 2, project, extend.
prōmiscue, *adv.*, in common. VI, 21, 12.
prō-mittō, -ere, misī, missus, send forward, let grow. V, 14, 7.
prō-moveō, -ere, mōvi, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move forward, advance, extend, enlarge; put off. I, 48, 1; II, 31, 5.
prō-munturium, -i, *n.*, headland. III, 12, 2.
prōmptus, -a, -um, ready. III, 19, 16.
prōnē, *adv.*, sloping downwards. IV, 17, 12.
prō-nūntiō (nūnciō), 1. [nūntiō, announce], *a.*, announce or set forth, publish; tell, relate, report. IV, 5, 8.
prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near, nigh, hard by, at hand; nearly, almost. I, 22, 10.
prō-pellō, -ere, pulli, pulsus [pellō, drive], *a.*, drive or thrust forward, propel, urge on; put to flight, rout, dislodge. I, 15, 9.
properō, 1. [properus, quick], *a.*, *n.*, hasten, accelerate; make or do with haste. II, 11, 4.
propinquitās, -tātis [propinquus,

neighboring, near], *f.*, nearness, vicinity; nearness of blood, relationship. II, 4, 11.
propinquus, -a, -um [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *in pl. as subst. relatives.* I, 16, 16.
propius, *compar. adv.* [prope, near], nearer. I, 42, 3; IV, 9, 3.
prō-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], *a.*, place or put forward, set forth, present, propose, explain, declare, promise, offer, purpose. I, 17, 2.
proprius, -a, -um, one's own. VI, 22, 3.
propter [for propiter fr. prope, near], (1) *adv.* near, at hand. (2) *prep. with acc.*, near, close to; on account of, because of, for; by means of, through. I, 9, 2.
propter-eā, *conj.*, on this account, therefore. I, 1, 7.
prōpūgnātor, -ōris, *m.*, defender.
prō-pūgnō, 1. *n.*, fight forth, make sallies; fight for, defend. II, 7, 5.
prōpulsō, 1. [freq. of prōpellō, drive forth or away], *a.*, drive forth or back, repel. I, 49, 11; VI, 15, 4.
prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. III, 13, 4.
prō-ruō, -ere, ruī, rūtus, overthrow. III, 26, 8.
prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, [sequor, follow], follow (*in a friendly or hostile manner*), accompany, attend, continue, pursue. II, 5, 1.
prōspectus, -ūs, [prōspiciō, look forth], *m.*, a lookout, view, prospect. II, 22, 5.
prōspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [speciō, look], *n.*, look forward, look out; look to beforehand, see to, provide for. I, 23, 5.
prō-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus, prostrate. VII, 77, 27.
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, be for or of use, benefit.
prō-tegō, -ere, tēxī, tectus, cover.

prō-terreō, 2, frighten off. ° VII, 81, 13.
prōtinus, *adv.* [tenus, *prep. fr. teneō*, hold], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, 9, 7.
prō-turbō, 1. [turbō, disturb], *a.*, drive in confusion, dislodge, repulse. II, 19, 20.
prō-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, set sail. V, 8, 7.
prō-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus, come forth, arise, be produced.
prōventus, -ūs, *m.*, result. VII, 80, 6.
prō-vidēō, -ēre, vidī, visus [videō, see], *a., n.*, see beforehand, foresee, care for, provide. II, 22, 7.
prōvincia, -ae [prō-vincō, extend by conquest], *f.*, charge or administration of a province; province. I, 1, 7.
prōvinciālis, -e, of a province.
prō-volō, 1, fly or rush forth. II, 19, 19.
proximē, *adv.*, last, lately. I, 24, 6.
proximus -a, -um, [superl. fr. prior, nearer], nearest, next to, next; last. I, 1, 10.
prudentia, -ae, *f.*, foresight. II, 4, 22.
Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.*, III, 27, 3.
pūbēs, -eris, grown up, adult; *pl. as subst.*, adults.
pūblicē, [pūblicus, public], at state cost, on behalf of the state, officially. I, 18, 2.
pūblicō, 1, adjudge to public use; confiscate.
pūblicus, -a, -um, [for populus fr. populus, people], of the state or people, common, public. I, 12, 19.
Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen. I, 21, 10.
pudēō, 2, *gen. impers.*, be ashamed, feel shame.
pudor, -ōris [pudet, it shames], *m.*, shame, modesty, sense of shame or honor. I, 39, 14.
puer, -erī, *m.*, boy, child; son: *in pl.*, children (of both sexes); ā puerō

(pueris), from childhood. I, 29 5.
puerilis, -e, childish. VI, 18, 8.
pūgna, -ae [pūgnō, fight], *f.*, a fight, battle; contest, dispute. I, 25, 6.
pūgnō, 1. [cf. pugil, a boxer], *n.*, fight, give battle, contend; oppose; strive. I, 25, 9.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful; noble. VII, 77, 40.
Pulio, -ōnis, *m.*, Publius Pulio, a centurion of Cicero's legion.
pulsus, see pellō.
pulsus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke. III, 13, 15.
pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32, 6.
puppis, -is, *f.*, stern or poop of a ship. III, 13, 4.
pūrgō, 1. [pūrus, clean+agō], *a.*, clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; *in p. p. as adj.*, freed from blame or suspicion, exonerated. I, 28, 3.
putō, 1. *a.*, cleanse; clear up, adjust; reckon, estimate, think. I, 7, 15.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, Pyrenean, Pyrenees. I, 1, 21.

Q.

quā, *adv.* [abl. fem. of qui], by which way or road, in which direction or place, where. I, 6, 4.
quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num.* forty each. IV, 17, 14.
quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num.* forty. I, 2, 17.
quadringenti, -ae, -a, *card. num.* four hundred. I, 5, 4.
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvi, quaesītus, *a.*, seek or look for, inquire, ask, examine, investigate. I, 18, 4.
quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry. VI, 19, 10.
quaestor, -ōris [quaerō, seek], *m.*, a quaestor, one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army; quartermaster. I, 52, 2; IV, 13, 10.
quaestus, -ūs, *m.*, gain. VI, 17, 3.
quālis, -e [quis], *interrog.*, of what

- sort, kind or nature, what; *rel.*, of such a sort, kind or nature, such as, as. I, 21, 3.
- quam**, *adv.* with *interrog.*, how, how much; with *comp.*, as, than; with *sup.*, as possible; with *expressions of time*, after; **quam diū**, as long as. I, 3, 3.
- quam-ob-rem**, *adv. interrog.*, (I, 50, 10) and *rel.*, wherefore, why. I, 34, 1.
- quamvis**, *adv.*, however. IV, 2, 12.
- quandō**, *indef. adv.*, ever. III, 12, 7.
- quantō opere (quantopere)**, *adv.*, how greatly, how much. II, 5, 5.
- quantus**, -a, -um [*cf. interrog. quam*, how?], *a. interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? *b. relative*, as much, as great (large) as; **tantum . . . quantum**, as much (great or far) as; *in acc. as adv.*, how much; *in abl.*, as, as much as. I, 17, 13.
- quantusvis**, -avis, -umvis, however great.
- quārē** [*abl. of qui and rēs*], *adv.*, by which thing; wherefore, why. I, 13, 18.
- quartus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, fourth. I, 12, 7.
- qua-si**, *adv.*, as if, just as if.
- quattuor**, *card. num.*, four. I, 12, 13.
- quattuor-decim**, *card. num.*, fourteen. I, 36, 18; VII, 74, 2.
- que**, (*always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects*), and. I, 1, 8.
- quem-ad-modum**, *adv.*, in what way or manner, just as, as, how. I, 36, 2; III, 16, 7.
- queror**, -i, *questus sum*, *a., n.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, 16, 19.
- qui**, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that: *often implying an antecedent*, he who or those who. I, 1, 1.
- qui-cumque (-cunque)**, **quae-cumque**, **quod-cumque**, *indef. rel. pron.* [*cumque*, ever], who, ever, whatever, everyone who, everything that. I, 31, 51; IV, 7, 7.
- quid**, *adv. interrog.*, why? I, 49, 19.
- quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam (quiddam)**, *indef. pron.*, a certain, some; some one (body or thing). I, 30, 13; II, 17, 4.
- quidem**, *adv.*, (*emphasizing the expression before it*) indeed, at any rate, at least, truly: **nē . . . quidem**, not even. I, 16, 5.
- quies**, -ētis, *r.*, repose. VI, 27, 4.
- quiētus**, -a, -um, *in repose*, undisturbed, peaceful.
- quin** [**qui+nē**], *conj.*, by which not, that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance*, but what, that, from, to; **quin etiam**, nay even, moreover. I, 3, 20.
- quinam**, *see quisnam*.
- quincunx**, -uncis, *m.*, five-twelfths. VII, 73, 14.
- quindecim** [**quinque**, five+**decem**], *indecl. num.*, fifteen. I, 15, 13.
- quingenti**, -ae, -a [**quin-que**, five+**centum**], five hundred. I, 15, 8.
- quini**, -ae, -a [**quinque**], *distrib. num. adj.*, five each, five at a time. I, 15, 15.
- quingūgintā**, *card. num.*, fifty. I, 41, 12; II, 4, 24.
- quinque**, *card. num.*, five. I, 10, 12.
- quintus**, -a, -um (*v*), *ord. num.*, fifth. I, 6, 16.
- Quintus**, -i, *m.*, a *praenomen*. I, 45, 6; II, 2, 3.
- quis**, **quae**, **quid (quod)**, (1), *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (2), *indef. pron.* (*especially after si, nisi, num, nē*), anyone, anything, any; somebody, some, something. I, 7, 20.
- quisnam**, (**quinam**), **quaenam**, **quodnam (quidnam)**, *interrog. pron.*, who then? what pray? II, 30, 7.
- quis-piam**, **quae-piam**, **quid-(quod-)piam**, any. VI, 17, 14.

re-moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move back or away, remove, withdraw. I, 19, 14.

re-mūneror, 1, reward. I, 44, 43.

rēmus, -i, m., oar. III, 13, 15.

Rēmus, -a, -um, belonging to, or one of the Remi, *as subst. pl.*, the Remi, *a Belgic people*.

rēnō, -ōnis, m., deer-skin. VI, 21, 13.

re-novō, 1. [novus, new], *a.*, renew. III, 2, 7.

re-nūntiō, 1. [nūntius], *a.*, bring back word, bring news, report; proclaim, declare. I, 10, 1.

repellō, -ere, repulī (reppulī), repulsus [re-+pellō, beat, drive], *a.*, beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I, 8, 16.

repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 52, 6; V, 17, 5.

repentinō, adv., unexpectedly, without warning. II, 33, 10.

repentinus, -a, -um [repēns, sudden], sudden, unlooked for, unexpected, hasty. I, 13, 4.

reperio, -ire, repperi, repertus [pariō, procure], *a.*, procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain. I, 18, 6.

re-petō, -ere, petivī (petī), petītus [pētō, seek], *a.*, seek or ask again, exact, demand back; infict (poenās). I, 30, 5.

re-pleō, -ēre, plēvi, plētus, replenish, supply, fill up.

re-portō, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry or bring back, convey. IV, 29, 12.

re-poscō, -ere, demand back, claim, exact.

re-praesentō, 1, exhibit; do at once. I, 40, 43.

re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, [prehendō, seize], *a.*, hold back or fast, seize hold of; criticise, blame, censure. I, 20, 18.

re-primō, -ere, pressi, pressus [premō, press], *a.*, press or keep back, curb, check, restrain. III, 14, 3.

repudiō, 1, reject. I, 40, 10.

re-pūgnō, 1. [pūgnō, fight], *n.*, fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19, 8.

repulsus, see repellō.

re-quirō, -ere, -sivi, -sītus, require, demand; miss, look in vain for.

rēs, rei, r., thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence, circumstance: **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frumentāria**, supplies; **rēs militāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs pública**, the state, the public interests. I, 2, 12.

re-scindō, -ere, scidi, scissus [scindō, cleave], *a.*, cut away or down, break up, destroy. I, 7, 7.

re-sciscō, -ere, scivī, scītus, learn. I, 28, 1.

re-scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, write again; re-enlist. I, 42, 23.

re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], *a.*, keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53, 22; III, 3, 14.

re-sideō, -ēre, sēdi, remain. VII, 77, 14.

re-sidō, -ere, sēdi, grow calm.

resistō, -ere, stiti, stitum, to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain. I, 25, 20.

respiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [ob-sol., specio, look], *a.*, look back or about; have respect to, regard. II, 24, 7.

re-spondeō, -ēre, spondī, spōnsus [spondeō, promise], *a.*, make return; reply, answer. I, 7, 19.

respōnsū, -ī [respondeō, answer], *n.*, reply, answer; advice. I, 14, 23.

rēs pública, rei publicae [rēs, matter-+pūbicus], public affairs; state, commonwealth. I, 33, 12; II, 5, 5.

re-spuō, -ere, spui, spurn. I, 42, 5.

re-stinguō, -ere, -nxi, -nctus, extinguish, quench.

restituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [statuō,

set up], *a.*, set up again, re-establish, restore. I, 18, 22.

retineō, 2. [teneō, hold], *a.*, hold or keep back, detain; restrain, hinder; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18, 4.

re-trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractus, drag or call back. V, 1, 16.

re-vellō, -ere, velli, vulsus (vol-) [vellō, pluck], *a.*, pluck or tear away, pull or tear out. I, 52, 11; VII, 73, 11.

re-vertō, -ere, verti, *n.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses and **re-vertor**, -i, versus sum, used in the imperfect tenses [vertō, turn], *n.*, turn back or again; return. I, 7, 20.

re-vinciō, -ire, vinxi, vinctus [vinciō, bind], *a.*, bind back or fast, fasten, bind. III, 13, 9.

re-vocō, 1, *a.*, call back, recall, call off, withdraw. II, 20, 3.

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. I, 31, 32; II, 4, 18.

Rhēnus, -i, *m.*, the Rhine, forming the boundary between Gallia and Germania. I, 1, 10.

Rhodanus, -i, *m.*, a Gallic river, now the Rhone. I, 1, 16.

ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream). I, 6, 15.

rivus, -i, *m.*, small stream.

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. III, 13, 6.

rōgō, 1. *a.*, *n.*, ask, question, request; propose (iūs); bring forward (magistrātum); administer the oath to (militēs). I, 11, 5.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. I, 31, 29; VI, 12, 14.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman: as *subst.*, a Roman. I, 3, 12.

Rōscius, -i, *m.*, a Roman nomen. *E. g.*, Lucius Roscius, a lieutenant of Caesar.

rōstrum, -i [rōdō, gnaw, consume], *n.*, beak of a bird; mouth of an animal; beak or prow of a ship. III, 13, 18.

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. I, 26, 10.

rubus, -i, *m.*, bramble. II, 17, 18.

Rūfus, -i, *m.*, a cognomen. See Sulpicus.

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor, common opinion, reputation. II, 1, 2.

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. II, 29, 6.

rūrsus, (rūrsum), *adv.* [for revertus, from revertō, turn back], backwards; again, back again, anew. I, 25, 17.

Rutēni, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Cadurci and Gabali. I, 45, 6; VII, 75, 11.

Rutilus, -i, *m.*, VII, 90, 7.

S.

Sabinus, -i, *m.*, a Roman cognomen: Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 5, 20.

Sabis, -is, *m.*, II, 16, 2.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.*, priest.

sacrāmentum, -i, *n.*, oath.

sacrificium, -i, *n.*, sacrifice. VI, 13, 9.

saepe, often, frequently; many times; *minimē saepe*, very rarely. I, 1, 8.

saepenumērō, *adv.* [saepe, often + numerus], oftentimes, repeatedly, frequently. I, 33, 8.

saepēs, -is, [saepiō, hedge in], *f.*, hedge. II, 17, 19.

saeviō, -ire, -ii, -itus, [saevus, raging], *n.*, rage; be fierce or violent. III, 13, 21.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. IV, 25, 5.

sagittārius, -i, [sagitta, an arrow], *m.*, bowman, archer. II, 7, 2.

sagulum, -i, *n.*, a small military or traveling cloak.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, forest, thicket, jungle.

salūs, salūtis [salveō, be well], *f.*, health, welfare; preservation, security, safety. I, 27, 11.

Samarobriua, -ae, *f.*, a Gallic city, now Amiens.

sanciō, -ire, sānxi, sānctus [cf. sācer, sacred], *a.*, ordain, ratify, sanction. I, 30, 17; VI, 20, 2.

sānctus, -a, -um [sanciō, make

- sacred], sacred, holy, inviolable. III, 9, 10.
- sanguis**, -inis, m., blood.
- sānitas**, -tātis [sānus, sound (in mind or body)], f., soundness of body, good health; soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, 42, 6.
- sānō**, 1, make sound, restore, heal.
- Santonī**, -ōrum, (ēs, -um), m., a Gallic tribe between the Loire and Garonne. I, 10, 3.
- sānus**, -a, -um, sound; sensible. V, 7, 17.
- sapiō**, -ere, -ivī, taste; be wise; discern.
- sarcina**, -ae, f., pack; luggage. I, 24, 8.
- sarcinae**, -ārum, [sarciō, mend, restore], f., pl., baggage or luggage (of the individual soldier), packs. I, 24, 8.
- sarmentum**, -i, n., brushwood. III, 18, 19.
- satis** (sat), adv. and indec. adj., enough, sufficiently; sufficient, satisfactory. **satis causae**, sufficient reason. I, 3, 7.
- satis-faciō**, -ere, feci, factus [faciō, make], n., make or do enough for, make or give satisfaction, satisfy; apologize, ask pardon. I, 14, 19.
- satisfactiō**, -ōnis [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], f., satisfaction, amends; excuse, apology. I, 41, 10.
- saucius**, -a, -um, wounded, hurt. III, 4, 12.
- saxum**, -i, n., rock, large stone. II, 29, 9.
- scālae**, -ārum, f., steps; ladder. VII, 81, 2.
- Scaldis**, -is, m., the Scheldt, a river of Belgic Gaul.
- scapha**, -ae, f., skiff. IV, 26, 9.
- scelerātus**, -a, um, accursed. VI, 13, 18.
- scelus**, -eris, n., crime. I, 14, 15.
- scienter**, adv., expertly, skilfully. VII, 22, 6.
- scientia**, -ae, [sciō, know], f., knowledge, science, experience, skill. I, 47, 13; II, 20, 8.
- scindō**, -ere, scidi, scissus, a., split, cleave; tear down, destroy. III, 5, 4.
- sciō**, 4. a., distinguish; know, understand. I, 20, 3.
- scorpiō**, -ōnia, m., a military engine for hurling missiles.
- scribō**, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, a., write, describe by characters or in writing. II, 29, 1.
- scrobis**, -is, m., f., pit. VII, 73, 15.
- scūtum**, -i, n., shield, buckler; oblong, convex ($2\frac{1}{2} \times 4$ ft.), made of wood covered with leather (or iron plates), with a metal rim. I, 25, 7.
- sēcius**, comp. adv., less: nihilō sēcius, none the less. I, 49, 50; IV, 17, 23.
- secō**, -āre, secuī, sectus, cut, cut off; reap.
- sēcretō**, [sēcernō, separate], adv., separately, apart, privately, secretly. I, 18, 6.
- sectiō**, -ōnis, f., cutting; booty. II, 33, 19.
- sector**, 1. follow eagerly, chase.
- secundum**, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], by, along; after, next to; in accordance with, according to. I, 32, 6; II, 18, 8.
- secundus**, -a, -um, [sequor, follow], next (in time or order), second; (of currents and winds as following a vessel and metaphorically of other objects), favorable, propitious, prosperous. **rēs**: prosperous affairs, prosperity. I, 14, 15.
- secūris**, -is, f., axe. VII, 77, 50.
- secūtus**, see sequor.
- sed**, conj., but, yet (a stronger adverbative than autem or at.) I, 12, 19.
- sēdecim**, indecl. num., sixteen. I, 8, 5.
- sēdēs**, -is [sedēō, sit], f., seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. I, 31, 37; IV, 4, 12.

sēditō, -ōnis, *f.*, insurrection, meeting.
sēditiosus, -a, -um, mutinous. I, 17, 5.
Sedulius, -i, *m.*, a chief of the Lemovices. VII, 88, 10.
Sedūni, -ōrum, *m.*, a Helvetian people about modern Sitten. III, 1, 3.
Sedusii, -ōrum, *m.* I, 51, 9.
seges, -etis, *f.*, growing grain, crop.
Sēgnī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe.
Segovax, -actis, *m.*, V, 22, 4.
Segontiaci, -ōrum, *m.* V, 21, 2.
Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe west of the Rhone, capital Lugdunum, now Lyons. I, 10, 17.
semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; but once, once for all; **semel atque iterum**, repeatedly; **ut semel**, as soon as. I, 31, 17.
sēmentis, -is [sēmen, seed], *f.*, seeding, planting, sowing. I, 3, 4.
sēmita, -ae, *f.*, lane, foot-path. V, 19, 9.
semper, *adv.*, always, every time, constantly, ever. I, 18, 18.
Sempronius, -i, *m.*, see Rutulus, VII, 90, 7.
senātor, -ōris, *m.*, elder, senator. II, 28, 8.
senātus, -ūs, [senex, old man], *m.*, a body of old men, senate; *esp.*, the administrative council of Rome. I, 3, 12.
senex, **senis**, *adj.*, old: as *subst.*, old man. I, 29, 5.
sēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, six each, I, 15, 15.
Senonēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Sens. II, 2, 5.
sentētia, -ae, [sentio, think], *f.*, way of thinking, opinion, a sentiment, feeling, purpose; decision, verdict. I, 45, 1; II, 10, 16.
sentio, -ire, **sēnsi**, **sēnsus**, *a.*, perceive, feel, be sensible of; experience, undergo; think, observe, be aware; decide. I, 18, 2.
sentis, -is, *m.*, briar, thorn. II, 17, 18.

sēparātim [sēparō, separate], separately, apart, asunder.
sē-parō, I. [sē=sine, without, aside], sever, separate: *in p. p.* as *adj.*, separated, marked off. IV, 1, 14.
septem (VII), *card. num.*, seven. IV, 23, 18.
septentrionēs, -um, [triōnēs, ploughing oxen], (*the constellations of the Great Bear and Little Bear were compared to a wagon with oxen*), *m.*, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North: *in sing.* **Septentriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the North (*once*). I, 1, 18.
septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, seventh. I, 10, 16.
septingenti, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, seven hundred. V, 13, 15.
septuāgintā, *indecl. num.*, seventy, IV, 12, 18.
sepultūra, -ae [sepeliō, bury], *f.*, burial, sepulture. I, 26, 17.
Sēquana, -ae, *m.*, the Seine. I, 1, 5.
Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Saone and the Jura. I, 1, 17.
sequor, **sequi**, **secūtus**, *dep.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend. I, 4, 3.
Ser., abbrev. for **Servius**.
sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation. VI, 13, 19.
sērō, *adv.*, late.
serō, -ere, **sēvi**, **satus**, sow, plant. V, 14, 4.
Sertōrius, -i, *m.* III, 23, 11.
servilis, -e, [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40, 16; VI, 19, 9.
serviō, *a.*, [servus], *a.*, *n.*, be a slave, be subservient, follow, heed. IV, 5, 11.
servitūs, -ūtis, [servus, a slave], *f.*, slavery, servitude. I, 11, 7.
Servius, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. III, 1, 1.
servō, I. *a.*, save, preserve, maintain, keep; keep guard, watch. II, 33, 5.

- servus**, -ī, m., slave, servant. I, 27, 7.
- sēsqui-pedālis**, -e, of a foot and a half. IV, 17, 8.
- seu**, see *sive*. I, 23, 8.
- sevēritās**, -tātis, f., gravity, sternness, severity.
- sē-vocō**, 1, call apart. V, 6, 14.
- sōvum**, -ī, n., tallow, suet, grease.
- sex**, *card. num.*, six. I, 27, 8.
- sexāgintā (LX)**, *card. num.*, sixty, II, 4, 16.
- sexcentī**, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, six hundred. II, 8, 12.
- Sextius**, -ī, m., a Roman nomen. e. g., (1) P. Sextius Baoulus, a centurion. II, 25, 8. (2) T. Sextius, one of Caesar's lieutenant's. VII, 90, 10.
- sī**, *conj.*, if; to see if, whether: **Quod sī**, but if, now if. I, 7, 20.
- Sibuzātēs**, -um, m. III, 17, 4.
- sic**, *adv.* (**sī+de monstr. particle -ce**), so, thus, in this manner. I, 38, 7; II, 4, 2.
- siccitās**, tātis, [siccus, dry], f., drought, dryness. IV, 38, 4.
- sīcubi**, *adv.*, if in any place, if anywhere, wheresoever. V, 17, 6.
- sic-ut**, (-utī), *adv.* so as, just as, as. I, 44, 26; VI, 26, 3.
- sīdus**, -eris, n., star; constellation. VI, 14, 17.
- signifer**, -erī, m., standard-bearer. II, 25, 6.
- significātiō**, -ōnis [signum, sign + faciō], f., making of signs, signal, indication, notice. II, 32, 12.
- significō**, 1. [signum + faciō], a., make signs, show, indicate. II, 7, 11.
- signum**, -ī, n., mark, sign; military standard, banner; signal, watchword; statue; seal; signa sequī, follow the standard; ab signis discēdere, withdraw from the ranks; signa inferre, advance; signa convertere, wheel about. I, 25, 19.
- Sīlānus**, -ī, m., a cognomen. See Iūnius.
- silentium**, -ī, n., silence. VII, 71, 18.
- Silius**, -ī, m., a Roman nomen. E. g., T. Silius. III, 7, 12.
- silva**, -ae, f., a wood, forest, woods. I, 12, 12.
- silvestris**, -e, [silva, forest], of a wood or forest, wooded, woody. II, 18, 6.
- similis**, -e, like.
- similitūdō**, -inis, f., likeness. VII, 73, 22.
- simul**, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, together: **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and, partly . . . partly: **simul atque**, as soon as. I, 19, 16.
- simulācrum**, -ī, n., image. VI, 16, 9.
- simul-atque**, see *simul*.
- simulātiō**, -ōnis [simulō, make like], f., simulation, pretence, deceit. I, 40, 32; IV, 13, 12.
- simulō**, 1. [similis, like], make like, counterfeit, pretend. I, 44, 34; IV, 13, 12.
- simultās**, -tātis, f., dissension, rivalry.
- sīn**, *conj.* [**sī+ne**], if however, but if. I, 13, 11.
- sincērō**, *adv.*, candidly, uprightly.
- sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. I, 7, 10.
- singulāris**, -e [singulī], one at a time, one by one, single, alone; singular, unique, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, 24, 12.
- singulātīm**, (-illatīm) [singulī, single], singly, one by one. III, 2, 9.
- singulī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one at a time, single, separate. I, 6, 4.
- sinister**, tra, trum, left; sub sinistra, on the left; *in fem. sing. as subst. (sc. manus)*, the left hand. I, 25, 9.
- sinistrōrsus**, (-um), *adv.*, to the left, VI, 25, 6.
- sīnō**, -ere, sivi situs, permit.

- sī quandō**, *adv.*, if ever. III, 12, 7.
- situs**, -ūs [sinō, let (*be in a place or condition*)], *m.*, situation, site, position. III, 12, 1
- sive**, (seu) [sī, if+ve, or], *conj.*, or, if, whether, if either, *sive* . . . *sive*, either . . . or, whether . . . or. I, 12, 16.
- socer**, -eri, *m.*, father-in-law. I, 12, 20.
- societas**, -tātis, *f.*, association, alliance.
- socius**, -ī, [*cf. sequor*, follow], *m.*, companion, partner, associate; confederate, ally. * I, 5, 13.
- sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, the sun. I, 1, 21.
- sōlācium**, -ī, *n.*, comfort, solace.
- soldūrii**, -ōrum, *n.*, vassals. III, 22, 3.
- sōlēō**, -ere, solitus sum, be wont, be accustomed. VI, 15, 3.
- sōlitudō**, -inis [sōlus, alone], *f.*, loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, desert, wilderness. IV, 18, 10.
- sollertia**, -ae, *f.*, expertness, ingenuity.
- sollicitō** [sollus=tōtus+cieō, rouse], *l. a.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, 1, 8.
- sollicitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, anxiety.
- solum**, -ī, *n.*, bottom, ground, soil; **agrī solum**, the bare ground. I, 11, 13.
- sōlum**, *adv.* [sōlus, only], only, merely. I, 12, 19.
- sōlus**, -a -um, *gen. sōlius*, alone, only, the only. I, 13, 4.
- solvō**, -ere, solvi, solūtus, *a.*, loosen, untie, unbend, disengage; *sc. nāvēs*, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, 23, 2.
- sonitus**, -ūs, *m.*, sound, din.
- sonus**, -ī, *m.*, sound.
- soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister. I, 18, 17.
- sors**, sortis, *f.*, lot; casting or drawing of lots; chance, fate. I, 50, 13.
- Sotiatēs**, (Sont-), -um, *m.*, III, 20, 12.
- spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, interval, period, length (*of time or space*). I, 7, 18.
- speciēs**, -ēi [obsol. speciō, see], *f.*, seeing, sight, look, appearance. I, 51, 5. II, 31, 2.
- spectō**, *l. a.*, look at, behold; look, face, lie. I, 1, 20.
- speculātor**, -ōris, *m.*, spy, scout II, 11, 6.
- speculātōrius**, -a, -um, scouting, IV, 26, 10.
- speculor**, -ī, spy. I, 47, 19.
- spērō**, *l.* [spēs, hope], *a. n.*, hope, hope for, anticipate. I, 3, 24.
- spēs**, ei, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation, I, 5, 7.
- spiritus**, -ūs [spirō, breathe], *m.*, breath, air; high spirit, haughtiness, pride (*mostly in pl.*). I, 33, 21. II, 4, 9.
- spoliō**, *l.* strip, pillage, despoil.
- spontis**, *gen.* and **sponte**, *abl.* (*obs. nom. spōns*), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily, I, 9, 3.
- stabilis**, -e, *fix.* VII, 73, 19.
- stabilitās**, tātis, *f.*, steadiness. IV, 33, 8.
- statim** [stō, stand], as one stands. *hence*, forthwith, immediately. I, 53, 21. II, 11, 5.
- statiō**, ōnis [stō, stand], *f.*, standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts. II, 18, 8.
- statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [status, position], *a.*, put in position, set up, place; determine, judge, resolve; take measures. I, 11, 15.
- statūra**, ae [status, *fr. stō*, stand], *f.*, a standing upright, size or height of the body, stature. II, 30, 9.
- status**, -ūs, *m.*, position. VI, 12, 25.
- stimulus**, -ī, *m.*, goad. VII, 73, 26.
- stipendiārius**, -a, -um [stipendium, tribute], under, or paying tribute, tributary; *in pl. as subst.* tributaries. I, 30, 11.
- stipendium**, -ī [stips, gift+pendō,

n., bending or kneeling in supplication or to receive punishment; supplication (rare); punishment. I, 19, 11.

sup (sub-) -portō, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry or bring up from beneath; bring or convey to; furnish. I, 39, 25; III, 3, 10.

suprā, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, above, before. II, 1, 2.

sus-cipiō, -ere, cēpi, ceptus [sub + capiō, take], *a.*, take or lift up (from beneath), undertake, assume; begin; engage in; undergo, suffer. I, 3, 9.

suspectus, -a, -um, distrusted.

suspiciātus, see **suspīcor**.

suspiciō, -ōnis [suspīcor, suspect], *r.*, suspicion, distrust. I, 4, 11.

suspīcor, 1. [suspiciō, suspect], *a.*, suspect, distrust. I, 44, 34; IV, 6, 4.

sustentō, 1, *a. n.*, (sustineō), to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer. II, 6, 4.

sustineō, 2, [sub + teneō, hold], *a.*, hold up from below, uphold, sustain; hold or keep back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure. I, 24, 3.

suus, -a, -um [suī, himself, herself, etc.], *reflex. pron. adj.* referring to subject, of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, etc., their own; his, hers, its, theirs; *in neut. as subst.*, one's property; suī, their men (friends or countrymen). I, 1, 13.

T.

T. *abbrev. for Titus.* I, 10, 8.

tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, hut; tent. I, 39, 16.

tabula, -ae, *r.*, board; tablet; list. I, 29, 1.

tabulātum, -ī, *n.*, flooring of boards; story.

taceō, 2 *a. n.*, be silent or quiet, keep silent, pass over in silence; *in p. p. as adj.*, silent. I, 17, 2.

tacitus, -a, -um, see **taceō**.

tālea, -ae, *r.*, rod, bar. V, 12, 9.

tālis, -e, such.

tam, so, so much, so very; **nōn tam . . . quam**, not so much as, less than. I, 14, 11.

tamen, *adv.* (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however. I, 7, 18.

Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames. V, 11, 19.

tametsi, *conj.* [tamen + etsi, even if], although, though, notwithstanding; and yet. I, 30, 3.

tandem, *adv.* [tam, so + dem (*cf. idem*)], just so far; at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis*, pray now, then, now. I, 25, 11.

tangō, -ere, tetigi, tāctus, touch. V, 3, 3.

tantopere, *adv.*, so greatly. I, 31, 11.

tantulus, -a, -um [*dim. of tantus*, so great], so small or little, of such diminutive (stature). II, 30, 9.

tantum, *adv.*, only so much, only, merely, but. V, 19, 12.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, 5, 12.

tantundem, *adv.*, just as great or far. VII, 72, 4.

tantus, -a, -um, [*cf. tam*, so], so much, so great, such; **tantī** (*neut. sing. gen.*), of so great account. I, 15, 8.

Tarbelli, -ōrum, *m.*, III, 27, 3.

tardē, *adv.*, slowly. IV, 23, 4.

tardō, 1. [tardus, slow], *a.*, make slow, hinder, obstruct, check. II, 25, 21.

tardus, -a, -um, slow. II, 25, 10.

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.*, a Gallic people on the west coast of Aquitania. III, 23, 2.

Tasgetius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Car-nutes.

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull, ox. VI, 28, 3

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, V, 22, 4.

taxus, -ī, *r.*, yew, yew-tree.

Tectosagēs, -um, *m.*, VI, 24, 7.

tēctum, -ī [tegō, cover], n., covering, roof; house. I, 36, 18.
 tēctus, *see* tegō.
 tegimentum, -ī [tegō, cover], n., a covering. II, 21, 12.
 tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, cover. V, 18, 7.
 tēlum, -ī, n., *a weapon for fighting at a distance*; missile, dart, javelin. I, 8, 16.
 temerārius, -a, -um [temerē, by chance, rashly], rash; imprudent, reckless. I, 31, 47; VI, 20, 5.
 temerē, [*cf.* temeritās, chance], *adv.*, by chance, rashly, blindly. I, 40, 6; IV, 20, 9.
 temeritās, -tātis, f., rashness. VII, 77, 26.
 tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (*of a wagon*). IV, 33, 12.
 temperantia, -ae, f., prudence, self-control. I, 19, 11.
 temperātus, -a, -um, moderate. V, 12, 15.
 temperō, 1. [tempus], a., *mix in due proportion*, qualify, temper; restrain or control one's self, refrain, check, restrain. I, 7, 17.
 tempestās, -tātis [tempus, time], f., time, season; weather; *esp.* bad weather, storm, tempest. III, 12, 13.
 temptō, 1. [*freq.* of tendō, stretch], n., handle, feel; make an attempt upon, attack; try, test, prove; try to win over. I, 14, 9.
 tempus, -oris, n., a division or section of time; time; occasion, crisis; *omni tempore*, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; *ūnō tempore*, at the same time. I, 3, 15.
 Tencteri, -ōrum, m., IV, 1, 3.
 tendō, -ere, tetendi, (tentus), tēnsus, stretch, stretch out, extend. II, 13, 8.
 tenebrae, -ārum, f., darkness. VII, 81, 12.
 teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, a., hold, keep, retain, have; hold in, restrain, bind. I, 7, 18.
 tener, -era, -erum, tender. II, 17, 17.

tenuis, -e, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; inferior.
 tenuitās, -tātis, f., thinness; want, poverty; simplicity.
 tenuiter, *adv.*, thinly, slightly. III, 13, 10.
 ter, *num. adv.*, three times. I, 53, 21.
 teres, -etis, rounded; smooth. VII, 73, 16.
 tergum, -ī, n., the back; the rear: terga vertere, to flee. I, 53, 2; III, 19, 10.
 terni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece, three by three. III, 15, 2.
 terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil; *in pl.* earth, world: orbis terrarum, the world, all nations. I, 30, 6; III, 15, 11.
 Terrasidius, -ī, m., *a Roman nomen. E. g., T. Terrasidius, one of Caesar's officers.* III, 7, 11.
 terrēnus, -a, -um, of earth. I, 43, 2.
 terreō, 2, frighten. VI, 20, 6.
 territō, 1, alarm. V, 6, 15.
 terror, -ōris [terreō, frighten], m., fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12, 2.
 tertius, -a, -um [ter, thrice], *ord. num.* third. I, 1, 2.
 testāmentum, -ī, n., will. I, 39, 18.
 testimōnium, -ī [testor, be a witness], n., witness, testimony, proof; testimonial. I, 44, 20; VI, 28, 8.
 testis, -is, m., f., witness. I, 14, 23.
 testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise; covered column; shed. II, 6, 7.
 Teutomatus, -ī, m., *a chief of the Nitiobroges.*
 Teutoni, -ōrum (or -um), m., *a Celtic people from Jutland, who with the Cimbri overran Gaul, 113 B. C. and also suffered defeat from Marius.* I, 33, 17; II, 4, 7.
 tignum, -ī, n., log, timber.
 Tigurinus, -a, -um, I, 12, 12.
 timeō, -ēre, -uī, a., n., fear, dread,

- apprehend; be afraid or alarmed. I, 14, 7.
- **timidē** [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, 25, 7.
- timidus**, -a, -um [timeō, fear], fearful, affrighted, cowardly, afraid. I, 39, 22.
- timor**, -ōris [timeō, fear], m., fear, alarm, dread. I, 23, 8.
- Titūrius**, -i, m., II, 5, 19.
- Titus**, -i, m., a Roman praenomen. I, 10, 8.
- tolerō**, 1. [cf. tollō, lift up], a., bear up under, bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support. I, 23, 8.
- tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, a., lift or raise up, elevate; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; in p. p. as adj., elated. I, 5, 7.
- Tolōsa**, -ae, f., III, 20, 10.
- Tolōsātēs**, -ium, m., the people of Tolosa in Gallia Provincia, modern Toulouse. I, 10, 8.
- tormentum**, -ī [torqueō, twist], n., means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, (e. g. *Catapulta* and *Ballista*); fig. torment, torture. II, 8, 13.
- torreō**, -ēre, torruī, tōstus, parch, roast, scorch.
- tot**, indecl. num. adj. so many. III, 10, 5.
- totidem**, indecl. adj. [tot, so many + idem], just as many, the same number. I, 48, 12; II, 4, 24.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, gen. tōtius, dat. tōti, the whole, the whole of, entire, all. I, 2, 6.
- trabs**, trabis, f., beam; timber. II, 29, 9.
- tractus**, see trahō.
- trā**-(trāns-) **dō**, dere, didī, ditus [trāns+dō, give], a., give across or over, give up, surrender; in-trust, confide; hand down, transmit. I, 27, 10.
- trā**-**dūcō**, -ere, dūxī, ductus [trāns, across], a., lead or bring across, lead over, transfer, convey; draw or win over. I, 11, 2.
- trāgula**, -ae [trahō, drag], f., a light Celtic javelin or dart attached to a strap by which it was hurled. I, 26, 10.
- trahō**, -ere, trāxi, tractus, a., drag, draw; drag along or in. I, 53, 14.
- trā** (trāns-) **iciō**, -ere, iēcī, iectus, hurl across; pierce. VII, 28, 4.
- trāiectus**, -ūs [trāiciō, cross over], m., crossing over, crossing, passage. IV, 21, 6.
- trānō**, 1, swim across. I, 53, 5.
- tranquillitās**, -tātis [tranquillus, calm], f., calmness of mind or weather, serenity, stillness. III, 15, 8.
- trāns**, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over. With geographical expressions to be translated east of, west of, etc., according to the context. I, 1, 10.
- Trānsalpinus**, -a, -um, across the Alps.
- trāns**-**cendō**, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus, climb across or into; board; surmount. III, 15, 3.
- trāns**-**eō**, ire, īvi(ī), itus [eō, go], a., n., go across or over, pass, cross. I, 5, 12.
- trāns**-**ferō**, ferre, tuli, lātus, carry across, transfer. VI, 13, 30.
- trāns**-**figō**, -ere, fixī fixus [figō, fix], a., thrust or pierce through, transfix. I, 25, 7.
- trāns**-**fodiō**, -ere, fodi, fossus, dig or thrust through. VII, 82, 4.
- trāns**-**gredior**, -i, gressus, a., n., (trans+gradior), to go or pass over; to cross. II, 19, 8.
- trānsitus**, -ūs, m., crossing, passage.
- trānslātus**, see trānsferō.
- trāns**-**marinus**, -a, -um, across the sea. VI, 24, 12.
- trāns**-**missus**, -ūs, m., sending across; passage. V, 13, 8.
- trāns**-**mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, send across.
- trāns**-**portō**, 1, [portō, carry], a., carry across or over, convey, transport. I, 37, 4. IV, 16, 21.

Transrhēnānus, -a, -um *trāns*+
Rhēnus], beyond or across the
 Rhine; *in pl. as subst.*, the people
 across the Rhine. IV, 16, 17.
trānstrum, -ī, n., cross-beam;
 thwart. III, 13, 7.
trāns-versus, -a, -um, athwart.
 II, 8, 11.
Trebius, -ī, m., a Roman family
 name; Marcus Trebius Gallus, a
 military tribune. III, 7, 11.
Trebōnius, -ī, m., V, 17, 5.
trecenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*
 [trēs-centum], three hundred.
 IV, 37, 2.
trepidō, 1, hurry with alarm, be
 disturbed or agitated.
trēs, tria, *gen. trium, card. num.*,
 three. I, 1, 1.
Trēvir, -erī, m., one of the Treveri.
 V, 26, 5. *Pl.* the Treveri, a Cel-
 tic people. I, 37, 6; II, 24, 12.
Tribocēs, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), m., a
 German tribe on the Rhine about
 modern Strasburg. I, 51, 9; IV,
 10, 7.
tribūnus, -ī [tribus, tribe], m., trib-
 une, a magistrature elected by the
 people, voting in tribes, to defend
 the interests of the plebs; **tribūnus**
militūm (militāris), a military
 tribune. I, 39, 10; II, 26, 2.
tribuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [tribus, a
 tribe or division], a., divide;
 assign, allot, ascribe; grant, pay,
 render. I, 13, 15.
tribūtum, -ī, n., tribute. VI, 13, 5.
triduum, -ī, n., three days. I, 26,
 17,
triennium, -ī, n., three years. IV,
 4, 4.
Trinobantēs, -um, m., V, 20, 1.
trini, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* by
 threes; triple. I, 53, 13.
tripertitō, *adv.*, in three parts or
 divisions. V, 10, 1.
triplex, -icis, [trēs+plicō, fold],
 three-fold, triple. I, 24, 4.
triquetrum, -a, -um, triangular. V,
 13, 1.
tristis, -e, sad, dejected. I, 32, 5.
tristitia, -ae, f., sadness. I, 32, 7.

Troucillus, -ī, m., a Gallic name,
 see Valerius.
truncus, -ī, m., stem, trunk. IV,
 17, 26.
tū, tui, *pers. pron.*, you.
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet. II, 20, 3.
tueor, -ēri, tuitus (tūtus) sum, a.,
 look or gaze at, watch, regard,
 guard, protect. IV, 8, 4.
Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe
 on the Rhine, east of the Raurici.
 I, 5, 9.
tum, *adv.* [cf. tam], then, at this
 or that time (coinciding with an-
 other period of time.): cum ...
 tum, both ... and, not only ...
 but also. I, 17, 1.
tumultuor, 1, make a disturbance.
tumultuōsē, *adv.*, in confusion,
 disorderly.
tumultus, -ūs [tumeō, swell], m.,
 uproar, confusion, disorder, tu-
 mult. I, 40, 16; II, 11, 2.
tumulus, -ī, [tumeō, swell], m.,
 swelling, mound, hill. I, 43, 1;
 II, 27, 11.
tunc, *adv.*, then, just then; there-
 upon.
turma, -ae, f., troop or squadron
 of cavalry, the tenth part of an
 ala. IV, 33, 4.
Turonī, -ōrum (-ēs -um), m. II, 35,
 8.
turpis, -e, ugly, unseemly; shame-
 ful, disgraceful. I, 33, 11; IV,
 2, 10.
turpiter, *adv.*, basely. VII, 80, 16.
turpitūdō, -inis, f., disgrace. II,
 27, 5,
turris, -is, f., tower. II, 12, 11.
tūtō [tūtus, safe], *abl. as adv.*,
 safely, securely. III, 13, 22.
tūtus, -a, -um [*p. p.* of tueor, pro-
 tect], protected, safe, secure. II,
 5, 16.
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours.

U.

ubi, *adv.* [quō-bi fr. qui], (of place)
 in which or what place, where;
 (of time) whenever, when. I, 5, 3.
Ubii, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on
 the east bank of the lower Rhine,

near Cologne. I, 54, 3; IV, 3, 5.
ubique, in any place, everywhere.

III, 16, 5.

ulciscor, -i, **ultus sum**, *a.*, avenge, chastise, punish, take vengeance on. I, 12, 20.

ullus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ullius** [*for ūnulus, dim. of ūnus*], any one, a single, any: *as subst.*, any one, anybody. I, 7, 11.

ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* [**ultrā**, beyond], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7, 4.

ultimus, -a, -um [*superl. of ulterior*], farthest, most distant or remote; the last part of. III, 27, 5.

ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of, past. I, 48, 4.

ultrō, *adv.* [*ulterior, farther*], to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously. I, 42, 7; III, 27, 2.

ultus, *see ulciscor.*

ululatus, -ūs, *m.*, yell. VII, 80, 14.

umquam (unq-), *adv.*, at any time, ever. I, 41, 8; III, 28, 4.

ūnā, *adv.* [*ūnus, one*], one with, together or along with, together, at the same time. I, 5, 11.

unde, *adv.*, (*of place*) from which place, from what (*country, etc.*), whence (*of substantives*), from whom (what). I, 28, 6.

ūndecim, *card. num.*, eleven. VII 69, 11.

ūndecimus, *ord. num.*, eleventh. II, 23, 9.

undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides. I, 2, 7.

ūniversus, -a, -um [*ūnus + vertō, turn*], turned into one, all together, whole, universal. II, 33, 20.

ūnus, **ūna**, **ūnum**, *gen. ūnius, card. num.*, one; same, single, only, sole, alone, one. I, 1, 1.

urbānus, -a, -um, of or in the city.
urbs, **urbis**, *f.*, city; *esp.* the city (Rome). I, 7, 3.

urgeo (urgeoō), -ēre, **ursi**, *a.*,

press, press hard, impel, urge II, 25, 2.

ūrus, -i, *m.*, wild ox. VI, 28, 1.

Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, a German tribe beyond the Rhine below Cologne which, forced by the encroachments of the Suevi to leave its home in eastern Germany, settled near the mouth of the Rhine. IV, 1, 2.

ūsītātus, -a, -um, wonted, ordinary, familiar.

ūsque, *adv.* [*us = ubi, fr. ubi, where*], all the way to, even to, as far as, even, till. I, 50, 7; III, 15, 12.

usus, *see ūtor.*

ūsus, -ūs, [*ūtor, use*], *m.*, use, experience, service, advantage; **ūsus est**, it is necessary; **ūsū** (*ex ūsū*) of advantage, of service. I, 30, 5; II, 9, 18.

ut (**utī**), *conj. with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not: *with indic. as adv.*, as, as though, how. I, 2, 4.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, (*gen. utrīus*) which of the two, which. I, 12, 3.

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, [*uter, which (of two) + -que*], each (of two), both. I, 34, 3; II, 8, 9.

ūtilis, -e, [*ūtor, use*], useful, profitable, serviceable. IV, 7, 10.

ūtilitās, -tātis [*ūtilis, useful*], *f.*, usefulness, utility, advantage service. IV, 19, 17.

ūtor, **utī**, **ūsus sum**, *a.*, *n.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of; practice, have, enjoy; possess, show, manage. I, 6, 10.

utrimque [*utrīn-*], *adv.*, on both sides. I, 50, 7; IV, 17, 18.

utrum, *conj.* [*uter, which of two*], only translated with indirect and alternative questions (*which of the two*) whether: followed by **an** or **necne**, in alternative questions: **utrum . . . an**, whether . . . or. I, 40, 45.

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. I, 8, 17.

V.

Vacalus, -ī, *m.*, the Waal. IV, 10, 3.

vacatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, exemption. VI, 14, 2.

vacō, 1. *n.*, be empty, void, or unoccupied; have leisure; lie waste. I, 28, 11.

vacuus, -a, -um, [vacō, be empty,], empty, void, free, destitute, unoccupied. II, 12, 5.

vadum, -ī, [cf. Eng. *wade*], *n.*, ford, shallow, shoal. I, 6, 9.

vāgina, -ae, *f.*, sheath, scabbard.

vagor, 1. [vagus, roaming], *n.*, roam about, rove, wander. I, 2, 12.

valeō, 2. *n.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight or influence; avail; be well. I, 17, 4.

Valerius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen. *E. g.*, (1) C. Valerius Troncillius, a Gallic interpreter. I, 19, 14. (2) C. Valerius Flaccus, Governor of Gaul 83 B. C. I, 47, 12. (3) C. Valerius Caburus, a Gaul in Caesar's army. I, 47, 11. (4) C. Valerius Procillus, son of No. 3. I, 47, 10. (5) L. Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legate before Caesar. III, 20, 5. (6) C. Valerius Domotaurus, Son of No. 2. valētūdō, -inis, *f.*, state of health. VII, 78, 2.

vallis (vallēs), -is, *f.*, vale, valley, III, 1, 14.

vāllum, ī- [vāllus, palisade], *n.*, wall or rampart of earth (set with palisades); entrenchments, earthworks. I, 26, 8.

vāllus, -ī, *m.*, stake, palisade. VII, 73, 13.

Vangionēs, -um, *m.*, I, 51, 9.

varietās, -tātis, *f.*, diversity. VI, 27, 2.

varius, -a, -um, [cf. *vertō*], variegated, diverse; changing manifold, various. II, 22, 9.

vāstō, 1. [vāstus, waste]. *a.*, lay waste, ravage, make desolate, devastate. I, 11, 7.

vāstus, -a, -um, waste; boundless. III, 9, 22.

vaticinatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. I, 50, 13.

vēctigal, vectigālis,] vehō, convey], *n.*, taxes or rents (conveyed to the publicāni), revenue, income. I, 18, 9.

-ve, see vel.

vēctigālis, -e, [vectigal, revenue], paying revenue or tribute, tributary. III, 8, 7.

vectōrius, -a, -um, for transport. V, 8, 13.

vehementer, [vehemēns, violent], violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. I, 37, 9; III, 22, 11.

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus, carry. I, 43, 5.

vel, conj. [imper. of volō, lit. choose], or rather, or, even; vel . . . vel, either . . . or. I, 6, 13.

Velānius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name: Quintus Velanius, a military tribune. III, 7, 12.

Vellavī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe, tributary to the Arveni. VII, 75, 9.

Velaunodūnum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Senones.

Vellocassēs, -um, *m.*, a Belgic tribe on the Seine. II, 4, 27.

vēlōcitas, -tātis, *f.*, swiftness. VI, 28, 4.

vēlōciter, adv., swiftly, speedily.

vēlōx -ōcis, swift, rapid. I, 48, 18.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail; vēla dare, or facere, set sail, III, 13, 9.

velut, adv., just as. I, 32, 12.

vēnātiō, -ōnis [vēnor, hunt], *f.* hunting, the chase, hunting expedition. IV, 1, 17.

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.*, hunter, VI, 27, 8.

vēndō, dere, didī, ditus [vēnum, sale+dō] *a.*, put to sale, sell at auction. II, 33, 20.

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people in modern Normandy. II, 34, 2.

Venetī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people

- in modern Brittany near modern Vannes.* II, 34, 2.
- Venetia**, -ae, *f.*, the country of the Veneti. III, 9, 24.
- Venicus**, -a, -um, Venetian. III, 18, 14.
- venia**, -ae, *f.*, indulgence, kindness, grace.
- veniō**, -ire, **vēni**, **ventus**, *n.*, come, arrive, go, happen. I, 8, 9.
- ventitō**, 1. [*freq. of veniō, come*], *n.*, keep coming, be wont to come, resort. IV, 3, 9.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind. III, 13, 12.
- vēr**, **vērīs**, *n.*, the spring.
- Varagrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gallie people on the Pennine Alps*, III, 1, 3.
- Verbigēnus**, -ī, *m.*, I, 27, 9.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word. I, 20, 13.
- Vercassivellaunus**, -ī, *m.*, VII, 76, 12.
- Veringetorix**, -īgis, *m.*, VII, 68, 1.
- vereor**, 2. *a.*, reverence, fear, dread. I, 19, 12.
- vergō**, *ere, a., n.*, look or lie towards, incline, slope. I, 1, 18.
- Vergobretus**, -ī, *m.*, I, 16, 13.
- vērīsimilis**, -e, probable. III, 13, 11.
- veritus**, *see vereor.*
- vērō**, *adv.*, [**vērus**, true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. I, 32, 14; II, 2, 9.
- Veromandūi**, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 16, 5.
- versō**, 1, be versatile or busy; employ.
- versor**, 1, dwell; be engaged. I, 48, 15; II, 1, 9.
- versus**, *adv.*, turned towards, facing.
- versus**, -ūs, *m.*, turning; verse. VI, 14, 6.
- Verticō**, **ōnis**, *m.*, a *Nervian, who carried dispatches from Cicero to Caesar.*
- vertō**, -ere, **vertī**, **versus**, *n.*, turn, turn around or about; *terga vertere*, flee. I, 53, 2; III, 19, 10.
- Verucloetius**, -ī, *m.*, I, 7, 9.
- vērūs**, -a, -um, true, real, genuine; *in neut. as subst.*, the truth. I, 18, 6.
- verūtum**, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin.
- Vesontīō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the chief town of the *Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besancon.* I, 38, 3.
- vesper**, -erī, *m.*, evening; sub **vesperum**, towards evening. I, 26, 6.
- vester**, -tra, -trum, your, yours, VII, 77, 24.
- vestigium**, -ī [**vestigō**, trace out], *n.*, trace, track, footprint; spot place; point, moment, instant, IV, 2, 9.
- vestiō**, 4, clothe. V, 14, 4.
- vestis**, -is, *f.*, clothing.
- vestitus**, -ūs, *m.*, clothing. IV, 1, 22.
- veterānus**, -a, -um, old, veteran. I, 24, 5.
- vetō**, -āre, -uī, -itus, forbid. II, 20, 13.
- vetus**, -eris, old, ancient, former: veteran (*militēs*). I, 13, 11.
- vēxillum**, -ī [*dim. of vēlum*], *n.*, standard, banner, flag. II, 20, 2.
- vēxō**, 1. [*intensive of vehō, carry*], *a.*, shake, agitate; injure, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, 14, 10.
- via**, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route, journey. I, 9, 1.
- viātor**, -ōris, *m.*, traveller. IV, 5, 5.
- vicōnī**, -ae, -a, *distr. num.*, twenty each. VI, 14, 7.
- vicēsīmus** (**vicēns-**), -a, -um, *ord., num.*, twentieth.
- vicīēs**, *num. adv.*, twenty times. V, 13, 19.
- vicīnitās**, -tātis, *f.*, neighborhood.
- vicis** (*gen., no nom.*), change; *only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alternately, in turn.* IV, 1, 11.
- vīctima**, -ae, *f.*, victim. VI, 16, 4.
- vīctor**, -ōris [**vincō**, conquer], *m.*, conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. I, 31, 81; II, 24, 6.
- vīctōria**, -ae [**vīctor**, victorious], *f.*, victory. I, 14, 11.
- vīctus**, *see vincō.*

victus, -ūs [vivō, live], *m.*, living, life; provisions, food. I, 31, 41; IV, 22, 2.

vicus, -ī [cf. Eng. -wick e. g. Berwick], *m.*, a collection of dwellings, hamlet, village. I, 5, 4.

videō, -ēre, vidī, visus, *a.*, see, examine, understand, see to, take care; *in pass.* seem, appear, seem good or proper, seem best. I, 6, 12.

Vienna, -ae, *f.*, a Gallic city on the Rhone, now Vienna.

vigilia, -ae [vigil, awake], *f.*, wakefulness, watching; watch, guard, sentinels; the Romans divided the night into four watches. I, 12, 8.

viginti, *card. num.*, twenty. I, 13, 4.

vīmen, -inis [vieō, bend or weave together], *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, wither, osier. II, 33, 7.

vinciō, -ire, vinxi, victus, bind. I, 53, 14.

vincō, -ere, vici, victus [cf., vincio, bind, restrain], *a.*, and *n.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; excel; prevail. I, 25, 19.

vinctus, *see* Vinciō.

vinculum (vinclum), -ī [vinciō bind], *n.*, bond, fetter, chain. I, 4, 2.

vindicō, *l.* [vis, force or authority, dicō], *a.*, assert authority, claim one's rights against; set free, deliver; avenge, punish, take vengeance upon. III, 16, 9.

vineā, -ae [vinum, wine], *f.*, a vineyard, vine arbor, hence a shed (for the defence of a besieging party). II, 12, 8.

vinum, -ī, *n.*, wine. II, 15, 10.

violō, *l.*, outrage. VI, 23, 18.

vir, viri, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction or honor: cf. homō, a human being; generic man. II, 25, 8.

virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin. V, 14, 11.

virgultum, -ī, *sing. or plu.*, *n.*, thickets; sprouts. III, 16, 19.

Viridomarus, -ī, *m.*, VII, 76, 12.

Viridovix, -icis, *m.*, a chief of the Venelli. III, 17, 3.

viritim, *adv.*, individually. VII, 71, 16.

Viromandui, -ōrum, *m.*, the Viromandui, a Gallic tribe in the modern Dept. de l'Aisne. II, 4, 27.

virtūs, -ūtis [vir, man], *f.*, manliness, valor, merit, worth; *pl.* good qualities, virtues. I, 1, 12.

vīs, vis, *f.*, force, might, energy, power; violence, severity; influence, weight; quantity, supply. I, 6, 13.

visus, *see* videō.

vīta, -ae [cf. vivō, live], *f.*, life; manner of life; mankind. I, 16, 14.

vitō, *l.*, *a.*, avoid, shun, evade. I, 20, 20.

vitrum, -ī, *n.*, glass; woad. V, 14, 5.

vivō, -ere, vixi, victus, live. IV, 1, 16.

vivus, -a, -um, living. VI, 16, 10.

vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly ever, hardly, scarcely. I, 6, 4.

Vocātēs, -um, *m.*, a people of Aquitania, south of the Garonne. III, 23, 2.

Vocciō (Voctiō), -ōnis, *m.*, I, 53, 10.

vocō, [vōx, voice], *a.*, call, summon; call upon, invoke. I, 19, 13.

Vocontii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Isere and Durance. I, 10, 16.

Volcae, -ārum, *m.*, VI, 24, 7.

Volcacius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen. E. g., C. Volcacius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers.

vulgō (vulgō), *adv.*, [volgus, the common people], commonly, generally, everywhere, publicly, openly. I, 39, 18; II, 1, 14.

vulgus, *see* vulgus.

volō, velle, volui, wish, will. I, 7, 20.

voluntarius, -a, -um, willing, of free will; *pl. as subst.*, volunteers.

voluntās, -tātis [volō, wish], *f.*,

- willingness, good-will, desire, will, consent, approval. I, 7, 12.
- voluptās, -tātis** [volō, wish], *f.*, *what one wishes*: pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. I, 53, 16; V, 12, 15.
- Volusēnus, -ī, m.**, *a Roman gentile name. Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry.* III, 5, 7.
- Vosegus, -ī, m.**, Vosges Mountains. IV, 10, 1.
- voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus**, devote, vow. VI, 16, 5.
- vōx, vōcis** [vocō, call] *f.*, voice, cry, call, sound; word; *pl.*, words, language, speech. I, 32, 8; II, 13, 8.
- Vulcānus (Vol-), -ī, m.**, Vulcan. VI, 21, 5.
- vulgō**, see **volgō**.
- vulgus (volgus), -ī, n. and m.**, the common people, crowd, rabble, the masses: *in abl. as adv.*, commonly, generally. I, 20, 19.
- vulnerō, (vol-), 1.** [volnus, a wound]. *a.*, wound, injure, hurt. I, 26, 10.
- vulnus, (vol-), -eris, n.**, a wound; cut; calamity. I, 26, 11.
- vultus, -ūs** [volō, wish], *m.*, *wish shown by the expression of the countenance*; looks. I, 39, 6.

1

Vertical line of text on the left side of the page.





To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6-40

FEB 28 1949
JUL 28 1950

DEC 1 1950
'JAN 1 0 2006

^{ix}
478.61
C1282



ION
VERB

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STAFFORD

